

*An Introduction to the
Sciences of the
Qur'aan*



by Abu Ammaar Yasir Qadhi

ISBN | 996688 32 6

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

First Edition, 1428 AH/1998 CE

© Copyright 1999 by Yous Qudus

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced in any language, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means: electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the express permission of the copyright owner

Typeset by Al-Halasyah Publishing and Distribution

Published by Al-Halasyah Publishing and Distribution

Box 303

Birmingham

United Kingdom

011 960

Tel: 0121 753 1869

Fax: 0121 753 1423

E-Mail: ahp@halasyah.com.co.uk

Internet: www.al-halasyah.co.uk

Printed in Malta by Progress Press Co. Ltd

Dedicated to:

Ammi and Abbi,

*without whom,
after the blessings of Allaah,
all this would not be possible.*

رَبِّ اَرْحَمُهُمَا كَمَا رَبَّيْتَنِي صَغِيرًا

*«O My Lord! Bestow your Mercy on them,
even as they reared me when I was young» [17:24]*

CONTENTS



TRANSLITERATION TABLE	11
INTRODUCTION	12
I. AN INTRODUCTION TO 'ULOOM AL-QUR'AAN	18
I. Definition of 'Uloom al-Qur'aan	18
II. Benefits of Studying 'Uloom al-Qur'aan	19
III. The History of 'Uloom al-Qur'aan	19
2. THE QUR'AAN	24
I. The Linguistic Meaning of the Word 'Qur'aan'	24
II. The Definition of the Qur'aan	25
<i>The Breakdown of the Definition</i>	26
III. The Qur'aan as the Speech of Allaah	29
THE CONCEPT OF THE KALAM OF ALLAAH	30
THE QUR'AAN AS THE KALAM OF ALLAAH	35
A REPUTATION OF THE ASH'ARITES	40
<i>The Story of Ibraaheem</i>	45
<i>The Story of Moosa</i>	46
<i>Conclusion</i>	52
IV. The Names of the Qur'aan	54
V. The Qur'aan as it Describes Itself	55
VI. The Sunnah as it Describes the Qur'aan	57
THE STATUS OF THE QUR'AAN	57
THE REWARDS FOR THOSE WHO REITE AND PRACTICE THE QUR'AAN	58
3. INSPIRATION – AL-WAHY	61
I. The Concept of Wahy	61
II. The Meaning of Wahy	62
III. The Procedure of Wahy	64
A. WITHOUT AN INTERMEDIARY	64
B. WITH AN INTERMEDIARY	67
<i>The Revelation of the Qur'aan to the Angels</i>	68
<i>The Revelation of the Qur'aan to the Prophet (ﷺ) from Jibreel</i>	69
IV. The Difference Between the Qur'aan and Hadeeth Qudsee	72

4. GRADUAL REVELATION	75
I. The Stages of Revelation	75
THE FIRST STAGE	75
THE SECOND STAGE	76
THE THIRD STAGE	78
<i>Tempering of the Revelation?</i>	79
THE QUANTITY OF REVELATION	80
II. The Wisdom Behind the Gradual Revelation	81
5. THE FIRST AND THE LAST REVELATIONS	88
I. The First Revelation	89
II. The Last Revelation	91
III. Relative First and Last Verses	95
6. THE MAKKEE AND THE MADANEE VERSES	97
I. The Definition of Makkee and Madanee	98
II. The Knowledge of Makkee and Madanee Verses	99
III. The Attributes of Makkee and Madanee Revelations	100
COMMON THEMES OF MAKKEE AND MADANEE VERSES	100
SPECIFIC CHARACTERISTICS OF MAKKEE AND MADANEE VERSES	102
IV. The Categories of Makkee and Madanee	102
V. The Benefits of Knowing Makkee and Madanee verses	105
7. THE CAUSES OF REVELATION - ASBAAB AN-NUZUL	107
I. The Definition of Asbaab an-Nuzool	107
<i>Book on Asbaab an-Nuzool</i>	109
II. The Derivation of Asbaab an-Nuzool	109
THE WORDINGS OF ASBAAB AN-NUZUL	110
III. Multiple Asbaab an-Nuzool for One Verse	111
IV. Multiple Verses for One Sabab an-Nuzool	115
V. A Person as Sabab an-Nuzool	116
VI. The Rulings from these Verses	117
VII. The Benefits of Knowing Asbaab an-Nuzool	119
8. THE COMPILATION OF THE QUR'AAN	124
I. During the Prophet's (ﷺ) Life	125
II. The First Compilation	131
III. The 'Uthmaanic Compilation	135
IV. The Different Muq-hafs	139
A. THE APPEARANCE OF THE MUQ-HAFS	139
<i>The Spelling of the Words of the Qur'aan</i>	139
<i>The Script of the Muq-haf</i>	141

<i>The Qur'aan in Print</i>	145
<i>A Warning!</i>	146
B. THE NUMBER OF 'UTHMAANIC' MUS-HAFS	147
C. WERE THESE MUS-HAFS THE SAME?	147
D. WHAT HAPPENED TO THE ORIGINAL MUS-HAFS?	149
V The Verses of the Qur'aan	151
<i>The Necessity of this Knowledge</i>	152
<i>The Origin of this Knowledge</i>	152
<i>The Number of Verses</i>	154
<i>The Arrangement of the Verses</i>	154
<i>The Number of Words and Letters</i>	156
THE BASMALAH AS A VERSE	157
VI The Soorahs of the Qur'aan	160
<i>The Arrangement of the Soorahs</i>	161
<i>The Number of Soorahs</i>	163
<i>The Names of the Soorahs</i>	164
<i>The Classification of the Soorahs</i>	164
<i>Other Classifications</i>	165
9. THE BEGINNING OF THE SOORAHs	166
I. The Different Categories	166
II. The Disjointed Letters	167
III. The Ending of the Soorahs	170
10. THE AHRUF OF THE QUR'AAN	172
I. The Meaning of the word 'Ahruf'	172
II. The Number of Ahruf of the Qur'aan	173
III. What is Meant by the Ahruf of the Qur'aan?	174
A. THOSE OPINIONS WHICH HAVE NO BASIS WHATSOEVER	176
B. THOSE OPINIONS WHICH HAVE SOME APPARENT BASIS, BUT ARE WEAK OPINIONS	176
C. THOSE OPINIONS WHICH HAVE STRONG EVIDENCE	177
IV Are the Ahruf in Existence Today?	179
V The Wisdom in the Various Ahruf	182
11. THE QIRA'AAT OF THE QUR'AAN	184
I. The meaning of the word 'Qira'aat'	184
II. The History of the Qira'aat	184
III. The Conditions for an Authentic Qira'a	187
IV The Other Types of Qira'aat	191

V The Authentic Qira'at and the Qaarees ...	193
1) <i>Nasfi' al-Madanee</i>	194
2) <i>Ibn Kathir al-Malfee</i>	194
3) <i>Abu 'Amm al-Baqee</i>	195
4) <i>Ibn 'Ameer as-Shaamee</i>	195
5) <i>'Amm al-Kufee</i>	195
6) <i>Hammad al-Kufee</i>	196
7) <i>Al-Kisa'ee</i>	196
8) <i>Abu Ja'far al-Madanee</i>	197
9) <i>Yaqoob al-Baqee</i>	197
10) <i>Khalaf</i>	197
VI The Qira'at Today	199
VII The Relationship of the Ahruf with the Qira'at	200
VIII The Benefits of the Qira'at	202
IX Some Examples of the Different Qira'at	202
12. THE CLEAR AND UNCLEAR VERSES –	
AL-MUHKAM WA AL-MUTASHAABIH	207
I Definition of Muhkam and Mutashabih	207
THE QUR'AN AS MUHKAM AND MUTASHAABIH	208
THE EXACT MEANING OF MUHKAM AND MUTASHAABIH	211
<i>The Attributes of Allaah as Mutashabih?</i>	211
OTHER CATEGORIES OF MUTASHAABIH	221
II The Haqqeeq and the Majazee ...	224
<i>The Attributes of Allaah as Majaz?</i>	225
III The 'Aam and the Khaas	228
IV The Mujaas and the Muqyyad	229
V The Mangooq and Mathboon	230
VI The Naasikh and the Mansookh	231
13. ABROGATION IN THE QUR'AN-	
AN-NAASIKH WA AL-MANSOOKH	232
I The Definition of Naskh	232
<i>The Breakdown of the Definition</i>	233
<i>The Saleef and the Term 'Naskh'</i>	234
<i>Books Written on Naskh</i>	235
II The Proof of Naskh	235
III The Conditions for Naskh	236
IV The Categories of Naskh	237
A. THE SOURCES OF THE NAASIKH AND MANSOOKH	238

B. THE VERSE AND RULING IN THE QUR'ĀAN	240
C. THE RULINGS OF THE NAASIKH AND MANSOOKH	243
V. The Blessings of Naaskh	244
<i>Benefit of the General Naaskh</i>	245
<i>Benefit of the Specific Naaskh</i>	246
VI. The Benefits of Knowing Naasikh and Mansookh	248
VII. The Difference Between Naaskh and Takhsreeg	249
VIII. The Number of Naasikh/Mansookh verses in the Qur'aan	250
<i>The 'Wear of the Sword'</i>	251
<i>A Last Example</i>	255
<i>Conclusions</i>	256

14. THE MIRACULOUS NATURE OF THE QUR'ĀAN –

IJAAZ AL-QUR'ĀAN	257
I. Definition of Ij'aa'z	257
<i>Other Types of Supernatural Acts</i>	258
II. The Proof for Ij'aa'z	259
<i>The Challenge!</i>	261
<i>The Order of the Verses</i>	262
III. The Qur'aan as the Miracle of the Prophet (ﷺ)	264
IV. The Types of Ij'aa'z	265
A. THE LANGUAGE AND STYLE OF THE QUR'ĀAN	267
B. THE PREDICTIONS OF THE QUR'ĀAN	272
C. THE STORIES IN THE QUR'ĀAN	274
<i>The Purposes of the Stories</i>	275
D. THE BELIEFS AND LAWS OF THE QUR'ĀAN	276
E. THE SCIENTIFIC FACTS OF THE QUR'ĀAN	278
F. THE EFFECT THE QUR'ĀAN HAS ON ITS LISTENERS	283
G. THE LACK OF CONTRADICTIONS IN THE QUR'ĀAN	285
H. THE EASE IN WHICH THE QUR'ĀAN IS MEMORISED	285
V. INTRINSIC VS. EXTRINSIC	286
VI. The Quantity for Ij'aa'z	287

15. THE INTERPRETATION OF THE QUR'ĀAN – TAFSEER

I. The Definition of Tafseer and Ta'weel	289
II. The Necessity and Importance of Tafseer	290
III. The History of Tafseer	293
A. THE TIME OF THE PROPHET (ﷺ)	293
B. THE PERIOD OF THE COMPANIONS	294
C. THE PERIOD OF THE SUCCESSORS	296
D. THE COMPILATION OF TAFSEER	297

IV. The Principles of Tafseer	299
1) TAFSEER OF THE QUR'ĀAN BY THE QUR'ĀAN	300
2) TAFSEER BY THE SUNNAH	302
<i>How much of the Qur'aan was explained?</i>	303
3) TAFSEER BY THE STATEMENT OF THE COMPANIONS	306
<i>Tafseer by the Statements of the Successors</i>	309
4) TAFSEER BY ARABIC LANGUAGE AND CLASSICAL POETRY	309
<i>Linguistic vs. Islamic</i>	311
<i>Poetry Prohibited?</i>	312
<i>Whose Poetry?</i>	314
5) TAFSEER BY PRE-ISLAMIC ARAB CUSTOMS	315
6) TAFSEER BY JUDAEO-CHRISTIAN NARRATIVES	317
<i>Hadeeth Related to Israa'eeliyaat</i>	317
<i>The Categories of Israa'eeliyaat</i>	319
7) TAFSEER BY SUBJECTIVE OPINION (RA'Y)	320
<i>The Two Types of Ra'y</i>	321
<i>Where is Ra'y Used?</i>	323
<i>A Divine Blessing</i>	323
V. The Qualifications of a Mufasssir	324
VI. The Types of Tafseer:	326
A. TAFSEER BASED ON NARRATIONS	327
B. TAFSEER BASED ON PERSONAL OPINIONS	339
C. TAFSEER OF THE JURISTS	332
D. SCIENTIFIC TAFSEER	333
E. TAFSEER BASED ON INNER MEANINGS	335
F. MODERNISTIC TAFSEERS	337
VII. Some Famous Tafseers	339
<i>'Jaami' al-Bayaan' of at-Tabaree</i>	339
<i>'Tafseer al-Qur'aan al-'Adheem' of Ibn Kathir</i>	340
<i>'Mafatih al-Ghayb' of ar-Raazee</i>	341
<i>'al-Kashaf' of ar-Zamakhsharee</i>	342
VIII. The Dangers of Improper Tafseer	344
16. THE TRANSLATION OF THE QUR'ĀAN	348
I. The Types of Translation	348
II. The Ruling on Translations	359
<i>The Conditions of Translation</i>	350
<i>The Translation as the Qur'aan</i>	351
THE IMPORTANCE OF ARABIC	353

III. The History of Translation	355
<i>Translations into Western Languages</i>	356
<i>English Translation by Muslims</i>	359
IV. The Problems with Translations	361
<i>A Review of Some Translations</i>	369
 17. THE QUR'AAN AND ORIENTALISTS	374
I. The Authorship of the Qur'aan	374
<i>An Example of the Prophet's (ﷺ) Sincerity</i>	375
AUTHORSHIP THEORIES	376
<i>A Poet?</i>	376
<i>A Madman?</i>	377
<i>Taught by Others?</i>	378
<i>Imagination?</i>	381
II. Some Books by Orientalists	383
<i>'Geschichte des Qurans' of Noldeke</i>	383
<i>'Materials for the History of the Text of the Qur'aan' by Arthur Jeffery</i>	384
<i>'The Collection of the Qur'aan' by John Burton</i>	388
 EPILOGUE	392
I. The 'Return' of the Qur'aan	392
II. An Appeal	393
 APPENDIX: PICTURE PLATES	397
 BIBLIOGRAPHY	415

TRANSLITERATION TABLE

Consonants

ا		د
ب	b	ت
ج	t	ث
ح	th	ز
خ	j	ح
ط	h	ط
ق	kh	ق
ك	d	ك
ل	dh	ل
م	r	م
ن	x	ن
س	s	ه
ش	sh	و
ي	z	ي

Vowels

ا	a	آ	aa
ي	u	و	oo
ي	i	ي	ee

INTRODUCTION



All Praise is due to Allaah. We praise Him, seek His help, and ask His forgiveness. We seek refuge in Allaah from the evil of our souls, and the adverse consequences of our deeds. Whoever Allaah guides, there is none that can misguide him, and whoever He misguides, then none can guide him.

I bear witness and testify that there is no deity that is worthy of worship except for Allaah; He is alone, having no partners. I bear witness and testify that Muhammad (ﷺ) is His perfect worshipper and messenger.

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا اتَّقُوا اللَّهَ حَقَّ تَقَاتِهِ وَلَا تَوَفُّوْا لَهُ وَلَا تَمْنُنْ بِمَا تُعْطَوْنَ

«O you who have faith! Have *taqwa* of Allaah, as He deserves, and do not except as Muslims» [3:102]

يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ اتَّقُوا رَبَّ الَّذِي خَلَقَكُمْ مِنْ نَفْسٍ وَاحِدَةٍ وَخَلَقَ مِنْهَا زَوْجَهَا وَبَيْنَهُمَا رَبْطًا وَخَلَقَ مِنَ الْمَاءِ بَشَرًا ذَكَرًا وَنُثْيًا يَسْأَلُهُمْ فِيهَا ۖ أَلَمْ يَعْلَمِ بِمَا خَلَقَهُمْ

«O Mankind! Have *taqwa* of your Lord, Who created you from a single person, and from him, He created his wife, and from these two, He created multitudes of men, and women. And have *taqwa* of Allaah, through whom you demand your mutual rights, and (do not cut off) the ties of kinship. Verily, Allaah is Ever-Watching over you» [4:1]

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا اتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَلَوْ أَنفَرْنَا لَنَصْلَحْكُمْ أَن تَعْلَمُوا مَا تُفْعَلُونَ ۚ وَلَقَدْ عَلِمْتُمْ لِقَاءَ اللَّهِ فِي صَوْلَاتِكُمْ إِذْ قُمْتُمْ لِلْعِزَّةِ وَلَقَدْ عَلِمْتُمْ لِقَاءَ اللَّهِ فِي صَوْلَاتِكُمْ إِذْ قُمْتُمْ لِلْعِزَّةِ وَلَقَدْ عَلِمْتُمْ لِقَاءَ اللَّهِ فِي صَوْلَاتِكُمْ إِذْ قُمْتُمْ لِلْعِزَّةِ

«O you who you have faith! Have *taqwa* of Allaah, and my righteous speech. He will direct you to do righteous deeds, and He will forgive your sins. And whoever obeys Allaah and His Messenger has indeed achieved the ultimate success» [88:70-71]

As to what follows, then the best Speech is the Speech of Allaah, and the best guidance is the guidance of Muhammad (ﷺ). And the worst of affairs

are newly-invented matters, and every innovation is a misguidance, and every misguidance is in the fire of Hell.¹

In this short speech, which the Prophet (ﷺ) would give every time he spoke, and which he (ﷺ) taught the Companions to give every time they spoke, the Prophet (ﷺ) summarized the essence of Islaam. The words, despite their brevity, are deep in meaning. The speech, despite its lightness, carries great import.

In the first two paragraphs, the Prophet (ﷺ) outlined the fundamentals of faith (*imaan*). The first paragraph consists of acknowledging the 'Oneness of Allaah in His Existence' (*Taahjeed al-Rububiyyah*), and in affirming His unique Names and Attributes (*Taahjeed al-Asmaa wa al-Sifaat*). The fact that a person testifies that Allaah is worthy of all types of praise, and that He is the One who is asked in all matters, automatically implies that He exists, and possesses such Names and Attributes that make it deserving and obligatory upon the creation to do these acts.

The second paragraph is the testimony of faith (*shahadah*), and with it a Muslim testifies that he will worship Allaah, and only Allaah, and that this worship will be based upon the teachings and *Sunnah* of the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ). This is the essence of the 'Oneness of Actions' (*Taahjeed al-Uloohiyyah*); that all of a person's acts will be performed with one goal in mind: the pleasure of the Creator.

The three verses that the Prophet (ﷺ) would recite have one central theme: the importance of *taqwa*. The famous student of Ibn 'Abbaas, Mujaahid ibn Jahri (d. 103 A.H.) defined *taqwa* as, "It is that you obey Allaah, so that He is never disobeyed, and you are conscious of Him, so that He is never forgotten, and that you thank Him, so that He is never disbelieved."² The *taqwa* of Allaah is the life of the heart; without it all actions are as if dead.

In the last paragraph, the Prophet (ﷺ) summarized the source of all guidance, and the source of all misguidance. Guidance comes only from the two inspirations – the Qur'aan and the *Sunnah*. The Qur'aan is described as the best of all Speech. If this is the case, then it must contain in it the best of all matters in all that is needed by mankind. The *Sunnah*, the best guidance, is superior to all other philosophies and methodologies that mankind has invented, for the *Sunnah* is the perfect example of the worship of Allaah, manifested in the life and actions of the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ). All that is opposed to the Qur'aan and *Sunnah* – and in this opposition lies the source of all evil – are termed newly-invented innovations, destined to the fire of Hell.

The work that is in the reader's hands is a brief discussion of certain aspects of the first source of guidance – the Qur'aan. It is by no means comprehensive, for there can be no such thing as an exhaustive work on the sciences related to the Qur'aan. It is,

1. This speech is a translation of what is called *Khaashah al-Hajjah*, which the Prophet (ﷺ) would give whenever he started a speech. See al-Albaani's '*Khaashah al-Hajjah*' (al-Ma'alab al-Islami, Damascus, 1988) for details.

2. Reported by al-Mawwardi in his *agfir*, 4/248.

however, an introduction to certain concepts that the scholars of the past have discussed under the topic of *'uloom al-Qur'aan*.

Work on this book began in the summer of 1995, when I had received my acceptance letter to the Islamic University of Madinah. I had initially planned to study in the 'College of Qur'aan and Islamic Sciences' in the University, and, as preparation for the studies ahead, I started reading the few books that I had on *'uloom al-Qur'aan*. This initial research formed the basis of the first draft of this work, which was completed by the time I had arrived in Madinah. However, due to my limited literary resources (my primary sources for this draft were as-Supoori's *Iqam*, az-Zarkashee's *Burhaan*, and Qasbi's *Madaariib*), I felt the need to critically revise and edit the work.

Even though I eventually did not enter the 'College of Qur'aan' (due to certain factors, I chose to study in the 'College of *Hadeeth*' instead), I was still greatly fascinated by the subject of *'uloom al-Qur'aan*. This fascination was the primary motive that led me to continue editing and revising the work over the next two years. The acceptance of the publication of this work by al-Hidayah was the final catalyst that was needed to complete the work.

In Madinah, I had access to and benefited from many references, and the constraints that I had felt whilst writing the initial draft were removed. The primary sources for this book were the general books of *'uloom al-Qur'aan* – both classical and modern. Apart from the three primary works mentioned above, I also particularly benefited from az-Zarqaani's *Maanaah*, and as-Solbi's analysis and critique of az-Zarqaani's work, which he presented as his master's dissertation to the College of Qur'aan and Islamic Sciences in the University of Madinah. In addition, for most chapters I also utilized books that were specialized to that chapter's subject. This was done to ensure as much authenticity of the contents as possible.

Not all topics that are found in the works of *'uloom al-Qur'aan* have been discussed in this work. Some have been left out due to the language barrier – certain sciences are so intricately related to the Arabic language that their explanation would be of little use in another language (a cursory look at many of the topics of the *Iqam* or *Burhaan* will give the reader examples of what I am referring to). Other topics were not dealt with in this edition, and it is hoped that they may be added in later editions, *insha Allaah*. Yet other topics were discussed, but not in great detail, primarily due to the fact that their understanding and practicality are dependent on a knowledge of Arabic (example of this are the *'aam* and *khbaar*, the *waslaaq* and *wasayyid*, and other word pairs). The science of *taajweed* I purposely avoided, as this is not the place to explain this science, nor is it discussed in the classical works of this field.

Apart from these points, however, I feel confident in stating that the present work will give the reader a general understanding and introduction to the field of *'uloom al-Qur'aan*. The fundamental and important topics related to this science have all been mentioned, in enough detail, *insha Allaah*, for an English-speaking audience to benefit from. Although a previous knowledge of certain aspects of *'uloom al-Qur'aan*

would help in understanding the concepts in this work, I have purposely ensured that such a knowledge is not a prerequisite to benefit from the work. Therefore, this book is written with the assumption that the reader has not had any previous exposure to *ʿilloom al-Qurʿaan*.

The first fifteen chapters form the main portion of the work, and discuss the standard topics of *ʿilloom al-Qurʿaan*. Throughout the work, the nature of the audience was kept in mind, and concepts were presented and developed in (what is hoped is) a style that is suitable for an English-speaking audience.

The last two chapters in particular have been added with the Western audience in mind: 'The Translation of the Qur'aan', and 'The Qur'aan and Orientalists'. In the first, I have discussed the various topics related to the translation of the Qur'aan from an Islamic perspective, and given a history of its translation in English. The chapter was concluded with brief reviews of some of the most important translations. In the second, certain views of Orientalists were given concerning the 'authorship' of the Qur'aan, and three important works by Orientalists were critiqued. It is hoped that these two chapters – in particular – are of practical benefit to the audience.

As was mentioned earlier, the initial purpose of writing this book was to benefit myself. As Imaam Muslim ibn al-Hajjaj (d. 261 A.H.) wrote in the introduction to his *Sahih*: "... if (the writing of this book) were enforced upon me, and it was willed that I complete it, then the first person who would partake from the benefits of it would be myself in particular, before anyone else of mankind ..."¹ And as the Andalusian scholar Ibn Rushd (d. 595 A.H.) wrote in the introduction to his famous work *Bidayyat al-Mujtahid wa Nihayat al-Muqtasid*, "My purpose in writing this book is so that it may serve as a reminder for myself concerning the opinions of the scholars in the various matters pertaining to the laws (of Islam)..."² The work being written, I cannot help but recall the words of al-'Imaad al-Ashfahaanee (d. 597 A.H.), who wrote,³

I have noticed that no author writes a book and finishes it, except that the next day he says, 'If I had only changed this part, it would have been better, and if only I had added this fact, it would have been appreciated more; and if I had only made this section earlier, it would have been easier to comprehend; and if I had only left this section out, it would have been more beautiful.' And this, in fact, is one of the greatest lessons and points to ponder over, for it is a clear indication of the inferiority of the nature of man.

How accurate his observations are! 'Alaa ad-Deen al-Khaazin (d. 741 A.H.), a famous scholar and interpreter of the Qur'aan, outlined the aims of his work when he wrote, in the introduction to his *al-Mufaah*,

It is appropriate that every author, whenever he writes a book concerning a topic that has already been written about, ensure that his work incorporates five benefits: that it brings forth something new, that it combines

¹ *Sahih Muslim*, v. 1, p. 8

² Ibn Rushd, p. 1

³ *Daawee fi al-Tarbiyah* (RUB Press, Madrasah, 1986), p. 7

information that was previously scattered, that it explains concepts that were previously unclear, that it systematically explains the material, and that it avoids unnecessary and undue elaboration. And I hope that this book of mine is not bereft of any of these characteristics that I have mentioned..⁶

Of course, human enterprise is associated with error, and no work can claim perfection. As Imaam ash-Shaafi'ee (d. 204 A.H.) wrote, "Allaah has refused to allow perfection to any work except His Book."⁷

Therefore, instead of concentrating on the mistakes that are sure to be found in this work, the reader is requested to gloss over the flaws that might exist, and benefit from the rest of the work. In addition, the reader is kindly requested not to be parsimonious in sharing with me his sincere advice, and affording me his constructive criticism, for I am in great need of them, and, 'the religion is the gring of advice'. All comments may be directed care of the publisher.

Of course, no project of this nature can ever be the sole product of one person; there are many that have helped along the way. The book is dedicated to my parents, for it is their upbringing and support (along with the constant blessings of Allaah), that has brought me where I am today. I am honoured by the fact that my teacher, Shaykh 'Abd ar-Razzaq ibn 'Abd al-Muham al-'Aasad, took time out of his busy schedule to go over the portions of this book related to *'aqedah*, and to benefit me with his vast knowledge of the subject. I am also indebted to Dr. Muhammad Arwar Sahib for reading over most of the critical portions of this work, despite the fact that he was highly pressed for time, as he was then in the final stages of completing his doctoral dissertation. My friends and fellow students of knowledge, Abu Abdullah and Abu Sulaymaan, deserve my gratitude for going over the manuscript and sharing with me their valuable advice, as do David Dillon and Abu Safyaan for their help in proof-reading the final text. Jamaal al-Din Zarbawo also deserves my gratitude for all that I have benefited from him while I was in America, and for his valuable comments and advice on the initial draft of the work. My thanks are also extended to al-Hidayah Publishing and Distribution for their acceptance of the work. Lastly, I would like to thank the many scholars, students of knowledge, and peers that have helped me with various portions of the work, by answering my questions, giving me advice, or simply encouraging me in my efforts. May Allaah reward all of them!

A note must be added concerning the mention and refutation of certain views of the *Ash'arite*. This group is mentioned, in particular, in the sections concerning the Qur'aan as the *kalām* of Allaah, the Attributes of Allaah as *muṣṣhaṣṣah*, and the Attributes of Allaah as *maṣṣar*. Although these refutations are not, in general, found in the works of *'aborn al-Qur'aan*, and are perhaps more relevant to the books of *'aqedah*, they were nonetheless included in this work for a number of reasons. Firstly, the concepts discussed are not in reality outside the realm of *'aborn al-Qur'aan*, and a discussion and refutation of certain incorrect views regarding these topics will only

6. *Tajweed al-Khawaṣṣ*, p. 3.

7. Cf. *al-Sabḥaan*, p. 34.

help explain each concept better. Secondly, during the last few years, the ideas of this group have started spreading with renewed vigour and enthusiasm in the West, and their vitriolic attacks and scathing accusations against the *Ahl al-Sunnah wa al-Jama'ah* have made it essential that a refutation be written against them. As of yet, no thorough refutation exists in English. Naturally, this book is not meant to be a complete refutation of the *Ash'ariyyah*, and as such the refutations mentioned in this book are not exhaustive. However, it was decided to include in this work those issues which the *Ash'ariyyah* differed with *Ahl al-Sunnah* and were common to *'aloom al-Qur'ani* at the same time, thus affording the English audience a glimpse of such refutations. It is hoped that the brief discussions that are mentioned in this work are enough to caution any person that might have been influenced by this group, and cause him to re-examine the beliefs of the *Ash'ariyyah*. Lastly, the inclusion of these sections will perhaps give the reader an example of how deviation occurs, and the correct Islamic methodology in solving them.

One last note: the author wishes to make it clear that he is only a student of knowledge – not a scholar, nor a specialist in the field of *'aloom al-Qur'ani*. Therefore, this work does not in any way represent original research material; all the views and opinions in it are merely quotations from other scholars. If there is any credit to be given, it is in the collection, editing, translation and presentation of the material, for that is all that the author has done.

All that is correct in this work and of benefit to the readers is from Allah, and all that is incorrect is from myself and Shaytaan.⁸

I sincerely pray that this work helps bring Muslims closer to their religion; that it causes them to grow in their love for the Qur'aan; and that it induces them to further their knowledge of this magnificent and glorious book – the 'best of all Speech' (39:23) '*Amreen*'!

Abu Aamir

27th Ramadhan, 1418 A.H. (25th January, 1998 CE)

The City of the Prophet (ﷺ) – al-Madrasah an-Nabawiyah

8. This statement is based upon a statement of the Companion Ibn Ma'ood, who, after responding to a question, would make this statement. See *Musnad Ahmad*, 6/157.

AN INTRODUCTION TO 'ULOOM AL-QUR'AAN



1. Definition of 'Uloom al-Qur'aan

The knowledge of *'uloom al-Qur'aan*, or 'The Sciences of the Qur'aan', deals with the knowledge of those sciences that have a direct bearing on the recitation, history, understanding and implementation of the Qur'aan. It is, therefore, a vast field of Islamic scholarship, and one that is of primary importance.

Thus, for example, with regards to recitation, *'uloom al-Qur'aan* deals with the science of pronunciation (*qaymard*), the different methodologies of reciting the Qur'aan (the *qira'at*), the blessings of reciting the Qur'aan, and the etiquette of its recitation.

With regards to the history of the Qur'aan, *'uloom al-Qur'aan* deals with the stages of revelation of the Qur'aan, the compilation of the Qur'aan, the art and history of writing the Qur'aanic script (*usm al-maqashif*), and the preservation of the Qur'aan.

With regards to its understanding and implementation, *'uloom al-Qur'aan* covers the causes of revelation (*asbab an-nuzool*), the knowledge of the *makkye* and *madaniye* revelations, the knowledge of the various forms (*asruf*) it was revealed in, the understanding of its abrogated rulings and verses (*asasul ahw al-manzoolah*), the knowledge of the various classifications of its verses (*majham* and *mutashabih*, *asim* and *ihbas*, *manlag* and *manqayad*, etc.), the knowledge of the inimitable style of the Qur'aan (*ijazat al-Qur'aan*), the knowledge of its interpretation (*tafseer*), the grammatical analysis of the Qur'aan (*naah al-Qur'aan*) and the knowledge of those words whose usage has become uncommon over time (*ghareeb al-Qur'aan*).

It has been said that the knowledge of *'uloom al-Qur'aan* is in reality the knowledge that one is required to know in order to properly interpret the Qur'aan. Therefore, to call this branch of Islamic knowledge 'The Procedure and Methodology of Interpretation' (*Ilm Uqul at-Tafseer*) instead of *'uloom al-Qur'aan* would not be far from the truth.⁹ However, *'uloom al-Qur'aan* also includes topics that have very little or no bearing on *tafseer*, such as the compilation of the Qur'aan, and the development

⁹ cf. al-Roomi, *Fahd ila 'Abd al-Rahman ibn Salim: Dirasat fi 'Uloom al-Qur'aan*, Maktabah at-Tawbah, Riyadh, 1994, p. 33, who equates *'Uloom al-Qur'aan* with *Uqul at-Tafseer*.

of the script of the Qur'aan. Therefore, the knowledge of *'ulloom al-Qur'aan* is more general than *Ilm Uqool at-Tafseer*.

II. Benefits of Studying 'Uloom al-Qur'aan

There are many benefits to the knowledge of *'ulloom al-Qur'aan*. Firstly, it enables the reader to realize the wealth of knowledge and insight that exists with regards to the Book of Allaah. As some of the scholars of the past said, "True knowledge is to know one's ignorance." Only when a person realizes what he does not know will he appreciate how little he *does* know. Secondly, it enables the student of knowledge to better understand the Qur'aan, in that he will be familiar with the history of its revelation and collection, and the various aspects that aid its comprehension. When he reads the books of *tafsir*, he will be able to understand the terms used, and benefit from the knowledge in them to a greater extent. In other words, he will be equipped to further increase his knowledge and to learn more about his religion. Thirdly, it increases a person's belief (*imaan*), because he will realize the beauty of the Qur'aan and the great blessings that he has been given through its revelation. He will not be fooled by the fallacious claims of its enemies, and his heart will be at ease with regards to its authenticity. He will understand the miraculous nature of the Qur'aan, and thus better cherish the greatest Book that mankind has been given. Fourthly, he will be able to defend the Qur'aan against its enemies, since he will be equipped with the true and pristine knowledge of the Qur'aan, unadulterated by the prejudices of its opponents.

It is no exaggeration to say that, once a person learns the essentials of his religion and what is required for him to know, the first knowledge he should turn his attention to is the knowledge of the Qur'aan and its sciences. As Allaah says¹⁰ in the Qur'aan,

﴿كِتَابًا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ فِيهِ ذِكْرٌ لِقَوْمٍ يُفَكِّرُونَ﴾ (الأَنْعَامِ)

«(This is a) Book that We have sent down to you, full of blessings, so that they may ponder over its verses, and that men of understanding may remember» [16:29]

III. The History of 'Uloom al-Qur'aan

Like all the sciences of Islam, the knowledge of *'ulloom al-Qur'aan* initiated with the Prophet (ﷺ) himself. The Companions used to question the Prophet (ﷺ) about any concepts that they did not understand in the Qur'aan. For example, concerning the verse,

¹⁰ It should be pointed out that the Qur'aan is only in Arabic, and its speech (*qulūb*) of Allaah, is still to be proved and elaborated upon in the next chapter. Therefore, the unconditional phrase, "Allaah says," when used in this book (or any book), only refers to the Qur'aan. When this phrase is used in a language other than Arabic, it contains an additional implicit clause that should be understood by the audience, and this clause is, "the meaning of which is," since the Qur'aan is only in Arabic. Therefore, this phrase should be understood as, "The meaning of what Allaah has said is."

الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَلَمْ يَلْبِسُوا إِيمَانَهُمْ بِظُلْمٍ أُولَٰئِكَ لَهُمُ الْأَمْنُ وَهُمْ مُهْتَدُونَ ﴿٨٢﴾

‘Those who believe and do not mix their belief with injustice, only they will have security, and they are the guided’[6/82]

they asked, ‘O Messenger of Allaah! Who amongst us does not do injustice (to his soul)?’¹⁰ They had understood that the verse was referring to those believers who did not commit any injustice, or sin. The Prophet (ﷺ) replied that the injustice referred to in this verse was *shirk*, or the association of partners with Allaah.¹¹

Such was the enthusiasm of the Companions in seeking this knowledge that they were able to not only explain any verse in the Qur’aan, but also give its history and the cause of its revelation. Ibn Mas’ood said, ‘I swear by Allaah, besides whom there is no other god, there is no *ma’raah* in the Qur’aan except that I know where it was revealed! And there is not a single verse in the Qur’aan except that I know the reason behind its revelation! If there were any person that knew more about the Qur’aan than I did, and it was possible for me to reach him, I would ride (on my camel) towards him (to get this knowledge).’¹² ‘Alee ibn Abi Talib told his students, ‘Ask me! For I swear by Allaah, there is nothing that you will ask me except that I will answer you. Ask me concerning the book of Allaah! For I swear by Allaah, there is not a single verse in the Qur’aan except that I know whether it was revealed at night or during the day, or on a mountain or on a plain!’¹³

There were many Companions who were famous for their knowledge of the Qur’aan, among them the four *Khulafaa ar-Rashidoon*,¹⁴ ‘Abdullaah ibn Mas’ood (d. 32 A.H.), ‘Abdullaah ibn ‘Abbaas (d. 68 A.H.), Ubay ibn Ka’ab (d. 32 A.H.), Zayd ibn Thabit (d. 45 A.H.), Abi Sa’eed al-Musayyib (d. 50 A.H.), ‘Abdullaah ibn Zubayr (d. 73 A.H.) and ‘Aa’ishah (d. 57 A.H.).

The generation that came after the Companions, the Successors, studied eagerly under the wise guardianship of the Companions. These students took over their predecessors’ responsibilities, and passed this knowledge faithfully to the next generation. Ibn ‘Abbaas’ students, Sa’eed ibn Jubayr (d. 95 A.H.), Mujahid ibn Jabr (d. 100 A.H.), Tharimah al-Barbari (d. 104 A.H.), Jarwood ibn Kaynaan (d. 106 A.H.), and ‘Aqas’ ibn Rabaah (d. 114 A.H.), were all famous in Makkah; Ubay ibn Ka’ab’s students, Zayd ibn Aslam (d. 63 A.H.), Abi al-‘Asyah (d. 90 A.H.) and Muhammad ibn Ka’ab (d. 120 A.H.), were the teachers of Madinah; and in Iraq, ‘Abdullaah ibn Mas’ood left behind his great legacy to ‘Akamah ibn Qays (d. 60 A.H.), Marsooq ibn al-Ajda’ (d. 63 A.H.), al-Husayn al-Baghi (d. 110 A.H.), and Qutaadah al-Sakooti (d. 110 A.H.). These three places, Makkah, Madinah, and Kufa, were the leading centres of all the sciences of Islam, including *tafiir* and *‘uloom al-Qur’aan*.

10 Reported by al-Bukhaaree.

12 Reported by al-Bukhaaree.

13 as-Saamee, p. 37

14 A term that means ‘The rightly-guided Caliphs’, used to denote the first four caliphs, Abi Bakr, Umar, Uthman and ‘Alee.

Thus the knowledge of the Qur'aan was passed on¹⁵ by the trustworthy (scholars) of the *ummah*, who protected it from the alterations of the heretics, the false claims of liars, and the false interpretations of the ignorant."¹⁶

Early scholars did not write on *'ulloom al-Qur'aan* in general, but rather wrote separate tracts on each science of the Qur'aan. This was due to the fact that, during the early stages of Islamic history, the oral transmission of knowledge occupied a more important status than the written transmission. In addition, the general level of knowledge was high, and did not warrant the extensive writing down of knowledge.

The first and most important of the topics to be written on was *tafsir*. For example, each of the following scholars wrote a *tafsir* of the Qur'aan, composed of statements from the Prophet (ﷺ) and the Companions: Sufyaan al-Thawree (d. 161 A.H.), Sufyaan ibn 'Uyaynah (d. 198 A.H.), Wakee' ibn al-Jarrah (d. 197 A.H.), and Shu'bah ibn al-Hajjaaj (d. 160 A.H.).

Following his predecessor's footsteps, Muhammad ibn Jarreer at-Tabaree (d. 310 A.H.) wrote the monumental *Jaami' al-Bayaan 'an Ta'weel aay al-Qur'aan*, a *tafsir* that all later scholars would benefit from. Other early *tafsirs* were written by Aboo Bakr ibn Mundhir an-Naysaboori (d. 318), Ibn Abi Hajaam (d. 378), Ibn Hibbaan (d. 369), al-Haakim (d. 405) and Ibn Maadawayh (d. 410). All of these *tafsirs* were based on reports from the Prophet (ﷺ) and the Companions and Successors, and included the chains of narration (*isnaad*) of the reports.

After the books of *tafsir* followed a plethora of books on the other sciences of the Qur'aan. 'Alee al-Madeenee (d. 234 A.H.), the teacher of Isaam al-Bukhaaree, wrote a book on *Ashaab an-Nisbaal*; Aboo 'Ubayd al-Qasam ibn Salloom (d. 224 A.H.) wrote two books, one on the science of the *Qira'at* (which was one of the first of its kind), and one on abrogation in the Qur'aan, *Nasakh min al-Manasikh*; Ibn Qutaybah (d. 276 A.H.) wrote a book on rare words in the Qur'aan, *Mashfi al-Qur'aan*; Aboo Ishaaq an-Zaylaq (d. 311) wrote a grammatical analysis of the Qur'aan, *Ta'rab al-Qur'aan*; Ibn Duraywayh (d. 330) composed a tract on the miraculous nature of the Qur'aan, *I'jaaz al-Qur'aan*; Aboo Bakr as-Sijistaanee (d. 330 A.H.) wrote another book on the rare words in the Qur'aan, *Gharib al-Qur'aan*; Aboo Bakr al-Baqillanee (d. 403) wrote his famous treatise, also related to the miraculous nature of the Qur'aan, *I'jaaz al-Qur'aan*; Imaam an-Nasaa'ee (d. 303 A.H.), the author of the *Sunan*, wrote one on the merits of the Qur'aan, *Faada'id al-Qur'aan*; Aboo al-Hasan al-Wahabee (d. 468) wrote his famous book on *Ashaab an-Nisbaal*; Tim ad-Deen as-Sakhaaree (d. 634) wrote one on the various *qira'at*, and so on.

It must also be mentioned that, in addition to these books, many of the books of *hadith*, such as the *Sahih*s of al-Bukhaaree and Muslim, included sections on various topics of *'ulloom al-Qur'aan*. For example, most of the books of the *Sunan* have chapters on the *tafsir* of the Qur'aan, the benefits of reciting the Qur'aan, the history of its compilation, and other topics.

¹⁵ A paraphrase of an *ahadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ), reported by Ibn 'Adar and Ibn 'Asakir. The beginning of the *ahadeeth* is, 'This knowledge will be carried by the trustworthy of the *ummah*, who will protect it.'

Finally, the scholars of the later generations started compiling all of these sciences into one book, and thus began the era of the classic works on *'uloom al-Qur'ān*. The first works of this nature were actually meant to be works of *tafsīr*. One of the first works that is reported in later references (but is not extant) is that of Abū Bakr Muḥammad ibn Khalaf ibn al-Marzabān (d. 309 A.H.), entitled *'al-Hawṣe* for *'Ulloom al-Qur'ān*.¹⁶ Another work, of which manuscript copies of fifteen of a total of thirty volumes are extant, is that of 'Alī ibn Ibrāhīm Sa'eed (d. 380), otherwise known as al-Hooṣee, which he entitled, *'Al-Burḥān* for *'Ulloom al-Qur'ān*. This book is primarily one on *tafsīr*, but also discusses all related aspects of a verse. So, for example, after each portion of the Qur'ān, it includes information about the verses' meaning, its interpretation, its purpose of revelation, its proper method of recitation, the *different qur'ān* of the verse and how they affect the meaning, where to stop and where not to, and so forth. This work is considered to be the first of its kind in its expansive approach to all the related sciences of the Qur'ān.¹⁷

There appeared after this, books of a similar nature, until finally Badr ad-Deen az-Zarkashī (d. 794 A.H.) appeared with his monumental *Al-Burḥān* for *'Ulloom al-Qur'ān* (the same title as al-Hooṣee's work). This is one of the great classics on *'ulloom al-Qur'ān* available in print. A little over a century later, another classic appeared, that of Jalāl ad-Deen as-Sayyidī (d. 911 A.H.), entitled *al-Iqṣā* for *'ulloom al-Qur'ān*. These two works are considered the standard resource works on *'ulloom al-Qur'ān*, and both have been printed a number of times during the last few decades.

Books on *'ulloom al-Qur'ān* continued to appear throughout the centuries,¹⁸ and these last few decades have been no exception. The better known books of this era have been *Manāḥil al-Tafān* for *'Ulloom al-Qur'ān* by Shaykh Muḥammad 'Abd al-Adhīm az-Zarkānī; *al-Madkhal li-Durust al-Qur'ān al-Karīm* by Muḥammad Abū Shāmah; and two books, both of which are entitled *Mabāḥith* for *'Ulloom al-Qur'ān*, one by Dr. Subḥī Sa'ādī and the other by Dr. Munīr al-Qaṣṣān.

Unfortunately, there does not seem to be great interest in English circles concerning this topic. Other topics, such as *ḥadīth* and *fiqh*, have been given greater attention.¹⁹ In English, the only work present²⁰ is Ahmed Von Denffer's book, *'Ulloom al-*

16. *as-Risālah*, p. 45, quoting Ibn Nadīm's *Fihrist*, p. 24.

17. *az-Zarkashī*, Muḥammad 'Abd al-Adhīm: *Manāḥil al-Tafān li-'Ulloom al-Qur'ān*, Dar al-Fikr, Cairo, n.d., p. 38 and Qaṣṣān, Munīr: *Mabāḥith li-'Ulloom al-Qur'ān*, Mawṣū'at al-Risāl, Beirut, 1983, p. 14.

18. See *as-Risālah*, pp. 41–48, where he lists the most important works in this field from every century of the *ḥijrī*, starting from the second century until the present one.

19. In *ḥadīth*, the best works are the introductory-level modern ones *Hadīth Literature: Its Origins, Development and Special Features* by Muḥammad Zubayr Siddiqi (Islamic Text Society, London, 1991), and *Studies in Hadīth Methodology and Literature* by Muḥammad Mustafa Asad (American Trust Publication, Indianapolis, 1977); in *Usoo' al-fiqh*, a good work is by Muḥammad Ḥafṣah Karrah, *Principles of Islamic Jurisprudence* (Islamic Text Society, 1991).

20. This is the only book that this author has come across concerning this topic from a Muslim author. There is, however, a translation of Ibn Taymiyyah's *An Introduction to the Principles of Tafsīr* (al-Hidaayah Publishing and Distribution, Birmingham, 1993).

Qur'aan: An Introduction to the Sciences of the Qur'aan.²¹ It is a useful book in that it presents a summary of many concepts of 'ulloom al-Qur'aan, and is meant for a young adult audience. However, probably due to the nature of the audience, the author does not go into great detail.

21 Published by 'The Islamic Foundation,' Leicester, 1983.

THE QUR'AAN



1. The Linguistic Meaning of the Word 'Qur'aan'

There are a number of different opinions concerning the linguistic meaning of the word 'Qur'aan.'

The most popular opinion, and the opinion held by at-Tabaree (d. 310 A.H.), is that the word 'Qur'aan' is derived from *qara'a*, which means, 'to read, to recite.' 'Qur'aan' would then be the verbal noun (*maṣḍar*) of *qara'a*, and thus translates as 'The Recitation' or 'The Reading.' Allaah says in reference to the Qur'aan,



«And (it is) a Qur'aan which We have divided into parts.» [17:106]

and He says,



«It is for Us to collect it and to Recite it (Ar *qur'aanahaa*). When We have recited it, then follow its Recitation (Ar *qur'aanaah*).» [75:17-8]

On the other hand, Imaam ash-Shaafi'ee (d. 204 A.H.) held the view that the word 'Qur'aan' was a proper noun that was not derived from any word, just like 'Torah' or 'Injeel'.²² He recited the word without a *ḥawaa*, such that 'Qur'aan' would rhyme with the English word 'hawn'. One of the *qur'aan*'s also pronounced it this way.

Another opinion²³ states that the word 'Qur'aan' is from the root *qaranaa*, which means, 'to join, to associate'. For example, the pilgrimage in which *Umrah* and *Hajj* are combined is called *Hajj Quraan*, from the same root word. Therefore the meaning of the word 'Qur'aan' would be, 'That which is joined together,' because its verses and *soorahs* are combined to form this book. In this case, the word would be pronounced the same way as Imaam ash-Shaafi'ee pronounced it, without the *ḥawaa*.

²² The books given to Moses and Jesus, respectively.

²³ The *qur'aan* of Ibn Kathir. See Gh. 11, 'The Qur'aan of the Qur'aan' for more details on the various *qur'aan*.

²⁴ That of Abul-ʿAl-ʿAllaam 'Abul-Ash'ari (d. 324 A.H.), the famous theologian.

A fourth opinion²⁵ is that 'Qur'aan' comes from the word *qarā'a*, which means 'to resemble, to be similar to'. Hence, the Qur'aan is composed of verses that aid one another in comprehension, and *surahs* that resemble each other in beauty and prose.²⁶

Yet another opinion is that 'Qur'aan' is from *qar'*, which means 'to combine'. It is called such since it combines stories, commands, promises and punishments.²⁷

However, the opinion that is the strongest, and the one that the majority of scholars hold, is the first one, namely that the word 'Qur'aan' is the verbal noun of *qarā'a* and therefore means, 'The Recitation'. The proof for this is that it is named such in the Qur'aan (and most of the *qur'aan* pronounce the word with a *kasra*), and the word conforms with Arabic grammar as the verbal noun of *qarā'a*.

It may be asked: how does one explain the fact that some *qur'aan* pronounce the word 'Qur'aan' without a *kasra*, as it is well known that all the *qur'aan* are equally authentic (as shall be discussed in greater detail)? The response to this question is that this particular pronunciation is due to the peculiar rules of recitation (*qir'een*) of those *qur'aan*, and affects many words. In other words, the *qur'aan* that pronounce the word 'Qur'aan' without a *kasra* do not intend to change the pronunciation of the word 'Qur'aan' itself, but rather this occurs due to a particular rule of recitation (*qir'een*) that affects many words in the Qur'aan, including the pronunciation of the word 'Qur'aan.' Therefore, even though the pronunciation of the word 'Qur'aan' is different in these *qur'aan*, the actual word is still the same.

ii. The Definition of the Qur'aan

There are many definitions of the Qur'aan, but they differ in wording only. There is no difference of opinion as to what the Qur'aan is, but merely what the best way to define it is.²⁸

One of the more appropriate definitions is as follows:²⁹ The Qur'aan is the Arabic Speech (*kalām*) of Allah, which He revealed to Muhammad (ﷺ) in wording and meaning, and which has been preserved in the *way-haf*, and has reached us by *mutawatir* transmissions, and is a challenge to mankind to produce something similar to it.

25. That of Yaqūb ibn Zayd al-Daylami (d. 207 A.H.), better known as al-Farra', a famous grammarian from Kufa.

26. For more discussion of these and other opinions, see for example, Badr al-Din al-Baday'i *Uloom al-Qur'aan*, Maktabah al-Bayyati, Beirut, 1972, v.1, p. 276-8, and Hameed, *Muhammed ibn Umar ibn al-Sakun al-Qur'aan wa Ahluha* for al-Bayyati, Dar al-Hayth, Riyadh, 1996, v.1, p. 23-27.

27. This is the opinion of Ibn al-Atheer (d. 606 A.H.) in *Ibn an-Nihayyah*, v.4, p. 30.

28. A good definition must include everything that is essential, exclude everything that is extraneous, and be as succinct as possible.

29. cf. al-Zarqaani, v.1, p. 21.

The Breakdown of the Definition

The statement in the definition, *The Qur'aan is the Arabic...*,³⁰ implies that the Qur'aan is in the Arabic language. This, therefore, implies that a translation of the Qur'aan into any other language cannot be considered the Qur'aan.³¹ Imaam az-Zarkashī said, "Know that the Qur'aan has been revealed in the language of the Arabs. Therefore, it is impermissible to recite it in any other language."³²

There are eleven references in the Qur'aan that it is in the Arabic language, amongst them the verses,

وَعَدَا لِسَانًا عَرَبِيًّا مُبِينًا ﴿١٦٠﴾

«...this (the Qur'aan) is in a clear Arabic tongue» [16:160]

and,

إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ قُرْآنًا عَرَبِيًّا

«Verily, We have revealed this as an Arabic Qur'aan» [12:2]

and,

وَلَقَدْ هَمَمْنَا أَنْ نُفَصِّلَ الْفُورَانَ عَرَبِيًّا

«And thus We have inspired you with an Arabic Qur'aan» [42:7]

Since the Qur'aan has described itself as being in Arabic, it is clear that any non-Arabic speech cannot be the Qur'aan.

However, is every single word in the Qur'aan originally from the Arabic language?³³ In other words, does the Qur'aan use words from other languages? There exist narrations from some of the Companions, and many grammarians after them, concerning certain words in the Qur'aan which were claimed to be of non-Arabic origin. Thus, for example, Ibn 'Abbaas claimed that the word *ḡayr* was Syriac for mountain, *ḡafīq* meant 'to intend' in the Roman language, *ḡaduss* was Hebrew for repentance, *ḡif* was Persian for book, *ḡandū* means a soft cloth in Hindi (probably referring to Sanskrit), *ḡawḡḡar* was a shining lamp in an Ethiopian language, and *ḡarī* was Greek for a small river.³⁴ His student 'Ummah was also of the same opinion.

This opinion led some later scholars to come forth with numerous examples of words that were claimed to be non-Arabic in origin, yet mentioned in the Qur'aan. As-Suyootī (d. 911 A.H.) compiled a list of over a hundred words in the Qur'aan that were claimed to be non-Arabic in origin, and even versified these words in a poem.³⁵

30 See Ch. 13, 'The Translation of the Qur'aan,' for a more detailed discussion of this point.

31 az-Zarkashī, v.1, p. 287.

32 Examples taken from az-Zarkashī, v.1, p. 298.

33 as-Suyootī, v.1, p. 881-84.

Other scholars, however, denied the claim that there could be any non-Arabic words in the Qur'aan. Basing their evidences on the Qur'aanic verses quoted above, they held the view that these verses precluded the existence of foreign words in the Qur'aan. Imam ash-Shaafi'ee (d. 204 A.H.) was particularly strict in this matter, for he wrote concerning some grammarians of his time, "And some have spoken in this topic (of foreign words in the Qur'aan), and had they restrained themselves from speaking it would have been better, and safer for them! For some of them have presumed that the Qur'aan is part Arabic and part foreign! Yet the Qur'aan is explicit that there is nothing in the Book of Allaah except that it is in the language of the Arabs..."⁵⁴

In attempting to refute the opinion that the Qur'aan contains foreign words, at-Tabaree (d. 310 A.H.) claimed that these particular words were used by both of these languages simultaneously, and thus the Companions' claims that these words were non-Arabic only meant that they were also used by other languages as well.⁵⁵ However, this is not a satisfactory explanation, as the word must have originated in one of the two languages.

Abu 'Ubayd al-Qasim ibn Salloom (d. 224 A.H.) explained the above narrations from Ibn 'Abbaas correctly when he said,

The correct opinion with me is that both of the above opinions [meaning that there are foreign words in the Qur'aan, and that the Qur'aan is only in Arabic] are correct. This is because the origin of these words is foreign, like the scholars said [referring to the narrations of Ibn 'Abbaas]. However, these words entered into the Arabic language, and were transformed to Arabic words, and the foreign letters were exchanged for Arabic ones, until they became a part of Arabic. Then the Qur'aan was revealed, and by this time these words had mixed in with the Arabic language. Therefore, he who says that the Qur'aan is only in Arabic is correct, and he who says that there are some foreign words is also correct.⁵⁶

In other words, these particular phrases are originally non-Arabic in origin. However, as is the case with any language, these words were 'borrowed' by Arabic, and were used so commonly that they became a part of the Arabic language. Thus, for all practical purposes, these words became 'a part of fluent Arabic, and were used in poetry... and if an Arab were ignorant of these words, it was as if he were ignorant of other Arabic words.'⁵⁷

Therefore, the correct opinion is that there are no non-Arabic words in the Qur'aan, although there are words that have non-Arabic origins. Due to the continued usage of these words by the Arabs, however, they can no longer be considered foreign.

The next part of the definition of the Qur'aan states that it is the '*Speech (kalam) of Allaah*...' The Qur'aan is the Speech (*kalam*) of Allaah, that He spoke in a manner

54. *al-Zarkashi*, v. 1, p. 287, quoting from *ar-Risalah*.

55. *as-Sayraat*, v. 1, p. 178.

56. *al-Zarkashi*, v. 1, p. 290.

57. *al-Zarkashi*, v. 1, p. 289.

that befits Him. This excludes all speech that emanated from men, *jinn*, and angels. Due to the importance of the fact that the Qur'aan is the *ḥaṣṣ* of Allaah, and the different philosophies that have evolved concerning this topic, this part of the definition will be discussed in greater detail in the next section.

The next part of the definition states: '*...which He revealed to Muḥammad (ﷺ)...*'. This excludes any other Speech (*ḥaṣṣ*) of His than He spoke. The *ḥaṣṣ* of Allaah is infinite, as the Qur'aan says,

وَلَوْ أَنَّ فِي الْأَرْضِ
مِنْ شَجَرٍ أَغْطَتْ وَالْخَرْقَ مِنْ مَعِينٍ سَعَةً أَخْضَرُ
مَا لَيْدَتْ كُنْتَ لَو أَنَّ اللَّهَ عَلَّمَ كَيْدَ ۝ (31:27)

«And if all the trees on the earth were pens, and the sea (were ink wherewith to write), with ocean sent behind it to add to its supply, still the Words (*ḥaṣṣ*) of Allaah would not be exhausted. Verily, Allaah is All Mighty, All Wise» [31:27]

Therefore, this part of the definition limits the Qur'aan to the *ḥaṣṣ* that Allaah revealed to Muḥammad (ﷺ), and excludes any Speech that He spoke to other than the Prophet (ﷺ). The Qur'aan is specifically the revelation sent down to the Prophet (ﷺ).

وَلَقَدْ نَزَّلْنَاهُ بِقَوْلِهِ ۝ وَإِنَّا لَهُ لَنَزَّاطُونَ
الْأَمِينُ ۝ عَلَى قَلْبِكَ وَخَرُّوا مِنْ السَّاجِدِينَ ۝

«And truly, this Qur'aan is a revelation from the Lord of the Worlds, which the Trustworthy Spirit (Angel Jibreel) brought down, Upon your heart (O Muḥammad) so that you may be among the warners» [26:192-4]

The next part of the definition states: '*...in wording and meaning...*'. This part of the definition affirms that the words of the Qur'aan are from Allaah, and not from Jibreel or even Muḥammad (ﷺ), as some of the unwashed sects of Islam, such as the *Ash'arites*, allege. According to some scholars, this part of the definition also excludes *ḥadith Qudsi*,³⁸ since, according to these scholars, *ḥadith Qudsi* is only inspired in meaning, while its wording is from the Prophet (ﷺ).

The next part of the definition states: '*...which has been preserved in the muṣ-ḥaf...*'. A *muṣ-ḥaf* is a written copy of the Qur'aan. When used in this definition, it refers specifically to the copies that the Caliph Uthmaan ordered to be written.³⁹ Therefore, it includes one hundred and fourteen *ṣoosah*, starting with *Soorah al-Faatiḥah* and ending with *Soorah an-Naas*. The Qur'aan must be written in any one of the *muṣ-ḥaf*

³⁸ *Aḥadith Qudsi* is defined to be a *ḥadith* in which the Prophet (ﷺ) says, "Allaah says...", attributing the speech to Allaah. This type of *ḥadith* is discussed in more detail in the next chapter, under the heading, 'The Difference between the Qur'aan and *Aḥadith Qudsi*'.

³⁹ See Ch. 8, 'The Collection of the Qur'aan,' for further details.

of 'Uthmaan.

This part of the definition excludes the verses that used to be a part of the Qur'aan, such as those whose recitation was abrogated (the *mansookh*), and those readings that were abrogated by the Prophet (ﷺ) before his death, when he recited the Qur'aan for the last time.⁴⁰ The reading must be in at least one *way-haf* of 'Uthmaan, and not necessarily in all of them.⁴¹

The next part of the definition states: '*...and has reached us by mutawaatir transmission...*'. A transmission is called *mutawaatir* when it is reported by a large number of people, such that they could not all be mistaken or intentionally forge a lie. The Qur'aan has reached us through *mutawaatir* chains of narration.⁴² In other words, in each generation so many people narrated it that there is no question of its authenticity. There are some readings, however, that have not reached us in *mutawaatir* form (in other words, they are *ahad*⁴³). Such readings are not considered part of the Qur'aan. This point will be further elaborated in a later chapter.

The last part of the definition states: '*...and is a challenge to mankind to produce something similar to it.*' This part of the definition is extraneous in that it does not remove anything that should not be a part of the Qur'aan (unless one believes that *hadeeth Qudsi* is inspired in meaning and wording, in which case this portion would remove *hadeeth Qudsi* as being part of the Qur'aan). This portion is essential, however, in that it mentions the miraculous nature (*ʿajaaʾ*) of the Qur'aan. Allaah has challenged mankind to produce even a chapter similar to it, and this challenge is reserved for the Qur'aan, and not for the *hadeeth*.⁴⁴

It should be mentioned that the word 'Qur'aan' can be used for the whole Qur'aan and for a part of the Qur'aan. Thus, if someone has recited a few verses from the Qur'aan, or has completed the recitation of the whole Qur'aan, it is possible to say in either case, "You have recited the Qur'aan."⁴⁵

III. The Qur'aan as the Speech of Allaah

The detailed discussions of the Qur'aan as the Speech (*qalaam*) of Allaah are typically not found in the books of *ʿilm al-Qur'aan*, but rather in the books of *ʿaqeedah* (faith). However, it was felt that this topic deserved greater attention in this work for a number of reasons: Firstly, due to the importance of this topic, since it deals with some of the Characteristics (*ghayāt*) of Allaah, and of the Qur'aan; secondly, this topic

40 See Ch. 10 and 11, 'The Aḥqāf of the Qur'aan,' and 'Abrogation in the Qur'aan' for an explanation of the *mansookh* and variant readings.

41 The *way-haf* that 'Uthmaan wrote were not exactly the same. See Ch. 8 for further details.

42 See 'The Conditions for an Authentic (*ḥadīth*)' in Ch. 11 for a more detailed discussion of this point.

43 Meaning the *ahad* readings, and not the 'ahad' definition of al-Shaykhaṣṣ, see Ch. 16 for further details.

44 See Ch. 15, which is mainly devoted to discussing the concept of *ʿajaaʾ* in the Qur'aan, for further details.

45 cf. al-Zarqaṇawī, v. 1, p. 22.

has been the subject of great controversy during the history of Islaam, and great scholars have been persecuted because of it, therefore it deserves some discussion and elaboration, thirdly, there still exist incorrect concepts and ideas concerning the meaning of the *ḥalaaq* of Allaah, primarily amongst innovated sects which claim to be in the fold of *Ahl al-Sunnah wa al-Jamaa'ah*⁴⁶, and, lastly, there does not exist any discussion of this topic in English.⁴⁷

Before discussing the Qur'aan in particular as the *ḥalaaq* of Allaah, it is necessary to understand the concept of the *ḥalaaq* of Allaah.

THE CONCEPT OF THE ḤALAAQ OF ALLAAH

The topic of the *ḥalaaq* of Allaah deals with one of the Attributes that Allaah has described Himself with, namely, that of Speech (*ḥalaaq*). When dealing with the topic of the Names and Attributes of Allaah, two basic principles must be understood.

The first principle is that Allaah has described Himself with the Best and Most Perfect Names and Attributes, Names and Attributes of Beauty, Majesty, Grandeur, Perfection and Excellence, in other words, all Names and Attributes that befit Him. Allaah says in the Qur'aan,

وَلِلَّهِ الْأَسْمَاءُ الْحُسْنَىٰ وَالَّذِينَ حَمَلُوا

«And to Allaah belong (all) the Most Beautiful Names, so call on Him with them» [2:180]

In addition to affirming these Names and Attributes, Allaah has also negated all attributes of imperfection from Himself, such as sleep and tiredness (2:255), forgetfulness and error (20:52) and other attributes that do not befit His Glory.⁴⁸

The second principle is that Allaah's Names and Attributes are Unique, and do not resemble the attributes of His creation. Allaah says,

لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ ۚ وَهُوَ السَّمِيعُ الْبَصِيرُ

«There is nothing that is similar to Him, and He is the All-Hearing, All-Seeing» [42:11]

⁴⁶ An expression that translates as 'The Followers of the *Sunnah* and the Right Group,' to differentiate those who do not follow the *Sunnah*, or the Companion of the Prophet (ﷺ). The Prophet (ﷺ) proclaimed, in a number of *ḥadeeth*, that he *sunnah* would divide into seventy-three sects, all of which would be in the fire of Hell except one. When asked what the characteristics of this saved group were, he (ﷺ) replied, "They are (that group) that follow what I am following today and my Companions" (Narrated by al-Tirmidhi), meaning the *Ahl al-Sunnah wa al-Jamaa'ah*.

⁴⁷ However, it should be kept in mind that this is a relatively brief discussion, and it is hoped that perhaps a more detailed explanation of this, and other, concepts of such be available soon. *Insha' Allaah*.

⁴⁸ The affirmation of Allaah's Names and Attributes, in general, occur specifically, each Name and Attribute is mentioned and affirmed individually. For example, 'The All-Knowing', 'The Ever-Living', 'The Bestower of Mercy', etc. As for negation, this occurs in general, unspecified terms from the text, for example, 'There is nothing that is similar to Him', 'There is none that is equal to Him', etc. Negation of specific attributes (such as forgetfulness and error) is rare, and only for a purpose.

Therefore, since Allaah's Attributes are unique, it is not possible for mankind to understand the exact nature of Allaah's Names and Attributes, even though it is possible to understand the concepts that any Name or Attribute refers to. For example, Allaah has described Himself in the Qur'aan as *al-Hayy*, which means, 'The Ever-Living.' Mankind understands that Allaah is Ever-Living, that He was always with Life, and will always be with Life. He also understands that, even though he himself is 'alive' (*hayy*), the life that he has is very different from the one that Allaah describes Himself as having, for man's life was given to him, and it shall be taken away from him, in contrast to the characteristic of life that Allaah describes Himself with. In addition, man does not have the power to create life, unlike Allaah. So man has the characteristic of life, and Allaah describes Himself as having the characteristic of Life, but the actuality of the two characteristics differ as much as man differs from the Creator. Therefore, mankind understands the concept of Allaah's name *al-Hayy*, but can never understand the actuality of it. The same analogy applies for the other Names and Attributes of Allaah.

It is essential, therefore, when dealing with the Names and Attributes of Allaah, not to deny or distort the meanings of these Names and Attributes, since Allaah has described Himself with these Names and Attributes. Likewise, it is not allowed to try to make these attributes similar to those of the Creation, nor try to delve into the 'how-ness' of His Attributes, since the attributes of the creation are imperfect, whereas the Attributes of Allaah are Perfect and Unique.

With these two basic principles in mind, we now proceed to the concept of the *qalaam* of Allaah.

Allaah, all Praise and Glory be to Him, has described Himself as having the Characteristic of *qalaam* in over two dozen verses in the Qur'aan. Amongst these verses are the following:

وَكَلَّمَ اللَّهُ مُوسَى تَتَحَفَّلُوا

«And Allaah spoke directly (*qalawaa*) to Moosa» [4:164]

وَقَعَتِ الْكُتُبُ وَأُتِيَ الْمُنَادِ

«And the Word (*qalaam*) of your Lord has been fulfilled in truth and justice [6:115]

فَلَوْ كَانَ الْبَحْرُ مِدَادًا لَكُنَّ سُبُوحًا رَبِّي

لَوْ أَنَّ الْبَحْرَ مِلْءٌ أَلْفٌ كُنْتُ رَبِّي وَلَوْ جِئْتُ بِمِثْلِهِ مَدَدًا ۝

«Say, 'If the oceans were ink wherewith to write the *qalaam* of my Lord, the oceans would be exhausted before the *qalaam* of my Lord would finish, even if We brought (another ocean) like it for an aid,» [18:109]

وَسُكِّنَ الْمُؤْمِنُ الْقُبَا

«And the Word of Allaah (ḥakam) is the uppermost» [9-40]

سَلَّمَ قَوْلًا مِنْ رَبِّ رُحِيمٍ ﴿٤٠﴾

«(It will be said to the people in the Heavens) 'Peace be on you,' a Word from a Lord who is Most Merciful» [36-38]

Therefore, we affirm what Allaah has affirmed for Himself, namely, that He Speaks when He wishes, and to whomever He wishes. As Allaah says,

بَلَدًا أَرْسَلْنَا مِنْهُمْ عَلَى نَعْنٍ يُرْمَى مِنْ ظِلِّهِ أَهْلُ

«These are the prophets, some of them We have honoured and blessed over others, (and) some of them Allaah spoke to» [2:253]

In addition, the ḥakam of Allaah is heard by His creation, and consists of words and letters. The fact that the ḥakam of Allaah can be heard is clearly proven in the Qur'aan and Sunnah. For example, in the story of Moosaa, the Qur'aan mentions that Allaah spoke to Moosaa and addressed him:

فَلَمَّا أَتَاهَا نُودِيَ بِشُرُوبٍ ﴿١١﴾
إِنْ أَنْتَ إِلَّا نَذِيرٌ ﴿١٢﴾ فَاسْتَجِبْ لَهُ إِذْ دَنَاوا إِلَيْهِ الْغُفْرَيْنِ ﴿١٣﴾
وَلَا تَتْلُكْ فَاسْتَجِبْ لَهُ يُوسَىٰ ﴿١٤﴾

«And when he (Moosaa) came (to the fire), he was called, 'O Moosaa, Verily, I am your Lord...and I have chosen you, therefore listen to that which is inspired to you'» [20:11-13]

In another verse, the Qur'aan says,

هَلْ أَتَاكَ حَدِيثُ مُوسَىٰ ﴿٢٠﴾ إِذْ دَنَا رَبُّهُ إِلَى الْغُفْرَيْنِ ﴿٢١﴾

«Have you heard the story of Moosaa? When his Lord called him in the sacred valley of 'Joosaa» [79:15-16]

These verses are clear that Allaah spoke to Moosaa and Moosaa heard this speech. The Prophet (ﷺ) also described a meeting between Aadam and Moosaa, in which Aadam asked Moosaa, "Are you the one whom Allaah spoke to, from behind a well, and there was no interpreter between you, nor was there any messenger?" Moosaa answered, "Yes."⁴⁹ The ḥadeeth is explicit in that Allaah's ḥakam to Moosaa was without any intermediary. In another authentic ḥadeeth, the Prophet (ﷺ) clearly stated that Allaah's ḥakam is with sound, for he said, "When Allaah decrees a matter in the skies, the angels move their wings in humility for His speech, which sounds like a

⁴⁹ Reported by 'Abu Dawood, and others.

chain over a rock..."⁵⁰ In this *ḥadeeth*, the Prophet (ﷺ) gave a description of the sound of the *ḥalām* of Allaah, which clearly proves that Allaah's *ḥalām* is with sound.

This was also the belief of the *saaf*.⁵¹ Imaam Ahmad ibn Hambal (d. 241 A.H.) was asked by his son 'Abdullaah (d. 250 A.H.), "When Allaah spoke to Moosaa, did He speak with a sound (that was heard by Moosaa)?" Imaam Ahmad answered, "Yes, indeed! Your Lord speaks with sound, and all of these *ḥadeeth* (of the *ḥalām* of Allaah), we narrate them as we heard them."⁵² Imaam al-Bukhaaree (d. 256 A.H.) narrated in his book *al-Adab al-Mufrad* the *ḥadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ) referring to the Day of Judgement, and the reckoning that will occur, and in it is: "...and their Lord will call them with a voice, the one who is close can hear it just as the one who is far can, and He will say, 'I am the King...'"⁵³ After narrating the entire *ḥadeeth*, which is also explicit in the fact that Allaah speaks in a *ḥalām* that can be heard, Imaam al-Bukhaaree said, "Allaah, all Praise and Glory be to Him, speaks with sound. Those who are close can hear it just as those who are far can, and this is only so for Allaah. And in this is proof that the sound of Allaah does not resemble the sound of mankind."⁵⁴

It is, of course, essential to keep in mind that the Speech of Allaah does not resemble that of His creation, and therefore it is impermissible to ask *how* Allaah speaks, for Allaah says,

لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ ۚ وَهُوَ السَّمِيعُ الْبَصِيرُ

«There is nothing similar to Him, and He is the All-Hearer, All-Seeing» [42:11]

The fact that the *ḥalām* of Allaah consists of words and letters is something that does not require proof, and can be seen even by the most ignorant person. The Qur'aan (and it is part of the *ḥalām* of Allaah, as shall be proven in the next section) consists of words and letters. For example, every Muslim knows that the verse,

قُلْ هُوَ اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ ۝

«Qul huwa Allahu ahad» [112:1]

consists of four words, each word of which consists of a number of letters. It therefore follows that the *ḥalām* of Allaah consists of words and letters. The Prophet (ﷺ) himself mentioned that the Qur'aan is composed of words and letters, for he (ﷺ) stated, "Whoever recites one word from the Book of Allaah will have ten rewards. And I do not say the *Alif Laam Meem* is (counted as) a word, but rather *Alif* is a word, and *Laam* is a word, and *Meem* is a word."⁵⁵ Therefore, the Prophet (ﷺ) divided the

⁵⁰ Reported by al-Bukhaaree. Some groups allege that the sound described in the *ḥadeeth* refers to the movement of the angel's wings. This can be refuted by a number of ways: firstly, other narrations of this *ḥadeeth* are explicit that the sound refers to Allaah's *ḥalām*, and not the angel's wings (cf. al-Jaalee', p. 167), secondly, the term that is used for the sound is *ḥalām*, whereas the wings are *ḥanṭar*, so if the wings of the angels were the object of the sound, the term would have been *ḥanṭar* also.

⁵¹ Reported by 'Abdullaah ibn Ahmad ibn Hambal in *Kutub al-Sanaah*, # 375.

⁵² Reported by Ahmad, and al-Bukhaaree in *al-Adab al-Mufrad*.

⁵³ Reported in al-Bukhaaree's *Khreeq* *Y'neel al-'Umd* of al-Jaalee', p. 165.

⁵⁴ Reported by al-Bukhaaree.

Qur'aan into words and letters.

The *ḥikmah* of Allaah is not limited to the Arabic language. Allaah revealed the Torah and the Injeel, in Hebrew, and this was also a part of His *ḥikmah*. As Imam ad-Daqaamee (d. 288 A.H.) wrote, concerning those who deny this concept, "Woe to you! Verily... Allaah is knowledgeable of all languages, and He speaks in whichever language He wishes. If He wishes, He speaks in Arabic, and if He wishes, in Hebrew, and if He wishes, in Syriac, so He has made the Qur'aan His *ḥikmah* in Arabic, and the Torah and Injeel His *ḥikmah* in Hebrew, since He has sent the prophets with the language of their peoples."⁵⁵ In other words, just as Allaah has sent every prophet to preach in the language of his nation, the *ḥikmah* of Allaah to any nation (when Allaah revealed a Book to that nation) was also in its language.

Another characteristic of the *ḥikmah* of Allaah is that it is uncreated. There are clear proofs from the Qur'aan, the *Sawab*, the statements of the *salaf*, and clear logic for this belief.

The Qur'aan says,

أَلَا لِلَّهِ الْخَلْقُ وَالْأَمْرُ

«Verily to Him (Allaah) belongs the Creation and the Command» [7:54]

In this verse, Allaah differentiates between the creation, which includes the world and all that is in it, and between the Command, which is His Speech. The Speech is in fact the cause of the creation, as Allaah says,

إِنَّمَا أَمْرُهُ إِذَا أَرَادَ شَيْئًا أَنْ يَقُولَ لَهُ كُنْ فَيَكُونُ

«Verily, Our Word unto a thing when We intend it, is only that We say unto it: 'Be!'— and it is» [16:40]

Therefore the Speech of Allaah, by the Will of Allaah, is the cause of the creation, so it cannot be created, for if it were created, it would mean that a created characteristic has itself created another object, and that is not possible! In other words, a created object does not have the ability to create another object; only the Creator has this ability. Sufyaan ibn 'Uyaynah (d. 198 A.H.) said, "He has lied (who says that the Qur'aan is created)! Allaah has stated, "To Him belongs the Creation and the Command," so the creation is the creation of Allaah, and His Command is the Qur'aan."⁵⁶ Imam Ahmad ibn Hambal (d. 241 A.H.) also used this verse to prove that the *ḥikmah* of Allaah is not created.⁵⁷

The Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Whoever dismounts at any place, and says, 'I seek refuge in the *ḥikmah* of Allaah from the evil that is created,' nothing will harm him until he moves from his stop."⁵⁸ This *ḥadeeth* also proves that the *ḥikmah* of Allaah is not cre-

⁵⁵ ad-Daqaamee, *ar-Radd*, p. 123

⁵⁶ Reported by al-'Asqarree in *al-Shawaahid*, cf. *al-Jadid*, p. 123.

⁵⁷ *Ibid*

⁵⁸ Reported by Muslim and others

word, since the Prophet (ﷺ) commanded the believers to seek refuge in the *ḥalām* of Allaah from all types of evil. Refuge can only be sought from the Creator (and His Attributes), and not from the creation. Imaam al-Bukhaaree (d. 256 A.H.) stated, "In this *ḥadeeth* is proof that the *ḥalām* of Allaah is not created," and his teacher, Nu'aym ibn Hamaad (d. 228 A.H.), stated, "It is not permissible to seek refuge in the created, nor in the speech of men, jinn or angels."⁵⁹ In other words, the very fact that a person seeks refuge in the *ḥalām* of Allaah proves that it is an uncreated Attribute of Allaah, for it is not allowed to seek refuge in a created object.

A simple logical proof that the *ḥalām* of Allaah is not created is as follows: If the *ḥalām* of Allaah were created, it would mean that one of Allaah's attributes (that of speech) had a beginning, yet Allaah's attributes do not change with time, for the Qur'aan says,

هُوَ الْأَوَّلُ وَالْآخِرُ

-He is the First (i.e., there is nothing before Him), and He is the Last (i.e., there is nothing after Him). - [57: 3]

and His attributes are a part of Him. The *ḥalām* of Allaah is an Attribute of Allaah, and all of Allaah's attributes are eternal and uncreated.

THE QUR'AAN AS THE ḤALĀM OF ALLĀAH

In the last section, certain characteristics of the *ḥalām* of Allaah were discussed. In this section, it shall be proven that the Qur'aan is a part of the *ḥalām* of Allaah. It therefore has the same characteristics that the *ḥalām* of Allaah has. Some narrations of the earlier scholars have already been mentioned concerning the fact that the Qur'aan is the *ḥalām* of Allaah. However, in this section, this topic will be discussed in greater detail, along with a brief history of the deviations that have occurred with regards to this belief.

The proof that the Qur'aan in particular is the *ḥalām* of Allaah is that Allaah Himself has referred to it as His *ḥalām*. For example, Allaah says,

وَأَنذَرْتُ الْمُشْرِكِينَ أَنَسْأَلُكَ الْغِيَاةَ فَهُمْ يَسْمَعُونَ قَوْلَهُ

-And if any of the idolaters seeks your protection, then grant him protection, so that he may hear the Word (*ḥalām*) of Allaah... - [9: 6]

meaning until they hear the Qur'aan. The Prophet (ﷺ) also said, "Verily, the Quraysh have prevented me from spreading the Word (*ḥalām*) of my Lord,"⁶⁰ meaning that they prevented him from spreading the Qur'aan. The Prophet (ﷺ) also said in refer-

⁵⁹ al-Jaḥaz', p. 131, from al-Bukhaaree's *Khoṣṣ al-Aḥwal al-Husnā*.

⁶⁰ Reported by al-Daaraqutni, al-Tirmidhee and others. See Ibn Qudama, *Makallaah ibn al-Aḥmad al-Baḥḥā fī Bayan al-Qur'aan*, Maktabah al-Hadeed, Ft. Sned, 1988, p. 79.

ence to the Qur'aan, "The superiority of the *ḥaṣan* of Allaah over all other *ḥaṣan* is (like) the superiority of Allaah over His Creation."⁶¹

The belief that the Qur'aan is the *ḥaṣan* of Allaah was the belief of all of the Companions, and the belief of the scholars of *Ahl al-Sunnah wa al-Jamā'ah* after them. Hundreds of statements from the scholars of the first three generations exist concerning the fact that the Qur'aan is the *ḥaṣan* of Allaah, and is characterised by the same characteristics as the *ḥaṣan* of Allaah. In fact, no group amongst Muslims actually denied that the Qur'aan was the *ḥaṣan* of Allaah; they only differed concerning the characteristics of this *ḥaṣan*.

As was proven in the last section, the *ḥaṣan* of Allaah is not created. This, of course, implies that the Qur'aan is not created either. Ibn 'Abbās, in explaining the verse,

قُرْآنًا عَرَبِيًّا مُرْسَلًا

«A Qur'aan without any crookedness» [39:28]

said, "This means that the Qur'aan is not created."⁶² 'Amr ibn Deenaar (d. 126 A.H.) stated, "I have met the Companions of the Prophet (ﷺ), and those that came after them for seventy years, all of them said, Allaah is the Creator, and everything besides Him is created, and the Qur'aan is the *ḥaṣan* of Allaah, from Him it came, and to Him it will return."⁶³ Imām Aboo Ḥanefah (d. 150 A.H.) wrote in his *Figh al-Aḥbar*, "The Qur'aan is the speech (*ḥaṣan*) of Allaah, written in the *maṣ-ḥaf*, preserved in the hearts, recited by the tongues, and revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ)," and in another place he mentions that, "...the Qur'aan is not created."⁶⁴ Imām Maalik (d. 179 A.H.) was asked concerning one who says that the Qur'aan is created, what should be done to him? He replied, "He should be forced to repent, and if he refuses, then his head should be cut off!"⁶⁵ Imām ash-Shāfi'ee (d. 204 A.H.) stated, "Whoever states that the Qur'aan is created is a disbeliever."⁶⁶ Imām Ahmad ibn Ḥambal (d. 241 A.H.) stated, "It has been narrated from many of our *ṣaḥāb* that they used to say, 'The Qur'aan is the *ḥaṣan* of Allaah, and it is not created.' This is also what I believe, and I am not a person of philosophy, nor do I think that philosophy plays a part in any (of our beliefs). The only (source) is the Qur'aan, or the *ḥikmah* of the Prophet (ﷺ), or a statement of the Companions or Successors. As for anything besides these (sources), then none of it is praiseworthy."⁶⁷

⁶¹ Reported by Aḥmad and others. For a detailed discussion of the authoritativeness of the *ḥikmah*, see al-Albānī's *Laḥ-Ḍ-ʿaysh*, #1113, and for the other side, *al-Jalāʿ*, p. 87.

⁶² Reported by al-Lālikaʿīn, # 175.

⁶³ Reported by al-Bayhaqī in his *Sunan*.

⁶⁴ *Figh al-Aḥbar*, p. 381, quoted from al-Riḥānī, p. 14.

⁶⁵ Reported by al-Lālikaʿīn, # 464.

⁶⁶ al-Riḥānī, p. 44.

⁶⁷ Reported by 'Abdullāh ibn Aḥmad in his *al-Sunnah*, #108.

Imaam at-Tabqaawee,⁶⁸ in his famous *Ajoodah at-Tabqaawiyah*, wrote:

The Qur'aan is the Speech (*kalām*) of Allaah. It originated from Him as an articulated speech in a manner that is not questioned and was revealed to His Prophet (ﷺ) by inspiration. The Believers testify to its revelation. They are certain that it is the actual *kalām* of Allaah, not created, unlike the speech of humans. Whoever hears it and thinks it is the speech of a man is a disbeliever whom Allaah has condemned and threatened with the Fire of Hell, for Allaah says,

لَا يَخْلُقُ مَا يَشَاءُ
وَيُخَوِّفُ بِهِ

«I will bore him in the Hell-Fire» [74:26]

to him who said,

قُلْ أَتَعْلَمُونَ
مَاذَا تَقُولُونَ

«This [the Qur'aan] is nothing but the words of a mortal» [74:25]

(By these verses) we know and are certain that this [the Qur'aan] is the *kalām* of the Creator of humans, and it does not resemble the speech of mankind.⁶⁹

The narrations from the *salaf* concerning the fact that the Qur'aan is not created has reached and far exceeded the level of *mutawatir*, and this is a fact that no one can deny. To give one example alone, the great scholar of the *Sunnah*, Abuu al-Qaasim Hibatullaah ibn Hasan al-Ladhika'ee (d. 418 A.H.) transmitted reports from over five-hundred and fifty scholars of the *salaf*, all of whom stated the same fact: "The Qur'aan is the *kalām* of Allaah, not created, and whoever states that it is created is a disbeliever." After naming all of these scholars, Imaam al-Ladhika'ee wrote,⁷⁰

So these are five-hundred and fifty scholars or more, from the Successors, and the generation after them, and the scholars whom the *amamah* has accepted and are well-pleased with, not including the Companions, from all different places and generations. And of these over a hundred were Imaams, whose opinions and *muash-hah* the people used to follow. And were I to busy myself in compiling the quotes from modern scholars [meaning those after the last three generations](on top of these names), then the

68. He is Abu Ja'far Ahmed ibn Mujaahid ibn Salama al-Azadi al-Tahawee, d. 321 A.H. In the introduction to his work, he said, "This is the fundamentals of the beliefs of the *Ahl al-Sunnah wa al-Jama'ah*, upon the methodology of the parents of this *ummah*, Abuu Haneebah Nu'man ibn Thabit, and Abuu Yusuf' and as-Shaybaniyyah—(the two primary students of Abuu Hanifah), and their beliefs concerning the fundamentals of the religion." The work of his is an extremely important one in that it gives a clear and level explanation of the beliefs of the *Ahl al-Sunnah wa al-Jama'ah*. In addition, it clearly shows that the beliefs of Abuu Haneebah were the same as the beliefs of the *Ahl al-Sunnah*; yet, the irony is that many of those who claim to follow this great Imaam in fact absolutely ignore Abuu Haneebah's beliefs, and instead follow the *Ash'ari* or *Maturidi* faith! The book has a valuable commentary by Ibn Abd al-Lah al-Hamfi (d. 792 A.H.).

69. *Maat al-Ajoodah at-Tabqaawiyah* part # 33, *Sharh Ajoodah at-Tabqaawiyah*, p. 163.

70. al-Ladhika'ee, v. 1, p. 344. For these numerous quotes, see the previous hundred pages (270-343).

number of names would have reached the thousands... instead, I restricted myself to transmissions from those (named scholars), from generation to generation, no one related or contradicted them, and whoever did so, they were forced to repent, or they were commanded to be killed or banished.

The first person to claim that the Qur'ān was created was a person by the name of Ja'ad ibn Dirham (d. 124 A.H.). Ja'ad was one of the leaders of innovation of his time, denying most of the attributes of Allah, including that of *ḥalīm*. He was executed by the governor of his time for holding this and other heretical beliefs. However, his student, Jahm ibn Sa'fwan (d. 128 A.H.), was able to spread his ideas to a much greater extent, and it is after him the group known as the *Jahmiyyah* emerged. This group was considered by the scholars of Islam to be outside the fold of Islam for their heretical beliefs. The *Jahmiyyah* claimed, amongst other things, that the *ḥalīm* of Allah (and thus the Qur'ān) was created.⁷¹

Less than a century later, Ahmad ibn Abi Du'ad (d. 240), one of the callers to this belief of the *Jahmiyyah*, even though he himself was of the *Ma'nawilah*, succeeded in converting the 'Abbasid Caliph Ma'moon (during the year 218 A.H.) to this ideology. Ma'moon then used his power as the *Khalīfah* to begin a relentless persecution of the scholars of his time, forcing many of them to renounce the belief of the *asaf*, and claim that the Qur'ān was created. The most prominent scholars from all over the Muslim lands were ordered to publicly proclaim this ideology. Those that refused were brutally tortured. Only a few brave scholars, led by Imam Ahmad ibn Hambal (d. 241 A.H.), managed to last through this torture without relenting. Imam Ahmad was jailed for a number of years, and beaten and whipped so severely that doctors pronounced him on the verge of death.⁷² This was one of the greatest trials to ever inflict the Muslim *ummah*, and it was only during the Caliphate of Muttawakil (during the year 237 A.H.) when orthodoxy was finally redeemed.

During this period, due to the great controversy that was generated over this issue, three different groups – besides the *Abī al-Suwah* – evolved with regards to the belief of the eternal nature of the Qur'ān.

The first group, comprised of the *Jahmiyyah* and the *Ma'nawilah*⁷³ claimed that the Qur'ān was created. It was this group that temporarily gained popularity among the people, and due to the power of the Caliph Ma'moon, many scholars were forced to verbally agree with them.

71 The *Jahmiyyah* denied all of the names and attributes of Allah. This led them to believe that Allah would not be seen in the Hereafter, that Allah is not above (knowing) His Throne, that He does not have the attributes of *ḥalīm*, that He does not have the attributes of *ḥafīd* and *ʿaẓīm* (Hafid' and 'Azim), and so forth. If one examines the belief of the *dhāfirah*, it is clear that, despite their verbal dissimulation from the *Jahmiyyah*, in reality many of their beliefs are almost the same as those of the *Jahmiyyah* – as shall be elaborated in the next section.

72 For an interesting account of this persecution from an orientalist's perspective, see Wilfer M. Patton's *Ahmad ibn Hambal and the Mihnah*, London, 1887.

73 The *Ma'nawilah* were a group that tried to harmonize Greek philosophy with Islam.

The second group were known as the *Waaqifiyyah*. This group did not give an explicit opinion on this issue, and said, "We do not say it is created, nor do we say that it is not created." It should be pointed out that the *Waaqifiyyah* were not ignorant of the status of the Qur'aan, but rather had studied the evidences, and had come to the conclusion that it was unclear whether the Qur'aan was created or not. Since the proofs of the eternal nature of the *ḥaṣaw* of Allaah were so clear, and the scholars of *Aḥ'ar Saawah* united on this issue, the innovation of the *Waaqifiyyah* was a *qaw* innovation, and thus the scholars of their time were very severe in the refutation of this group. One of the *saḥf* was asked concerning this group, and he replied, "The Qur'aan is the *ḥaṣaw* of Allaah, and it is not created. And can it be other than this? Or can anyone say other than this? We can never have any doubts about it, ever!"⁷⁴ And Imaam Ahmad (d. 241 A.H.) said, "As for the *Waaqifiyyah*, then be in no doubt of their disbelief!"⁷⁵

The last group that formed during this time were the *Lafḍiyyah*. They claimed that the Qur'aan was the *ḥaṣaw* of Allaah, and that it was not created, but the recitation of the reciter of the Qur'aan was created. The scholars of Islaam declared that the investigation into this matter was not praiseworthy, since the statement, "My recitation of the Qur'aan is created," can have two meanings, one of which is correct, and the other incorrect. The incorrect meaning, which is what most of the *Lafḍiyyah* intended, is that the actual recitation, meaning the Qur'aan, is created, and thus the *Lafḍiyyah* agreed with the *Jaḥmiyyah*. However, if the person intended that the sound expelled by the reciter of the Qur'aan was created, then this is a correct meaning, since the voice is created, but the actual recitation (i.e., what is recited) is not.⁷⁶

Imaam Ahmad bin Hambal (d. 241 A.H.) said, concerning the above three groups, "The *Jaḥmiyyah* are of three types: One group of them says that the Qur'aan is created; another says that it is the *ḥaṣaw* of Allaah, and stop at that, and the third say, 'Our recitation of the Qur'aan is created.' For me, these three groups have the same status (in another narration, he added:) and all of them are of the *Jaḥmiyyah*, disbelievers. They should be forced to repent, and if they do not do so, then they should be killed!"⁷⁷

After this period, different groups evolved, the most prominent amongst them that of the *Ash'arites*. Since this group is still present to this day,⁷⁸ it will be discussed in greater detail than the other groups.

74 *al-Ladda'ee*, #331

75 *ibid.*, #344

76 For further details, see *al-Ladda'ee*, pp. 385-389

77 *al-Khaṭīb*, v. 5, p. 125

78 This group, during the fifth and sixth century of the *hijrah*, became extremely popular due to historical reasons, and the effect that this had are still present to this day. Many of the famous scholars of the past were influenced by the *Ash'arites*, including most of the authors of the classical works on *ḥaṣaw al-Qur'aan*. The scholars that follow the *Ash'arite* faith today are many and wide-spread, even such famous institutions such as al-Azhar University, Dar al-Uloom and Deoband are primarily *Ash'arite*.

A REPUTATION OF THE AŞH'AREES

The Aşh'arees are a group that take their *agendas*, and their name, from the teachings of Abū al-Ḥasan 'Alī ibn Isma'īl al-Ash'arī (d. 324 A.H.)⁷⁹ 80.

With regards to the *ḥalaw* of Allaah, the Aşh'arees brought forth an *agenda* that was unknown to the *salaf*. They claimed that Allaah does possess the Attribute of Speech, and that the Qur'aan was the *ḥalaw* of Allaah, and in this they agreed with the *Ahl al-Sunnah*. However, they explained this attribute in a unique way, for they claimed that Allaah's *ḥalaw* was an 'internal' *ḥalaw* – a *ḥalaw* that could not be heard by anyone. They equated it with the concept of thinking, and stated that, just as the thoughts of men are a type of speech that cannot be heard, likewise the *ḥalaw* of Allaah is an internal speech that cannot be heard. Therefore, they claimed that Allaah does not speak with sound, and that his *ḥalaw* does not consist of words or letters. They further stated that Allaah's *ḥalaw* is not related to His Will, in other words, according to the Aşh'arees, Allaah is continually speaking, and will always be speaking – He does not speak when He wishes. They further claimed that the *ḥalaw* of Allaah is in fact one meaning, and cannot be divided into parts. This led them to claim that the Torah, Injeel and Qur'aan are all in fact "expressions" of the same *ḥalaw*, but the actual *ḥalaw* of Allaah is without any language, and is of the same meaning. Therefore, according to them, the essence of the Torah, the Injeel and the Qur'aan is the same. Since they claimed that Allaah's *ḥalaw* is an internal *ḥalaw*, they then followed up this principle by stating that the actual text of the Qur'aan is created, but the *ḥalaw* of Allaah is not. The Arabic Qur'aan, according to the Aşh'arees, is not the actual *ḥalaw* of Allaah, but rather an "expression" of the *ḥalaw* of Allaah.⁸¹

79. It should be pointed out that Abū al-Ḥasan al-Ash'arī himself was on through three phases during his lifetime. During the first phase, he was a Mu'tazilite. However, after the scholars of the Mu'tazilite could not satisfy his questions on particular issues of faith, he left them and started teaching the *agenda* of Abū Muhammad 'Abdullāh ibn Sa'ād ibn Kullāb (d. 240 A.H.) Ibn Kullāb, and al-Ash'arī, during this stage, tried to relate the beliefs of the Mu'tazilite and defend the teachings of *Ahl al-Sunnah*, but unfortunately, the methodology that they used to relate the Mu'tazilite was itself greatly influenced by Greek philosophy. Thus, they themselves fell into many errors, especially in the area of the Names and Attributes of Allaah. (Only one of their errors will be elaborated in this section, but it should be kept in mind that a refutation of one point of belief of any group is *an ipso facto* refutation of that group's claim to be *Ahl al-Sunnah*, since the beliefs of *Ahl al-Sunnah* must be perfect.) During the last stage of his life, al-Ash'arī accepted the teachings of Ibn Kullāb, and accepted the *agenda* of *Ahl al-Sunnah*. It was also during this stage that he wrote his book of *Ma'ānī*, in which he defended the *agenda* of the *salaf*, and believed in the Attributes of Allaah, such as *amr* (being over the throne), *ayyū*, *yaf* and other attributes. Therefore, to accuse those who claim to be Aşh'arees are not truly following Abū al-Ḥasan al-Ash'arī, for if they were, they would follow the *agenda* that he had at his death, and not the *agenda* of Ibn Kullāb, which he abandoned before his death.

80. It should be mentioned that this section is also a refutation of the other group of the Aşh'arees, the *Ash'arites*. The beliefs of these two groups with regards to the *ḥalaw* of Allaah are practically the same for our purposes.

81. These are the primary points of conflict between the *Ahl al-Sunnah* and the Aşh'arees with regards to the *ḥalaw* of Allaah. It must be mentioned that some of these points are based upon certain principles that the Aşh'arees use to distort many of the Attributes of Allaah. However, due to the brevity of this discussion, these will not be mentioned or refuted. For a full refutation, see Nasir's doctoral dissertation on the subject, quoted in the Bibliography.

Abu Hammad al-Ghazalee (d. 505 A.H.), one of the leaders and expounders of this *aqedah*, wrote, "Allah speaks without words, sounds and letters... and His Speech is the Speech of the mind (i.e., internal speech). Just as the speech of the mind has no sound or words, so His Speech has no sound or words."⁸²

The primary principle that led the Ash'arites to distort many of Allah's Names and Attributes is that they wished to remove all resemblance between Allah's Names and Attributes, and between those of the creation. This principle, which in essence is correct, was taken by the Ash'arites to an extreme. They used their intellect and logic to decide which of Allah's Names and Attributes gave some type of resemblance, or anthropomorphic⁸³ qualities, and those Names and Attributes which did not. Based on this classification, they then interpreted those Names and Attributes which they felt gave anthropomorphic qualities contrary to their literal, understood meanings, thinking that by doing this they were removing any fear of resemblance between Allah and His creation. In reality, their over-zealousness to free the Names and Attributes of Allah from resembling those of His creation led them to deny and distort many of His Names and Attributes. They used their intellect as the criterion to understand Allah's Names and Attributes. Whatever they felt was not befitting to Allah, even if Allah Himself had affirmed it, they interpreted until it satisfied their intellect.

As Abu Hammad al-Ghazalee, wrote, "All that is found in the traditions (the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*) (concerning the attributes of Allah) is examined. Then, if the intellect can agree with it, it becomes obligatory to believe in it... But as for those (attributes) which are deemed by the intellect to be impossible, then it becomes obligatory to interpret what has been found in the traditions (the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*), for it is not imaginable that the traditions will contain something that contradicts the intellect. As for the *hadeeth* which contain characteristics of resemblance (of Allah between His creation), then most of them are not authentic, and those that are authentic are not explicit, but rather can be interpreted."⁸⁴

Therefore, they took their intellect to be their criterion to accept and understand the Attributes of Allah, so whatever their intellect agreed with, they accepted, and whatever their intellect could not understand, they rejected or re-interpreted. And had they believed in them, without asking, "How?" or "Why?" it would have been better for them. However, they neglected a very crucial point, and that is that Allah, all Glory be to Him, is more aware of His Names and Attributes than His creation is, and Allah is more eloquent than any of His creation is. Therefore, it is not appropriate to re-interpret any Name or Attribute that Allah (or the Prophet ﷺ) has described Himself with, merely because our minds cannot comprehend the actuality of an Attribute. They also neglected the fact that it is not possible to compare Allah's

⁸² cf. al-Ghazalee, Abu Hammad *Aqa'id Uloom al-Din*, Ashraf Publishers, Lahore, a.d., v.1, p.153. It is claimed that Imamu al-Ghazali, at the end of his life, renounced from the *aqedah* of the Ash'arites and accepted the *aqedah* of the *ahle sunnat*.

⁸³ Anthropomorphic: To give an object human like characteristics.

⁸⁴ From his *Aqa'id for al-Aqa'id*, p. 152. Taken from Nisar, v.1, p. 99.

Attributes and to try to understand them by making analogies with the attributes of the creation.

Ismā'īl al-Barbahaaree (d. 329), one of the scholars of the *salaf*, said:

May Allaah have mercy upon you! Know that speculative speech about the Lord, the Most High, is a newly invented matter, and is an innovation and misguidance. Nothing is to be said about the Lord except what He has described Himself with in the Qur'aan, and what the Messenger of Allaah (ﷺ) explained to the Companions... No one says about the attributes of Allaah, "How?" or "Why?" except one who has doubts about Allaah. The Qur'aan is the *ḥikmah* of Allaah, His Revelation and Light...⁸⁵

Yet, the *Ash'arites* delved into concepts that could not be understood by men, and tried to reason the actuality of the Attributes of Allaah.

To illustrate this example, with regards to the attribute of *ḥikmah*, the *Ash'arites* reasoned that the one who speaks must speak with sound and breath, and these are created. In addition, they argued that speech must come from a combination of organs, such as the tongue, throat and mouth, but Allaah is free of these. They also reasoned that words, composed of letters, can never be eternal, since one letter follows another, and has a specific place in each word. Therefore, since each letter is sequential, following the one before it, it cannot have existed from eternity.⁸⁶ Therefore, according to them, it was not possible for Allaah's *ḥikmah* to be with sound, or for Allaah's *ḥikmah* to be composed of words and letters, for if it were, it would be created.

It can be seen, then, that the *Ash'arites* used their logic to distort clear, explicit concepts in the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*, by first comparing the Attributes of Allaah to those of the creation, and then reasoning that, since Allaah is not like His creation, these Attributes must have a different meaning. Had they only understood that Allaah is Unique, and there is nothing similar to Him, and that it is not possible to understand Allaah's Attributes by comparing them to those of the creation, it would have saved them from falling into the error of denying these Attributes.

As for their belief that the *ḥikmah* of Allaah is without sound, this contradicts the proofs that were given in the previous section from the Qur'aan, *Sunnah* and statements of the *salaf*. The presumption that sound must come from organs is a presumption based upon the characteristics of humans. Therefore, it is not necessarily true for all objects. Allaah, all Glory and Praise be to Him, has made the Heavens and the Earth speak, for they responded to His Command and said,

⁸⁵ al-Barbahaaree, *al-Hisab Sharḥ al-Sunnah* (*al-Aḥkām al-Sunnah*, Cairo, 1986), p. 28.

⁸⁶ cf. al-Jalāyī, pps. 375-379, and Noor, pps. 517-562, for these and other logical proofs that the *Ash'arites* bring, along with their refutation. The *Ash'arites* also try to prove the fact that the word *ḥikmah* signifies an eternal thought, and not necessarily a spoken word. Their primary proof is a line of poetry attributed to a pre-Islamic Christian. However, this reasoning that they seek to prove contradicts the understood meaning of the word *ḥikmah* in the Arabic language. In addition, Allaah uses other words (besides *ḥikmah*) (such as *kalām*) to denote His Speech, and these words all denote speech with sound. See the above references for a more detailed discussion.

الْيَٰسِرِينَ

«We come, willingly!» - [41:11]

and Allaah, all Glory and Praise be to Him, will make the skins of the disbelievers speak on the Day of Judgement,

وَقَالُوا لِجُلُودِهِمْ لِمَ شَهِدْتُمْ عَلَيْنَا لَوْلَا صُلْبُ اللَّهِ كَذِبٌ
الطَّيْلِ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ

«And they (the disbelievers) will say, "Why did you (our skins) testify against us?" They will say, "Allaah has caused us to speak, as He causes all things to speak..."» - [41: 21]

Allaah caused these objects to speak, yet these objects do not have the organs that humans need to speak. Is not Allaah, the one who created all things, capable of speaking as He wishes?

Imaam Ahmad (d. 241 A.H.) stated,

"As for their claim (meaning the claim of the *Jahannayyah*, which was later taken by the disbeliever) that sound can only occur from a combination of the throat, and lips, and tongue, then did not Allaah say to the Heavens and Earth

اتَّبِعُوا مَلَأْتُهَا ذِكْرًا مَّا لَهَا لُحُوبٌ

«Come willingly or unwillingly?" They both said, "We come, willingly!"» - [41:12]

And did not Allaah say,

وَسَخَّرْنَا مَعَ دَاوُدَ الْجِبَالِ أَنْ يَسُبِّحَ وَالطُّورَ وَكُنَّا مُبْسِطِينَ

«And We subjected the mountains and the birds to glorify Our praises, along with (Prophet) Dawood» [21: 79]

Do these people presume that they (i.e., the mountains, the Heavens and the Earth) glorified with a throat, and lips, and tongues?⁶⁷ And how about when a disbeliever's limbs will testify against him... Do you think that they will testify with throats, lips and tongues?⁶⁸ No, rather Allaah will make them to speak, as He wishes, without any throat or lips or tongues!⁶⁹

Therefore, to claim that if the *haleeqah* of Allaah were with sound, it would entail giving these characteristics to the Creator, cannot be accepted, for it is an analogy of Allaah with man, and this is improper. 'Abdullaah ibn Ahmad ibn Hambal (d. 290 A.H.) said, "My father (Imaam Ahmad) said, 'The *hadeeth* of Ibn Mas'ood states that when Allaah Speaks, a sound is heard which sounds like (the moving of) a chain over

a rock. And this (*ḥadeth*) is denied by the *Jahmiyyah*.⁸⁸ These people are disbelievers, they wish to cause confusion and deceive the people. Whoever presumes that Allaah does not Speak is a disbeliever! Verily, we will continue to narrate these *ḥadeth* as they came to us!⁸⁹ In this narration, Imaam Ahmad is stating that any person who denies the fact that Allaah speaks with a sound is of the *Jahmiyyah*. In another narration, 'Abdullaah said, "I asked my father: Some people are claiming that Allaah does not speak with a sound." Imaam Ahmad replied, "Nay! Allaah speaks with a sound, and the only people who deny this are the *Jahmiyyah*. They wish to confuse the people and deny (the Attributes of Allaah)."⁹⁰

Imaam ash-Shahrastaanee (d. 548 A.H.), while discussing the historical development of the various sects related to the *ḥalaw* of Allaah, wrote, "Then (Abu al-Ḥasan) al-Ash'aree came, and invented a third opinion, and claimed that all sound must be created. And with this (opinion), he contradicted the consensus (*ijmaa'*) before him, for he claimed that what we recite is not the actual *ḥalaw* of Allaah. And this (belief) is the essence of innovation."⁹¹

In addition, if the *Ash'arees* maintain that the *ḥalaw* of Allaah is without sound, then the following points must be answered:

- 1) If the *ḥalaw* of Allaah is without sound, then what did Moosaa hear when Allaah spoke to Him? If they respond that Allaah created a sound, and caused Moosaa to hear that created sound, then this means that this created object stated,

إِنِّي أَنَا رَبُّكَ فَاسْتَعِذْ بِكَ ۖ إِنَّكَ بَالُو الْغَافِقِينَ ۝
وَلَا تَحْزَنْكَ فَاسْتَوِمْ بِمَا أُوتِيَ ۝ إِنِّي أَنَا رَبُّكَ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنَا فَاسْتَعِذْ

-O Moosaa, Verily, I am your Lord-. Verily, I am Allaah, there is not god save me, so worship Me.- [20:12-14]

Therefore, if they state this, it implies that this created object claimed to be Allaah, and asked Moosaa to worship it! However, if they state that it was the actual *ḥalaw* of Allaah, then it must be asked, "How then did Moosaa hear it if you claim that Allaah's *ḥalaw* is without sound?" The scholars of the *Ash'arees* have not been able to provide a satisfactory response for this.

- 2) If the *ḥalaw* of Allaah is without sound, then what special status do those prophets whom Allaah spoke to gain? In other words, what is the superiority of Moosaa over the other prophets if he did not hear the *ḥalaw* of Allaah? The Qur'aan mentions that one of the blessings that certain prophets have been given is that Allaah spoke to them directly:

⁸⁸ This author adds: And the *Ash'arees*!

⁸⁹ Reported by 'Abdullaah ibn Ahmad in *al-Sawaaḥ*, # 334.

⁹⁰ al-Harbee, p. 373.

⁹¹ *Nihayat al-ḥalaw*, p. 333, taken from al-Harbee, p. 365.

بَلَدَ الْأَرْضِ فَأَنزَلْنَا مِنْهُمْ نَجْمًا وَمِنْهُمْ مَن نَّكَلَّمَ اللَّهُ

«These are the Messengers! Some of them We blessed (with a higher status) over others. Some of them Allaah spoke to —» [2:253]

Also, if Allaah speaks to a prophet, but that prophet cannot hear him, then of what difference is this type of inspiration to the other types of inspiration? Allaah says,

وَمَا كُنَّا

لِنَسْمِعَ أَنْ يَكَلِّمَهُ الْقُلُوبُ وَلَا نَسْمِعُ مِنْ خَلْفِ الْوَلَدِ الْأَوَّلِ
وَمَا كُنَّا لِنَرَاهُ إِذَا نَادَىٰ بِأَنذَارِ الْآيَاتِ ۚ إِنَّهُ يَظُنُّ هُوَ الْبَرُّ وَنُفِخَ فِي سُورٍ ۚ

«It is not possible for any human being that Allaah should speak to him, unless it be by Inspiration, or from behind a veil, or (that) He sends a Messenger to reveal what He will by His Permission. Verily, He is the Most High, Most Wise» [42:31]

This verse mentions different types of inspirations. If, according to the *Ash'arees*, the *hayaaw* of Allaah cannot be heard, then when Allaah speaks from 'behind a veil,' how is this different from the other forms of inspiration?⁹²

- 3) If the *hayaaw* of Allaah is an 'internal' *hayaaw*, similar to the 'speech' of the mind, then what is the difference between the Knowledge ('ilm) of Allaah, and His Speech. Allaah has described Himself with both of these characteristics in the Qur'aan. If the Speech of Allaah cannot be heard, and is an internal Speech, then this implies that it is the same as the Attribute of Knowledge.

There is another point that the belief of the *Ash'arees* implies, and this is a very dangerous implication: Just as the attribute of speech is a noble attribute, its opposite, muteness, is a characteristic that is not desired, nor is it considered praiseworthy. It is well known that the one who is mute is not like the one who speaks. Therefore, to claim that Allaah does not possess the attribute of speech (or to interpret it away as the *Ash'arees* do) is in reality blasphemous, as this then implies that the Creator is mute, yet Allaah is free of all attributes of imperfection. In fact, this principle of faith was one of the most powerful arguments that the prophets used to deny the worship of other than Allaah! The stories of Ibraaheem and Moosa clearly show this.

The Story of Ibraaheem

The story of Ibraaheem and the idols is well known: Ibraaheem destroyed all of the idols of his people except the largest one. When his people discovered this, they questioned him as to whether he was the culprit. Ibraaheem answered, as mentioned in the Qur'aan,

⁹² The various types of inspiration will be discussed in the next chapter.

قَالَ لَوْلَا تُكَلِّمُهُمْ
هَذَا فَكَلَّمُوهُمْ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ تُطِيقُونَ ﴿٦٤﴾ قَالُوا سُبْحَانَكَ
لَقَدْ نَبَّأْنَاكَ اللَّهُمَّ الْغَافِلُونَ ﴿٦٥﴾ هُمْ لَكُمْ وَاعُونَ
وَكُلُّهُمْ لَكَ عِدُوٌّ إِلَّا الَّذِينَ هَدَى اللَّهُ فَلَا يَمَسُّهُمُ
أَلَمٌ مِنْ شَيْءٍ وَالَّذِينَ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ سُبْحَانَكَ
يَسُرُّكُمْ ﴿٦٦﴾ إِنَّ لَكُمْ أَعْيُنًا لَا تَبْصُرُونَ
تَعْقِلُونَ ﴿٦٧﴾

‘Rather, this one, the largest of them, did it’ (Why don’t you ask them, if they can speak)? So they turned to themselves, and said, ‘Verily, you are the wrong-doers (since you left the idols unguarded)’ Then they turned to themselves (again) and (responded), ‘You know very well (O Ibrahim) that these (idols) do not speak’ (Ibrahim) replied, ‘Do you then worship besides Allah objects that can neither profit you nor harm you? Tie to you, and upon that which you worship besides Allah! Have you no sense?’ (21: 63-67)

In these verses, Ibrahim showed his people that their idols were not worthy of worship, primarily because they could not speak. After they themselves acknowledged this, Ibrahim rebuked them, and asked them, ‘Have you no sense?’ meaning, ‘How can an object that cannot even speak be worthy of worship?’ Notice that Ibrahim was referring to a speech that *could be heard*, for Ibrahim’s people did not answer Ibrahim with the belief of the Ash’arites, ‘Our god speaks, but a speech that is not heard – an internal speech of the mind!’ for they understood what Ibrahim meant!! This is why they turned to themselves, and realised the foolishness of their actions, and could only reply with the feeble response that everyone knew that their idols could not speak!

The Story of Moosaa

Likewise, when the Children of Isra’eeel took the calf that they had built as an object of worship, they were reprimanded in the Qur’aan. Allah says,

أَفَلَا يَرَوْنَ أَنَّهُمْ إِتَوَوُا الْأَیْمَانَ
أَفَلَا يَرَوْنَ أَنَّهُمْ إِتَوَوُا الْأَیْمَانَ

‘Did they (those who worshipped the calf) not realise that it (the calf) could not respond to them with a (single) word, nor did it have any power to harm or benefit them?’ (20: 83)

In another verse, Allah says,

وَأَقْبَدَ قَوْمٌ مِّنْ تَعْوِيلٍ مِنْ خَلْقِهِمْ
عِجْلًا جَعَلَ لَهُ هَوًى أَن تَكُونَ لَهُمْ آلَافٌ
وَلَا يَتَذَكَّرُونَ

«And the people of Moosaa made in his absence, out of their ornaments, the image of a calf that made a sound (like the mooing of a cow). Did they not realise that it could not speak to them, nor guide them to the (straight) path?» - [7: 148]

In these two verses, Allaah reprimanded the Children of Israa'eel for worshipping the calf, since the calf was not a perfect object, and one of the clearest indications that it was not worthy of worship was that it could not speak! Even though the calf made noises, it was not capable of intelligent speech.

Therefore, these two stories show that muteness and incoherent speech are attributes that do not befit the Creator, and thus the people of Israa'eem and Moosaa were rebuked for taking gods that were mute. Yet, the *Ash'arees*, thinking that they were removing all negative attributes from Allaah, in reality equated the Creator with the attributes of these idols, and thus fell into the same error as the people of Moosaa and Israaheem did with regards to the attribute of speech! This is why Haazim ibn Ma'roof (d. 231 A.H.), one of the scholars of the *asaf*, said, "Whoever presumes that Allaah does not speak, then in reality he is worshipping idols."⁹¹

The *Ash'arees* also claim that the *qulaaq* of Allaah is not related to His will, which implies that Allaah does not speak when He wishes to, but rather He is continually speaking. The fact that Allaah's *qulaaq* is related to His Will (in other words, Allaah Speaks when He wishes to Speak) is clearly shown in the Qur'aan. Allaah says,

إِنَّمَا أَمْرُهُ إِذَا أَرَادَ شَيْئًا أَن يَقُولَ لَهُ كُنْ فَيَكُونُ ﴿٢١﴾

«Verily, His Command, whenever He intends a thing, is only that He says, 'Be!' – and it is» [37: 82]

In this verse, Allaah clearly shows that His *qulaaq* is related to His Will, for whenever Allaah intends a thing, He says to it "Be!" which proves that Allaah Speaks when He wishes. Likewise, Allaah states,

وَلَمَّا جَاءَ مُوسَىٰ لِمِيقَاتِنَا وَكَلَّمْنَاهُ رَبِّهٖ

«And when Moosaa came to Our appointed time and place, and his Lord spoke with him» - [7: 143]

This verse shows that Allaah spoke to Moosaa after Moosaa had arrived to the meeting point; not before it, nor after it – once again proving that Allaah speaks when He wishes.

The *Ash'arites* also claim that the *ḥukm* of Allah is all the same meaning,⁹⁴ and cannot be divided into parts. This principle then leads them to state that the Qur'an, Torah and Injeel are in essence the same, and they only differ in their expressions and languages.

If this were the case in reality, then the Qur'an, Torah and Injeel, when translated into one language, should be the same, since their essence is the same. However, it is well known that each of these three books differs from the other greatly.

In addition, if the *ḥukm* of Allah cannot be divided into parts, and is one whole concept, then this raises a problem that the *Ash'arites* must solve. The following conversation between one of the scholars of *Ahl al-Sunnah*, Abū Naṣr as-Sajaḍī (d. 444 A.H.) and one of the scholars of the *Ash'arites* will prove interesting:⁹⁵

Abū Naṣr said to the *Ash'arite*, "What do you say when Allah spoke to Moosaa? Did he understand all of the *ḥukm* of Allah (i.e., if the *ḥukm* of Allah cannot be divided into parts, then did Moosaa hear all of the *ḥukm* of Allah)?"

The *Ash'arite* hesitated a little, and questioned, "What do you intend by this question?"

Abū Naṣr responded, "Forget what I intend, and respond to my question!" but the *Ash'arite* refused to respond until Abū Naṣr told him what he meant by this question.

Abū Naṣr then responded, "What I intend is as follows: If you respond to my question by saying that Moosaa understood all of the *ḥukm* of Allah, then this implies that there is not a single *ḥukm* of Allah except that Moosaa comprehended it, and this is blasphemy and disbelief (for this would imply that Moosaa had been given all of the knowledge of Allah!)... but if you do not say this, then you are forced to state that Allah made Moosaa comprehend some part of His *ḥukm*, and by this statement you have caused yourself to fall into the same thing that you pretend to run away from, and that is the belief that Allah's *ḥukm* can be divided. You also claimed that one who says that the *ḥukm* of Allah can be divided is a disbeliever, yet you have been forced to say it yourself! Therefore, your opponent will be the victor over you, since he believed in what was stated in the Qur'an and Sunnah, (which came) from Allah and His Messenger (ﷺ), but you refused to submit to them, and instead claimed that it was obligatory to turn to your intellect (to understand these concepts). Yet, your intellect has forced you to agree with the revelation (in that the *ḥukm* of Allah can be divided into parts), and in the process you have humiliated yourself!"

⁹⁴ It should be pointed out that the *Ash'arite* scholars themselves have differed with regards to this point. Some of them claim that the *ḥukm* of Allah can be divided into commands, prohibitions, and facts, others gave different classifications, but the majority did not agree with this. This difference of opinion in and of itself is an indication of the people of innovation. The scholars of the *Ahl al-Sunnah* do not disagree amongst themselves in primary matters of *ḥukm*.

⁹⁵ Reported in *Dir Ṭarīq al-Aḥl al-Sun on-Naṣr*, 290. Taken from Noor, p. 937, with some changes.

The *Ash'arites* responded, "This requires some time for me to think," and left the conversation.

In other words, if the *ḥalaw* of Allaah is one essence, and cannot be divided into parts, then when Allaah spoke to Moosaa, did Moosaa hear all of the *ḥalaw* of Allaah? If so, then this implies that Moosaa gained all the knowledge of Allaah, and this is not possible. However, if this is not so, then this implies that Moosaa understood a part of the *ḥalaw* of Allaah, which is what the *Ahl al-Sunnah* believe.

The final point that will be discussed is in fact the most dangerous consequent of the belief of the *Ash'arites*. Since the *Ash'arites* claimed that Allaah did not actually speak the Qur'aan with a voice that is heard, and that His *ḥalaw* is not in any language, and not composed of words and letters, they then had to answer a number of questions, including: "Where did the Qur'aan that is present amongst us originate from? And what, then, is the Arabic Qur'aan, with its words and letters?"

In other words, since the *Ash'arites* claimed that Allaah's *ḥalaw* could not be heard, then where did the Qur'aan come from? And who was the first to recite it? And if, as the *Ash'arite* claim, the *ḥalaw* of Allaah is not in any language, and neither is it composed of words and letters, then what is the relationship of the Qur'aan, which is in Arabic and composed of words and letters, with the *ḥalaw* of Allaah?

Concerning this point, the *Ash'arites* were forced to admit that the Qur'aan is not the actual *ḥalaw* of Allaah (since it is in Arabic, and composed of words and letters), but instead an 'expression' (*ʿAr. ḥuṣayṣ*, or '*ibḥaṣ*') of the *ḥalaw* of Allaah. As to who (or what) was the first to actually 'express' it, the *Ash'arites* differed amongst themselves into a number of opinions, all of which are equally blasphemous! Most of them stated that the Qur'aan was first created in the *Lauh al-Mahfūdh* (in other words, the Arabic words of the Qur'aan did not exist until they were created by Allaah in the *Lauh al-Mahfūdh*), thus explicitly claiming that the Qur'aan was created; others stated that Allaah made Jibreel understand the meaning of the Qur'aan, and Jibreel was the first to verbalize it, thus making the Qur'aan the speech of Jibreel, yet others stated that the Qur'aan was inspired in meaning and first spoken by the Prophet (ﷺ), thus making the Qur'aan the speech of the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ).

In other words, the *Ash'arites* were forced to admit that the Arabic Qur'aan is not the actual *ḥalaw* of Allaah, and that it is created. This is due to the fact that they differentiated between what they called an 'internal *ḥalaw*' of Allaah, which is without language, sound and words, and between the actual Qur'aan, which is in Arabic, recited and heard, and composed of words. This 'internal *ḥalaw*' of Allaah, according to them, is not created, but the Qur'aan, since it is only an 'expression' of the 'internal *ḥalaw*', and not the actual *ḥalaw* of Allaah, must be created.

Thus, the *Ash'arites* explicitly state and believe that the Qur'aan is created, even though they then follow up this statement with the phrase, "...but the *ḥalaw* of Allaah is not." As one of their most famous scholars, Ibraaheem al-Baqirree (d. 1277 A.H.), wrote, "The belief of the *Ahl al-Sunnah* (intending the belief of the *Ash'arites*) is that the Qur'aan, meaning the internal *ḥalaw* (of Allaah) is not created, but the Qur'aan,

meaning the one that we recite, is created."⁹⁶

Therefore, in essence, the *Ash'arites* agreed with the *Jahmiyyah* and the *Mu'azilah* that the Qur'aan is created.

It must be asked: When all of the scholars of the *salaf* vehemently spoke against those who believed that the Qur'aan was created, and even accused them of disbelief, were they referring to this concept of 'internal *ḥalaww*' that the *Ash'arites* invented, or were they referring to the Qur'aan that is well known to all Muslims? And when Imaam al-Laahika'ee (d. 418 A.H.) quoted over five-hundred scholars of the *salaf* stating that the Qur'aan is the *ḥalaww* of Allaah, and not created, did any of these scholars differentiate between this 'internal *ḥalaww*' and the actual Qur'aan, and state that the Qur'aan is only an 'expression' of this 'internal *ḥalaww*'?

The answer is very clear: none of the *salaf* preached or believed the doctrines that the *Ash'arites* invented, and none of them differentiated between an 'internal *ḥalaww* of Allaah' and the Qur'aan. When the *salaf* were referring to when they said that the Qur'aan is the *ḥalaww* of Allaah, and that the Qur'aan is not created, is the actual Qur'aan, and not an imaginary and invented 'internal *ḥalaww*'. None of them, not even a single scholar (before Abuu al-Ḥasan al-Ash'aree and his teacher Ibn Kullaab), mentioned this concept of an 'internal' *ḥalaww*, and differentiated between it and the actual Qur'aan! The *salaf* are all quoted as saying, "The Qur'aan is the *ḥalaww* of Allaah, and is not created," yet the *Ash'arites* state, "The Qur'aan is only an expression of the *ḥalaww* of Allaah, and is created!"⁹⁷



-Are these two examples the same? Allahudhalillah, but most of them do not know! (39:29)

In fact, some of the early scholars during the time of the *salaf* explicitly refuted the beliefs of the *Ash'arites*. Ahmad ibn Saenan al-Waasitee (d. 256 A.H.), one of the teachers of Imaam al-Bukhaaree (d. 256 A.H.) and Imaam Muslim (d. 261 A.H.), and in refutation of the belief of Ibn Kullaab (which was later taken by Abuu al-Ḥasan al-Ash'aree), "Whoever presumes that the Qur'aan is two things (i.e., an 'internal' *ḥalaww* and an expression of that *ḥalaww*), or that it is only an 'expression' (of the *ḥalaww* of Allaah), then by Allaah, besides whom there is no other god, he is a heretic (*mu'dleeq*) who wishes to destroy Islaam. He is a disbeliever in Allaah. *This* Qur'aan is the Qur'aan that Allaah revealed through Jibreel to the Prophet (ﷺ)."⁹⁸ The scholar Abuu al-'Abbaas Ahmad ibn 'Umar ibn Sunayy (d. 303 A.H.), whom Imaam adh-Dhahabi called the 'Renovator' (*mujaadid*) of the fourth century,⁹⁹ and because of whom the *fiqh* of Imaam as-Shaafi'ee (d. 204 A.H.) was popularised, wrote,

⁹⁶ Reported in *Kifayatu al-Akbaar*, p. 104. Taken from [Judey], p. 798. Al-Baqirzadee was perhaps the most famous scholar of the *Ash'arites* during the last century. He has an extremely popular explanation to the *faashirah* (the basic text book of the *Ash'arite* faith), entitled, *Taḥḥiq al-Mawḥi' alaa faashirah al-Tawḥeed*.

⁹⁷ [Judey], p. 434.

⁹⁸ adh-Dhahabi, *Siyar*, 14/284.

And it has been affirmed and agreed by all the people of this religion, of the *anṣār* and *ḥawāṣṣ*, from the *ṣaḥāb* that past, from the Companions, and the Successors, and the famous and rightly guided scholars to this time of ours, that all the verses pertaining to the Attributes of Allāh, and the authentic narrations coming from the Prophet (ﷺ) concerning the Attributes, that it is mandatory to believe in them, in each and every one of them, just as they came, and to leave the actuality of them to Allāh...and he increased some Attributes, none of which the *Ash'arites* deny, and then said...and to affirm the *ḥaḍīṣ* (of Allāh), with letters, and with sound, and in different languages, and in words, and accurately...and all of this, we accept it, and do not reject it, nor do we interpret them with the interpretations of the other (groups), or with the anthropomorphism of the anthropomorphists... Rather, we say what Allāh has said, and interpret it as the Prophet (ﷺ) interpreted it, and the Companions, and the Successors, and the scholars of the *ṣaḥāb*, those who are well known for their religion and character. And we agree upon that which they agreed upon, and do not talk with what they did not talk about (i.e., we do not give interpretations that were not given by them), but rather we accept the apparent meanings of the narrations (of the *ḥadīṣ*) and the verses (of the Qur'an). And we do not give for these verses the interpretations of the *Muḥakkik*, or the *ḍāḥ*, or the *Jaḥmīyyah*, or the *shābīḥīyyah*, or the *anthropomorphists*...but rather, we accept it (these Attributes), all without any re-interpretation (i.e., we accept the apparent meanings of it), and believe in it without conspiring (liars in the Cemetery). And we state, 'The belief in these (Attributes) is obligatory, and to speak of them is from the *ṣaḥāb*, but to try to re-interpret (distort) it (i.e., the way these groups have done) is an innovation!'

In addition, the beliefs of the *Ash'arites* are very similar to the beliefs of the *Lafḍīyyah* (mentioned above), who believed that a person's recitation of the Qur'an is created. Since the *Ash'arites* believe that the actual text of the Qur'an is created, this automatically implies that they believe that the recitation of the Qur'an is also created, for the recitation, according to the *Ash'arites*, is of a created text.⁹¹ Imaam Ahmad (d. 241 A.H.) stated, "The *Lafḍīyyah* are in reality endorsing the belief of *Jāḥm* (Abū Saḥwān), for they believe that *Jibreel* came with something created (to the Prophet (ﷺ))."⁹² In another narration, Imaam Ahmad was asked, "What is your opinion concerning those who say, 'Our recitation of the Qur'an is created'?" Imaam Ahmad replied, "These people are worse than the *Jaḥmīyyah*. Whoever believes this, then he believes that *Jibreel* came with something created, and the Prophet (ﷺ) preached something created!"⁹³ It should be noted that the belief that *Jibreel* came with something created, and the belief that the Prophet (ﷺ) preached something created, is exactly the belief of the *Ash'arites*, for they believe that the Arabic Qur'an is created.

⁹¹ *Ibid.*, p. 418.

⁹² *al-Ḥikmah al-Ḥamīd*, p. 191.

⁹³ *al-Ḥikmah al-Ḥamīd*, p. 212.

Conclusion

The Attributes of Allaah as mentioned in the Qur'aan and *Sunnah* are absolutely Unique. These Attributes are understood literally (in the case of the Attribute of *qalaam*, that Allaah Speaks, whenever He wishes, with a sound, in different languages, and this Speech is composed of words and letters, and is not created), but the actuality and 'how-ness' of these Attributes are not delved into, and any negative similarity between these Attributes and the attributes of the creation are negated (in the case of this Attribute, that the speech of the creation is created, but the Speech of Allaah is not). Understanding these Attributes 'literally' does not mean understanding them in the manner that they are found in the creation, or comparing them with the attributes of the creation; rather, it means affirming the linguistic meaning of that Attribute in a manner that befits the Creator, and will never completely be understood by mankind.

The beliefs and deviations of the *Ash'arites* are all based upon their anthropomorphic understanding of the Attributes of Allaah. If they had only understood that the Attributes of Allaah cannot be compared to the attributes of the creation, nor are they based upon the attributes of the creation, they would not have had to resort to try to 'rationalise' these Attributes to remove this supposed anthropomorphism from them. The *Ash'arites* also failed to realise that, in their over-zealousness to remove this imaginary anthropomorphism that they believed existed in the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*, they ended up comparing Allaah's Attributes with the attributes of inanimate objects.

The *Ash'arites* are an example of how deviation occurs when the proper Islamic methodology is not followed; they wished to refute the beliefs of the *Mu'aziriah* and the *Jahmiyyah*, and affirm the Attributes of Allaah, but since they were so influenced by the principles of Greek logic and rationalism, they ended up agreeing with the beliefs of the same groups that they sought to refute, and stated that the Qur'aan is created.

In conclusion, the scholar of the *Sunnah*, Imam Muhammad Ibn al-Hasan al-Aqfurree (d. 360 A.H.) stated:

Therefore it is essential that Muslims fear Allaah, and teach each other the Qur'aan... and not argue over it. And they should know that it is the *hikmah* of Allaah, not created. So if a *Jaahlee* argues with them, and says, "It is created!" or says, "The Qur'aan is the *hikmah* of Allaah!" and stops at that (i.e., a *Blasphemer*), or says, "My recitation of the Qur'aan is created!" (i.e., a *Liefteller*), or says, "The Qur'aan is only an 'expression' of what is in the *Laqih al-Majhoolah*!" (i.e., an *Ash'arite*), then the ruling with regards to such a person is that he be left, and not talked to, nor prayed behind, but rather warned against.

And upon you, O Muslims, are the narrations from the Prophet (ﷺ), and the narrations from the Companions after him, may Allaah be pleased with them, and the statements of the Successors, and the scholars of the Muslims. And leave debating (about the religion by using your intellect), and useless argumentation, and conversation! And whoever is upon this path,

IV. The Names of the Qur'aan

The Qur'aan has referred to itself by a number of names, including:

1) The *Qur'aan* (Recitation): This name is mentioned seventy-three times; thus it should be no surprise that it is by this name that the Book of Allaah is best known. In one verse, Allaah says,

قُلْ لِّیۤ اِنْ شِئْتُمْ اِلٰهًاۤ اِلٰهًاۤ اِخْرٰی ۚ وَ اِلٰهٌۢ بَعْدَ ۤاِلٰهٍۭ اِلٰهٌۢ کٰذِبٌ ۚ
لَاۤ اَتُوۡنَ بِشَیْءٍ مِّنْکُمْۢ بِعِصْمَةٍ (نعمان مہر)

«Say: If all of mankind and jinn were to gather together to produce something similar to this Qur'aan, they would not be able to produce it – even if they helped one another» [17:88]

2) The *Kitaab* (Book): This name has been mentioned seventy-seven times in the Qur'aan. This is the Book that Allaah sent down upon His final Prophet (ﷺ), containing all the guidance that they need.

اِنَّکُمْ لَعِندَ رَبِّکُمۡ لَکِتٰبٌۭ ۙ
مِّنۡکُمْۚ

«If *Laan Meera*: This is the Book, there is no doubt in it, a guidance for the pious» [2:1-2]

The names 'Qur'aan' and 'Kitaab' are complementary to one another, since the 'Qur'aan' denotes that which is recited and preserved in the hearts, whereas the 'Kitaab' signifies the preservation by writing. The Qur'aan, therefore, has been preserved both by memorisation and by writing.¹⁰³

3) The *Furqaan* (Criterion): Allaah has used this name four times in reference to the Qur'aan. The Qur'aan is the Criterion between *sanadid* and *shayt*, truth and falsehood, and good and evil. Allaah says,

بِیۡرَاقِہٖۤ اَلَّذِیۡ رَزَقَہٗۤ اَلْقُرْاٰنَ عَلٰی عَمَدٍۭ مَّرۡکُومٍۭ ۙ

«Blessed be He Who sent down the Criterion (Furqaan) to His Slave (Muhammad) (ﷺ) so that he may be a warner to mankind» [25:1]

4) The *Dhikr* (Remembrance, or Narrative): This name occurs fifty-five times in the Qur'aan. The 'Dhikr' signifies that the Qur'aan is a Guidance and a Remembrance of the purpose of life, so it describes the purpose of creation, the history of the past nations, and the descriptions of Heaven and Hell. Allaah says,

وَاَنۡصُرُوۡا لِقَوۡمِہٖۤ اَلَّذِیۡۤ اٰتٰہُمۡ الْکِتٰبَہُ

«And verily this (Qur'aan) is a Reminder (*Dhikr*) for you and your people»
[43:84]

3) The *Tanzil* (Revelation): This name, along with all of its derivatives, is used to describe the Qur'aan in over one hundred and forty verses. The root word 'nazaala' signifies the descent of an object from a higher place to a lower place.¹⁸⁴ The Qur'aan, therefore, is a Revelation that was sent down from Allaah to the Prophet (ﷺ). As Allaah says,

وَالْقُرْآنُ نَزِيلٌ مِّن رَّبِّكَ

«And it is indeed a Revelation from the Lord of the Worlds» [26:192]

This name shows the unique status of the Qur'aan in that it is from Allaah, all Glory be to Him. This name is also one of the many proofs that Allaah, all Glory be to Him, is above His creation, and not everywhere, as some innovated sects claim, as He is the one who 'sent down' the Qur'aan.

There are many other descriptions of the Qur'aan which some scholars have taken as 'names', but it is more appropriate to say that they describe the Qur'aan, and are not 'names' as such. Imam az-Zarkashy lists over fifty 'names' of the Qur'aan in the Qur'aan, but, as mentioned earlier, these are more descriptive than appellative in nature.¹⁸⁵

V. The Qur'aan as it Describes Itself

The best and most authentic way to describe the Qur'aan would be to quote what it has to say concerning itself. The number of verses that deal with the Qur'aan are too numerous to mention here,¹⁸⁶ therefore only some of them will be quoted.

The believers are told to rejoice in the revelation that Allaah has sent down,

قُلْ يَقْبَلُ اللَّهُ التَّوْبَةَ وَيَعْلَمُ السِّرَّ وَأَعْلَىٰ هَدًى ۚ إِنَّ إِلَٰهَهُ لَعَلِيمٌ عَزِيزٌ

«Say: 'In the Bounty of Allaah and His Mercy, let them repent,' that is better than all the (wealth) they can amass» [10:58]

The 'Bounty' and 'Mercy' referred to in this verse have been interpreted by the scholars of *tafsir* to mean Islaam and the Qur'aan.

Some of the verses that describe the Qur'aan are as follows:

¹⁸⁴ This word is used in three different meanings in the Qur'aan: a) the descent from Allaah to the Prophet (ﷺ), and thus is specific to the Qur'aan, b) the descent from the skies to the earth, such as, "— and We have caused the rain to descend from the sky," (15:22), c) the descent of Allaah's mercy and blessings, such as, "— and He sent down tranquility upon them [the believers]," (48:18) cf. Darushaq, p. 64.

¹⁸⁵ cf. az-Zarkashy, v. 1, p. 274-76. Some of these 'names' are quoted in the next section.

¹⁸⁶ For one of the best discussions of the names and descriptions of the Qur'aan, see Ibrahim, Saalih, *Al-Bashar Al-Muhsin al-Bayan fi Asmaa al-Qur'aan*, [1], 1937, where he lists and discusses over eighty names and descriptions in his book.

يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ
فَدَعَاكُمْ بِرُحْمَتٍ مِنْ رَبِّكُمْ وَأَرْسَلْنَا إِلَيْكُمْ بُورَانًا مُبِينًا ﴿١٧٤﴾

«O mankind! Verily, there has come to you a convincing proof from your Lord, and We have sent down to you a Manifest Laghaz» [4:174]

يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ فَدَعَاكُمْ تَزِيَّةً
مِنْ رَبِّكُمْ وَزِيَّةً تَرْسُلُنَا فِي الْعُسُودِ وَهَدًى وَرَحْمَةً لِلْمُؤْمِنِينَ

«O mankind! There has come to you a good advice from your Lord, and a healing for the (sickness) of the heart – a guidance and mercy for the believers» [10:57]

لِلْعَبِيدِ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامِ أَمَّا مَنْ كَفَرَ بَعْدَ مَا يَفْعَلُ لِمَنْ عَرَفَ
فَهُوَ فِي عِصْيَانٍ عَظِيمٍ يَكْفُرُ مَا كَانَ مِنْ لَدُنْهُ وَيُنَبِّئُ الْقَوْمَ مِنْ

«All Praise and Thanks be to Allaah, Who Has sent down to His slave the Book, and has not placed in it any crookedness (falseness)! (He has made it) Straight to give warning of a severe punishment from Him, and to give glad tidings to the believers» [18:1-2]

وَيُنَبِّئُ مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ مَا هُوَ رِيشَةٌ وَرَحْمَةٌ لِلْمُؤْمِنِينَ

«And We send down in the Qur'aan that which is a healing and a mercy to those who believe» [17:82]

لَقَدْ نَزَّلَ أَحْسَنَ الْكِتَابِ يُكَلِّمُكُمْ فِيهِ مَتَابِقًا

«Allaah has sent down the best of statements, a Book, its parts resembling each other in goodness and truth, oft-repeated» [39:23]

إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ عَلَيْكَ الْكِتَابَ بِالْحَقِّ وَنَبِّئُكَ أَنَّكَ
كَافِرٌ وَمَنْ شَاءَ فَلْيُكْفِرْ وَلْيُؤْمِرْ بِعَدْوٍ

«Verily, We have sent down to you the Book for mankind in truth. So who ever accepts this guidance, it is only for himself, and whoever goes astray, he strays only for his own loss» [39:41]

وَهَذَا بَرَكَةٌ لِقَوْمٍ أَعْلَمُوا

«And this is the Blessed Reminder which We have sent down, will you then (choose not) deny it?» [21:90]

وَلَقَدْ أَرْسَلْنَا إِلَيْكَ رُسُلًا مِّن قَبْلِكَ مَّا كُنْتَ تَدْرِي مَا الْكِتَابُ
وَلَا الْإِيمَانُ وَلَكِنَّ مَعَكِ نُورٌ تَهْدِي بِهِ مَن مَّشَاءَ

«And thus We have sent down to you an inspiration from Our Command. You did not know what the Book (Qur'aan) was, nor faith (imman), but We made it a light by which We Guide those whom We will.» [42: 52]

هَذَا صِرَاطٌ مُّبِينٌ وَفِي ذَلِكَ بَيِّنَاتٍ لِّقَوْمٍ يُؤْمِنُونَ

«This (Qur'aan) is a clear insight and evidence for mankind, and a guidance and a mercy for people who have certain faith.» [45: 20]

VI. The Sunnah as it Describes the Qur'aan

The importance of the Qur'aan is so great that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "The best of you are those who learn the Qur'aan and teach it to others."¹⁰⁷ Although this *ḥadeeth* is most often used in the context of teaching the recitation and memorisation of the Qur'aan, there is no reason not to extend the meaning of this *ḥadeeth* to include all the sciences of the Qur'aan. After all, of what good is the recitation of the Qur'aan if that recitation is not accompanied by understanding and action?

Again, as with the number of verses about the Qur'aan, there exist numerous *ḥadeeth* about the merits of the Qur'aan and its reciter. There are many treatises written specifically on this topic, such as the famous one by Imaam an-Nasaa'ee (d. 303 A.H.) entitled '*Faḥṣṣat al-Qur'aan*', and one by the famous interpreter, Ibn Kathir (d. 778 A.H.), with the same title. Some of these *ḥadeeth* are as follows:¹⁰⁸

THE STATUS OF THE QUR'AAN

Jubayr reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Rejoice! For verily, this Qur'aan – one part of it is in the Hands of Allaah, and the other part is in your hands. Therefore hold on to it, for you will never be destroyed, nor will you ever go astray after it!" (Musaa'id Ahmad).

'Umar reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Indeed, Allaah will raise (or honour) people (i.e., in this world and the Hereafter) by this Book, and He will debase others by it" (Muslim).

Abuu Maalik al-Ash'aree stated that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "The Qur'aan is either an evidence (or proof) for you, or against you." (Muslim).

Anas reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Verily, Allaah has chosen people amongst mankind. The People of the Qur'aan – they are the People of Allaah, and His Chosen

¹⁰⁷ Reported by al-Bukhaaree.

¹⁰⁸ All of these *ajḥadeeth* have been taken from Muḥammad Naajee al-Daam al-Albanaare's *Ṣaḥeeḥ al-Jaww' al-Sagheer wa Zaydaat*, Maktabah al-Islaamee, Beirut, 1988, and are graded *ṣaḥeeḥ* by him.

ones" (an-Nasaa'ee). The 'People of the Qur'aan' are those who know it and practice it.

Ibn Mas'ood reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "The Qur'aan is an intercessor, and an intercession that is accepted, and a *maashaf*,¹⁰⁹ and a credible (book). Whoever puts it ahead of him, it will lead him to Paradise, and whoever throws it behind him, it will drag him into Hell" (at-Taharaamee).

Nawwaas ibn Sam'aan reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Allaah has set forth the following as a parable: There is a road which leads straight to the destruction. On either side of the road there is a wall in which there are open doors with curtains hanging on them. From the remote end of the road, a voice calls, 'Proceed straight and don't turn to any side.' Whenever someone intends to lift a curtain from the door, another voice calls from above: 'Beware! Don't lift the curtain, otherwise you will be hanged inside.' (The Prophet (ﷺ) explained:) The straight path is Islaam; the walls are the limits (*haddos*) of Allaah (which he has placed on actions); the open doors are the things that He has prohibited; the voice which calls from the end of the road is the Qur'aan, and the voice which calls from above is Allaah's monitor in the heart of every believer" (at-Tirmidhee).

Ibn 'Aamr reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "The Book of Allaah is the Rope of Allaah which is dangling from the Heavens down to the earth" (Musnad Ahmad).

There is a narration in at-Tirmidhee which is a very eloquent and beautiful description of the Qur'aan; however, it is not an authentic statement of the Prophet (ﷺ), as has been pointed out by at-Tirmidhee himself.¹¹⁰ Most likely, it is a statement of 'Alee ibn Abee Jaafar,¹¹¹ and is as follows: "The Book of Allaah – it has the tidings of those before you, and the news of those after you; it is the Judge between you, it is the Criterion; it cannot be taken lightly. Whoever abandons it due to arrogance will be destroyed by Allaah, and whoever seeks guidance by other than it will be misled by Allaah. It is Allaah's strong rope, it is the Wise Remembrance; it is the Straight Path. It is not swayed by (one's) desires, nor are the tongues confused by it. Its wonders never cease, and the scholars never satisfy themselves of it. Whoever speaks with it has spoken the truth; whoever works upon it will be rewarded, whoever judges according to it will be just; and whoever calls to it will be guided to the Straight Path."

THE REWARDS FOR THOSE WHO RECITE AND PRACTICE THE QUR'AAN

Abuu Moosaa al-Ash'aree reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Part of showing glory to Allaah is to show respect to a white-haired Muslim, and a carrier of the Qur'aan who does not exaggerate in it (i.e., overstep its bounds) nor ignore it (i.e., leave it), and a just ruler" (Abuu Daawood).

¹⁰⁹ A *maashaf* is one who is persistent in his intercession, and goes to all corners to serve a person. cf. *al-Nihayah*, v. 4, p. 304.

¹¹⁰ cf. *Daaw'at Tirmidhee*, p. 249.

¹¹¹ See al-Ahlussee's comments on it in *Sharh Aspeelah at-Taharaameyah*, p. 71.

'Aa'ishah reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "The person who reads the Qur'aan fluently is with the honourable and obedient scribes (i.e., the angels), and he who reads it with difficulty (even) he shall get (at least) a double reward" (Absoo Daawood).

Ibn Ma'ood reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Whoever wishes to love Allaah and His Messenger, let him read the *maa-jid*" (Ibn Nu'aym in his *Hilye*)

Ibn 'Amr reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "There is no cause to be envious except in two cases: (the first is of a) person whom Allaah has taught the Qur'aan, and he recites it in the day and night, and one of his neighbours hears him and says, 'Woe to me! I wish I had been given what he has been given, then I would do what he is doing!' (The second is of a) person whom Allaah has blessed with wealth, and he spends it in good causes, so a person (who sees him) says, 'Woe to me! I wish I had been given what he has been given, then I would do what he is doing!'" (al-Bukhaaree)

Absoo Hurayrah reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "The Qur'aan will be brought on the Day of Judgement, and it will say, 'O My Lord! Adorn him (the one who read and practised it)' So he will be adorned with a crown of glory and honour. It will then say, 'O My Lord! Increase this' So he will be clothed with the clothes of glory and honour. Then it will say, 'O My Lord! Be pleased with Him' So He (Allaah) will be pleased with him. It will be said, 'Recite! And rise!' and every verse he recites will bless him with a good deed" (at-Tirmidhee).

Ibn 'Amr reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "It will be said to the companion of the Qur'aan after he has entered Paradise, 'Recite, and rise' For every verse he recites, he will rise one level (in Paradise), until he recites the last verse with him (i.e., in his memory)." (Absoo Daawood)

Ibn Ma'ood reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Recite the Qur'aan, for verily you will be rewarded for it. I am not saying that *Ayf-Laam-Meew* will count as a word, but rather that *Ayf* has ten (rewards), *Laam* has ten (rewards), and *Meew* has ten (rewards), so this is thirty (rewards)." (Khateeb al-Baghdaadee).

Yunah ibn Maalik reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "If the Qur'aan is enclosed by skin (i.e., if a person memorises the entire Qur'aan),¹¹² then Allaah will never burn it in the Fire (of Hell)" (al-Bayhaquee).

Absoo Hurayrah reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Never do a group of people gather together in one of the houses of Allaah, reciting the book of Allaah and pondering over it, except that peace descends upon them, and mercy surrounds them, and the angels encircle them, and Allaah remembers them in His gathering" (Absoo Daawood).

112 This is one of the two interpretations that classical scholars have given to this *hadith* (cf. al-Nisaa'ee, *Majma' Bidha' al-Jaana'id*, v 1, p. 133). This author also cited a number of scholars concerning this *hadith*, and they stated that this interpretation is an acceptable understanding of the *hadith*. The other interpretation of the *hadith* is that if the *maa-jid* was wrapped in a leather skin during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ), then (when it is a *lin*), it would not be burnt, so this *hadith* is an indication of one of the miracles of the Qur'aan. There is no contradiction if both of these meanings are understood from this *hadith*, and Allaah knows best.

Abou Moosaa al-Asha'ree reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "The believer who recites the Qur'aan is like a citrus fruit – its fragrance is pleasing and its taste is sweet. The believer who does not recite the Qur'aan is like a dry date – it has no fragrance but its taste is sweet. The hypocrite who recites the Qur'aan is like a basil – its fragrance is sweet, but its taste is bitter. The hypocrite who does not recite the Qur'aan is like a colocynth – it has no smell, and its taste is bitter" (Muslim).

‘Verily We have inspired you (O Muhammad) as We inspired Nooh and the prophets after him, And We inspired Ibraaheem, and Isma’eel, and Ishaaq, and Ya’qoob and the Tribes (of the Children of Isma’eel), and ‘Eesaa, and Ayyoob, and Yousuf, and Haashim and Sulaymaan, and so Dawood We gave the Psalms (Zaboor) And there are messengers whom We have mentioned to you before, and messengers whom we have not told you about – and to Moosaa, Allaah spoke directly. Messengers (who came) as bearers of good news, and as givers of warning, in order that mankind should have no plea against Allaah after the messengers. And Allaah is Free-Powerful, All-Wise’ [4:163-65]

In fact, this inspiration of Allaah to His prophets has been so common, that when the disbelievers of Makkah were amazed at the prophethood of Muhammad (ﷺ), Allaah revealed,

كَذَٰلِكَ أَوْحَيْنَا إِلَيْكَ رُوحَنَا ۖ لَئِيْلَآ مَا تُخْبِرُ

‘Is it a cause of wonder for mankind that We have sent Our inspiration to a man from among themselves...’ [10:2]

This has been the only way that Allaah has communicated with mankind as a whole: that of inspiring one of their own with the message of truth.

The final recipient of any revelation from Allaah, and the last of the prophets that was ever to be inspired by Allaah, was Muhammad, the son of ‘Abdullaah, the Arab, the Qurashite, (ﷺ). When he (ﷺ) was called by his Lord to return to his eternal resting place, his servant Umm Ayman was found crying. She was told, “Do not grieve: Verily he (ﷺ) is now in a better place than where he used to be.” She responded, “(I am not crying because of his death, for) indeed I know that what he (ﷺ) has received from his Lord is better for him (than this life). I am crying because now Allaah has stopped His revelation to mankind!” When she said this, Aboo Bakr and Umar started weeping with her.^[1]

ii. The Meaning of Wahy

‘Wahy’ means to inspire, or to communicate in a manner that is not obvious or apparent to anybody else, in a swift manner. The word ‘wahy’ in its linguistic meaning has been used in a number of places in the Qur’aan to denote the following

- 1) The natural order and laws of nature. For example, Allaah says,

فَلَمَّا كَمُلَتْ سَبْعَ سَمَوَاتٍ وَرَبَّيْنَاهُ فِي سَنَةِ أَرْبَعٍ

‘Then He completed and finished their creation (as) seven heavens, and He inspired in each heaven as a sign’ [40:12]

This can be considered as the natural laws of nature, such as the orbits of the planets and the rotation of the earth, etc.

- 2) Natural animal instinct. For example, Allaah says,

وَأَوْحَىٰ رَبُّكَ إِلَى النَّحْلِ
أَنِ اتَّبِعِي مِنَ الْجِبَالِ الْمَخْرُوجِ وَمَا يَمْشُونَ ﴿٦٨﴾ ثُمَّ يَأْتِي
مِن كُلِّ مَشْرَبٍ مَّا شِئْتَ ﴿٦٩﴾

«And your Lord inspired the bee, saying, Take as habitations mountains,
and in the tree and in what (mankind) builds. Then, out of all fruits, and
follow the ways of your Lord...» [16:68-69]

This signifies the natural animal instinct that every creature is endowed with; bees, for example, instinctively build their hives and search for nectar from flowers.

- 3) Human intuition and emotion. This type is also called *ilham*. Allaah said,

وَأَوْحَيْنَا إِلَىٰ أُمِّ مُوسَىٰ
أَنِ ارْضِعِيهِ ۖ فَإِذَا ذَهَبَ الْخَوْفُ مِنَ الْقَيْدِ وَآتَيْنَاهُ
وَلَا تَحْزَنِي ۖ

«And we inspired the mother of Moosa, 'Suckle him! But when you fear
for him, then cast him into the river and fear not, nor grieve'» [28:7]

In this case, the mother of Moosaa knew that if she were to leave her baby to float on the river, Allaah would protect him, since she had received this *ilham* from Allaah. This type of inspiration, however, does not make its recipient a prophet.

- 4) Signals or gestures to communicate. When Allaah forbade Zakariyyah from speaking for three days,

فَخَرَجَ عَلَىٰ قَوْمِهِ
مِنَ الْوَحْشِ ۖ فَأَوْحَىٰ إِلَيْهِمْ أَن سَبِّحُوا ثَلَاثِينَ ﴿١٠١﴾

«...he came out unto his people, and inspired them (by gestures and signs)
to glorify Allaah's praises in the morning and afternoon» [19:11]

In this verse, the gestures that Zakariyyah did to his people have been called an 'inspiration' since he did not verbalise his intent.

- 5) Evil whispers from Satan. Allaah says,

وَلَا الشَّيَاطِينُ يُوْحُوا إِلَيْكَ أَلَّا تَجْهَدَ لِتُؤْتِمَرَ ﴿١٢١﴾

«...and of a certainty the devils inspire their cohorts (amongst mankind) to
dispute with you...» [4:121]

and again,

ports, "The commencement of the divine inspiration upon the Prophet (ﷺ) was in the form of good dreams, he never used to dream about anything except that it came true like the rising of the sun."¹¹⁴ In other words, before the Prophet (ﷺ) received his mission of prophethood, he (ﷺ) would see dreams of events which would eventually come true, just like the sun rises every morning.

The dreams of all the prophets are an inspiration from Allaah. In these dreams, the prophets are either shown some event of the future, or given commandments by Allaah. This is proven by the dream in which Ibraahim saw himself sacrificing his son Ismaa'eel. Ibraahim understood that this dream was a command from Allaah, directing him to sacrifice his son.

لَمَّا بَلَغَ مَعَهُ السَّعْيَ قَالَ
يٰٓإِسْمٰعِيلُ إِنِّي رَأَيْتُكَ فَاذْبَحْ مَا كُنتَ تُذَكِّرُنِي ۖ قَالَ
يٰٓأَبَتِ افْعَلْ مَا تُؤْمُرُ سَمِعْتُ بِإِذْنِ اللَّهِ مِنَ الْفَنَاءِ ﴿١٠٢﴾

"And when he (Isma'a'eel) was old enough to walk with him, he said, O my son! I have seen in a dream that I am slaughtering you, so what do you think?" (Isma'a'eel) said, 'O my father, do what you have been commanded! Verily, you will find me, *under Allaah*, from amongst the patient'» [32:102]

Ibraahim understood that this was a command from Allaah, as did Isma'a'eel, even though it was in the form of a dream.

Another example of this is the Treaty of Hudaibiyah. The Prophet (ﷺ) had been shown a vision in which the Muslims were performing the rites of 'Umrah, and the Companions set out with the Prophet (ﷺ) from Madeenah to Makkah hoping to perform the 'Umrah. The pagans of Makkah, however, did not allow the Muslims to enter Makkah, and a treaty was enacted between the Muslims and the pagans, later to be known as the Treaty of Hudaibiyah. One of the conditions of the treaty was that, in the following year, the Muslims would return and complete the rites of 'Umrah. As the Muslims returned sad-hearted to Madeenah, Allaah revealed,

لَقَدْ مَنَّ اللَّهُ عَلَى الْمُؤْمِنِينَ إِذْ بَايَعُوا بِالْحَقِّ فَقَتَلُوا النَّسِيفَ
الْحَرَامَ إِنَّ شَاءَ اللَّهُ وَبِهِ يَحْيِيهِمْ وَيُدْخِلُهُمْ جَنَّاتٍ
لَا تَجْرُؤُهَا شُجْرٌ

"Indeed, of a surety shall Allaah fulfil the dream which He showed His Messengers, you shall enter the *Majal al-Haram*, if Allaah wills, secure, with your heads shaved or trimmed (after performing the rites of pilgrimage), fearing none» [48:27]

The following year, the Muslims performed the 'Umrah as per the terms of the agreement. The dream that the Prophet (ﷺ) had seen eventually came true.

The Prophet (ﷺ) never received any Qur'aan in this manner,¹¹⁵ but he did say, "Nothing is left of prophethood except '*wasbarunaa*' (glad tidings)." When he was asked what this was, he replied, "A true dream."¹¹⁶ In other words, the only type of inspiration that is left after the death of the Prophet (ﷺ) is in the form of true dreams to a believer. In another narration, he (ﷺ) said, "A true and pious dream is one out of forty-six parts of prophethood."¹¹⁷

2) Direct speech from Allaah.

This is the second way in which Allaah communicates to the prophets directly. This is the meaning of the verse,

وَمَا كَانَ لِنَبِيٍّ أَنْ يَكَلِّمَهُ اللَّهُ إِلَّا وَهَاتَيْنِ الرَّايِ جَمَاب

«It is not possible for any human being that Allaah should speak to him unless it be... from behind a veil...» [42:51]

Allaah speaks directly to the prophet, but the prophet does not see him.

An example of this was when Allaah spoke to Moosaa on Mount Thor:

وَلَمَّا كَلَّمَ مَوْسَىٰ لِيُخْبِرَ وَأَنَّهُ ذُو الْقُرْبَىٰ عَلَٰلِ رَبِّهِ أَفْكَرَ إِلَيْكَ قَالِ لِي رَبِّهِ

«And when Moosaa came at the time and place appointed by Us, and his Lord spoke to him, (Moosaa) said, 'O My Lord! Allow me to look at you!' (Allaah) said, 'You will not see Me...'» [7:143]

This method of *aswā* occurred once with the Prophet (ﷺ), when he went on his journey of *al-Iraaq* and *al-Mi'raaj*.¹¹⁸ The Prophet (ﷺ) did not see Allaah, since there was a veil of light between them. Abuu Dharr asked the Prophet (ﷺ), "Did you see your Lord (on the journey of *al-Iraaq*)?" The Prophet (ﷺ) replied, "Light – how could I see Him?"¹¹⁹ meaning that there was a veil of Light that was between the

[115] Although some *as-saheeh* is clear that the Prophet (ﷺ) did receive some Qur'aan in this manner, the evidence that they use is not explicit. The particular narration is on the authority of Aboo Sa'eed al-Musli, who stated that once the Prophet (ﷺ) was sitting amongst them, when he dozed off. He then raised his head and smiled. They asked him, "What makes you smile, O Messenger of Allaah (ﷺ)?" He replied, "A *surah* has just been revealed to me..." (Reported by Muslim). This is not explicit evidence since the narration does not mention that the revelation occurred during the Prophet's (ﷺ) sleep. It is possible that the inspiration could have occurred before the Prophet (ﷺ) dozed off. It is also possible that the Prophet (ﷺ) was not actually asleep, but the Companions perceived him to be so. Therefore, it is not possible to use this narration as evidence against other strong and clearer proofs to the contrary.

[116] Reported by al-Bukhaaree.

[117] Reported by al-Daqaamee from al-Nawwas ibn Sam'aan. Some commentators have explained the fraction as being the time that the Prophet (ﷺ) received true dreams before his prophethood (ten months) over the total time of his prophethood (23 years), hence one out of forty-six, and Allaah knows best.

[118] The journey which occurred during the last Makkah stage of the Prophet (ﷺ), in which he (ﷺ) was taken from Makkah to Jannatun Na'im, and then to the Heavens.

[119] Reported by Muslim.

Prophet (ﷺ) and Allaah. In fact, seeing Allaah before the Day of Judgement is not possible for any human.¹²⁰

Some scholars claim that the last two verses of Soorah al-Baqarah were revealed in this manner (i.e., the Prophet (ﷺ) received them from Allaah, without an intermediary, during the night of *al-laylat al-Mi'raj*). However, there is no authentic, explicit proof for this opinion, therefore, it cannot be accepted.

B. WITH AN INTERMEDIARY

This is the primary and most common method of inspiration. This method of *nusxy* is when Allaah sends an angel to inspire His Messenger. This is the meaning of the phrase,

وَمَا كُنَّا
لِنُفَسِّرَ لَكَ كَلِمَاتِ اللَّهِ إِلَّا وَهِيَ الْوَحْيُ الَّذِي فِيهِ نَذِيرٌ وَبُشْرَىٰ
رَسُولًا يُبَيِّنُ رِيسَالَ رَبِّهِ لِلَّذِينَ عَلِمُوا الْحَقَّ مِنَ رَبِّهِمْ ۚ

-It is not possible for any human being that Allaah should speak to him unless... He sends a messenger, so He inspires him with what He wills...
[42:5]

This messenger was sometimes seen by the Prophet (ﷺ) and sometimes hidden. The messenger whom Allaah chose to communicate with His prophets was the Angel Jibreel. Allaah says,

مَنْ كَانَتْ عِندَهُ لَاجِبَةٌ فَلْيُفَسِّرْهَا عَنْ قَلْبِكَ بِإِذْنِ اللَّهِ

-Whoever is an enemy to Jibreel (let him perish), for indeed he has brought this (Qur'aan) down to your heart, by Allaah's permission- [2:97]

In another verse,

وَقُلْتُ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ﴿٢٠﴾ تَكْوِيمُ الْوَحْيِ
الَّذِينَ ﴿٢١﴾ عَنْ قَلْبِكَ لِنُكَوِّرَ مِنَ السَّوْدِيِّ ﴿٢٢﴾

-And truly this (the Qur'aan) is a Revelation from the Lord of the Worlds, which the Trustworthy Spirit (Jibreel) brought down, Upon your heart (O Muhammad) that you may be among the winners- [26:192-194]

When the Prophet (ﷺ) saw Jibreel for the first time, his wife Khadeejah took him to her uncle, Waraqah ibn Nawfal, who had converted to Christianity, and was knowledgeable of the Torah and Injeel. After the Prophet (ﷺ) informed him of what he had

seen, Waraqah told him, "This (angel) is the same one, the *Nawwas* (Keeper of Secrets), whom Allaah sent to Moses!"¹²¹

When discussing this concept of *sawg*, it is essential to discuss two types of inspiration: firstly, how Allaah inspires Jibreel with the Qur'aan, and, secondly, how Jibreel inspired the prophets, and specifically the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ).

The Revelation of the Qur'aan to the Angels

In the last chapter, the Qur'aan as the *kalām* of Allaah was discussed, and the fact that Allaah spoke the Qur'aan in a manner that is befitting Him, not similar or comparable to the speech of humans, was proven. It was also discussed that the *kalām* of Allaah can be heard, contrary to the beliefs of some of the innovated sects. Therefore, the belief of the *Ahl al-Sunnah wa al-Jamā'ah* is that Jibreel heard the Qur'aan directly from Allaah, as the *kalām* of Allaah.

The Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Whenever Allaah desires to inspire a matter (to His servants), He speaks with the inspiration, and (because of this) the heavens themselves shake out of fear of Allaah. When the people of the Heaven (i.e., the angels) hear of it, they fall down in a swoon and prostrate to Him. The first one to raise his head is Jibreel, and Allaah speaks to him with the inspiration that He wishes. Then Jibreel passes by the angels; whenever he goes by any heaven, the angels of that heaven ask him, 'What did our Lord say, O Jibreel?' He answers, 'He has Spoken the Truth, and He is the Most High, the Most Great.'¹²² This *ḥadeeth* is explicit in that "...Allaah speaks to him with the inspiration."

Apart from the proofs from the Qur'aan and *Sunnah* that were quoted above (in the section concerning the *kalām* of Allaah), there exist narrations from such scholars as Imam ash-Shaafi'ee (d. 204 A.H.), Imam Maalik (d. 179 A.H.), and al-Bukhaaree (d. 256 A.H.) concerning this point.¹²³ Imam Ahmad (d. 241 A.H.) was also very explicit on this point, for he said, "Jibreel heard the Qur'aan from Allaah, and the Prophet (ﷺ) heard the Qur'aan from Jibreel, and the Companions of the Prophet (ﷺ) heard the Qur'aan from the Prophet (ﷺ). Therefore, the Qur'aan is uncreated."¹²⁴

Imam al-Bayhaqee (d. 458 A.H.), said in explaining the verse,

إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ فِي لَيْلِ الْقَدْرِ ﴿١﴾

"Verily, We have revealed it in the Night of Decrees" [97:1]

[121] Reported in al-Bukhaaree.

[122] Reported by al-Bukhaaree, Ibn Khayyimah, al-Tabarani, and others. This *ḥadeeth* is in reference to the verse, "Until, when fear is removed from their (the angel's) hearts, they say, 'What did your Lord say?' They answer, 'The truth, and He is the Most High, the Most Great'" [34:23].

[123] cf. Baihaqi, pgs. 138-147, where he quotes over a dozen scholars on this one issue.

[124] Reported by al-Khatib, # 1779.

This verse means – and Allaah knows best – ‘We made our angels hear it and understand it, and revealed with him what he heard, and so the angel descended with the revelation from a higher place (the skies) to a lower one (the earth)’¹²⁵.

However, some scholars claimed that Jibreel took the Qur’aan from the *Laḥq al-Maḥfooḍ* (The Protected Tablet).¹²⁶ Those who follow this opinion use the verses in the Qur’aan that allude to the *Laḥq al-Maḥfooḍ* (which will be discussed in the next chapter). These evidences, however, do not explicitly mention that Jibreel took the Qur’aan from the *Laḥq al-Maḥfooḍ*. Other scholars, primarily those of the Ash’arees, claimed that Jibreel was inspired the meaning of the Qur’aan, but the wording is either from Jibreel or Muḥammad (ﷺ). This opinion is rejected outright, for its adherents deny what Allaah has affirmed for Himself, namely that the Qur’aan is His *ḳalaam* that He Spoke in a manner and way that befits Him. To say that the wording of the Qur’aan is from Jibreel or Muḥammad (ﷺ) denies the whole concept of the *ḳalaam* of Allaah, and of the miraculous nature of the Qur’aan. In fact, this type of inspiration is for the *Samsah* of the Prophet (ﷺ) only, and not for the Qur’aan, as shall be explained shortly.

The Revelation of the Qur’aan to the Prophet (ﷺ) from Jibreel

After Jibreel heard the Qur’aan from Allaah, he communicated this to the Prophet (ﷺ). This occurred in one of two ways.

1) The revelation came to the Prophet (ﷺ) in a very severe manner, like the ringing of a bell. This was the hardest for the Prophet (ﷺ), and it is reported that he used to break into a sweat, even on very cold nights, when he was being inspired. After this state passed, the Prophet (ﷺ) remembered what was inspired to him. As the Qur’aan says,

إِنَّا نُنزِّلُ الْكَلَامَ فَرًّا

‘Indeed We shall send down to you a heavy speech’ (76:3)

2) Jibreel took on the form of a man and came to the Prophet (ﷺ). This type of inspiration was easier for the Prophet (ﷺ).

The proof for these two methods is found in the *ḥadeeth* of ‘Aa’ishah, in which she stated that Huraith ibn Hisham asked the Prophet (ﷺ), “O Allaah’s Messenger! How is the divine message revealed to you?” He (ﷺ) responded, “Sometimes it comes to me like the ringing of a bell. This form is the hardest on me, and this state passes off after I have grasped what is inspired. Sometimes the angel comes to me in the form of a man and talks to me, and I grasp what he says.”¹²⁷

¹²⁵ Darussalam, p. 62

¹²⁶ See Ch. 4, under ‘The Stages of Revelation’, for a more detailed discussion of the *Laḥq al-Maḥfooḍ*.

¹²⁷ Narrated by al-Bukhaari

Therefore, in the first case, the angel would remain in its angelic form, and the state of the Prophet (ﷺ) would change so that he (ﷺ) could communicate with the angel, and this state was difficult for him. In the second case, the angel would change from his angelic being to a human form, and communicate with the Prophet (ﷺ). Since the Prophet (ﷺ) remained as he was, this type of inspiration was easier for him.¹²⁸ However, in both cases, the Prophet (ﷺ) explained that he clearly understood the inspiration, for he (ﷺ) said after explaining each of the two types of inspiration, "...and I grasp what he says."

In the beginning of his prophethood, the Prophet (ﷺ) was fearful of forgetting the verses that Jibreel recited to him, so he (ﷺ) used to quickly repeat after Jibreel, even before Jibreel had finished his recitation. At this, Allaah revealed,

لَا تَعْزِفْ فِى لِسَانِكَ بِأَرْبَعٍ أَوْ خَمْسٍ
مِّنَ آيَاتِ الْقُرْآنِ فَنَقْبَذْهُ
فَمَا يَكُونُ لَكَ بِهِ حِمْلٌ ۚ

«Do not move your tongue with haste concerning [the Qur'aan], it is for Us to collect it and fence it. After we have recited it to you, then follow its recital» [75:16-18]

The Prophet (ﷺ) was assured that he would not forget the Qur'aan, so there was no need for him to hasten in repeating after the angel.

وَلَا تَسْخَرِ الْقُرْآنَ مِنْ قَبْلِ أَنْ
يُنْزِلَ إِلَيْكَ وَخُذْ حِفْظًا

«And do not be in haste (in taking) the Qur'aan (from the angel) before its inspiration is completed to you, and say, 'My Lord! Increase my knowledge'» [26:114]

There are no reported incidents where Jibreel came in the form of a man and inspired the Prophet (ﷺ) in front of the Companions or any other bystanders. Although the Companions saw Jibreel on a number of occasions in the form of a man, he never inspired the Prophet (ﷺ) with the Qur'aan on these occasions. Thus it may be surmised that when Jibreel came to the Prophet (ﷺ) in this form, with the *wasay*, only the Prophet (ﷺ) could see him.

Jibreel also came to the Prophet (ﷺ) in his natural form, without taking on a different shape. This occurred three times, once in the Cave of Hira' when the first revelation came down, once shortly afterwards (probably the second or third revelation) and once on the Night of *al-Ibraa' wa al-Mi'raa'*.¹²⁹ The Prophet (ﷺ) reported

[128] Cf. Qasas, p. 39. The scholar Ibn Khaldun (d. 1406 AH) is also quoted on this point of communication. However, it should be kept in mind that the exact nature of this communication will never be known in mankind, and as such the investigation into, and commentary on, this subject should be kept limited.

[129] Cf. Ubaydaan, p. 34-36. Some scholars claim that the Prophet (ﷺ) saw Jibreel in his natural form only twice, and this is based on an authentic report.

that Jibreel had six hundred wings, and that Jibreel was so large that he reached the heavens in height.¹⁵⁰

It might be asked: Was Jibreel the only angel that the Prophet (ﷺ) communicated with? The answer is that the Prophet (ﷺ) communicated with a number of different angels, but the only angel whose name is mentioned with regards to the revelation of the Qur'aan is Jibreel. For example, Ibn 'Abbaas reports that once Jibreel was sitting with the Prophet (ﷺ), when they heard a sound from above. Jibreel said, "This is (the sound of) a door from the skies, it has never opened until today." An angel came down to them, and Jibreel said, "This angel has come down to the earth, it has never come down before today." The angel gave his *salaams* to them, and said to the Prophet (ﷺ), "I give you glad tidings of two lights that you have been given, which have not been given to any prophet before you: The Opening of the Book (i.e., Soorah al-Faati'hah), and the last verses of Soorah al-Baqarah, you shall not read any word in it except that you will be granted it."¹⁵¹ Also, there are narrations in which the Prophet (ﷺ) informed the Companions that the angels had whispered in his heart certain statements. Therefore, although Jibreel was not the only angel whom the Prophet (ﷺ) communicated with, to the best of our knowledge he is the only angel that came with the Qur'aan. This agrees with the description that is given of the Qur'aan,

وَقَدْ نَزَّلْنَاهُ بِالْحَقِّ ۖ وَإِنَّا لَهُ لَنَزَّادُونَ ﴿١٩٢﴾
نَزَّلْنَاهُ بِالنُّزُلِ ۖ وَلَوْ أَنَّهُ لَكُنَّ عَيْنَ ۖ

«And this (Qur'aan) is a Revelation from the Lord of the world, which the
trustworthy Angel (Jibreel) has brought down- [26:192-193]

In other words, Jibreel brought down all of the Qur'aan.

The effect that the revelation process had on the Prophet (ﷺ) has been recorded in a number of *hadiths*. 'As'ishah narrates, "Sometimes the revelations would descend upon the Prophet (ﷺ) on a very cold morning, and his forehead would gladden with sweat."¹⁵²

'Ubaadah ibn al-Saamit reported that whenever the *wahy* descended upon the Prophet (ﷺ), the significance and importance that he gave (to the inspiration) could be seen, and his face became slightly pale. Also, the Prophet (ﷺ) would lower his head during the inspiration process, and the Companions, due to their love for the Prophet (ﷺ), would also lower their heads, until the revelation had ended.¹⁵³

The Companions were eager to witness the revelation upon the Prophet (ﷺ). It was only natural that they would be so curious about witnessing such a rare phenomenon. Sa'faan ibn Ya'la ibn Umayyah reported that his father, Ya'la ibn Umayyah used to say (during the Prophet's (ﷺ) lifetime), "How I wish I could see the Prophet (ﷺ) while the *wahy* comes down to him!" So, one day, the Prophet (ﷺ) was at a

150. *al-Ashjaq, 'Asiree al-Mala'ikah* p. 11

151. Reported by Muslim.

152. Reported by Muslim.

153. Reported by Muslim.

place called) If'raanah, when a person came to him and said, "O Messenger of Allaah! What is the ruling for one who enters into the state of *ih'raam*!" while his clothes are soaked in perfume?" So the Prophet (ﷺ) waited for a while, until the inspiration came to him. Umar'ibn al-Kh'attab motioned to Ya'la, "Come quickly!" so Ya'la came and stuck his head into the Prophet's (ﷺ) tent to see him! He saw the Prophet (ﷺ), his face was red (due to the inspiration), and he stayed like that for some time, then it was lifted off from him, and he called the questioner and said, "As for the perfume on you body, then wash yourself three times, and as for your clothes, then replace them (with non-scented ones)...."¹³⁴ This narration shows the extreme desire that the Companions had to see the Prophet (ﷺ) during this state, and also demonstrates the difficulty of the revelation process on the Prophet (ﷺ).

To summarise the various types of inspiration, it is appropriate to quote Ibn al-Qayyim's (d. 751 A.H.) classification of the types of *wahy*.¹³⁵

- 1) True dreams, such as those experienced by the Prophet (ﷺ) before his prophethood.
- 2) The inspiration that used to be whispered into the Prophet's (ﷺ) heart by the angels, such as his (ﷺ) statement, "Verily, the Holy Spirit has whispered in my heart that a person will never die until his (preordained) time comes..."¹³⁷
- 3) The angel used to come to him in the form of a human and speak with him.
- 4) The inspiration used to come to him like the ringing of a bell.
- 5) He (ﷺ) used to see the angel in the original form that the angel was created in.
- 6) What Allaah inspired in him (ﷺ) directly, when he was above the seven skies in his journey of *al-law'aa wa al-Mir'aaaj*.
- 7) What Allaah Spoke to him directly, just like He spoke to Moosaa, and this also occurred in his (ﷺ) journey of *al-law'aa wa al-Mir'aaaj*.

The revelation of the Qur'aan occurred by the third, fourth and fifth methods only.

iv. The Difference Between the Qur'aan and Hadeeth Qudsee

A *hadeeth Qudsee* is a *hadeeth* in which the Prophet (ﷺ) narrates a statement from Allaah. For example, the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Allaah said, 'O My servants, I have made injustice *haram* for Me, and have made it *haram* between you also, so do not be unjust to one another.'"¹³⁸

¹³⁴ The state that a person who desires to perform the major or minor pilgrimage must enter. During this state, it is not allowed to perfume the body, hence the reason for the question.

¹³⁵ Reported by al-Buldhay'ee.

¹³⁶ Ibn al-Qayyim also mentions an eighth category and that is the inspiration from Allaah to the Prophet (ﷺ) without any barrier between them, but this category is one that has never occurred. cf. *Zaaf' al-Ma'ad*, v. 1, p. 18.

¹³⁷ Ibn Na'ayim in his *Hidya*, see *Sahih al-Jaw'z*, #2087.

¹³⁸ Reported by Muslim.

There are a number of differences between *ḥadeeth Qudsee* and the Qur'aan:

- 1) The primary difference that is given by most scholars is that the Qur'aan is the Speech of Allaah, revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ) in meaning and wording. Thus, the Qur'aan is from Allaah even in wording. *Ḥadeeth Qudsee*, according to many scholars, is only from Allaah in meaning.¹³⁹
Therefore, the Qur'aan is attributed directly to Allaah. It is said, 'Allaah said...' with regards to a verse of the Qur'aan, but this cannot be used for a *ḥadeeth Qudsee* without adding the phrase, 'The Prophet (ﷺ) said that Allaah said...'
- 2) The Qur'aan has been put forth as a miracle that can never be imitated in its style, prose or content. It is an open challenge for all of mankind to produce even a chapter similar to it. A *ḥadeeth Qudsee*, on the other hand, has no miraculous nature in it.
- 3) Allaah has promised to preserve the Qur'aan, whereas no such promise exists for the *ḥadeeth Qudsee*.
- 4) The Qur'aan has reached us in *mutawatteeir* chains of narration. There is no difference of opinion over the Qur'aan; all scholars are in agreement as to what its verses and letters are. *Ḥadeeth Qudsee*, on the other hand, mainly exist in the form of *ahad* (i.e., non-*mutawatteeir*) *ḥadeeth*. There are authentic, weak and even fabricated *ḥadeeth Qudsee*,¹⁴⁰ for it is still a *ḥadeeth* that must be checked with all the rules of the scholars of *ḥadeeth*.
- 5) It is an act of worship to recite the Qur'aan, whereas this is not the case for a *ḥadeeth Qudsee*. The person who reads *ḥadeeth Qudsee* will be rewarded for seeking knowledge, just as if he read other *ḥadeeth*. The recitation of the Qur'aan, on the other hand, is an act of worship in and of itself.

This point also implies that a *ḥadeeth Qudsee* cannot be read in prayers, and if done so then such a prayer will not be valid. Only the Qur'aan may be recited in prayer.

¹³⁹ This is the opinion that almost all authors of *al-hikmah al-Qur'aaniyyah* quote. Some scholars, however, say that even the wording of *ḥadeeth Qudsee* is from Allaah, and this is the opinion that this author inclines towards. The reason is that most of the authors of the works of *al-hikmah al-Qur'aaniyyah* have been Ash'arites, and the opinion that *ḥadeeth Qudsee* are inspired in meaning, and are not the actual *kalimat* of Allaah (words of the Ash'arite faith). There is absolutely no proof to show that the words of the *ḥadeeth Qudsee* are not from Allaah. When the Prophet (ﷺ) says, 'Allaah says...', it should be held upon its literal, apparent meaning, namely that Allaah actually spoke these words, and the Prophet (ﷺ) was inspired these words; and Allaah knows best. However, the wordings of the *ḥadeeth Qudsee* have not been promised to be preserved by Allaah (in contrast to the Qur'aan); only their meanings have been preserved. Therefore, the same *ḥadeeth Qudsee* is found in different works of *ḥadeeth* with different wordings. The Qur'aan, on the other hand, has been preserved in wording and meaning.

¹⁴⁰ There have also been attempts to fabricate Qur'aanic recitations (see Ch. 11 for further details), but the difference is that these reported recitations of the Qur'aan are agreed upon by all the scholars. Certain *ḥadeeth Qudsee*, on the other hand, are subject to a difference of opinion over their authenticity, just like other *ḥadeeth*.

It should be mentioned that all of the *hadith* of the Prophet (ﷺ), whether they are *Qudsi* or not, are a type of inspiration sent down to him. As the Qur'aan says,

وَمَا يَنْطَلِقُ مِنَ الْمُنْمُونِ إِلَّا وَرَيْنَا يُخَالِفُ

«And he (ﷺ) does not speak of his own desire; rather it is only a revelation sent down to him» [51:3-4]

This verse does not speak only of the Qur'aan but also of the *Sunnah*. The Prophet (ﷺ) said, 'Verily, I was given the Qur'aan and something equivalent to it (i.e., the *Sunnah*)'.¹⁴¹ Since the Prophet (ﷺ) said, '...I was given...' this implies that his (ﷺ) *Sunnah* is also a type of inspiration.

The difference, therefore, between the Qur'aan and the *Sunnah* is that the Qur'aan is the Speech of Allaah, inspired to the Prophet (ﷺ) in wording and meaning, whereas the *Sunnah* is the speech of Muhammad (ﷺ), inspired only in meaning. Even though the *Sunnah* is an integral part of Islamic belief and law, and its meanings safeguarded by Allaah, the Qur'aan is superior to it since it is the actual *kalimat* of Allaah.

141. Reported by Abi Dawood, al-Tirmidhi and Aghmad

GRADUAL REVELATION



The Qur'aan was revealed gradually over a period of twenty-three years. The procedure of the *wahy* that the Prophet (ﷺ) received was discussed in the previous chapter. This chapter now seeks to explain the piece-meal revelation of the Qur'aan to the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ). This topic includes the various stages of revelation of the Qur'aan, and the wisdom behind its gradual revelation.

Before discussing the revelation of the Qur'aan to the Prophet (ﷺ), it should be mentioned that the revelations to the previous prophets were not gradual like the revelation of the Qur'aan. Rather, each previous Scripture was given to the particular prophet all at once. This is why the people at the time of the Prophet (ﷺ) were surprised that the Qur'aan was being revealed piece-meal, as the Qur'aan says,

وَقَالَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا لَوْلَا نُزِّلَ عَلَيْهِ الْقُرْآنُ جُمْلَةً
 وَاحِدَةً كَذَلِكَ لِيُثَبِّتَ بِهِ فُؤَادَكَ وَرَتَّلْنَاهُ تَرْتِيلًا ﴿٢٥﴾

‘Those who disbelieve ask, “Why is not the Qur’aan revealed all at once?”
 Thus (it is sent down in parts) so that We may strengthen your heart, and
 We have revealed it to you, gradually, in stages- [25:32]

Another proof for this fact is that Moosaa was given the Torah all at once, as mentioned in the Qur'aan (7:144-154).¹⁴²

1. The Stages of Revelation

The vast majority of scholars hold the opinion that the process of revelation occurred in three distinct stages:

THE FIRST STAGE

The Qur'aan, the Speech of Allaah,¹⁴³ was written on the *Lauh al-Mahfûoogh*, or the Preserved Tablet, which is with Allaah, all Praise be to Him. The *Lauh al-Mahfûoogh*

[142] cf. Eisenwald for a more detailed discussion, v1, p.40-42

[143] See “The Qur’aan as the Speech of Allaah” in Ch. 2. Note the difference between this point, and the belief of the Ash’ariyy. The Ash’ariyy claim that the Arabic Qur’aan did not exist until it was written and existed in the *Lauh al-Mahfûoogh*, whereas Ahl’al-Sunnah claim that the Qur’aan existed without any beginning (from eternity) as the *qalam* of Allaah, and was written in the *Lauh al-Mahfûoogh* before the creation of the world.

is the Tablet upon which all of the things that will happen from the creation of the Heavens and Earth, until the end of time, are written. The Prophet (ﷺ) said, "The first thing that Allaah created was the Pen. He said to it, "Write!" It responded, "O My Lord! And what shall I write?" Allaah said, "Write the destiny of all things, until the Day of Judgement."¹⁴⁴ This writing occurred and was preserved on the *Lauh al-Mahfooth*.

Therefore, included in the *Lauh al-Mahfooth* is the text of the Qur'aan. The method of this writing, and when it occurred, is known only to Allaah. The fact that the Qur'aan is written on the *Lauh al-Mahfooth* is mentioned in the Qur'aan itself:

لَا تُحِيطُونَ بِشَيْءٍ إِلَّا أَوْحَىٰ إِلَيْنَا ۖ وَأَنزَلْنَآ إِلَيْكَ الْكِتَآبَ الْحَكِيمَ ﴿١٧﴾

«Nay! This is indeed a Glorious Qur'aan! (Described) in the *Lauh al-Mahfooth*» [85:21-2]

and also,

إِنَّا نَقُودُهُ كَتَمٌ ﴿٧٧﴾ فِي كِتَابٍ مَّكْنُونٍ ﴿٧٨﴾

«And this is indeed a Noble Qur'aan, in a Book well-guarded (i.e., the *Lauh al-Mahfooth*)» [56:77-78]

Part of the wisdom of this stage is to prove to the believers the authenticity of the Qur'aan, as it was written down even before its revelation, in a place that guarantees its safety. This is also a manifestation of the infinite knowledge of Allaah, as the *Lauh al-Mahfooth* has written on it all the commands and decrees of Allaah. The Qur'aan describes the *Lauh al-Mahfooth* as having everything – small or big – recorded on it (54/53).

THE SECOND STAGE

From the *Lauh al-Mahfooth*, Allaah revealed the Qur'aan to the lower heavens, in a place called "The House of Honour" (*al-Bayt al-'Izzah*). This revelation occurred in Ramaadhaan, on the Night of Decree (*Laylat al-Qadr*). The proof for this is found in some verses of the Qur'aan, and the statements of the Companions

The Qur'aan states,

شَهْرُ رَمَضَانَ الَّذِي أُنْزِلَ فِيهِ الْقُرْآنُ

«The month of Ramaadhaan is the month in which the Qur'aan was revealed» [2:185]

and it also states,

إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ فِي لَيْلَةِ الْقَدْرِ ﴿١﴾

¹⁴⁴ Reported by Abaa Dawood. See Shaah 'Azzadeh at *Tahqeeqiyah*, p. 264, for further details.

«We have sent it (the Qur'aan) down, on a Blessed Night» [44:3]

The Qur'aan later specifies this Blessed Night as,

﴿إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ فِي لَيْلَةِ الْقَدْرِ﴾

«We have sent it down in the Night of Decree» [97:1]

These verses specify that the entire Qur'aan was sent down in the month of Ramadhan, and specifically on the Night of Decree.

Explaining these verses, Ibn 'Abbaas said, "The whole Qur'aan was sent down to the lower heavens on the Night of Decree. Then, whenever Allaah wished to inspire something (from the Qur'aan), He would inspire it,"¹⁴⁵ and in another narration, "...it was then revealed piece-meal over a period of twenty years."¹⁴⁶ Other narrations from Ibn 'Abbaas mention that the place the Qur'aan was revealed to is called *Bayt al- Tass*, or, "The House of Honour."¹⁴⁷

It is seen that, in this revelation, the whole Qur'aan was sent down in one night. The famous scholar, Imaam Aboo Shaamah, (d. 665 A.H.) wrote,¹⁴⁸

If I were asked: What is the secret of the revelation of the Qur'aan to the lower heavens? The response is: In its revelation is a sign of the eminence and excellence of the Book, and of the one whom it was revealed to. This is because it is an indication to the inhabitants of the heavens (the angels) that this Book is the last of all books (to be revealed), revealed to the last of all prophets, to the best of all nations. It has been made close to them so that it can be revealed to them. And were it not for the fact that the Wisdom of Allaah was not to reveal the Book at once, it would have been revealed all at once, just as the previous Scriptures were revealed all at once, but instead Allaah decided to honour the Prophet (ﷺ), and differentiate between him and the other prophets (by causing the Qur'aan to be revealed piece-meal.) Therefore, (by this initial descent to the lower heavens) Allaah combined the two matters together. He made the Prophet (ﷺ) similar to the other prophets (in the sense that the Qur'aan was revealed at once to the lower heavens, like the previous books), and He honoured him (ﷺ) (by causing it to be revealed piece-meal after that).

In other words, this initial descent of the Qur'aan to the lower heavens was similar to the revelation of the previous Scriptures, since it was done at once; therefore in this aspect the Prophet (ﷺ) shared the same procedure of revelation as the other prophets had. Yet, the Prophet (ﷺ) also had the superiority of having the Qur'aan revealed piece-meal over a period of twenty-three years.

¹⁴⁵ Narrated by al-Jahwar and al-Hakim.

¹⁴⁶ Narrated by al-Jahwar, al-Nasaa'i and al-Haqqaf.

¹⁴⁷ Dr. Saïïd Saïïd, in his *Mahabul fi Uloom al-Qur'aan*, p. 51, denies these two stages, stating that since these narrations do not go back to the Prophet (ﷺ), we cannot accept them. However, this knowledge cannot be denied through *ghayb* (personal reasoning), therefore Ibn 'Abbaas must have heard this from the Prophet (ﷺ), and this narration takes on the status of *mutawatir* ('a *jaahid* that has originated from the Prophet (ﷺ)).

¹⁴⁸ Razamook, p. 44.

THE THIRD STAGE

The final stage of revelation was alluded to by Ibn 'Abbaas in his previous narration. In this stage, Jibreel brought those portions of the Qur'aan which Allaah commanded him to bring. The Qur'aan refers to this revelation in many verses. In one verse, Allaah says,

وَقَدْ نَزَّلْنَاهُ بِالْحَقِّ ۖ وَإِنَّا لَهُ لَنَكِيرٌ ﴿١٩١﴾
 وَإِنَّا لَهُ لَنَكِيرٌ ﴿١٩٢﴾ مَرْسُومًا ۖ وَمَوْجُودًا ﴿١٩٣﴾
 الْآخِرُ ﴿١٩٤﴾ مَقْلُوبًا يَوْمَ الْقِيَامِ ۖ وَالْأَوَّلُ ﴿١٩٥﴾

«And truly this (Qur'aan) is a revelation from the Lord of the Worlds, Which the trustworthy Spirit (Angel Jibreel) has brought down, Upon Your heart (O Muhammad), so that you may be one of the warners- [20:192-4]

The procedure by which the Qur'aan was inspired to the Prophet (ﷺ) has already been discussed in the previous chapter.

This gradual revelation occurred over a period of twenty-three years, according to the strongest opinion. Some scholars hold this period to be twenty years, and yet another group twenty five. The reason for this difference is the fact that the age of the Prophet (ﷺ) is itself a subject of dispute; the narrations state it variously to be sixty, sixty three, or sixty five years. All scholars, however, agree that he spent ten years in Madaanah, and that his prophethood began when he (ﷺ) was forty. The difference, therefore, revolves around how many years he stayed in Makkah before the Hijrah. However, the strongest opinion, and the opinion that is widespread among the Muslims, is that he (ﷺ) passed away at the age of sixty-three, which would then imply that the period in which the Qur'aan was sent down was twenty-three years.

It should be remembered that the Qur'aan is the Speech of Allaah, as has been elaborated and discussed in the previous chapter. Therefore, it is incorrect to use the narrations of Ibn 'Abbaas which allude to the *Laah al-Mahfooth* to negate the fact that Jibreel heard the Qur'aan from Allaah. These narrations do not mention that Jibreel took the Qur'aan from the *Laah al-Mahfooth*; in fact, the narration is explicit in that Allaah would 'inspire' the portion of the Qur'aan that He wished to reveal. The process of inspiration to the angels was discussed, and it was shown that Jibreel heard the Qur'aan from Allaah. In other words, what Jibreel recited to the Prophet (ﷺ) were the words that Allaah Spoke to him.

Some scholars, however, have inferred from these narrations that Jibreel took the Qur'aan from the *Laah al-Mahfooth*. As for the *Ash'aari*, most of them claimed that this was the *only* method by which Jibreel received the Qur'aan. This opinion is rejected immediately, as this denies the whole concept of the Qur'aan being the actual *Speech* of Allaah. However, other scholars stated that Jibreel heard the Qur'aan from Allaah *and* took the Qur'aan from the *Laah al-Mahfooth*. Whether Jibreel also took the Qur'aan from the *Laah al-Mahfooth* or not, is, as az-Zarqaanee stated, "...not of great importance, as long as we are sure the source of revelation is Allaah alone."¹²⁹

Tampering of the Revelation?

The possibility that the revelation of the Qur'aan might have been tampered or changed during the revelation process is ruled out by Allaah, so no doubt can remain with regards to its authenticity.

Firstly, the trustworthiness of Jibreel has been guaranteed by Allaah. Allaah describes the angels in general as,

لَا يَسْبِقُونَهُ الْقَوْلُ وَهُمْ بِالْأَمْرِ يَعْملُونَ ﴿٢٧﴾

«They do not speak until He has spoken, and they act on His Commands» [21:27]

meaning that they do not disobey Allaah. Allaah then praises Jibreel in particular, and calls him the

الرَّحْمَنُ الْأَمِينُ ﴿١٠٢﴾

«trustworthy Spirit» [26:193]

meaning that Jibreel was trustworthy in revealing the Qur'aan to the Prophet (ﷺ).

Secondly, as the Prophet (ﷺ) was chosen by Allaah to be the recipient of the Qur'aan, Allaah assured him that he (ﷺ) would not forget or miss any verse. When the Prophet (ﷺ) used to humbly recite the verses from Jibreel, in fear that he might forget, Allaah revealed,

لَا تَنْهَوْنِي عَنْ الْقُرْآنِ وَإِن تَوَلَّوْا فَإِنِّي أَخَذْتُ الْقُرْآنَ بِحُسْنِ الدِّعْوَةِ ﴿٨٦﴾
وَأَنذَرْتُكُمْ نَارًا تَلَظَّى ﴿٨٧﴾

«Move not your tongue concerning [the Qur'aan] to make haste therewith. It is for Us to collect it, and to give you (O Muhammad) the ability to recite it.¹⁵⁰ And when We have recited it to you, then follow its recital» [79: 86-87]

The Prophet (ﷺ) was instructed to be patient, and allow Jibreel to finish his recitation before he (ﷺ) should start reciting.

Thirdly, after having ensured that the Prophet (ﷺ) memorised the revelation, Allaah then ordered him to convey the revelation that he (ﷺ) had been given, and told him that a failure on his part to do so would mean a failure in his mission as a Prophet.

يَا أَيُّهَا الرُّسُولُ نَبِّئْ مَا أُرْزِلَ إِلَيْكَ مِنْ رَبِّكَ وَإِن لَّمْ تَفْعَلْ لَمَّ يَتَسَاءَلُوا

«O Messenger! Proclaim [the message] which has been sent down to you from your Lord. If you do not do so, then you have not conveyed His message!» [5:67]

Fourthly, Allaah even ruled out the possibility that the Prophet (ﷺ) might tamper with the message deliberately, for He said,

^[150] This verse can also read, 'It is for Us to collect it and bring it to you.'

وَمَا يَذْكُرُ مِنَ الْقَوْلِ إِلَّا مَوْحًى مِنْ بَيْنِ يَدَيْهِ ۚ (١٣٣)

«And he (Muhammad) does not speak from his own desire, it is only an inspiration that is inspired» [73:3-4]

قُلْ مَا يَكُونُ لِي
أَنْ أَسْأَلَ سِوَهُنَّ بِالنَّبِيِّ إِنْ أُنْزِلَ إِلَيَّ إِلَّا بِمَا يُوحَى ۚ

«Say (O Muhammad). 'It is not for me to charge it (the Qur'aan) from my own desire. I only follow that which is revealed to me'» [10:15]

In another verse, a severe punishment is promised for forging any revelation.

وَلَوْ نَزَّلْنَاهُ عَلَىٰ أَحَدٍ مِنْ دُونِكَ أَتَىٰ لُغُوبًا ۚ (١٣٤)
يَوْمَ نَخْتَصِمُكَ الْوَجْهَ ۚ (١٣٥)

«And if he (Muhammad) had forged a false saying, attributing it to Us, We surely would have seized him by his right hand, and then certainly have cut off his life string!» [69:44-6]

Therefore, the Qur'aan has been preserved safely, and no doubt can be cast on its authenticity. The Qur'aan – as the *kalām* of Allaah – existed from eternity. It was then written in the *Lahq al-Mahfūdh*, in a protected, well-guarded Tablet. During the month in which the Prophet (ﷺ) began his mission, the Qur'aan was sent down to the lower heavens. The trustworthy Angel Jibreel, after he had heard the Qur'aan from Allaah, then revealed it to the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ), who preserved it faithfully, without any alteration, and who then passed it on to mankind.

THE QUANTITY OF REVELATION

A question that arises is the quantity of Qur'aan that Jibreel used to come with to the Prophet (ﷺ) in each revelation. As-Suyootee (d. 911 A.H.) discusses this question and concludes:

It can be inferred from (combining) the authentic narrations, and other evidences that the (quantity) of the Qur'aan revealed would depend on the particular situation, five verses, or ten verses, or more, or less. The revelation of ten verses during the story of 'As'ishah has been authenticated, as has the revelation of a small part of a verse.

عَدَّ أَزْوَاجَ الْقُرْآنِ

«...except those who are disabled.» [4:95]

As for those narrations that explicitly mention only five verses, such as the report in Ibn 'Asakir that [the Companion] Abaa Sa'eed al-Khudree would teach his students five verses in the morning and five in the evening, and say, 'Jibreel used to bring the Qur'aan five verses at a time,' and the report in al-Bayhaque that Umar ibn al-Khattaab said, 'Learn the Qur'aan

five verses at a time, for Jibreel used to come to the Prophet (ﷺ) with five verses at a time,¹⁵⁰ the meaning of these reports is that Jibreel would quote the Prophet (ﷺ) five verses at a time so that he (ﷺ) could memorise them, then he would quote him the rest of the revelation, five verses at a time. This is explained by the narration in al-Bayhaqi in which Khawlid ibn Dinar said, "Musa al-'Adriyah told us to learn the Qur'an five verses at a time, for the Prophet (ﷺ) would take from Jibreel five verses at a time."¹⁵¹

Yet another question is whether the frequency of revelation was the same throughout the Prophet's (ﷺ) life, or did it change?¹⁵²

Towards the end of the Prophet's (ﷺ) life, the revelation increased greatly, so much so that the last years of the prophethood were the years in which most of the revelation occurred. Anas ibn Malik narrates, "Allah increased the *wahy* upon the Prophet (ﷺ) before his death, until before his death, the *wahy* was more than it ever was, then the Prophet (ﷺ) passed away."¹⁵³ Al-Haafidh Ibn Hajar (d. 852 A.H.), commenting on this phenomenon, said,¹⁵⁴

This shows that the time frame in which the Prophet (ﷺ) passed away was the time frame which had the highest frequency of revelations. And the reason for this is that, after the Conquest of Makkah, the delegations that were sent from other tribes to the Prophet (ﷺ) increased, and so did the number of questions pertaining to laws. Therefore, the *wahy* also increased in frequency (to respond to these questions). And this is in contrast to the early period, for, during the beginning of the prophethood, the *wahy* would come occasionally, with breaks in between the revelations. This gradually increased (with time). During the period of Makkah, hardly any of the long *surahs* were revealed. Then, after the *hijrah*, most of the longer *surahs* were revealed, and these contained most of the laws (of the *shari'ah*). And the last part of the prophethood witnessed the highest frequency of revelation, for the reasons outlined above.

II. The Wisdom Behind the Gradual Revelation

If Allah had willed, the Qur'an would have been sent down in its entirety to the Prophet (ﷺ) at the beginning of his prophethood, just like the previous Scriptures. However, this was not the case. The Qur'an in fact refers to its gradual revelation in many verses, and from these verses some of the merits and benefits of this piecemeal revelation can be understood.

Allah says,

وَرَوَاهُ يُقَرِّئُهُ عَلَى النَّاسِ فِي مَكْنٍ وَرَوَاهُ تَوْفِيْقًا

[150] al-Bayhaqi, v. 1, p. 52. The translation has been paraphrased at places.

[152] Reported by al-Bukhari.

[153] Fatah al-Baari, v. 3, p. 8.

«And it (is a) Qur'aan which We have divided (into parts), in order that you might recite it to mankind at intervals. And verily, We have revealed it by stages!» [17:106]

When the disbelievers mocked the gradual revelation of the Qur'aan, and challenged the Prophet (ﷺ) to bring forth the Qur'aan in its entirety, Allaah revealed:

وَقَالَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا تَوَلَّىٰ تَوَلَّىٰ عَنْهُمْ وَقَالَ تَجِدُ الْكَافِرِينَ يَكُونُونَ لَكَ عَدُوًّا مُّبِينًا ۚ وَالَّذِينَ آمَنُوا يَتَّبِعُوكَ سَرًّا ۖ قُلْ نَحْنُ عِبَادٌ خَاشِعُونَ ﴿٣٢﴾

«And those who disbelieve say, 'Why is not the Qur'aan revealed to him all at once?' Thus (it is sent down in parts) that We may strengthen your heart thereby. And We have revealed it to you gradually, in stages» [25:32]

Thus the gradual revelation was considered a blessing that Allaah gave to the Prophet (ﷺ), and to his *ummah*.

Some of the benefits of the gradual revelation are as follows:¹⁵⁴

- 1) To strengthen the resolve of the Prophet (ﷺ) against the disbelievers

The Prophet (ﷺ) was anguished and distressed by the attitude of his people towards his message. They ridiculed and mocked him, and claimed that he was a sorcerer, a madman, or that he was possessed by the *jinn*. Allaah reminds him,

وَلَقَدْ عَلِمْنَا أَنَّهُ بِمَا يَكْفُرُونَ ﴿٩٧﴾

«Indeed, We know that your heart is strangled by what they (the disbelievers) say» [105:97]

By the continual revelation of the Qur'aan to the Prophet (ﷺ), he was reaffirmed in his determination and zeal. This is what Allaah alludes to when He discusses the graduality of the revelation,

حَسْبُكَ اللَّهُ يَتَّبِعُكَ بِمَا يَسُورُ ﴿٣٢﴾

«Thus (it is sent down in parts) that We may strengthen your heart thereby» [25:32]

This can also be seen in the content of the earlier revelations in Makkah, where the stories of the prophets of old are told, and how the prophets dealt with the hardships and torments that they faced from their peoples. In *Soorah Hood*, after mentioning the stories of many prophets, Allaah concludes,

«And all that We relate to you (O Muhammad) of the news of the messengers is in order that We may make your heart strong and firm» [11:120]

¹⁵⁴ cf. Baaze'el, v. 1, p. 45-46, Ubaydun, 98-106, Qattan, 107-117.

There are a number of ways in which the Prophet (ﷺ) was helped by these stories. The Prophet (ﷺ) was told to learn from the lessons of the previous prophets.

فَأَمْرٌكَ كَأَمْرِ الْوَحْيِ مِنَ الْوَحْيِ

«Therefore, be patient (O Muhammad), like the messengers of firm resolution [before you did]» [46:35]

He (ﷺ) was told that the plots of the disbelievers, and all their mockery of Islam, will do no harm to Allaah's Plans.

فَلَا يَحْزَنُ لَكَ قَوْلُهُمْ إِنَّا نَعْلَمُ مَا يُشِيرُونَ

«Do let not their speech grieve you, for verily We know what they counsel and what they reveal» [36:75]

He (ﷺ) was promised help from his Creator,

صَبَّحَتْ لِلَّهِ الْفَاجِرَةُ سَكَنًا وَخَلَّى الْمَدْيَنَ

«Allaah has ordained, 'Verily it is [and the messengers who will be Victory-ous'» [58:21]

And, he (ﷺ) was reassured by the warnings given to the disbelievers by Allaah,

سَيَوْمَ يُنْفَخُ الْأَشْجَارُ وَمِمَّا يُبْقِيانِ الْأُكُودُ

«Verily, these mountains will be put to flight, and they will show their backs (in retreat)» [51:65]

This gradual method of revelation also helped to strengthen the determination of the Companions. These same verses inspired the Companions with courage and patience, and gave them the stamina they needed to withstand the persecution of the idolaters. The Qur'aan says, as was quoted above,

وَلَا تَحْزَنْ

عَنْ يَوْمِ الْآثِمِينَ الْوَحْيُ مَا أَتَيْتُكَ بِهِ فَوَادِّكَ وَجَاءَكَ لِي عَلَيَّ

الْحَقُّ وَسَمِعْتُهُ وَوَقَّرْتَهُ لِيَسْمَعُوا مِنْ

«And all that we relate to you (O Muhammad) of the news of the messengers is in order that We may make your heart strong and firm! And in this has come to you the truth, as well as an admonition and a reminder for the believers» [11:120]

2) To simplify its memorisation and understanding by the Companions.

The piece-meal revelations of the Qur'aan made it easier for the Companions to understand, memorise and implement the portions that were revealed. If the Qur'aan had been revealed all at once, it might have been very difficult for the Companions to understand all of its verses properly. Yet, with gradual revelations, the Companions understood and implemented the Qur'aan correctly.

The Companions adopted the procedure of teaching the Qur'aan to the Successors gradually, even after its revelation had been completed, and its compilation finished. Aboo 'Abd al-Rahmaan al-Sulami (d. 70 A.H.), a very famous Successor, narrates that whenever the people who taught them the Qur'aan, like 'Abdullaah ibn Mas'ood, 'Uthmaan ibn 'Affaan, and others, would learn ten verses of the Qur'aan, they would not proceed onwards until they had learnt whatever concepts and regulations those verses contained. They used to say, "We learn the text of the Qur'aan, and studied its ideas and injunctions all together."¹⁵¹ Another Successor, Aboo Naajrah (d. 109 A.H.), related, "We used to learn from Aboo Sa'eed al-Khudree five verses in the morning, and five in the evening, for he told us that Jibreel used to bring (on average) five verses at a time."¹⁵² Thus, even after the complete revelation of the Qur'aan, the Companions adopted the same gradual approach in teaching it to the later generations. They had learnt the benefits of teaching the Qur'aan gradually from the piecemeal revelation of the Qur'aan.

It can also be said that, had the Qur'aan been revealed all at once, in book form (as the Torah was revealed), it might have led to a feeling of complacency with regards to the preservation of the Qur'aan. Instead, due to the fact that verses were revealed occasionally, there was a strong incentive to ensure that the verses were memorised and written. This was crucial for the preservation of the Qur'aan.

3) To prove the truthfulness of the Prophet (ﷺ)

The idolaters and the People of the Book used to ask the Prophet (ﷺ) questions in order to outwit him, but every time Allaah would reply to their queries. As Ibn 'Abbaas said, "Whenever the disbelievers brought a new question to the Prophet (ﷺ), Allaah would reveal to them an answer (through the Qur'aan)."¹⁵³ The Qur'aan itself refers to this aspect of the revelation,

وَلَا يَأْتِيَنَّكَ مِن يَمِينٍ وَلَا يَمِينٍ لَكَ وَالْحَقُّ وَاحْسَنُ قَوْلًا ﴿١٥٤﴾

«And no example or similitude do they bring (to oppose or to find fault in you) except that We reveal to you the truth (against this similitude), and the better explanation thereof» [25: 15]

There are many examples of such verses; when the idolaters demanded miracles from the Prophet (ﷺ), Allaah revealed,

﴿ وَلَوْ أَقَارَآكَ إِتِمِّمُ السَّاعَةِ وَلَقَدْ هَمُّوا لَنَزَّلْنَاهُ خَشَعًا عَلَيْهِمْ فَلَمَّا عَوَّلُوا فَلَأَوْ يَـمُوتُوا ۚ لَآ أَنشَأَ اللَّهُ لِنَفْسٍ أَحْسَنَ رِفْعَةً يُعْهِدُونَ ﴿١٥٥﴾

¹⁵¹ Ibn Taymiyyah, *Principles*, p. 42.

¹⁵² Qur'aan, p. 110.

¹⁵³ *Ibid.*, p. 110.

«And even if We had sent down unto them angels, and the dead had spoken to them, and We had gathered together all things before their very eyes, they would not have believed unless Allah willed, but most of them believe ignorantly» [6:111]

Included in this category are the answers that the Prophet (ﷺ) gave to the problems that the believers faced. Whenever a situation or crises arose, the Qur'aan would clearly lay out the solution. For example, when Khawlah bint Tha'labah complained to the Prophet (ﷺ) that her husband had made himself unlawful to her,¹³⁸ Allaah revealed,

فَدَسَّعَ اللَّهُ قَوْلَ الْيَتِيمِ الْمَلِكِ رَدَّوْهَا وَتَشْكِرُوا لِلَّهِ
وَأَلْفَسَّعَ عَمَّا رَدَّكَ إِلَيْكَ اللَّهُ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ ﴿١٣٩﴾

«Indeed Allah has heard the statement of the who disputes with you concerning her husband, and complains to Allah. Allah hears the argument between both of you, verily, Allah is All-Hearing, All-Seeing» [38:1]

'Aa'ishah reports, "All praise be to Allah, whose Hearing encompasses all voices! The woman came complaining to the Prophet (ﷺ), and I was sitting in the corner of the room, straining to hear what she was saying (in one narration, I could hear some of it and some of it I could not), and immediately Allaah's revelation came down, 'Indeed Allah has heard the statement of the who disputes with you concerning her husband, and complains to Allah...'"¹³⁹ Even though 'Aa'ishah was sitting in the same room, she was not able to hear the entire conversation, yet Allaah, all Praise be to Him, heard it from above the seven heavens, and immediately sent down these verses to solve the problem between them, and also between all future spouses who face the same problem.

Therefore, the fact that the Qur'aan came down immediately to cater to the questions and problems of the people proved that it was in fact the word of Allaah, revealed through the Prophet (ﷺ).

4) To prove the miraculous nature of the Qur'aan

Indeed, one of the most outstanding miracles of the Qur'aan was that it was revealed over a period of two decades; it answered many questions from believers and idolaters, it catered to a plethora of situations, it solved a wide variety of problems, it frequently commanded the Prophet (ﷺ) and the believers to a course of action, and yet not a single of its six thousand plus verses is contradicted by another! A human-authored book of this size and nature, even if written instantaneously, is invariably

138. The Arabs had a custom known as *ghayr*, in which a man would tell his wife, "You are to me like the back of my mother." This statement meant that the man had taken a vow upon himself not to approach his wife sexually. It was as if the woman had been put in a "suspended" state neither was she divorced so that she could remarry, nor was she a proper wife to the husband. After this particular incident, the Qur'aan prohibited this act (cf. 58:1-30).

139. Narrated by al-Bukhaari.

bound to contain errors and contradictions, how much greater the miracle of the Qur'aan when it is revealed over a period of twenty-three years! To add to its miraculous nature, the order and arrangement of the verses was not done chronologically – rather, the Prophet (ﷺ) would instruct his Companions of the location of any new verses. The Qur'aan was literally assembled out of the fragmental revelations. It was as if an intricate puzzle was perfectly pieced together during a period of over two decades to form a flawless masterpiece.

The Qur'aan challenges,

أَلَمْ يَتَذَكَّرْ أُولَئِكَ الَّذِينَ كَذَبُوا
بِرُسُلِهِمْ أَمْ لَهُمْ عَيْنٌ أَمْ تَبْصَرٌ

‘Do they not ponder over the Qur’aan? For indeed, had it been from other than Allah, they would surely have found many contradictions in it’ (4:82)

5) To reveal the laws of Islaam – the *Shari‘ah* – in a gradual manner

Among the blessings of Allah to the Companions is that He revealed to them the laws of Islaam gradually, and thus made it easier for them to adopt these laws. Initially, there were no specific laws of *halal* and *haram*.¹⁶⁰ The Companions during the Makkan stage were being trained spiritually so that they could form the nucleus of the future Muslim state in Madinah. Once they had passed this stage, Allah then completed the revelation of the *shari‘ah* in gradual steps, so that they could adapt to the lifestyle of Islaam.

It can be seen that the first revelations warned against *shirk*, and proved the existence of Allah through His Creation. These verses called upon the pagans to worship the one true God, and not to call upon others for help and aid. They elaborated the unique concept of *taqwa*, and instilled in the early Muslims the strong faith that they needed to overcome the persecution of the idolaters. Soon after this, revelations came down establishing the basics of worship, and warning against the major sins.¹⁶¹

This fact was stated by ‘Aa’ishah when she commented, “The first revelations only mentioned Heaven and Hell (i.e., the basics of *agreedah*). Eventually, when the people were firm in their conviction of Islaam, Allah revealed the *halal* and the *haram*. If the first verse revealed was, ‘Do not drink wine,’ they would have responded, ‘We will never give up wine!’ And if the first verse revealed was, ‘Do not fornicate,’ they would have responded, ‘We will never give up fornication!’”¹⁶² Thus, the laws of Islaam were revealed gradually, to ease the process of conversion upon the early Muslims.

6) To ease the revelation process on the Prophet (ﷺ).

The process of inspiration, or *wahy*, was a difficult one for the Prophet (ﷺ), as was mentioned in the last chapter. At times, he used to sweat profusely, even on a cold

¹⁶⁰ See Chapter 6, “The *wahy* and *wahyane* Verses,” for further details.

¹⁶¹ For further details on this, see Zaqqarun, v. 1, p. 57.

¹⁶² Narrated by al-Bukhaaree.

night, because of the severity of the inspiration. Had the Qur'aan been revealed all at once, it might have been too difficult for the Prophet (ﷺ) to bear.

To summarise the concept of the gradual revelation, it is appropriate to quote the great scholar and interpreter of the Qur'aan, Abuu al-Fidaa Ismaa'eel ibn 'Umar (d. 774 A.H.), otherwise known as Ibn Kathir, who stated:¹⁴²

And all of this (meaning the concept of the gradual revelation) only shows the concern, and the high status that was given to the Prophet (ﷺ), since the revelation would come to him continually, morning and evening, night and day, at home or while travelling. And every time the angel would come to him with the Qur'aan, unlike the previous prophets, who would be given their books at once. So the status of the Prophet (ﷺ) was greater, and higher, and more magnificent than all of his fellow prophets – may Allaah send His blessing and Mercy to all of them.

The Qur'aan is the most honoured book to be revealed by Allaah, and Muḥammad (ﷺ) is the most honoured prophet that was sent by Allaah. And Allaah combined in the revelation of the Qur'aan the two procedures: He first revealed the Qur'aan all at once, from the *Lauh al-Mahfūdh* to the lower heavens, and He then revealed it to earth gradually, to cater to the situation and needs of the people.

THE FIRST AND THE LAST REVELATIONS



The changing point in the life of the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) – and for all of humanity afterwards – was the occurrence of the first revelation that Allaah communicated to him. From this point onwards, he (ﷺ) had a mission the like of which no human before him had:

لِّنُبَيِّنَ لَّكَ الْقُرْآنَ وَمَنْ حَوْلَهُ

«so that you may warn the Mother of Cities and all that surrounds it» [42:7]

meaning the entire world, or as Ibn Kath r puts it, “all lands east and west”¹⁴⁴ In no unexplicit terms, the Qur’ n lays out the monumental task of the Prophet (ﷺ):

قُلْ
يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ إِنِّي رَسُولُ اللَّهِ إِلَيْكُمْ بِحَبْلِ الْحَقِّ
لَقَدْ كُنَّا السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ

«Say, ‘O Mankind! Verily I am sent to you all as the Messenger of Allaah, to Whom belongs the Domains of the Heavens and the Earth...’» [7:158]

The Prophet (ﷺ) was to be the recipient of the Creator’s final Revelation to Mankind:

وَلَقَدْ أَنزَلْنَا إِلَيْكَ الْكِتَابَ ۖ وَسَكَرْتَ لَهُ
وَالَّذِينَ هُمْ عَنْ آلِهَتِهِمْ كَاذِبُونَ

«And truly, this (Qur’ n) is a Revelation from the Lord of the Worlds, Which the most worthy Spirit (Angel Jibreel) has brought down, Upon Your heart (O Muhammad), so that you may be one of the warners» [36:192-4]

But what was the first revelation that the Prophet (ﷺ) received? And what was the last?

1. The First Revelation

There are four opinions concerning the first verses that the Prophet (ﷺ) received.

- 1) The first five verses of *Suraḥ al-ʿAlaq*:

اقْرَأْ بِاسْمِ رَبِّكَ الَّذِي خَلَقَ ۝
خَلَقَ الْإِنْسَانَ مِنْ عَلَقٍ ۝
اقْرَأْ ۝ وَالرَّبُّ غَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ ۝
الَّذِي عَلَّمَ بِالْقَلَمِ ۝
الَّذِي عَلَّمَ الْإِنْسَانَ مَا لَمْ يَعْلَمْ ۝

-Read! In the Name of your Lord, Who has created (all that exists) Has Created man from a clot. Read! Verily, your Lord is the Most Generous Who has taught (the writings) by the Pen. Has taught man that which he knew not- [96:1-5]

The proof for this opinion is the *ḥadeeth* narrated by al-Bukhaaree from 'Aa'ishah, in which she said, "The commencement of the divine revelation to Allaah's Messenger was in the form of good dreams which came true, like the bright daylight. Then, the love of seclusion was bestowed upon him (ﷺ). He used to go for seclusion to the Cave of Hira'a, where he used to worship Allaah continuously for many days, before his desire to see his family (caused him to return). He used to take with him food for the stay, and then come back to Khadeejah to take his food again, until the truth descended upon him while he was in the Cave of Hira'a. The angel (Jibreel) came to him, and asked him to read. The Prophet (ﷺ) responded, 'I do not know how to read!'

The Prophet (ﷺ) added, "The angel grabbed me (forcibly) and pressed me so hard that I could not bear it any more. He then released me and again asked me to read, and I again replied, 'I do not know how to read!'" Thereupon he caught me for the second time, and pressed me until I could not bear it. He then released me and asked me to read. I again responded, 'I do now know how to read' (in another narration, 'What shall I read?'). Thereupon, he caught me for the third time, and pressed me, and then released me and said,

اقْرَأْ بِاسْمِ رَبِّكَ الَّذِي خَلَقَ ۝
خَلَقَ الْإِنْسَانَ مِنْ عَلَقٍ ۝
اقْرَأْ ۝ وَالرَّبُّ غَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ ۝
الَّذِي عَلَّمَ بِالْقَلَمِ ۝
الَّذِي عَلَّمَ الْإِنْسَانَ مَا لَمْ يَعْلَمْ ۝

-Read! in the name of your Lord, who created. Created man from a clot. Read! And your Lord is the Most Generous- [96:1-5]

This *ḥadeeth* clearly shows that this was the first revelation that the Prophet (ﷺ) received, and it is the correct opinion.

There is also a narration in at-Tabaraanee from Abou Raja al-Uthaardir (d. 105 A.H.), who said, 'Abou Moosa al-Asha'aree used to recite the Qur'aan to us, and we used to sit around him in a circle (to listen to him). He used to wear two white garments. When he came to 'Aqa...' (96:1) he said, "This is the first *suraḥ* to be revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ)."¹⁶³

- 2) *Soorah al-Muddathir*. The proof for this is based on another *hadeeth* in al-Bukhaaree, in which Jaabir ibn 'Abdillah was asked, "What part of the Qur'aan was revealed the first?" He replied, "

﴿قُلْ يَا مُدَّثِّرُ﴾

«Say, O You Enveloped (in garments)» [74:1]

was revealed first." The questioner then said, "I was informed that it was

﴿قُلْ بِسْمِ رَبِّكَ﴾

«Read! In the Name of your Lord.» [96:1]"

Jaabir replied, "I am only telling you that which I heard from the Prophet (ﷺ), for he said, 'I was in the mountain of Hiraas', and when I came down to the valley (I heard a voice), so I looked to the right, and to the left, and in front of me, and behind me. Then I looked to the skies, and I saw him – meaning Jibreel – and a great fear overtook me! So I returned to Khadeejah, and told her to cover me. Allaah then revealed,

﴿قُلْ يَا مُدَّثِّرُ﴾

«Say, O You Enveloped (in garments)» [74:1]"

This *hadeeth* has been explained by saying that Jaabir told the questioner which *soorah* had been revealed in its entirety first, since *Soorah al-Muddathir* was revealed in its entirety before the remaining verses of *Soorah al-'Alaq*. Alternately, some scholars have claimed that Jaabir was not present when the Prophet (ﷺ) began narrating the above *hadeeth* in which he (ﷺ) described his encounter with Jibreel, but entered while the Prophet (ﷺ) was mid-way in his narration. Therefore, Jaabir only heard the last part of the *hadeeth*. This opinion is supported by another narration of this *hadeeth*, in which Jaabir stated that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "While I was walking, I heard a voice from the sky. I looked up and saw the same angel who had visited me at the cave of Hiraas' sitting on a chair between the sky and the earth..."¹⁶⁶ In this narration, Jaabir mentions that the Prophet (ﷺ) had already seen Jibreel before this incident, which proves that the first revelation had already occurred.

Whatever the case might be, the *hadeeth* which describes the encounter with Jibreel (the first *hadeeth*) is explicit that the first five verses of *Soorah al-'Alaq* were revealed first, and that the next revelation was *Soorah al-Muddathir*. Therefore, this second opinion is the weaker one.

- 3) *Soorah al-Faatihah*. There is a narration in al-Bayhaquee that states that the first revelation was *Soorah al-Faatihah*. However, this narration is not authentic, therefore, it does not hold any weight.
- 4) The *Basmalah*. Another *hadeeth*, reported by al-Waahidee, states that the first

verse revealed was the *ḥumazah*, "In the Name of Allaah, the Ever Merciful, the Bestower of Mercy," but this report too is not authentic, and cannot be taken as proof.¹⁶⁷

ii. The Last Revelation

There are a number of opinions concerning the last revelation that the Prophet (ﷺ) received. This is because there is more than one *ḥadīth* which discusses this subject, each one of which gives a different verse. Also, unlike the first revelation, there does not exist any *ḥadīth* in which the Prophet (ﷺ) himself states what the final revelation was. There are eleven opinions concerning the last revelation, as follows:¹⁶⁸

- 1) Al-Bukhaaree and al-Tibaraanee narrate from Ibn 'Abbaas that the last verse revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ) was,

وَالْقُرْآنُ آيَاتُهُ خُشُوعٌ كَيْدِي
لَقَدْ كُنْتُمْ فِئْتًا كُفْرًا فَاصْطَلَيْتُمْ وَهْمَ لَا يَبْلُغُونَ ﴿٢٨١﴾

«And fear the day in which you will return to Allaah. Then everyone will be paid what he earned, and they will not be dealt with unjustly» [2:281]

Ibn 'Abbaas added, "The Prophet (ﷺ) lived nine nights after this verse was revealed, then he (ﷺ) passed away."

- 2) Another narration, also by al-Bukhaaree from Ibn 'Abbaas, states that the last verse revealed was the 'Verse of Interest',

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا لَا تَقْرُوا اللَّهَ
وَذَرُوا مَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ إِنَّ كُفْرَ قَوْمٍ هُوَ

«O you who believe! Fear Allaah, and give up what remains from your interest, if you are indeed Believers» [2:278]

- 3) Al-Tibaraanee reported that Sa'eed ibn al-Musayyib (d. 90 A.H.) narrated, "The final verse revealed to the Messenger (ﷺ) was the 'Verse of Loaning',

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا إِذَا تَدَايَسْتُمْ بِثَنَاءٍ إِلَى أَهْلِكُمْ فَمَسْكُونٌ فَاسْتَغُوا

«O you who believe! If you contract a debt for a fixed time, write it down» [2:282]

- 4) Al-Bukhaaree and Muslim report from al-Baraa' ibn 'Aazib that the final verse was the verse of *ḥulaa'ah* (a person who does not leave accreditants or discreditanis),

¹⁶⁷ Both of the above narrations are weak since the name of the Companion who narrated each *ḥadīth* is missing, cf. Zairaa, p. 90.

¹⁶⁸ cf. Uraydeet, pp. 58-66, Qatqaa, pp. 68-71, Zairaa, pp. 97-100.

يَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ الْكَافَّةِ

«They ask you for a legal verdict. Say: Allaah directs thus about *Kafarat*...»
[4:176]

- 5) Al-Haakim reports from Ubay ibn Ka'ab that the final revelation comprised of the last two verses of *Suraah at-Tawbah*,

لَقَدْ جَاءَكُمْ رَسُولٌ مِنْ أَنْفُسِكُمْ

«Verily, there has come unto you a Messenger from amongst yourselves...»
[9:128-9]

- 6) Muslim reports from Ibn 'Abbaas that the final *suraah* revealed was *Suraah an-Naag*,

إِذَا جَاءَ نَصْرُ اللَّهِ وَالْفَتْحُ ①
وَرَأَيْتَ الْكُفْرَانَ ②
يَحْمِلُونَ فِيهِ يَوْمَئِذٍ أَثْقَالًا ③
فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ ④
وَاسْتَغْفِرْ لَهُ إِنَّهُ كَانَ تَوَّابًا ⑤

«When the Help of Allaah comes to you, and the Conquest (of Makkah)...»
[110:1-4]

- 7) Al-Bukhaaree reports from Ibn 'Abbaas that the verse,

وَمَنْ يَقْتُلْ مُؤْمِنًا
مُعْتَدًا فَعَجَرًا أَوْ مَخْلُوعًا حَكِيمًا ①

«And whoever kills a Believer intentionally, his recompense is Hell, to abide therein forever...» [4:93]

was the last verse revealed, and no verse after it abrogated it.

- 8) Ibn Mardawayh narrates from Ummu Salamah: "The final verse revealed was,

لَا تَسْتَحِبُّ لَهُمْ وَرِثَتُهُمْ أَيَّ لَا يَصِيعَ عَمَلَ عَيْلٍ فِيكُمْ يَوْمَ تَأْتِي سَأَلَ

«So then Lord answered them (their prayers, and said), "Never will I allow to be lost the work of any of you, be he male or female. You are (members) one of another..." [3:195]

This (verse was revealed) because I asked, 'O Messenger of Allaah! I see that Allaah always mentions men (in the Qur'aan), but not women?' So Allaah (first) revealed,

وَلَا تَسْأَلُوا عَنْ أَقْسَمٍ لَكُمْ بِهِ بِمَقْعَدِمْ عَلَى بَعْضِ الْقُرْبَىٰ
تَعِيبًا وَمَا أَكْثَرُ نَسْأَلٍ وَالنِّسَاءُ يُعْزِرُونَ ①

that the last *suraḥ* to be revealed was *Suraḥ al-Ma'idah* means that this was the last *suraḥ* to be revealed which contained any legal rulings, as other narrations show.

As for the first three opinions, all of these verses are from the same passage in the Qur'aan, viz. 2:278-82, therefore there is no contradiction among these three opinions, as it is possible that all these verses were revealed together. As-Sayootee stated, "As for these three (opinions), then I do not see any contradiction between them, for it seems as if these verses were revealed at the same time, and their position in the *naḥḥ-haf* is also the same."¹⁶⁹

The remaining narrations deal with very late revelations, but not the last.

The strongest opinion is the first one, since it explicitly mentions that hardly a week remained between its revelation and the Prophet's (ﷺ) death. The meaning of the verse also strengthens this opinion, as it refers to death and the Day of Resurrection.

وَاللَّهُ يَوْمَ مَا تُرْجَعُونَ فِيهِ إِلَى
أَفْوَاهِكُمْ قَوْلًا كَانَ فَتُصَدَّقُ بِهِ وَهُمْ لَا يُلَاحِظُونَ ﴿٢٨١﴾

«And it is at the day in which you will return to Allah. Then overpoets will be paid what he carried, and they will not be dealt with unjustly» [2:281]

As for the last opinion, this is what is commonly believed by most Muslims to be the last verse revealed:

الْيَوْمَ أَكْمَلْتُ لَكُمْ دِينَكُمْ ﴿٣٣﴾

«Today I have Perfected your religion for you.» [3:3]

However, this is definitely *not* the last revelation. This verse was revealed on the Day of Arafah, at the Farewell Pilgrimage, a number of months before the Prophet's (ﷺ) death. Since it refers to the completion of the religion of Islam, many Muslims have thought that this signified the end of the revelation. What is actually meant by this verse, however, is that all the verses dealing with the rulings of Islam (*ḥukm* and *ḥuḳm*) have been revealed. (This also explains 'Aa'ishah's opinion that the last *suraḥ* to be revealed was *al-Ma'idah*, for this verse is in *Suraḥ al-Ma'idah*, and it was the last *suraḥ* dealing with legal rulings.) It is clear in the *ḥisab* of Ibn 'Abbas that the revelation of the Qur'aan continued to the Prophet (ﷺ) until only days before he (ﷺ) died. In fact, no major scholar ever held the view that this was the last verse of the Qur'aan to be revealed.¹⁷⁰

¹⁶⁹ *Ḥujjat*, v. 1, p. 36.

¹⁷⁰ cf. Abu Shabbab, pp. 325-327.

III. Relative First and Last Verses

The first two sections dealt with the first and last revelations of the Qur'aan in general. The scholars of Islam have also divided the subject of the first and last revelations conditionally, into separate categories, defining the first and the last revelations dealing with particular topics.

For example, there are a number of verses in the Qur'aan that deal with intoxicants. These verses have been arranged chronologically by the scholars of Islam. The first verse to mention intoxicants was:

يَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ الْخَمْرِ
وَالْمَيْمِرِ قُلْ فِيهِمَا إِثْمٌ كَبِيرٌ وَمَنْفَعَةٌ لِّلنَّاسِ وَرِشْوَةٌ
كَبِيرَةٌ ۚ لِّئَلَّا تُتَذَكَّرُوا

‘They ask you concerning intoxicants and games of chance. Say: In them is great harm, and (also) some benefit to mankind, but the harm (that is caused) is greater than the benefit (that is gained).’ [2:219]

The next verse that was revealed restricted the consumption of intoxicants, such that they could only be drunk after the ‘Isha prayer:

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا لَا تَقْرَبُوا الصَّلَاةَ وَأَنْتُمْ سُكَرَىٰ

‘O You who believe! Do not approach the prayer in a state of drunkenness.’ [4:43]

The last verse revealed concerning intoxicants prohibited any amount of consumption.

إِنَّمَا يَرِيدُ
الْفَاسِقُ أَنْ يُبَيعَ بَيْنَكُمْ الْمُدَّةَ وَالْبَعْدَةَ فِي الْخَمْرِ وَالنِّسَاءِ
وَيُضِلَّكُمْ مِنْ دُونِ الْبُحُورِ ۚ الْعَالُونَ يَعْلَمُونَ أَلَمَ مَسْئَرِهِ

‘Satan only wants to create enmity and hatred between you with intoxicants... so will you not then abstain?’ [5:91]

Another topic for which the first and last verses have been defined are the verses that deal with the lawful and prohibited foods. The first verse revealed was during the Makkah stage:

قُلْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنَا
فِي مَا أُوحِيَ إِلَيَّ عَصَا عَلَىٰ طَائِفَةٍ مِّنْهُمْ قُلْتُ لَا أَرَىٰ بِكَ كُوتَ
مَيْمَنَةٍ أَوْ نَذْرٍ أَنِ أَتُتَّبَعُ ۚ وَلَوْ لَّمْ يَرَوْهُ إِلَّا نَفْسُكَ
وَمَا يَحْكُمُونَ ۚ فَمَن يُضْلِكُ الْإِلَٰهَ الَّذِي يَحْكُمُ

—Say I do not find in that which has been prepared to me anything forbidden to eat by one who wishes to do so, except if it be a dead animal, or blood poured forth, or the flesh of swine — for that is surely impure — or the impious meat that has been sacrificed to other than Allah — 16, 145

THE MAKKEE AND THE MADANEE VERSES



The Muslims started out weak and powerless in Makkah, and yet within a few decades they managed to unite all the tribes of Arabia in the worship of Allaah. The turning point in this period was the *hijrah* of the Prophet (ﷺ) from Makkah to Madeenah. It was after the *hijrah* that the Muslims finally had a state in which they could practice their religion without any fear. Therefore, it is not surprising to find that the Qur'aan catered to the specific needs of the Muslims in Madeenah in a different way than it had done in Makkah. There is a marked difference in the verse content, style and syntax of these two periods, reflecting the different circumstances that the Muslims were in. It is this topic that is the subject of the *makkeeh* and *madanee* verses.

The Qur'aan has been preserved to an extent that is unrivalled by any other book. This is no surprise to a Muslim, for Allaah Himself has promised to safeguard it. The Qur'aan says,

إِنَّا نَحْنُ نَزَّلْنَا الذِّكْرَ وَإِنَّا لَهُ شَامِعُونَ

Allooh, it is We who have sent down the Remembrance, and of a surety, We will guard it (from corruption)» [15:9]

The Qur'aan has been preserved so carefully that not only has the actual text been safeguarded, but also all related knowledge that is needed to understand it. Among these aspects is the science of categorising those verses and *soorahs* which are *makkeeh* and those which are *madanee*.

The Prophet (ﷺ) did not specifically remark whether a verse was *makkeeh* or *madanee*, but the Companions understood the importance of this topic and carefully preserved this knowledge, as it is essential in understanding the Qur'aan. Ibn Mas'ood said: "I swear by Allaah, besides whom there is no other god, there is no *soorah* in the Qur'aan except that I know where it was revealed. And there is not a single verse in the Qur'aan except that I know the reason behind its revelation. And if there were any person that knew more about the Qur'aan than I did, and it was possible for me to reach him, I would ride (on my camel) towards him (to get this knowledge)."¹⁷²

It is because of this enthusiasm of the Companions that all external information concerning a verse's revelation was preserved. The scholar Abū Bakr al-Baqillānī (d. 403 A.H.) said,¹⁷³

This (preservation) is based upon the strong enthusiasm of the Companions and Successors. Just like the students (of a certain scholar) follow up on the works of their teacher, and memorize his speeches and books, and keep a record of what he wrote first and what he wrote last, so too the Qur'ān was (preserved) – in fact to an even greater extent, for the eagerness for it was even stronger.

Thus, it is not uncommon to find a Companion narrating external information concerning a verse's revelation – information that might at first seem irrelevant. Such information included the time and place of revelation, and sometimes even the circumstances the Prophet (ﷺ) was in. For example, al-Bukhārī narrates that verse 9:118 was revealed at Tabūk during the last third of the night, when the Prophet (ﷺ) was with Umm Salamah. Ibn Ma'ūd said, "Once, we were with the Prophet (ﷺ) in one of the caves of Mina when Allāh revealed,

وَالرَّسُولُ نَزْلًا

«By the winds sent forth» (77:1).¹⁷⁴

And the verse,

وَاللَّهُ يَعْصِيكَ مِنَ الْكَافِرِينَ

«Allāh will protect you from mankind» (3:67)

was revealed 'at night when the Prophet (ﷺ) was in a tent, surrounded by bodyguards.' When Allāh revealed this verse, the Prophet (ﷺ) lifted the covering of the tent and said to his bodyguards, "O people! You may leave, for Allāh has promised to protect me."¹⁷⁵ After this, the Prophet (ﷺ) never took any bodyguards.¹⁷⁶

First, it is essential to discuss the definition of *makke* and *madane* verses.

1. The Definition of Makke and Madane

There are three methodologies by which the *makke* and *madane* revelations are defined.

The first definition relies upon the time of revelation, taking the Prophet's (ﷺ) *hijrah* as the division factor. According to this definition, if a verse was revealed before the *hijrah*, it is considered *makke*, and if revealed after the *hijrah*, it is considered *madane*. This definition ignores the actual place of revelation. Therefore, those verses revealed at the Farewell Pilgrimage (8 A.H.), or the Conquest of Makkah (10 A.H.),

¹⁷³ al-Zarkashī, v. 1, p. 191.

¹⁷⁴ Reported by al-Bukhārī.

¹⁷⁵ Reported by al-Tirmidhī and al-Hākim.

¹⁷⁶ For other examples of this nature, see Zarkashī, pp. 136-138.

would be considered *madanee* by this definition, even though the actual place of revelation was Makkah. The criterion according to this definition, once again, is the *time* of revelation, not *place*. This is the strongest of the three definitions, since it is the most beneficial, and is therefore the one primarily utilised by the scholars of Islam.

The second definition relies upon the place where the verse was revealed. If a verse was revealed in Mada'nah, it is *madanee*, and if it was revealed in Makkah, it is *makkei*. Therefore, the verses revealed at Makkah during the Farewell Pilgrimage would be considered *makkei*, even though they were revealed after the *hijrah*. The criterion here is not the *time* of revelation, as in the first definition, but *place*. A flaw with this definition is that those verses revealed neither in Makkah nor Mada'nah (for example, the verses revealed at Tabuk) would not be classified as either *makkei* or *madanee*, as this definition cannot take such verses into its classification scheme.

The third definition depends upon the addressees of the verse. If the verse is meant for the Quraysh and the polytheists of Makkah, it is considered *makkei*, and if the verse is addressing the Muslims or hypocrites in Mada'nah, it will be considered *madanee*. One of the flaws in this definition is that there are many verses in the Qur'an where the addressees are not specifically Makkani or Madani. Sometimes, the Qur'an addresses a specific portion of mankind, such as the People of the Book, and at other times, it addresses all of the creation.

It is also possible to combine these three definitions when dealing with a verse or *surah* and to say, for example, that the verse is *madanee* with regards to time and place, yet *makkei* with regards to whom it is addressing. An example of this is *Surah al-Ra'd*, which was revealed after the *hijrah* in Mada'nah, but addresses the polytheists of Makkah.

It should also be mentioned that certain modern authors¹² have divided each of the Makkan and Madani periods into three stages: early, middle, and late revelations. They then attempted to show that each of these three stages has a unique style and specific subject. Despite the ingenuity of this classification, there does not seem to be a very fine line that discerns these stages from one another.

II. The Knowledge of Makkei and Madanee Verses

There are two ways of knowing whether a verse or *surah* is *makkei* or *madanee*. The first way is by relying upon reports from the Companions; in other words, a Companion specifically states the place and/or time of revelation, or gives some external information from which the time of revelation can be inferred. The second way is by personal reasoning, or *ijtihad*. In this method, a scholar will take the verses' meaning and style into account and try to 'presume' whether the verse is *makkei* or *madanee*. These two methods are not equivalent in acceptability.

If there exist reports from the Companions stating that a particular revelation occurred at a certain time and place, this knowledge is taken as undisputed fact.¹⁷⁸ This is because the Companions were present at the time of revelation, and were the only eye-witnesses to the actual revelation process.

If, on the other hand, the ruling that a certain verse is *makke* or *madanee* was derived by the *qulūb* of a scholar, then this ruling may be accepted or rejected. The scholar applies the known characteristics of *makke* and *madanee* revelations (which shall be discussed next) to arrive at this verdict, but it is possible that such a verdict may be incorrect.

III. The Attributes of Makke and Madanee Revelations

One of the aspects of *makke* and *madanee* revelations is that they each have unique attributes. This is because each type of revelation catered to a different need. The state of the Muslims differed greatly before and after the *Ħjrah*. In the early stages of revelation, Islam was still a relatively new religion, and the beliefs of Islam still had to be established. In addition, the Muslims were oppressed and had very little power, and thus needed continual moral encouragement. In the second period, however, the Muslims had their own state and were relatively established. The beliefs of Islam had been revealed, and now the Muslims were in need of divine guidance in their daily and social lives. They also needed to know the rules and conduct of *ribāḥ*, and the laws of inter-religious conduct.

In other words, as the needs of the *ummah* varied according to its situation, so did the style and content of the revelation.

The attributes of the *makke* and *madanee* revelations are divided into two categories: the common themes of each type of revelation, and the specific characteristics that have been observed of each type of revelation. It should not be presumed that every *makke* or *madanee* verse is indicative of these particular characteristics and themes; rather, these are general trends that are applicable to most *makke* and *madanee* verses.¹⁷⁹

COMMON THEMES OF MAKKE AND MADANEE VERSES

The *makke* *aswāb* have as common themes:

- 1) The call to the pure worship of Allaah (*taḥḍeeḥ*), by affirming His Names and Attributes, and rejecting all fake deities and idols. The fact that there is only one true god is proven in these verses. Many *makke* verses also stress the necessity of purifying one's worship to Allaah, and that this is the logical consequence in the belief of one god.

¹⁷⁸ Unless there exist statements to the contrary by other Companions. There are a number of methods of inspecting the various reports by Companions to arrive at the strongest conclusion, but these are beyond the scope of this book.

¹⁷⁹ For these attributes, see: al-Zarkashī, 1/187-191; al-Sayyidī, 4/22-23, Qaḥḥān, 63-64, Ubayḍī 114-117.

- 2) The establishment of the 'aqedah (beliefs), by affirming belief in prophethood, the angels, the previously revealed scriptures, and the Day of Judgement. The *makkah soorahs*, therefore, elaborated upon the stories of the previous prophets, the description of the Day of Resurrection, the descriptions of Heaven and Hell and the rewards and punishments in them, and other aspects of 'aqedah.
- 3) The establishment of morality. For example, *makkah* verses called for good conduct, respecting orphan's properties, and treating female infants properly (as there was a custom amongst the Arabs of female infanticide). At this stage, only a broad basis of morality was established; specific laws (concerning fornication, drinking, etc.) were not revealed.
- 4) The stories of the previous generations. The *makkah soorahs* emphasised the stories of the previous prophets, and the trials and tribulations that the believers faced at the hands of the disbelievers. These *soorahs* repeatedly warned the idolaters of the punishment that the earlier nations had received.

As for the *madinah* revelations, their common themes are:

- 1) The perfection of the rituals of worship. In the *madinah* verses, the detailed laws of prayer,¹⁸⁰ charity, fasting and pilgrimage were revealed.
- 2) The establishment of a system of laws governing individual, familial and societal relationships. Included in this are laws for *zinaat*, marriage, inheritance, the laws concerning the relationship of the Islamic state in war and peace, the relationship of the Muslims with other religious groups, and the punishments for specific crimes (*haddood*).
- 3) The discussion with the Jews and Christians concerning their religions, and an exposition of their faults and shortcomings. The *madinah* verses sought to invite the Christians and Jews to Islam, primarily by exposing the corruption in their books and beliefs, and by explaining the true teachings of Moses and Jesus. The *madinah* verses also discussed in detail the history of the Children of Israel, and how Allah dealt with their faithlessness and treachery.
- 4) The exposition of the plots of the hypocrites. The Madinan phase witnessed a new phenomenon that was unknown to the Muslims of Makkah – that of hypocrisy. For the first time, it was socially and politically advantageous to be considered a Muslim, and this led to a new breed of people, those who professed belief but in reality were nothing more than pretenders.¹ Thus, the *madinah* verses mention the hypocrites and their plots, in order to warn the Muslims against their evils, and caution the Muslims not to become like them.

180. Prayer had already been established in the Makkah stage, but it was in Madinah that the number of *ruk'at* were changed and specified for all later generations.

SPECIFIC CHARACTERISTICS OF MAKKEE AND MADANEE VERSES

Some specific characteristics of *makke* revelations are:

- 1) Every *surah* that has the oath, "Nay (*halaa*)!" is *makke*. This oath only occurs in the last half of the Qur'aan, in over fifteen *surahs*.
- 2) All *surahs* that begin with disjoined letters (*al-muqatta'at*),¹⁸¹ such as *Alif-Lam-Mim*, and *Ha-Mim*, are *makke*, with the exceptions of al-Baqarah and Ash-Shuraa.
- 3) All *surahs* which have a verse of prostration (*ayyah at-tasawwuh*) are *makke*.
- 4) All *surahs* which mention the stories of the previous prophets, and the story of Adam and the creation, are *makke*, with the exception of *Surah al-Baqarah*.
- 5) Generally, the verses in *makke* revelations are short and succinct, using strong words and frequent oaths.

Some specific characteristics of *madanee* revelations are:

- 1) Every verse that mentions a punishment for a crime (*hadd*) is *madanee*.
- 2) Every *surah* that mentions the hypocrites is *madanee*, except *Surah al-Ankaboot*.
- 3) Every *surah* that addresses the Jews and Christians is *madanee*.
- 4) Every *surah* that mentions *Jahann* is *madanee*.
- 5) Generally, *madanee* verses are longer than their *makke* counterparts.

iv. The Categories of Makke and Madanee

There is more to the knowledge of *makke* and *madanee* verses than whether a particular verse was revealed before or after the *Hijrah*. The scholar Abuu al-Qaasim Hasan ibn Muhammad an-Naysaboori (d. 406 A.H.) wrote:

Amongst the most noble of Qur'aanic sciences is the knowledge of its revelation, and its classification into *makke* and *madanee*, and that which was revealed at Makkah yet is *madanee*, and that which was revealed at Madaenah yet is *makke*, and that which was revealed at Makkah concerning the people of Madaenah, and that which was revealed at Madaenah concerning the people of Makkah, and... (various other categories). There are twenty-five different categories in total, whoever does not know them and cannot distinguish between them is prohibited from explaining the Book of Allaah!¹⁸²

Some of the more important categories are mentioned below:¹⁸³

181 See Ch. 9, 'The Beginning of the *Surahs*'

182 *aa-Zarkashii*, v. 1, p. 152.

183 See *aa-Zarkashii*, p. 187-205 for most of these examples, and *aa-Sayooti*, 1/11-31.

1) The *maḥḍer soorahs*. These are the *soorahs* whose verses, or most of whose verses, were revealed before the *ḥijrah*.

2) The *madanee soorahs*. These are the *soorahs* whose verses, or most of whose verses, were revealed after the *ḥijrah*.

3) Those *soorahs* in which there is a difference of opinion, so that it is unclear whether they are *maḥḍer* or *madanee*.

The *madanee soorahs* are: al-Baqarah, Aali-Imraan, an-Nisaa, al-Maa'idah, al-Anfaal, at-Tawbah, an-Naas, al-Ahzab, Muhammad, al-Fath, al-Hujuraat, al-Hadeed, al-Mujadilah, al-Hukh, al-Mumtahanah, al-Jumu'ah, al-Munafiqoon, at-Talaaq, at-Tahreem, and an-Naḥr. These are twenty *soorahs* of the Qur'aan.

The *soorahs* in which there is a difference of opinion are twelve in number. al-Fatiḥah, ar-Ra'ad, ar-Rahmaan, ar-Raḥ, at-Taghaabun, al-Muḥafifeen, al-Qadr, al-Bayannah, ar-Zalzalah, al-Ikhlās, al-Falaq and an-Nāas.

The rest of the eighty-two *soorahs* are *maḥḍer*.

4) *Maḥḍer* verses in *madanee soorahs*. As was alluded to earlier, even though a *soorah* might in general be *madanee*, it is possible that certain verses are *maḥḍer*.¹⁸⁴ For example, *Soorah al-Anfaal* is *madanee*, yet verse 64 in particular is *maḥḍer*, "O Messenger (ﷺ), Allaah is Sufficient for you and for the believers who follow you!"

5) *Madanee* verses in *maḥḍer soorahs*. In a similar manner, *Soorah al-An'aam* is *maḥḍer* except for three verses which were revealed after the *ḥijrah*, verses 151-153, which begin, "Say: Come, and I will recite to you what your Lord has forbidden for you..."

6) That which was revealed at Makkah yet is *madanee*. In other words, those verses that were revealed after the *ḥijrah* at Makkah. An example of this is the verse

الْيَوْمَ أَكْمَلْتُ لَكُمْ دِينَكُمْ وَأَتِمَمْتُ عَلَيْكُمْ نِسْرَتِي وَرَضِيْتُ لَكُمُ الْإِسْلَامَ دِينًا

"Today I have perfected your religion for you, and have completed my favours upon you, and chosen Islaam as your way of life" [5:3]

This verse was revealed at the Farewell Pilgrimage, yet since it was revealed after the *ḥijrah*, it is considered *madanee*.

7) That which resembles the *madanee* revelations in content and style yet is *maḥḍer*. For example,

وَأَقِمِ الصَّلَاةَ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ فِي الثَّلَاثِ وَالْأَرْبَعِ

"And offer prayers perfectly at the two-each of the day and at some hours of the night" [11:114]

184. The actual arrangement of the verses was not chronological. See Ch. 8 on the arrangement of the *soorahs* and verses.

This verse was revealed at Makkah and alludes to the five daily prayers, yet the prayer with all of its laws was not completely established until after the *hijrah*.

8) That which resembles the *madf'uf* revelations yet is *madf'uf*. For example,

وَاذْكُرُوا اللّٰهَ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ
فِرَاقًا مِّنْ رَبِّكُمْ فَاَنْزِلْ عَلَيْنَا مَنَاسِكَ

‘And when they (the disbelievers) said, ‘O Allah! If this is indeed the truth from You, then cast down stones on us from the sky.’ - [8:32]

This verse seems to be *madf'uf* since it discusses the idolaters of Makkah, but was in fact revealed after the *hijrah*.

9) That which was revealed in Madeenah addressing the Makkans. There are many verses like this, such as *Soorah ar-Ra'ad* in its entirety, and the first few verses of *Soorah Ta'weeb*, and *Soorah al-Munafiqun*.

10) That which was revealed at night. For example, the first verse of *Soorah al-Hijr*, and the whole of *Soorah Maryam*. The verse revealed at *Abso 'Ualib*'s death.

اِنَّكَ لَا تَهْدِي مَنْ اَحْبَبْتَ وَلَكِنَّ اللّٰهَ يَهْدِي مَنْ يَّشَاءُ

‘Indeed, you will not guide whom you love, but rather Allah guides whom He wills’ - [28:56]

was revealed when the Prophet (ﷺ) was in his bed. However, as 'Aa'ishah narrated, most of the Qur'aan was revealed during the daytime.⁽²⁾

11) That which was taken from Makkah to Madeenah. The first *soorah* to be taken from Makkah to Madeenah was *Soorah Yousuf*. 'Aaf' ibn 'Afra was among the eighty Ansar who embraced Islaam at the hands of the Prophet (ﷺ) in Makkah (at the second covenant of al-'Aqabah). He returned to Madeenah after he had memorised *Soorah Yousuf*, and recited it to the people of Madeenah, which led to the conversion of many people. After this, more and more *soorahs* were taken from Makkah to Madeenah.

12) That which was taken from Madeenah to Makkah. There were a number of verses that were sent by the Prophet (ﷺ) to the people of Makkah after the *hijrah*. For example, the verse,

يَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ الشَّهْرِ الْحَرَامِ وَالْأَيْمَةِ

‘They ask you (O Muhammad) about fighting in the Sacred Months—’ - [2:217]

was revealed when the Muslims of Makkah were being attacked by the pagans during the Sacred Months. These Muslims asked the Prophet (ﷺ) whether they were allowed to fight back, and Allah revealed the answer in this verse. Also in this con-

egory is the verse that prohibits interest (2:278), and the verse that informs the Muslims of Makkah who were unable to perform the *hijrah* that it is possible that Allaah would forgive them (4:99). Another example is *Soorah at-Tawbah* (also called al-Bara'ah). The Prophet (ﷺ) sent this *soorah* to Abou Bakr while he was performing *Hajj*, so that he could recite the *soorah* to the polytheists of Makkah.

13) That which was revealed during the *hijrah*. On the way from Makkah to Madaanah, during the *hijrah*, Allaah revealed these verses to console the Prophet (ﷺ):

إِنَّا أَنزَلْنَاهُ قُرْآنًا مَّعْرُومًا فَكَرِهْتُمُوهُ كَذَّبَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا إِلَىٰ مَعَارِئٍ

«Verily, He Who has given you (O Muhammad) the Qur'aan will return you back to the place of return (i.e., Makkah)» [28:85]

14) That which was taken from Makkah to Abyssinia. These verses were sent by the Prophet (ﷺ) to Ja'far ibn Abi Talib when he was debating with the Negus of Abyssinia:

قُلْ يَا أَهْلَ الْكِتَابِ تَعَالَوْا إِلَىٰ صِفْطٍ بَيْنَنَا وَبَيْنَكُمْ
أَلَّا نَعْبُدَ إِلَّا اللَّهَ

«O People of the Book! Come to a word that is just and fair between us and you, that we worship none save Allah...» [3:64]

15) That which was revealed while the Prophet (ﷺ) was travelling. Most of the Qur'aan was revealed when the Prophet (ﷺ) was not travelling. However, some of the Qur'aan was revealed during battles or travels away from Makkah or Madaanah. For example, *Soorah al-Fath* was revealed at Hudaybiyah, when the Muslims were barred from performing 'Usoorah.

There are other categories of *mafkher* and *madanier*, but these are the most important ones, and will suffice for the present discussion.

v. The Benefits of Knowing Makke and Madanee verses

Some of the benefits of the knowledge of *mafkher* and *madanier* verses are:

- 1) This knowledge is essential in arriving at a proper understanding and interpretation of the Qur'aan, as it is a key to understanding the reason behind the revelation of a verse or *soorah*.¹⁸⁶ The fact that the verse,

إِنَّا أَنزَلْنَاهُ قُرْآنًا مَّعْرُومًا فَكَرِهْتُمُوهُ كَذَّبَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا إِلَىٰ مَعَارِئٍ

«Verily, He Who has given you (O Muhammad) the Qur'aan will return you back to the place of return (i.e., Makkah)» [28:85]

was revealed during the *hijrah*, for example, helps in understanding that Allaah is consoling the Prophet (ﷺ) that he will eventually return to Makkah.

[186] See Ch. 7, "The Cause of Revelation."

- 2) This knowledge helps differentiate the abrogated verses from the non-abrogated ones. For example, if two verses deal with the same topic and give different rulings, but one is *madaseer* and the other is *mafhme*, the ruling is taken from the *madaseer* verse.¹⁰⁷
- 3) It gives an insight into the life of the Prophet (ﷺ). For example, in the *mafhme* verses, the Prophet (ﷺ) is told by Allaah to bear patiently the torments of the polytheists, while in the *madaseer* verses he (ﷺ) is told to beware of the plotting of the hypocrites. In each case, the reader gains a better understanding of the life of the Prophet (ﷺ), and of the Companions.
- 4) It gives the history of the gradual revelation of the *sharce'ah*. The first and most important topic, that of *'aqidah* (Islamic beliefs), was the primary subject of the *mafhme* revelations. In these *soorahs*, the Qur'aan talks about *taawheed* (monotheism), belief in the prophets, angels, the Day of Judgement, Heaven, Hell and other crucial topics. In the *madaseer* revelations, on the other hand, the Qur'aan primarily talks about laws for the individual, family and state. The graduality by which different Islamic laws were implemented is appreciated when one gains an understanding of *mafhme* and *madaseer* verses.
- 5) It lays out the procedure and methodology of calling to Islaam (*da'wah*). The *mafhme* and *madaseer* verses have different methods and characteristics in calling to the religion of Allaah, depending on whom the verse addresses. The polytheists are given different arguments than the Jews or Christians, for example. The caller to Islaam should use the same methodology when addressing these groups. No matter which group is being addressed, however, emphasis is always given on the importance of *taawheed* – of directing all forms of worship, from love, fear, trust, hope, prayer, sacrifice, and vows only to Allaah. Likewise, all *da'wah* should begin with this same theme.
- 6) Lastly, it proves the care and detail with which the knowledge of the Qur'aan was preserved. A person cannot help but marvel at the miracle of the preservation of each and every intricate detail of the Qur'aan. If the knowledge of where, when and how a verse was revealed has been preserved, then how is it possible that the actual meaning and intent of the verse has not been preserved?

107 See Ch. 13, 'Abrogation in the Qur'aan'

THE CAUSES OF REVELATION - ASBAAB AN-NUZOOOL



1. The Definition of Asbaab an-Nuzool

The *asbaab an-nuzool* (plural: *asbaab an-nuzool*) is defined to be the event or occurrence that was the direct cause of revelation of a particular verse or *soorah* of the Qur'aan. Therefore, all the verses of the Qur'aan may be divided into two categories with respect to *asbaab an-nuzool*, as follows:

1) The verses revealed without a *asbaab an-nuzool*. Most of the verses of the Qur'aan were revealed without a particular incident occurring before their revelation. The primary purpose for the revelation of the Qur'aan was to

يُخْرِجَ الْكَافِرِينَ مِنَ الظُّلُمَاتِ إِلَى النُّورِ

—guide mankind out of the darkness into the light— [14:1]

but this does not qualify as a *asbaab an-nuzool* for the revelation of the Qur'aan, as shall be discussed later.

As for the statement of Ibn Mas'ood quoted earlier, "...and there is not a single verse in the Qur'aan except that I know the reason behind its revelation..." this does not imply that every verse had a specific cause of revelation, but rather that when such a cause existed, Ibn Mas'ood was aware of it.

2) Those verses revealed in response to a question, or because of an incident or occurrence. It is these verses that are the subject of this chapter.

The *asbaab an-nuzool* must be a specific incident, occurrence or question that was a direct cause of revelation of a particular verse or verses. In addition, it must have occurred shortly before the revelation. In other words, the verses must have been revealed in response to the occurrence, and give an answer or ruling pertaining to that occurrence. An example of this are the verses pertaining to inheritance,

يُوصِيكُمُ اللَّهُ فِي أَوْلَادِكُمْ لِلَّذِي هُوَ

—Allah commands you with regards to your children's (inheritance) — [4:11]

These verses were revealed when the Prophet (ﷺ) visited Jaabir ibn 'Abdillāh while he was sick, and he asked the Prophet (ﷺ) how he should divide his money among his children.¹²⁸ Therefore, the *sabab an-nuzul* of this verse was the question that Jaabir asked the Prophet (ﷺ).

As was mentioned, the *sabab an-nuzul* must be a specific incident; therefore it cannot be claimed that the *sabab an-nuzul* of the Qur'aan was to guide mankind, since this is not a specific incident. This is not to say that the guidance of mankind is not the purpose of the revelation of the Qur'aan, but rather that such a purpose does not qualify as *sabab an-nuzul*. The *sabab an-nuzul* must also have occurred shortly before the revelation of the verse. Therefore to claim that the *sabab an-nuzul* of *Soorah al-Fil* ("Have you not seen how your Lord dealt with the owners of the elephants?" (105:1)), was the attacking of the Ka'bah by Abraham, is incorrect. Abraham set out with an army of elephants to destroy the Ka'bah, but this occurred before the Prophet's (ﷺ) birth. Even though this incident explains the meaning of the verses, it does not qualify as *sabab an-nuzul*, since it did not occur immediately preceding the revelation of this *soorah*. Also excluded from *sabab an-nuzul* are the histories of the previous nations, and the knowledge of the unseen.

There is an occurrence that some authors have discussed under *sabab an-nuzul*, but a little inspection shows that it does not come directly under this topic. This is when the verse precedes the actual occurrence; for example, a verse mentions a prediction that eventually comes true, or a later occurrence clarifies the meaning of a verse. An example of this is the verse,

لَا أُقْسِمُ بِهَذَا الْكَلَمِ ۖ
وَكَذَلِكَ جَاءَ الْكُرْهُ ۖ

"I swear by this city! And you are a free (man) in this city." [90:1-2]

This *soorah* was revealed in Makkah, yet the Prophet (ﷺ) was not completely a 'free' person in Makkah until after the Conquest of Makkah. Another example is the verse,

سَوْفَ يُنْفَعُ الْمُغْرَقُ ۖ
وَيُوَلَّى الْأَعْزَقُ ۖ

"Their multitude will be put to flight, and they will show their backs." [54:47]

This verse was revealed at Makkah, and some of the Companions understood it to have been a prediction of the Battle of Badr, since during this battle the pagans of Makkah were 'put to flight' and thus 'showed their backs'.¹²⁹ However, it seems strained to say that the Conquest of Makkah was the *sabab an-nuzul* of the first verse, or that the Battle of Badr was the *sabab an-nuzul* of the second. Rather, these verses were predictions that came true.

128. Narrated by al-Bukhaaree.

129. cf. Abu Shabbab, p. 256, for these and other examples.

Books on Asbaab an-Nuzool

There have been many books written specifically on the topic of *asbaab an-nuzool*. The first person to write a book exclusively on this topic was 'Alce al-Madanece (d. 234 A.H.), the teacher of Imam al-Bukhaaree.¹⁹⁰ The classics that are available in this field are the works by Abul Hasan 'Alce al-Washidee (d. 487 A.H.), entitled *Asbaab an-Nuzool*, and Jalaal ad-Deen as-Suyootee (d. 911 A.H.), entitled *Lubab an-Nuzool fi Asbaab an-Nuzool*. Al-Hasafidh Ibn Hajar (d. 852 A.H.) also authored a work on this topic. In this era, one of the most comprehensive works is by Khaleefah Alee-way, entitled *Jam' an-Nuzool fi Asbaab an-Nuzool*,¹⁹¹ and one of the most authentic is by the famous scholar of Yemen, Shaykh Muqbil ibn Haader al-Waadi'ee, entitled *Sahih al-Musnad min Asbaab an-Nuzool*.¹⁹²

n. The Derivation of Asbaab an-Nuzool

From what has been discussed earlier, it is clear that the *sabab an-nuzool* is a particular occurrence in the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ). Therefore, there is no room for personal reasoning (*ghibad*) in determining the *sabab an-nuzool* of any verse. It is necessary to rely on the people who were present when the verse was revealed to ascertain the *sabab an-nuzool*.

The sources for *asbaab an-nuzool*, therefore, are *hadith* from the Prophet (ﷺ), or statements from the Companions. Al-Washidee (d. 487 A.H.) said, "It is not permitted to speak about *asbaab an-nuzool* except by transmitting reports from those who witnessed the revelation of the Qur'aan."¹⁹³ Since the Companions witnessed the actual revelation of the Qur'aan, their testimony of *asbaab an-nuzool* is accepted.

The scholars have differed with regards to the testimony of the Successors, or the students of the Companions: should their reports of *asbaab an-nuzool* be accepted? Some scholars say that such testimony from the Successors must have come from the Companions, therefore these narrations must be accepted. Other scholars respond by claiming that this reasoning can be used for accepting a narration for *sabab an-nuzool* from any generation, since it would have come from the generation before it, all the way back to the Companions.

Perhaps the safest opinion is to say that reports concerning *sabab an-nuzool* will be accepted from only those Successors who were well known for their association with the Companions and their knowledge of *asbiab*, such as Mujashid ibn Jabr (d. 103 A.H.), Ikrimah (d. 104 A.H.), Sa'eed ibn Jubayr (d. 95 A.H.), and Qumadah as-Sadsooree (d. 110 A.H.).¹⁹⁴

190 Unfortunately, this work has been lost, and is only known through later references of it. See the modern description entitled *Imam al-Alee al-Madanece an-Mushafidh fi Naqd an-Riqa'* by Ibrahim Allaah al-Haqq, Umm al-Qura University, Makkah, 1984, p. 228.

191 Published by Maash al-Ashar', Riyadh, 1984. This work contains all narrations, authentic and otherwise, concerning *asbaab an-nuzool*. Therefore, it is essential to differentiate the authentic narrations from the inauthentic ones before quoting any material from it.

192 Unfortunately, the publisher's name, city and date of publication are not mentioned.

193 Al-Washidee, p. 8.

194 as-Suyootee, 1/42.

THE WORDINGS OF ASBAH AN-NUSOOl

It is essential to discuss the different wordings that the Companions used in narrating the *asbab an-nusool* of particular verses, and how these wordings are to be interpreted. This is because, occasionally, the Companions intended to imply that a particular act came under the ruling of a verse, and not necessarily that it was the *asbab an-nusool* of that verse. At other times, they conveyed their own uncertainty in the *asbab an-nusool* (i.e., 'I think this verse came down regarding...').

There are two primary ways or wordings that the Companions used in narrating such incidents. The first manner of phrasing that is found in the statement of the Companions is clear and unequivocal concerning the *asbab an-nusool* of the verse; for example, the statement 'The reason this verse was revealed was...' or 'The Prophet (ﷺ) was asked concerning such-and-such, and so Allah revealed...'. If the *asbab an-nusool* is narrated in such a manner, then there is no doubt or ambiguity in accepting it.

The second type of phrasing, however, is not explicit and unequivocal in nature, for example the statement, 'This verse was revealed concerning such-and-such an act.' Scholars have differed with regards to the acceptance of this type of report as *asbab an-nusool*. This is because this type of statement does not necessarily imply that the particular act mentioned was the *asbab an-nusool* of the verse. It could imply that the ruling of the verse applies to that case, or it could also imply that the act was the *asbab an-nusool*. In other words, due to the ambiguity in the wording of the statement, it does not give certain knowledge, and can be interpreted either way.

In such a case, Imaam al-Bukhaaree (d. 256 A.H.) took these reports as equivalent to a *hadith* of the Prophet (ﷺ), and accepted them as *asbab an-nusool*. On the other hand, Imaam Muslim (d. 261 A.H.), Ahmad ibn Hambal (d. 241 A.H.) and az-Zarkashee only accepted such reports to mean that the ruling of the verse applied to that situation, but the situation was not the *asbab an-nusool* of the verse.¹⁷⁷

It is possible that there exists more than one narration concerning the *asbab an-nusool* of a particular verse. This occurrence will be discussed in greater detail in the next section. The point that is wished to be understood in this section is that, if one of the reports is narrated in an unequivocal, clear manner (i.e., the first type of phrasing), and the other report is not (i.e., the second type of phrasing), then the former is taken to be the *asbab an-nusool* of the verse, and the latter as coming under the meaning of the verse.

Perhaps an example will better clarify this point. The particular example is the verse,

بِئْسَ الْأَئِمَّةَ كَذَّبَ الْأَمْرَ لَكُمْ أَلَمْ تَقْرَأُوا

'Your wives are a *fitnah* for you, so go into your *sith* (i.e., have sexual relations with (her)) as and when you wish...' [2:223]

The verse has two narrations concerning its *asbaab an-nuzool*. Ibn 'Umar narrated, "This verse was revealed concerning anal intercourse (i.e., to prohibit it)."¹⁹⁶ On the other hand, there exists another narration from Jaabir ibn 'Abdillāh in which he stated that this verse was revealed in response to a question from the *Angaar*. The Jews of Madinah used to claim that if a person had intercourse with his wife from the back¹⁹⁷ then the child would be born with a deficiency. When the *Angaar* asked the Prophet (ﷺ) about this superstition, Allaah revealed this verse, instructing them that such intercourse was allowed.¹⁹⁸

In this example, it is seen that there are two narrations for the *asbaab an-nuzool* of the verse. The narration of Ibn 'Umar is of the second type of wording. It could imply that the verse was revealed in response to the question, "Is anal intercourse allowed?" (in which case it would be the *asbaab an-nuzool* of the verse), or it could imply that the verse prohibits anal intercourse (in which case this is one of the points that can be derived from the verse, and has no relation to its *asbaab an-nuzool*). The report of Jaabir, however, is explicit in its wording, in that the verse was revealed in response to a particular question from the *Angaar*.

Faced with these two narrations, both of which are narrated in al-Bukhaaree, the explicit one takes precedence, i.e., the verse was revealed in response to the question of the *Angaar*. The narration of Ibn 'Umar shows that this verse also prohibits anal intercourse, and therefore he said, 'This verse was revealed concerning anal intercourse.'

III. Multiple Asbaab an-Nuzool for One Verse

There are many instances where there exists more than one narration concerning the *asbaab an-nuzool* of a particular verse. One such example concerning verse 2:223 has just been mentioned.

When there exist multiple narrations concerning *asbaab an-nuzool* for a single verse, the following guidelines are used:¹⁹⁹

- 1) If one of the narrations is weak, and the other is authentic, then the weak one is rejected and the authentic one accepted.

For example, there are two reports concerning the *asbaab an-nuzool* for *soorah* 93,

وَالضُّحَىٰ ۝١
وَإِذَا اللَّيْلُ تَنَاسَلَتْ ۝٢
مَلَأَ غَدْرُكَ وَتَذَلَّلَتْ ۝٣

'By the Forenoon' And by the Night when it is Sull' Your Lord has neither
Forsaken you nor Hated you! [93: 1-3]

Al-Bukhaaree and Muslim narrate that once the Prophet (ﷺ) did not receive inspiration for a few days, so one of the women of the Quraysh ridiculed him, saying,

¹⁹⁶ Reported in al-Bukhaaree

¹⁹⁷ In other words, if he had normal intercourse with his wife with her back towards him

¹⁹⁸ Reported in al-Bukhaaree

¹⁹⁹ cf. *Ushoolul*, p.70-73, *Qaasid* 82-91

"O Muḥammad, I thank your Satan has left you." Allāh then revealed these verses in response to her. On the other hand, there exists a narration in al-Jāḥiṣī, stating that the Prophet (ﷺ) did not receive inspiration for a few days, so he started worrying about this. This caused the servant of the Prophet (ﷺ) to clean the house, and she discovered a dead puppy under the bed. When she removed it, this *asbab an-nuzul* was revealed. Since this narration is weak,²⁰⁰ it is rejected as *asbab an-nuzul*.

2) If both narrations are authentic, then it is investigated to see if there are any grounds for preferring one narration over the other.

For example, if one of them is narrated in a clear manner as being the *asbab an-nuzul* (i.e., the first type of phrasing mentioned in the previous section), whereas the other is not, then the former narration is accepted, as with the story of the *Anqar* above.

Another reason that one narration is preferred over another is if one of the narrations is reported by a Companion who witnessed the *asbab an-nuzul* of the verse and was present at the time of the revelation, and another that is based on second-hand information. In this case, the eyewitness report is accepted.

The verse,

وَيَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ الرُّوحِ قُلِ الرُّوحُ مِنْ أَمْرِ رَبِّي

«They ask you concerning the Spirit. Say: The Spirit is from the command (or knowledge) of my Lord.» (17:85)

has two reports concerning its *asbab an-nuzul*. The first one is reported by Ibn Mas'ūd, who said, "I was walking with the Prophet (ﷺ) in Madinah, and he was leaning on a stick. We passed by a group of Jews, who whispered to one another, 'Why do you not ask him something (to try to outwit him)?' Then they asked, 'Tell us about the Spirit.' I saw the Prophet (ﷺ) stand for a while, raising his head, so I know he was being inspired. When the inspiration finished, he (ﷺ) read,

وَيَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ الرُّوحِ قُلِ الرُّوحُ مِنْ أَمْرِ رَبِّي
وَمَا أَرْسَلْنَا مِنْ قَبْلِكَ إِلَّا رِجَالًا

«They ask you concerning the Spirit. Say: The Spirit is from the command (or knowledge) of my Lord,' and of knowledge, you have only been given little.» (17:85)²⁰¹

The second report is from Ibn 'Abbās, who said that the polytheists of Makkah asked the Jews to give them a question that they could ask the Prophet (ﷺ), in order to baffie him. The Jews told them to ask about the Spirit, and when they did, Allāh revealed these verses. In this report, it is the Quraysh who are asking the Prophet (ﷺ), and not the Jews.²⁰²

²⁰⁰ There is an unknown narrator in its chain. See Ibn Hajar's comments in *Fath* (v. 8, p. 671).

²⁰¹ Reported in al-Balḥar.

²⁰² Narrated in al-Tirmidhī.

Faced with these two reports, precedence is given to the first one, since Ibn Mas'ūd was present at the time of revelation, whereas Ibn 'Abbās was not.

- 3) If both reports are equivalent in authenticity, and there does not exist any means of giving preference to any one of them, then this implies the verse was revealed in response to both of the incidents.

Ibn Hajar (d. 852 A.H.) said, "There is nothing to prevent there being more than one cause of revelation."²⁰³

This stance is taken when it is possible that these incidents occurred during the same time frame. An example of this is the 'Verse of *ḥ'awā'*' (24:4), which deals with the case of a husband who accuses his wife of adultery without the necessary four witnesses.

Al-Bukhārī narrates that Hilāl ibn Umayyah accused his wife of adultery. The Prophet (ﷺ) said, "O Umayyah! Either bring your proof (the four witnesses), or else we will have to punish you (for slander by whipping you with eighty lashes)"²⁰⁴ Umayyah responded, "O Messenger of Allah (ﷺ)! A man sees his wife with another man; does he need to go and seek other witnesses?" But the Prophet (ﷺ) repeated what he had said. Umayyah responded, "I swear by Him who has sent you! I am truthful, and Allah will reveal to you (concerning my innocence) to free me of the punishment!" Thereafter, Jibreel came down with the following verses,

وَالَّذِينَ يَزْنُونَ أَمْ لَهُمْ شُرَكَاءُ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ
شَهَادَةُ أَسْوَفَ أَلَمْ يَقُولُوا كُنْزُفٌ ۖ

«As for those who accuse their wives, but have no witnesses except themselves, then let them testify four times, swearing by Allah that they are indeed truthful.» (24:6)

However, another narration in al-Bukhārī states that 'Uwaymir saw his wife with another man, and he came to the Prophet (ﷺ) and asked him, "O Messenger of Allah (ﷺ)! A man sees his wife with another man, should he kill him, and then himself be killed (for murder), or what should he do?" The Prophet (ﷺ) responded, "Allah has revealed verses concerning you and your spouse." He then recited the verses of *ḥ'awā'*.

Faced with these two authentic reports, it is concluded that both of these incidents occurred in a similar time frame,²⁰⁵ and the verses of *ḥ'awā'* were revealed in response to both of these cases.

- 4) If both reports are equally authentic and the time frames are known to be far apart, then this implies that the verse was revealed more than once.

²⁰³ Al-sayyid, p. 15.

²⁰⁴ Up to this point, the only verses governing accusations stated that an accuser had to bring four witnesses to prove his accusation, or else he would be whipped for slander.

²⁰⁵ However, it seems apparent that the incident of Hilāl accused Hilāl slightly before 'Uwaymir's, since when 'Uwaymir came to the Prophet (ﷺ), the Prophet (ﷺ) could immediately respond to his question.

In other words, if there exists more than one report of *asbab an-nuzul*, all of which are authentic, and none of which can be given preference over the others, and it is inconceivable that all of these incidents occurred simultaneously, then this implies that the verse was revealed on all of these occasions. As az-Zarkashy stated, "It is possible that a verse is revealed twice, to signify its importance, and to remind people of it... And the wisdom behind all of this (meaning the multiple revelation of a single verse), is that it is possible that a certain incident or question should be the cause of the revelation of a verse, but a verse has already been revealed before it that gives the ruling concerning that incident. Therefore, the same verse is re-revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ), so that the people can be reminded of it, and to show them that the verse also contains the ruling of that incident."²⁹⁶

An example of this type of plural revelation is of the verse,

مَا كَانَ لِلنَّبِيِّ وَالَّذِينَ آمَنُوا أَنْ يَسْتَغْفِرُوا لِلنَّاسِ هَبْطًا

«It is not proper for the Prophet and those who believe to ask forgiveness for the polytheists and pagans» [9:113]

There are three reports concerning the revelation of this verse, all of which are equally authentic. In addition, it is not possible for all of these incidents to have occurred simultaneously. The first report is that of at-Tirmadhee, who reports from 'Alee ibn Abee Jaalib that a person asked forgiveness for his parents, even though they died as pagans. When the Prophet (ﷺ) was informed of this, these verses were revealed. The second report is from al-Haakim who narrates from Ibn Mas'ood that once the Prophet (ﷺ) sat next to a grave, and started crying. Then he (ﷺ) said, "This grave is the grave of my mother. I asked Allaah's permission to pray for her, but He forbade me." He (ﷺ) then read the above verse. And lastly, al-Bukhaaree narrates that when Aboo Jaalib was on his death bed, the Prophet (ﷺ) tried to convince him to become a Muslim. However, Aboo Jaalib trounced him, saying, "O Aboo Jaalib, are you going to run away from the religion of (your father) 'Abdul Muttalib?" Therefore Aboo Jaalib died upon the religion of his father. The Prophet (ﷺ) said, "I will continue to seek forgiveness for you as long as I am not prohibited from doing so." At this, Allaah revealed the above verse.

Faced with these three authentic narrations, it is concluded that it was revealed three separate times, on each of these occasions.

It should be mentioned that some scholars deny that any verse of the Qur'aan was revealed more than once. They claim that once a verse was revealed, there was no need to reveal the verse again.²⁹⁷ Therefore, when it comes to reports on *asbab an-nuzul* such as these, they will try to find which of these reports is the strongest (so, for example, with regards to the above story, they will prefer the narration in al-Bukhaaree, since this is the most authentic book of *hadith*). However, most scholars do hold the

²⁹⁶ az-Zarkashy, v. 1 p. 2931

²⁹⁷ For example, see Qattan's opinion, in his *Ma'alad* p. 31

view that it is possible that certain verses were revealed on more than one occasion, saying that this is an indication of the importance of such verses.³⁰

IV. Multiple Verses for One Sabab an-Nuzool

It is also possible that a number of verses were revealed in response to one occasion or question, thus making one *sabab an-nuzool* the cause of revelation for a number of different verses.

For example, Umm Salamah, one of the wives of the Prophet (ﷺ), asked, "O Messenger of Allah! I see that Allah always mentions men (in the Qur'aan), but not women!"

In response to her comment, Allah revealed three verses: firstly the verse,

وَلَا تَسْتَوُوا مَا فَضَّلَ اللَّهُ بَيْنَهُمْ عَلَىٰ بَعْضِهِمْ ۚ لِلرِّجَالِ
نُصِيبٌ مِّمَّا كَسَبُوا وَلِلنِّسَاءِ نُصِيبٌ مِّمَّا كَسَبْنَ ۚ وَاللَّهُ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ

«Do not wish for that which Allah has made some of you to excel over others. For men there is a reward for what they have earned, and for women there is a reward for what they have earned. » [4:32]

secondly, the verse,

إِنَّ الْمُسْلِمِينَ وَالْمُسْلِمَاتِ وَالْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَالْمُؤْمِنَاتِ
وَالْقَانِتِينَ وَالْقَانِتَاتِ وَالصَّادِقِينَ وَالصَّادِقَاتِ وَالصَّابِرِينَ
وَالصَّابِرَاتِ وَالْخَاشِعِينَ وَالْخَاشِعَاتِ وَالْمُتَصَدِّقِينَ
وَالْمُتَصَدِّقَاتِ وَالصَّانِعِينَ وَالصَّانِعَاتِ وَالْمُتَكَوِّلِينَ
وَالْمُتَكَوِّلَاتِ أُولَٰئِكَ أَكْثَرُ النَّاسِ بِإِذْنِ اللَّهِ الَّذِينَ
كَسَبُوا ۖ وَاللَّهُ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ ﴿٣٥﴾

«Verily, the believing men and women, and the Muslims men and women, and the obedient men and women... Allah has prepared for them forgiveness and a great reward» [33:35]

and lastly, the verse,

لِي لَا يَفْنَىٰ عَمَلُ عَمَلٍ مِّنْكُمْ تَن دَكَرَ أَوْ لَمْ يَفْنَىٰ عَمَلُ عَمَلٍ مِّنْكُمْ تَن

«Never will I allow to be lost the work of any of you, be he male or female. You are (members), one of another» [3:19]

There are a number of different narrations in which Umm Salamah asked the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) this question, and each narration gives one of these verses. Therefore, it is concluded that all of these verses were revealed because of this one *sabab an-nuzool*.²⁰⁹

V. A Person as Sabab an-Nuzool

The Companions used to record which verses were revealed concerning them, as this was a source of honour and distinction for them. For example, Sa'ad ibn Abi Waqqas stated, "Four verses of the Qur'an were revealed concerning me (or because of me). (The first one was due to the fact that) my mother promised not to eat or drink until I leave the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ). Therefore, Allah revealed,

وَإِنْ جَاهِدَاكَ فِي مَائِي
لَتَكْفِرَا. فَلَا تُقِيعُهُمَا وَلَعَلَّكَ تَعْرِفُهَا

-But if they (your parents) try to force you to join in worship with Me, part
ners of which you have no knowledge, then do not obey them, but treat
them in this world with kindness... (31: 15)

The second verse was revealed concerning the booty we had captured in war. There was a sword that I really liked, so I asked the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) to give it to me. Allah revealed,

يَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ الْأَعْتَاقِ

-They ask you concerning the spoils of war... (8: 1)

The third verse was revealed when the Prophet (ﷺ) visited me when I was sick. I asked him, 'O Prophet (ﷺ)! I wish to distribute my wealth, should I give away half of it?' He answered, 'No.' I then asked, 'A third?' He did not respond to this, so from then onwards (a bequest) of a third was allowed.²¹⁰ And the fourth one occurred when I was drinking wine with a group of the Ansar. One of them hit me on my nose (because he was drunk), so I went to the Prophet (ﷺ) (to complain), and then Allah revealed the verse prohibiting wine.²¹¹

'Umar ibn al-Khattab also reported a number of verses that came down because of him. He stated, "I agreed with my Lord (i.e., my judgement agreed with my Lord's) in three matters: (The first was that) I asked the Prophet (ﷺ), 'If only we were to take the 'Station of Ibrahim' (112) as a place of prayer?'²¹² So Allah revealed,

²⁰⁹ The revelation of the first verse in response to Umm Salamah's question is narrated by al-Thirmidhi, the second verse is narrated by Ahmad, and the third by al-Hakim. See Qattan, p. 92.

²¹⁰ Sa'ad was probably referring to 2: 180. It is written for you when one of you approaches his death to leave a will for his parents and kin."

²¹¹ See Zarkashev, v. 1, p. 33.

²¹² This is the area that Ibrahim stood on while he was building the Ka'abah. It used to be right in front of the Ka'abah, but during the Caliphate of 'Umar ibn al-Khattab it was moved to its present location, a few metres in front of the door of the Ka'abah.

وَاتَّخِذُوا مِنْ مَّقَامِرِكُمْ حِسَابًا

«And take the Station of Theribetns as a place of prayer» [2:125]

(The second was when) I told the Prophet (ﷺ), 'Verily, both pious and impious people enter (your house and see) your women. Why don't you order them to seclude themselves?' So Allah revealed,

يَا أَيُّهَا النَّبِيُّ، أَسُوا الْأَنْدَادَ لَئِنْ أُوتِيَ الْغَنَى

«O you who believe! Enter not the Prophet's (ﷺ) houses...» [33:53]

(Thirdly,) once the Prophet's (ﷺ) wives complained to him, so I told them, 'If Allah willed, the Prophet (ﷺ) could divorce all of you and replace you with better women.'²⁰¹

In fact, sometimes the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) was himself the *ashab an-nusool* of a verse. For example, al-Bukhaaree reports that once the Prophet (ﷺ) asked Jibreel, "Why do you not visit us more often?" Allah then revealed,

وَمَا نَزَّلْنَاهُ إِلَّا بِأَمْرِ رَبِّي

«And we (the angels) do not descend except by the command of your Lord.» [19:64]

In this case, the Prophet's (ﷺ) question was the *ashab an-nusool* of the verse.

VI. The Rulings from these Verses

If the *ashab an-nusool* of a verse is known, should the verse only apply to the particular case for which it was revealed, or should it be extended to all cases that the wording implies?² In other words, is the ruling restricted to the specific circumstances in which it was revealed, or is it applied according to the generality of the wording of the verse?³

To quote an example, the oft-quoted verse,

وَمَا يَنْبَغِي لِلرَّسُولِ أَنْ يَضْرِبَ فِي دِمَائِهِمْ وَلَا لِيَكُونَ لَهُمُ غَلَابَةٌ

«And whatever the Messenger gives you, take it, and whatever he forbids you, abstain from it.» [59:7]

was revealed concerning the booty of war. Is this verse then understood to apply only to the spoils of war, or does it apply to everything the Prophet (ﷺ) commanded or forbade, since the wording of the verse implies this?

The majority of scholars hold the view that the rulings from such verses are applied to every case that the wording of the verse covers. In other words, the ruling is

²⁰¹ Reported by al-Bukhaaree. The verse that Umar is referring to is 66:3, 'It may be that if he descend you, his Lord will give him, instead of you, wives better than you.'

not restricted to the *sabab an-nuzul*, but rather to every case that comes under the wording of the verse. In fact, one of the popular legal maxims in *fiqh* is, "The consideration for a ruling comes from the generality of the wording, and not the specificity of its circumstance of revelation."

So, for example, the verses of *ḥ'āra* – despite the fact that they were revealed for particular persons (the Prophet (ﷺ) even said, "Allāh has revealed verses concerning you and your spouse," to Uwaysmir) – are applied to every husband who accuses his wife of adultery without bringing any witnesses. This is because it is not possible to restrict the ruling to the circumstances of its revelation, for the Qur'ān was revealed as a guidance for all the nations until the Day of Judgement, and not just for the Companions.

However, there are a very small number of verses that are specifically meant to apply only for the *sabab an-nuzul* for which they were revealed. These verses cannot apply to the Muslims in general. When this is the case, an inspection into the *sabab an-nuzul* enables the researcher to know whether these verses should be applied in general, or whether they are an exception. For example, the verses of *ḥ'āra* were revealed concerning a certain circumstance (i.e., that a husband accuses his wife of adultery without bringing forth the necessary witnesses). It makes sense to apply this ruling to every similar case. However, the verses that came down to clear 'Aa'ishah of the false charges that were impugned on her²¹⁴ are obviously meant only for her, and not for the Muslims in general.

This practice (of taking the ruling from the generality of the verse and not from the specificity of the *sabab*) was the one practised by the Companions and those who followed them, and by the majority of the jurists. The other opinion – that of applying the verse only to its *sabab an-nuzul* – was held by a small group of jurists, and is definitely the rejected view. According to these jurists, in order to extend the ruling of the verse beyond the *sabab an-nuzul*, analogy (*qiyās*) must be resorted to, as the verse cannot be taken to apply to a later case.

Therefore, going back to the initial example of the verse, "And whatever the Messenger gives you, take it . . ." even though the verses were revealed with regards to the booty of war, since the wording of the verse implies every command and prohibition from the Prophet (ﷺ), this verse is applied based on the generality of the wording.

This fact is also proven by the Companions, who used this verse as evidence for obeying the Prophet (ﷺ) in commands and prohibitions not related to the spoils of war. For example, a woman came to 'Abdullaah ibn Ma'ood, and said, "I have heard that you curse those ladies who tattoo themselves or tattoo others, and those ladies who get their facial hair removed, and those ladies who create gaps between their teeth (to look more beautiful), thereby changing the creation of Allāh!" He answered,

214 'Aa'ishah is accused by some hypocrites of committing adultery, and this accusation spread amongst the people of Makkah. In response to this false charge, Allāh revealed the first twenty verses of *Sourah an-Noor*, which cleared 'Aa'ishah of this accusation, and promised the culprits a severe punishment.

"And why should I not curse them, when the Prophet (ﷺ) has cursed them, and they are cursed by Allaah's Book?" She replied, "I have read the whole Qur'aan from cover to cover, and yet did not find this (curse)!" He answered, "Indeed, had you really read it, you would have found it. Did you not read the statement of Allaah,

وَمَا يَنْهَى الرَّسُولُ فَعَلُوهُ وَمَا يَنْهَى عَنْكُمْ فَاجْتَنِبُوا

"And whatever the Messenger commands you, take it, and whatever he prohibits you from, abstain from it?" [59:7]

In this case, 'Abdullah ibn Mas'ood used the verse according to the generality of its meaning (that the Qur'aan commands the Muslims to obey the Prophet (ﷺ) in all matters), and did not limit it to its *sabab an-nuzool*.

In fact, in an even more explicit report, it was the Prophet (ﷺ) himself who showed that the ruling from a verse is to be taken from the generality of the wording, and not the specific circumstances. Once, a man came to the Prophet (ﷺ) and said, "O Messenger of Allaah (ﷺ)! I have kissed a woman that was unlawful for me to kiss, so do with me as you please!" Umar chided him, "Allaah had your sin, if only you had done the same!" The Prophet (ﷺ) remained silent, and did not respond to the man. After a while, the man left the gathering. The Prophet (ﷺ) ordered that he be called, and when he came, the Prophet (ﷺ) recited a verse that had just been revealed to him:

إِنِ الْحَسَنُ يَذْهَبَ الْكَفِيرَ

"Verily, good deeds remove evil deeds" [11:114]

In other words, the Prophet (ﷺ) commanded him to follow up his evil deed with good deeds in order for him to be forgiven. The man asked him, "O Messenger of Allaah (ﷺ)! Is this verse only for me?" He (ﷺ) responded, "No, rather it is for all of mankind."¹⁷ Even though this person was the *sabab an-nuzool* of the verse, the application of the verse was not limited to him.

VII. The Benefits of Knowing *Asbab an-Nuzool*

Some of the benefits of this knowledge are as follows:

- 1) To arrive at a proper understanding of the verse, and remove any misinterpretations or doubts concerning the verse's meaning.

This by far is the primary purpose of the knowledge of *asbab an-nuzool*. Concerning this topic, al-Wahiddeh (d. 487 A.H.) said, "It is impossible to properly interpret a verse without reflecting over its *sabab an-nuzool*." Shaykh al-Islam Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.) said, "The knowledge of *asbab an-nuzool* aids in understanding the verse, for knowledge of its cause of revelation produces knowledge of its application." Ibn Daqqiq al-'Ed (d. 702 A.H.) stated, "Knowing *asbab an-nuzool* is

a powerful tool in understanding the meaning of the Qur'aan." So important is this knowledge that one who is deprived of it is prohibited from interpreting the Qur'aan.²¹⁶

Some examples will help illustrate the importance of this topic.

'Urwah ibn az-Zubayr read the following verse,

إِنَّ الصَّفَا وَالْمَرْوَةَ مِن مَّعَابِرِ الْحَجِّ
فَمَن حَجَّ الْبَيْتَ أَوْ اعْتَمَرَ فَلَا جُنَاحَ عَلَيْهِ أَن يَطَّوَّفَ بِهِمَا

'Verily, [the mountains of] Safa and Marwa are from the signs of Allaah! So it is not a sin on one who performs *Hajj* or 'Umrah to the House [of Allaah] to pass between them- [2:198]

The walking between Safa and Marwa is an integral aspect of *Hajj* and 'Umrah, yet 'Urwah could not understand how these verses implied this obligation, since the verse says, "... it is not a sin... to pass between them." From the apparent meaning of the verse, there is no sin if one walks between Safa and Marwa, but neither is it obligatory. He went to his aunt, 'Aa'ishah, and asked her concerning these verses. She then explained that this verse was revealed to clear up some doubts that the Muslims had. In the days before Islam, there used to be two idols, one on Safa and the other on Marwa, and the pagans of Makkah used to walk between Safa and Marwa for the sake of these idols. When the Muslims conquered Makkah, they destroyed these idols, but were concerned about this "pagan" ritual that used to be performed between Safa and Marwa. Therefore, Allaah revealed to them that there was no sin on them for walking between these mountains. The verse clarified that the walk between Safa and Marwa was an Islamic practice and had nothing to do with the practice of the pagans of old. The *sabab an-nuzool* of the verse shows that the verse was not revealed to explain the legal status of the act of walking between Safa and Marwa, but rather to remove any doubts that the Muslims had with regards to its relationship with the pagan custom of old. After 'Aa'ishah explained the *sabab an-nuzool* of this verse, 'Urwah was able to understand its meaning.²¹⁷

Another example is of the following verse,

وَلِلشَّرْقِ وَالْمَغْرِبِ قَابِضَا تَوَلَّوْا أَمْتُمْ وَجْهَ اللَّهِ

'And to Allaah belongs the East and West! So whenever you turn your faces [in prayer], you will find the Face of Allaah- [2:115]

This verse might lead a person to believe that it is not a requirement of the prayer to face the Ka'bah. However, the *sabab an-nuzool* of the verse shows this to be an incorrect meaning; the verse was revealed concerning a group of Muslims who did not know which direction the Ka'bah was, so they prayed in different directions. After they reported what they had done to the Prophet (ﷺ), this verse was revealed, imply-

216. Quotes taken from Uthman, p. 62 and as-Sayraaj, *Lisbaah an-Nasheed*, p. 5.

217. Narrated by al-Bukhaaree and Muslim.

ing that in circumstances where it is not possible to ascertain the *qiblah*, Allaah will still accept the prayer.²¹⁸ According to other reports, this verse was revealed concerning the voluntary prayer of the traveller, which may be prayed in any direction. Ibn 'Umar said, "This verse was revealed concerning the traveller on his mount. Whenever he faces (his prayer is acceptable)."²¹⁹ In either case, the *ashab an-nusool* clarifies the misconception that the apparent meaning of the verse might cause.

Yet another example is concerning the verse,

لَيْسَ عَلَى الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ جُنَاحٌ فِيمَا كَانُوا إِذَا مَا اشْفَوْا مِمَّا سَمَوْا وَعَمِلُوا
الصَّالِحَاتِ

-There is no sin on those who believe and do righteous deeds concerning
what they eat, if they fear Allaah, and believe, and do righteous deeds- [3:93]

The apparent meaning of this verse caused one of the Companions, Qudamah ibn Maqhoon,²²⁰ to believe that drinking wine was allowed. He used this verse to interpret that a pious person was allowed to eat or drink anything, and would not be held accountable for his diet. However, had the *ashab an-nusool* of this verse been known to him, he would not have come to this conclusion. This verse was revealed in response to a question by some Muslims concerning those people who had fought and died before the drinking of alcohol was prohibited; would Allaah punish them for drinking alcohol, or accept their martyrdom? This verse was then revealed, answering them that Allaah would not hold them accountable for what they had eaten or drank in the past, since these actions had occurred before the prohibition of intoxicants.

It can be seen from these three examples that without the *ashab an-nusool*, it would be very difficult, if not impossible, to fully understand these verses.

2) To understand the circumstances in which a verse was revealed.

There are many verses in the Qur'aan which would be impossible to understand if the *ashab an-nusool* were not known. An example are the first twenty verses of Soorah al-Noor. These verses were revealed to clear 'Aa'ishah of the false charges that were used to disparage her honour. If the *ashab an-nusool* of these verses was unknown, it would be impossible to understand what the verses were referring to.

²¹⁸ al-Maajid, p. 30.

²¹⁹ as-Saqqeen, v. 1, p. 100.

²²⁰ Almost all authors quote the name of Qudamah ibn Maqhoon's brother, Uthman ibn Maqhoon, when they refer to this incident. This is because, as-Zuhayri, in his *al-Bihar* (v. 1, p. 28), incorrectly mentions Uthman as the Companion who held this opinion, and almost all later authors (including as-Suyooti) followed him in this error. However, a cursory look at any book of history will show the inaccuracy of this. Uthman ibn Maqhoon died after the Battle of Badr, in 3 A.H. (cf. *al-Ishab fi Tawseel as-Salaf*, # 7489), whereas his brother Qudamah ibn Maqhoon died in the year 36 A.H. In fact, Ibn 'Umar clearly mentions that it was Qudamah who held this opinion, and Umar ibn al-Khattab had him dragged during his Caliphate for drinking wine, and informed him of the error of his interpretation of the verse (cf. *al-Ishab*, # 7005, and Abu Shabbab, p. 138).

Likewise, it is necessary to know the *asbab an-nuzool* of the verse,

قَدْ سَمِعَ اللَّهُ قَوْلَ فِئَتَيْنِ مِنَ النِّسَاءِ

«Verily Allaah has heard the women who have come to you complaining about their husbands» (58:1)

in order to understand its meaning.

3) To apply the verses in a proper manner.

There are certain verses that were revealed concerning particular, exceptional cases. A knowledge of the *asbab an-nuzool* enables the researcher to know when the verses are applied in general, and when they are specific to the case for which they were revealed. In the previous example of the verses in *Sasaah al-Nooh*, it is obvious these verses are an reference to 'Aa'ishah and her accusers only; the verse reads,

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ يُزَوِّجُونَ النِّسَاءَ الْعُقُلُ
الْمُؤْمِنِينَ كُفَرَاءِ الدُّنْيَا وَالْآخِرَةِ

«Verily those who accuse chaste women... are cursed in this life and the Hereafter.» (24:23)

This verse did not allow any repentance for those who accused 'Aa'ishah; however, repentance is still accepted from those who accuse other women.¹²¹ By knowing the *asbab an-nuzool*, it is possible to know when to apply the verses according to the generality of the wording, and when to apply it specifically to the case it was revealed for.

4) To know the person who caused the revelation of the verse.

When a Companion was the cause of revelation, this is an honour for him. On the other hand, if the cause of revelation was a disbeliever, this is a further disgrace for him. For example, the verses instructing believing women to cover themselves was revealed after 'Umar ibn al-Khattaab asked the Prophet (ﷺ) to instruct them to do so. This is an honour for 'Umar, since the revelation supported the opinion of 'Umar. On the other hand, the verses that were revealed concerning Absoo Lahab,

تَنْتَبِهَا إِنِّي أَنَا رَبُّهَا وَتَبَّ

«Perish the two hands of Absoo Lahab, and may he perish too!» (111:3)

are a further humiliation for him.

The knowledge of *asbab an-nuzool* also prevents the application of the verse to the wrong persons. For example, when Mu'awwiyah wanted to nominate his son Yazeed for the position of the next caliph, he instructed all of the governors to make this announcement. The governor of Madinah, Marwaan, called the people and asked them to give allegiance to Yazeed, and he said, «This is the custom of Absoo Bakr and

'Umar.' 'Abd al-Rahmān ibn Abī Bakr said, "Nay, rather the custom of Caesar and Heracles!" Marwān tried to capture 'Abd al-Rahmān, but he entered the house of his sister 'A'ishah. Marwān then said, "I swear by Allaah, he is the one this verse is referring to,

وَالَّذِي قَالَ
لِيَدِّي أَبَىٰ لَكُمْ الْعَذَابِ ۖ إِنِّي أَخْلَصْتُ لَكُمْ الْفُرْقَانِ
فَلِي وَعَسَىٰ يَسْتَفِيكُمُ اللَّهُ وَيَقْدِرَ لَكُمْ لِيَدِي وَعْدَ الْوَعْدِ ۚ
سَاعِدَايَ إِلَّا لَأَسْطِيرَ الْأَوْكُنَ ۝

"But he who says to his parent, 'Woe to you! Do you hold on to the promise that I shall be raised up (on the Day of) judgement), when the generations before me have perished, (there are nothing but tales of the ancient!'" [46:17]

To this, 'A'ishah replied, "I swear by Allaah, he is not the one; if you wish I can tell you the name of the person this verse is referring to." Therefore, 'A'ishah's knowledge of *aḥsāb an-nasab* enabled her to prevent the application of this verse to one whom it did not refer to.²²²

THE COMPILATION OF THE QUR'AAN



The compilation of the Qur'aan is a unique phenomenon that is peculiar to Islamic history, for no other religious book can claim to be anywhere near as authentic as the Qur'aan. The New Testament was authored over a century after 'Eesa's death, and the Old Testament's authors are shrouded in mystery, as are the authors of the Hindu scriptures.²²¹ Only the Qur'aan can be claimed to have been preserved in its original form.

And how can it not be preserved, when Allaah has taken it upon Himself to guard it and protect it? For He says,

إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ قُرْآنًا عَرَبِيًّا وَإِنَّا لَمُصَبِّحُونَ ﴿١﴾

«Verily, We have sent down this Remembrance (the Qur'aan), and We are of a society going to protect it (from tampering)» [15:1]

And when the Prophet (ﷺ) was fearful of forgetting its verses, Allaah revealed,

لَا تَحْزَنْ لِمَا يَفْعَلُ لَكُمْ رَبُّكَ يَتَّبِعُهُ الْمَلَكُ أَن تَنسَوْنَ أَمْرَ اللَّهِ ﴿٢﴾ وَإِن كُنْتُمْ فِي شَكٍّ مِنْ شَيْءٍ فَاذْكُرُوا أَن تَكُونَ أُمَّةٌ لَا تَعْلَمُونَ شَيْئًا وَكَانَ رَبُّكَ خَبِيرًا ﴿٣﴾

«Do not grieve, your tongue with haste concerning it! For it is for Us to Collect it and give you the ability to recite it» [75:17]

Allaah describes the Qur'aan as,

وَالْقُرْآنُ كَرِيمٌ ﴿١﴾ أَفَلَا يَتَذَكَّرُ الَّذِينَ نَسُوا أَوْتَارًا ﴿٢﴾ فَأَتَاهُمُ الْبُكُورُ مِنْ بَيْنِ يَدَيْهِمْ وَالْغُلَامَ أَهْلًا ﴿٣﴾ أَفَلَا يَتَذَكَّرُ أُولَئِكَ أَمَّا نَسُوا فَأَيُّ الْفَرِيقَيْنِ سَاءُ مَا يَحْكُمُونَ ﴿٤﴾

«an honourable and respected Book. Foolishness cannot approach it from in front of it or from behind it; it is a revelation from One who is All-Wise, Worthy of Praise» [41:41-42]

This is one of the unique blessings that this *ummah* – and the Prophet (ﷺ) – has been favoured with over other nations. The Qur'aan is the only divinely-revealed Scripture whose preservation has been promised by Allaah. The responsibility of pre-

serving earlier Scriptures had been placed upon its recipients, without any divine aid. Allaah mentions, concerning the earlier Scriptures,

وَالرَّسُولَ وَالْأَخْيَارَ بِمَا اسْتَخَفُّوا مِنْ كِتَابِ اللَّهِ وَكَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِهِ شُكَّاهًا

«... and the rabbis and the priests (judged according to their Scriptures), for to them was entrusted the protection of the Book of Allaah, and they were witnesses to it...» (244)

Thus, the earlier nations were given the responsibility of protecting their scriptures, in contrast to the Qur'aan, whose protection was the responsibility of the Creator.

An unbiased researcher, whether he believes in the prophethood of Muhammad (ﷺ) or not, must conclude that the Qur'aan that is present today is the same Qur'aan that the Prophet (ﷺ) taught to the Companions. It therefore behoves Muslims when making such bold claims to investigate the history of its compilation, and examine the manner in which it was preserved.

There are three distinct stages of the compilation of the Qur'aan. The first is the preservation of the Qur'aan during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ); the second, the compilation of the Qur'aan by Abuu Bakr; and the third, the compilation of 'Uthmaan. All that occurred after the compilation of 'Uthmaan is not related to its preservation, and will not be discussed in as much detail.

1. During the Prophet's (ﷺ) Life

The Prophet (ﷺ) was sent to an illiterate nation, as the Qur'aan itself attests:

فَرَأَى النَّاسَ يَرْجِعُونَ إِلَى اللَّهِ وَمُسْتَضَرًّا
عَلَيْهِمْ أَتَيْنَهُمْ مِنْ أَنْفُسِهِمْ الْكِتَابَ وَالْحِكْمَةَ وَعَلَّمَهُمْ
بِمَا كَانُوا يَعْلَمُونَ ﴿١٠١﴾

«He is the one Who has sent amongst the illiterate ones a Messenger from amongst themselves, who will recite to them His signs, and purify them, and teach them the Book, and the Wisdom, and before this, they were in deed in manifest error» (62:2)

Not only was the nation that the Prophet (ﷺ) was sent to illiterate, but so was the Prophet (ﷺ) himself. Allaah commands mankind in the Qur'aan.

قُلْ
يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ إِنِّي رَسُولُ اللَّهِ إِلَيْكُمْ بِبَيِّنَاتٍ
لَقَدْ كُنْتُمْ أَشْكَرَ الْكَافِرِينَ وَالَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا مِنْ آلِ فِرْعَوْنَ
كَانُوا بِآيَاتِهِ كَاذِبِينَ

«Say (O Muhammad (ﷺ)): 'O Mankind! Verily, I am sent to you all, as the Messenger of Allaah, to Whom belongs the dominion of the heavens and earth. There is no god except He! So believe in Allaah, and His Messenger, who can neither read nor write...» [7: 158]

In another verse, Allaah describes the believers as,

الَّذِينَ يَتَّبِعُونَ الرَّسُولَ النَّبِيَّ الْأُمِّيَّ

«Those who follow the unlettered prophet...» [7: 157]

The fact that the Prophet (ﷺ) could neither read nor write was meant to be one of the greatest proofs that the Qur'aan was not from him, but rather from the Creator Himself. If Muhammad (ﷺ) was illiterate, then from where did he bring forth the literary masterpiece of the Qur'aan? The Qur'aan itself says:

وَمَا كُنْتَ تَقْرَأُ مِنْ قَبْلِهِ مِنْ كِتَابٍ
وَلَا تَلْقَاهُ مِنْ نَجْدٍ ۚ أَتَذْكُرُ الْمَقْتُولَ ﴿٢٥﴾

«Neither did you (O Muhammad) read any book before it (i.e., the revelation of the Qur'aan), nor did you write (any book) with your right hand! In that case, indeed, the followers of falsehood might have doubted.» [29: 48] ²²⁴

In other words, if the Prophet (ﷺ) had been a writer, and one whom the people knew to be an eloquent author, this might have given reason to doubt the Prophet's (ﷺ) claim of prophethood, but since the Prophet (ﷺ) was illiterate, and well-known to be so, then such a doubt could not exist!

The fact that the Prophet (ﷺ) and the nation that he was sent to was illiterate does not imply that the Arabs had no experience in the art of composition and rhetoric. On the contrary, the Arabs of the Prophet's (ﷺ) time had a very strong oral tradition of poetry, and the various tribes of Arabia used to compete with one another in producing the most eloquent poems. The annual fair of 'Ukaz²²⁵ was the time when every poet would try to compete for the honour of having his poem posted on the door of the Ka'bah. What is known, however, is that the knowledge of reading and writing was minimal. It is said that, at the time of the advent of Islam, only seventeen people knew how to read and write in Makkah.²²⁶ Thus, the Arabs were forced to pass on most of their history and poetry orally, and because of this, they became well known for their strong memories. This was the literary situation of the people that the Prophet (ﷺ) was sent to...

224. It should be mentioned that a small number of classical scholars believed that the Prophet (ﷺ) eventually learnt how to read and write. They claimed that, after the revelation of the Qur'aan and his (ﷺ) illiteracy was established, there was no need for the Prophet (ﷺ) to remain illiterate, and that Allaah taught him how to read and write. However, the proofs for this are not sufficient, and this opinion is rejected by the majority of scholars. In addition, these 'proofs' clearly contradict the Qur'aan's description of the Prophet (ﷺ) as being illiterate, and therefore cannot be accepted. See al-Zanjasari, v. 1, pp. 364-367 for an in-depth discussion of this point.

225. Azura, p. 1

With these facts in mind, it is doubtful that the Qur'aan was written down during the very early Makkian period, meaning the first two or three years. However, due to the modest number of *soorahs* revealed, it would have been very easy to memorise this quantity. The prayer (*ṣalaat*) had already been made obligatory before the Prophet's (ﷺ) journey of *al-farāṣa al-mir'aa*,²²⁶ so the Companions would have had to memorise the *soorahs* in existence at the time to recite in their prayers.

The earliest record that exists of the Qur'aan having been written down is during the sixth year of the prophethood (seven years before the *Aḡṣab*), when 'Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭāb accepted Islam. The story of 'Umar's conversion mentions that his sister had a *ḡajayfah* (parchment) that one of the Companions, Khabaab ibn al-Arath, had brought with him to teach her family. Khabaab would secretly come to the house of 'Umar's brother-in-law with this parchment, and teach them the Qur'aan. This parchment had the first few verses of *Soorah Ba Ha* written on it. After 'Umar read it, he said, "How beautiful and eloquent is this speech!"²²⁷ and realised that the Qur'aan was a revelation from Allaah and accepted Islam. This story indicates that the Qur'aan was being recorded and taught to others even during the early stages of the Prophet's (ﷺ) mission, when the Muslims were still being persecuted.

The Prophet (ﷺ) was also very concerned about the preservation of the Qur'aan. He (ﷺ) used to be fearful of forgetting the verses that Jibreel recited to him, so he used to start repeating the verses even before Jibreel finished. Allaah then revealed, to reassure him,

لَا تَنْفِرْ فَرِيحًا وَلَا نَفَسًا وَلَا يَمُوتُ رُوحًا ۚ إِنَّ عَلَيْكَ عَيْنًا وَنُفْرًا ۝

-Move not your tongue with haste, to cease it. It is for Us to collect it and give you the ability to recite as [73:16-17]

Also, the Prophet (ﷺ) used to spend large portions of the night reciting the Qur'aan. The Qur'aan mentions,

إِنَّكَ بِعَيْنِكَ تَحْرُوقُ ۚ إِنَّ مِنْ لَدُنِّي إِلَيْنِ سَمْعًا وَبَصَرًا ۚ
وَمِنَ اللَّيْلِ فَسَبِّحْهُ وَإِدْبَارَ النُّجُومِ ۚ
فَبِشْرِكِ الْقُرْآنِ وَأَنْتَ قَسَمٌ مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ

- Surely, your Lord knows that you stand (to pray) a little less than two thirds of the night, or (sometimes) half of it, or (sometimes) a third of it, and so do

²²⁶ This is the journey of the Prophet (ﷺ) in which Allaah took him to Jerusalem, and from there to the Heavens. At this occasion, Allaah obligated the prayer five times a day. Before this, the prayer had been twice a day, and according to the strongest opinion, had been obligated the second year of his (ﷺ) prophethood. See *Mahabul-Uloom, Risālah al-Mahab*, p. 89.

²²⁷ See *Mahabul-Uloom*, p. 123-4 for further details on the conversion of 'Umar. Although some scholars point out that the *version* of this story is not authentic, as the details of the *version* and other aspects of history, it is not essential that such incidents have a perfect *version*. This is because no law or belief is based on these *versions*.

a group of [believers] with you... so recite as much of the Qur'aan as easy for you... (73:24)

In later years, when larger portions of the Qur'aan had been revealed, the Prophet (ﷺ) used to recite, in one *raṣṣ'ah*, *Soorah al-Baqarah*, *Aali-Imraan*, and *an-Nisaa'* (around a sixth of the Qur'aan).

The concern that the Prophet (ﷺ) showed in teaching the Qur'aan is shown by the following narration: 'Ubadah ibn al-Saamit reported, "Whenever a person migrated to Madsinah, the Prophet (ﷺ) would assign him to one of us so that we could teach him the Qur'aan. Eventually, the *magid* became so noisy because of all of this recitation of the Qur'aan that the Prophet (ﷺ) ordered us to lower our voices so as not to distort the meaning (by mixing all of these verses)."²²⁸ Therefore, the Prophet (ﷺ) would ensure that each new Muslim had a teacher to teach him the Qur'aan.

Such was the concern of the Prophet (ﷺ) in teaching the Qur'aan to the new Muslims that he would even send Companions to other cities to ensure that the Muslims in those cities could memorise the Qur'aan. Even before the *Hijrah*, the Prophet (ﷺ) sent two Companions, Ibn Umm Maktum and Mus'ab ibn 'Umayr, to teach the Muslims of Madsinah the Qur'aan. After the *Hijrah*, the Prophet (ﷺ) sent Mu'aadh ibn Jabal to Makkah to teach the Qur'aan to those who had not been able to perform the *Hijrah*.²²⁹

The Companions shared the Prophet's (ﷺ) concern for the preservation of the Qur'aan. They would recite and memorise as much of the Qur'aan as possible. Those who were famous for having memorised most if not all of the Qur'aan were Abou Bakr, Umar ibn al-Khattab, 'Uthmaan ibn 'Affaan, 'Alee ibn Abi Talib, Hudhayfah ibn al-Yamaan, 'Abdullaah ibn Mas'ood, 'Abdullaah ibn 'Amr, 'Abdullaah ibn 'Abbaas, Ubay ibn Ka'ab, Mu'awidh ibn Jabal, Zayd ibn Thabit, and others. During the incident of *Bayt al-Ma'wah*²³⁰ alone, which occurred in the fourth year after the *Hijrah*, seventy reciters (memorizers) of the Qur'aan were killed, and a similar number were killed in the Battle of Yamanmah (12 A.H.). This shows that many of the Companions had memorised most, if not all of the Qur'aan.

There are some narrations, however, that seem to imply that only a certain number of people memorised the Qur'aan during the Prophet's (ﷺ) lifetime. For example, a narration in al-Bukhaaree mentions Anas ibn Malik as saying that only four people memorised the Qur'aan before the Prophet's (ﷺ) death: Ubay ibn Ka'ab, Mu'aadh ibn Jabal, Zayd ibn Thabit and Abou Zayd (his name was Qays ibn as-Sakan). Another narration, also in al-Bukhaaree, states that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Learn the Qur'aan from four people: 'Abdullaah ibn Mas'ood, Saalim, Mu'aadh ibn Jabal, and Ubay ibn Ka'ab."

²²⁸ Ubaydaat, p. 120

²²⁹ *Muḥarrakhoor*, p. 130

²³⁰ The Prophet (ﷺ) had sent these seventy Companions to teach certain tribes that had pretended to show an interest in Islam, but in reality were disbelievers. When these Companions reached the Well (Bayt) of Ma'wah, they were massacred. cf. *Muḥarrakhoor*, p. 345

The meaning of these narrations, as Imam adh-Dhahabee (d. 748 A.H.) mentions, is that these Companions were the ones who were the foremost in the memorisation of the Qur'aan, and it is through them that the chains of narration of the Qur'aan go back to the Prophet (ﷺ). In other words, these Companions were the most famous in their knowledge of the recitation of the Qur'aan, and the most prominent in teaching it to the next generation. Imam adh-Dhahabee said, after mentioning the names of the seven Companions²³¹ who were the most famous as having memorised the Qur'aan, "These are the ones whom we know to have memorised the Qur'aan during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ), and the Qur'aan was taken from them directly, and from them originate the chains of narrations (*isnaad*) of all *tenqis'at*."²³² The Qur'aan was also memorised by other Companions, but their recitations have not reached us (through any *isnaad*)."²³³

During the later periods, the Prophet (ﷺ) also made sure that the Qur'aan was written down, and not just memorised. Al-Bukhaaree reports the following story:

When it was revealed

لَا يَسْتَوِي الْقَائِدُونَ مِنَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ غَيْرُ أُولِي الْأَرْسِلِ وَالْمُهَاجِرُونَ فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ

"Not equal are those believers who sit at home and those that strive in the cause of Allah..." [4:95]

the Prophet (ﷺ) said 'Call Zayd bin Thabit for me, and tell him to bring the ink pot and the scrapula bone (*usn*, paper and pen).' When Zayd came, the Prophet (ﷺ) told him, 'Write: "Not equal are those believers who sit at home and those...[to the end of the verse]"'

This incident shows the haste with which the Prophet (ﷺ) recorded the Qur'aan to ensure its preservation. Not only did the Prophet (ﷺ) ensure that the Qur'aan was written down, but he (ﷺ) also checked whether it was written correctly. Zayd narrates, "I used to write the Revelation (the Qur'aan) for the Prophet (ﷺ), and he would dictate it to me. When he finished, he would command me: 'Read it (back to me)!' So I used to recite back to him (what I had written)..."²³⁴

The parchments on which the Qur'aan was written were so common that Zayd bin Thabit reported, "During the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ), we used to compile the Qur'aan from scraps of cloth."²³⁵ In other words, they used to form the various *soorahs* and join the verses scrap by scrap. The writing materials included cloth, stones, date-palm leaves, saddles and shoulder blades of animals. According to the *Tabaqaat* of Ibn Sa'ad, twenty-four different people acted in the capacity of scribes for the Prophet (ﷺ), among them the four caliphs, and Zayd bin Thabit.

231 These were: 'Uthmaan bin 'Affan, 'Alee bin Abi Talib, 'Ubay bin Ka'ab, 'Abdullah bin Mas'ood, Zayd bin Thabit, 'Abu Moosa al-Ash'aree and 'Abu ad-Dardaa.

232 See Chapter 11 'The Qur'aan of the Qur'aan' for details on the *qur'aan*.

233 adh-Dhahabee, p. 42.

234 al-Hisnad, p. 98.

235 Reported by al-Hisnad.

The Companions also had their own personal copies of the Qur'aan. The Prophet (ﷺ) had commanded the Companions, "Do not write anything from me except the Qur'aan. Whoever writes anything besides the Qur'aan should burn it."²³⁶ So common, in fact, were these *muṣ-ḥaf* that the Prophet (ﷺ) had to issue an order prohibiting the Companions from travelling to enemy territories with copies of the Qur'aan, for fear that these *muṣ-ḥaf* might fall into enemy hands and thus be disrespected.²³⁷

Those Companions who were famous for their *muṣ-ḥaf* were Ubay ibn Ka'ab, 'Abdullah ibn Mas'ood, 'Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭab, 'Alee ibn 'Alee Taalib, and some of the wives of the Prophet (ﷺ), amongst them 'Aa'ishah and Hafsa. Some sources have listed over fifteen Companions who were recorded to have written down most of the Qur'aan.²³⁸ These were not complete copies of the Qur'aan, nor was the arrangement of the *soorah* in them the same as the later arrangement. For example, Ibn Mas'ood had one hundred and six *soorah*, and the order of the *soorah* was not the order which is present today. Ubay ibn Ka'ab also had less than one hundred and fourteen *soorah* and, in addition to the *soorah* that he had, the prayer for *qunoot*²³⁹ and a *ḥadeeth* are also found.

'Scholars' who try to cast doubts on the authenticity of the Qur'aan use such narrations to try to prove that these additions were actually 'verses' that were left out of the Qur'aan, but it should be remembered that these copies were for personal use, and as such the Companions could have written any knowledge besides the Qur'aan that they wished to preserve. Az-Zarqaanee writes:

To summarise, some Companions who used to write the Qur'aan in personal *muṣ-ḥaf* sometimes wrote material that was not a part of the Qur'aan. This (material) might be interpretative clauses for certain obscure phrases in the Qur'aan, or prayers (*du'a'a*), or other similar things. They were fully aware that these additions were not a part of the Qur'aan. However, because of the scarcity of writing materials, and since the *muṣ-ḥaf* were for personal use, they wrote these additions in the *muṣ-ḥaf* since there was no fear of them mixing the additions that they had written with the text of the Qur'aan. These people of little intellect fail to take these factors into account, and assume that these additions were actually a part of the Qur'aan, even though this was not the case.²⁴⁰

It was the practice of the Prophet (ﷺ) to recite the Qur'aan to the Angel Jibreel every year, during the month of Ramaḍaan, and Jibreel would also recite it back to him. Faqarah, the daughter of the Prophet (ﷺ), reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) confided in her, "Jibreel used to recite the whole Qur'aan to me every Ramaḍaan, but this year he has recited it to me twice. I do not see (any explanation for this) except that

236 Reported by Muslim. This command was later abrogated by *hujj* for his, later allowed the Companions to write down *ḥadeeth* also. See *Az-Zarqaanee*, p. 22, 25.

237 Ibn 'Alee Daasood, p. 179.

238 Jeffery, p. 14.

239 A prayer that is meant to be recited in the *ruku* prayer.

240 az-Zarqaanee, v. 1, p. 271. This point will be discussed in greater detail in Ch. 17.

my time (of death) is near."²⁹¹ In another narration, 'A'ishah added, "The Prophet (ﷺ) used to meet Jibreel every night of Ramaḡaan, and recite to him the Qur'aan."²⁹² Therefore, the Prophet (ﷺ) used to recite the Qur'aan to Jibreel, and used to hear Jibreel's recitation also, and the year that he (ﷺ) died, he recited the Qur'aan twice to Jibreel, and heard it from Jibreel twice. During this last recitation, Zayd ibn Thaabit was present.

The Prophet (ﷺ) did not compile the Qur'aan in one book during his lifetime, nor did he command the Companions to do so. He made sure that the Qur'aan was written down in its totality, but he (ﷺ) did not order for it to be compiled between two covers. There are a number of reasons for this:

- 1) There was no pressing need during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ) to compile the whole Qur'aan in one book, since the Qur'aan was not in any danger of being lost. There were numerous Companions who had memorised all of it, and each Companion had memorised various portions of it.
- 2) During the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ), the Qur'aan used to be continually revealed. Therefore it would not have been feasible to compile all of it in one book, since it had not been completely revealed yet. The last verse was revealed only *sane* days before the death of the Prophet (ﷺ).
- 3) The arrangement of the verses and *suraḥ* was not chronological. Verses that were revealed years after the *Ayyah* could be placed, by the command of the Prophet (ﷺ), in the midst of *suraḥ*an verses, and vice versa. Therefore, the Prophet (ﷺ) could not have compiled the Qur'aan in the correct order until all its verses had been revealed.
- 4) There were some revelations that used to be a part of the Qur'aan, but Allaah abrogated their recitation.²⁹³ During the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ), this abrogation could occur at any time; therefore it was essential that the *saḡy* be terminated before the Qur'aan be compiled.

To summarise, when the Prophet (ﷺ) passed away, the entire Qur'aan had been memorised by many of the Companions, and existed in written form, but it had not been compiled between two covers. Rather, it was scattered in loose fragments that were owned by different people. Some Companions also had substantial (yet incomplete) copies of the Qur'aan.

II. The First Compilation

After the death of the Prophet (ﷺ), the Companions chose the best of them to be their leader, and Aboo Bakr took over the affairs of the Muslims. The first issue that Aboo Bakr had to deal with was the issue of apostasy. Some 'Muslims' had accepted

²⁹¹ Reported by al-Bukhaari.

²⁹² Reported by al-Bukhaari.

²⁹³ See Ch. 15, Abrogation in the Qur'aan for further details.

Islam during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ) for political reasons, and immediately after the death of the Prophet (ﷺ), refused to give allegiance to the new Islamic state. Many of these 'Muslims' had given their allegiance to people who claimed to be prophets. Abou Bakr then undertook a series of wars that became known as the 'Wars of Apostasy' against these people, in order to consolidate the Muslim *awmash*.

During one of these battles, the Battle of Yammamah (12 A.H.),²⁴⁴ around seventy Companions who had memorised the Qur'aan were martyred. The death of such a large number of *quraan*' (memorizers of the Qur'aan) alarmed 'Umar, and he went to Abou Bakr and said, "Many of the memorizers of the Qur'aan have died, and I am scared lest more die in later battles. This might lead to the loss of the Qur'aan, unless you collect it." 'Umar not only realised the danger of this great loss, but also proposed a solution.

Abou Bakr replied, "How can I do that which the Prophet (ﷺ) did not do?" Abou Bakr, the one whom the Prophet (ﷺ) trusted the most in all his affairs, could not even think of undertaking a project that the Prophet (ﷺ) had not done, nor ordered to be done. He was worried that such a project might be considered an innovation in the religion.

But 'Umar continued to convince him, exhorting him of the merits of such an idea, and proving to him that such a project was in no way an innovation. 'Umar realised that this act did not qualify as an innovation in the religion, since the compilation of the Qur'aan was not a religious act *per se*, but rather an act that was of general benefit (*maslaha*) to the Muslims. He continued to convince Abou Bakr until Abou Bakr understood 'Umar's arguments and agreed to the project. They both decided to put the Companion Zayd bin Thabit in charge of collecting the entire Qur'aan in one manuscript. Abou Bakr told him, "You are an intelligent young man, and we do not doubt you. You used to write the revelation for the Prophet (ﷺ), so we want you to collect the Qur'aan."²⁴⁵

They chose Zayd because he was the person best suited for the job, for the following reasons:

- 1) He was the primary scribe of the Prophet (ﷺ), and it was because of this that Abou Bakr said, "You used to write the revelation for the Prophet (ﷺ)." This is also shown by the above-mentioned narration in al-Bukhaaree in which the Prophet (ﷺ) ordered for Zayd to be called. Once, after the Prophet's (ﷺ) death, some people entered in upon Zayd and asked him, "Narrate to us something from the Prophet (ﷺ)." He responded, "And what can I narrate to you? (or, "And what should I narrate to you?") I used to be a neighbour of the Prophet (ﷺ), so whenever any inspiration came to him, he would call me to write it..."²⁴⁶ Zayd,

244 This was an attack on Musaylamah the Liar, who had claimed to be a prophet. It was one of the bloodiest of the "Wars of Apostasy."

245 The incident of the compilation of the Qur'aan is reported by al-Bukhaaree, and others.

246 Ibn Abi Dawood, p. 3.

therefore, was the one whom the Prophet (ﷺ) had entrusted with the writing of the Qur'aan.

- 2) He had memorised the entire Qur'aan during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ). Anas ibn Maalik said, "Only four people memorised the Qur'aan before the Prophet's (ﷺ) death: Ubay ibn Ka'ab, Mu'aadh ibn Jabal, Zayd ibn Thaabit and Abou Zayd."²⁴⁷
- 3) He was relatively younger than the other Companions, and thus his memory was sharper. He narrates concerning himself that when he was eleven years old, and the Prophet (ﷺ) had just arrived in Madeenah, "I was brought to the Prophet (ﷺ), and the people said, 'O Messenger of Allah (ﷺ)! This is one of the boys of (the tribe of) Banee an-Najjaar, and he has memorised seventeen *suraah*.' So I recited to the Prophet (ﷺ), and he was well pleased with that."²⁴⁸
- 4) He was present at time of the Prophet's (ﷺ) last recitation to Jibreel in the Ramadhan before he (ﷺ) died. The famous successor, Abou 'Abd ar-Rahmaan as-Sulamee (d. 70 A.H.), said, "Zayd witnessed the last recitation (of the Prophet (ﷺ) to Jibreel), and because of this, Abou Bakr relied upon him in its compilation, and 'Uthmaan put him in charge of writing it (during the second compilation)."²⁴⁹
- 5) He was one of the most knowledgeable Companions with regards to the recitation of the Qur'aan. Sulayman ibn Yasar (d. 100 A.H.) said, "Neither 'Umar nor 'Uthmaan preferred anyone over Zayd ibn Thaabit when it came to the laws of inheritance... and the recitation of the Qur'aan." 'Aasim ibn Sharheel ash-Sha'bee (d. 103 A.H.) said, "Zayd ibn Thaabit overwhelmed and conquered the people with his knowledge of the recitation (of the Qur'aan), and his knowledge of the laws of inheritance." Such was his stature among the Companions that 'Umar, 'Uthmaan and 'Alee all appointed Zayd to be one of the main judges and reciters of Madeenah, and he remained in this post until he passed away in 45 A.H. The day he died, Ibn 'Umar said, "May Allah have mercy on him! He was a scholar amongst the people..." Umar sent out scholars to take over the judicial posts all over the Muslims lands, but he kept Zayd in Madeenah so that he could give verdicts amongst its inhabitants.²⁵⁰

Thus, it is of little surprise that Abou Bakr and 'Umar both thought of Zayd as the person who should be given this monumental task, for he had in him all the qualities that were needed for this undertaking. But Zayd too was reluctant, and it was only after both Abou Bakr and 'Umar convinced him that he agreed to do the task. "It would have been easier for me to move a mountain than do that which they told me to do," he said.

247 Reported by al-Bukhaaree. The meaning of this narration was explained earlier.

248 al-Hamad, p. 112.

249 as-Zarkhashi, v. 1, p. 237.

250 All quotes taken from al-Hamad, p. 113.

He set about collecting the various fragments of the Qur'aan from 'the pieces of wood and the chests of people'. He required at least two people (besides himself) who had learnt the verses from the Prophet (ﷺ) directly, and at least one written copy of the verse written under the supervision of the Prophet (ﷺ), to merit its acceptance into his final compilation. 'Umar ibn al-Khattab stood up in the mosque and proclaimed, "Whoever has learnt any Qur'aan from the Prophet (ﷺ) then let him bring it forth."²⁵¹

At this, the people brought him the scraps and parchments upon which they had written the Qur'aan. Abuu Bakr told them, "Sit at the door of the mosque. Whoever brings you two witnesses (for a verse), then write it down."²⁵² Some scholars have interpreted this as meaning two witnesses and two written copies were required.

Zayd reports, "I collected the Qur'aan, until I found the last two verses of Soorah at-Tawbah with Khuzaymah ibn Thaabit al-Ansaari:

لَقَدْ جَاءَكُمْ رَسُولٌ مِنْ أَنْفُسِكُمْ

-There has come to you, from amongst yourselves, a Messenger...[9:128]

I found these verses with him only."²⁵³ This report does not mean that only Khuzaymah had heard the verse from the Prophet (ﷺ), but rather that he was the only one that brought a parchment that had these verses written on it. In fact, when Khuzaymah came, 'Uthmaan ibn 'Affaan said, "I testify that these verses have been (revealed from) Allaah!"²⁵⁴

The strict criteria employed by Zayd ensured the authenticity of the compilation. Even though Zayd had memorised the entire Qur'aan, and could have written it from his own memory, he still made sure that there were at least two other memorizers of the verse, and a written copy of the verse, written under the direct supervision of the Prophet (ﷺ). The narration of Khuzaymah, mentioned above, indicates that Zayd was looking for the last two verses of Soorah at-Tawbah, since he had heard them from the Prophet (ﷺ), but nobody else had brought forth written copies until Khuzaymah came. Another narration adds, "I could not find a verse that I used to hear from the Prophet (ﷺ), until I found it with a person from the Ansaar, and I did not find it with anybody else.

مِنَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ رِجَالٌ صَدَقُوا مَا عَاهَدُوا اللَّهَ عَلَيْهِ

-Amongst the Believers are men who have fulfilled their covenant with Allaah [33:23]."

so I put it at its proper soorah."²⁵⁵ This narration also proves the fact that Zayd knew what was part of the Qur'aan and what was not, since he mentioned that he was

²⁵¹ Ibn Abi-Daood, p. 10

²⁵² *ibid.*, p. 10

²⁵³ Reported by al-Bukhaari

²⁵⁴ Ibn Abi-Daood, p. 11

²⁵⁵ Ibn Abi-Daood, p. 5

searching for a particular verse, and could not find it. It also proves that the arrangement of the verses was known to the Companions, because he put the verse 'in its proper *sorah*'.

Now, for the first time, the Qur'aan was in one book. Barely two years after the death of the Prophet (ﷺ), when all of the major Companions were still alive, the Qur'aan had been compiled. The written copy of the Qur'aan was called a *muṣ-ḥaf* (literally meaning a collection of loose papers) and remained with Abū Bakr and, after his death, with 'Umar, then with Hafsah, the daughter of 'Umar and a wife of the Prophet (ﷺ).

The *muṣ-ḥaf* that Abū Bakr ordered to be collected was not meant to be an official copy that the whole *ummah* had to follow. Rather, it was meant to preserve the Qur'aan in its entirety, and ensure that none of its verses were lost. In this, Abū Bakr accomplished a momentous task. 'Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib remarked, 'The person with the greatest rewards with regards to the (compilation) of the *muṣ-ḥaf* is Abū Bakr. May Allāh's mercy be on Abū Bakr, he was the first person to compile the Book of Allāh' ²⁵⁰.

There is some difference of opinion over the arrangement of the *sorahs* in Abū Bakr's *muṣ-ḥaf*. Most of the scholars are of the opinion that Abū Bakr's *muṣ-ḥaf* did not concern itself with the proper order of the *sorahs*, for it was not meant to be an official copy that was binding upon the *ummah*. Others allege the *sorahs* were in the same order as that of 'Uthmaan. Also, it is alleged that this *muṣ-ḥaf* was written to preserve all the *ahraf*²⁵¹ of the Qur'aan. In reality, it is of no great consequence whether the *muṣ-ḥaf* of Abū Bakr was in the same arrangement of *sorahs* as that of the 'Uthmaanic one or not, or whether it was written with the intent of preserving all the *ahraf*; the primary purpose of this compilation was to serve as a basis for the 'Uthmaanic compilation, and it is this compilation that is linked directly to the *muṣ-ḥafs* that are present in our hands today.

III. The 'Uthmaanic Compilation

After the death of Abū Bakr, 'Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭāb took over the leadership of the Muslims. Under his auspicious caliphate, the territories of the Muslims expanded five-fold what they had been. When he passed away, the Muslims controlled the remnants of the Persian Empire, Egypt, Syria and parts of the then-defunct Byzantine (Eastern Roman) Empire.

After 'Umar's death, 'Uthmaan took over the caliphate, and continued the great legacy of his two predecessors. The Muslims were successful in waging *jihad* for the cause of Allāh, and spreading the religion of Islaam. One of the places where this

²⁵⁰ Qaṣṣa, p. 128. As for the claim by certain Islamic sects that 'Alī was the first to compile the Qur'aan, this narration from 'Alī himself shows it to be false. Also, the narration which mentions 'Alī as being the first is weak, cf. Ibn Abī Duwūd, p. 10.

²⁵¹ See Ch. 10, 'The *Aḥraf* of the Qur'aan', for further details.

was occurring were the territories of Armenia and Azerbaijan. Muslims from different parts of the *umma* had joined forces to fight against the enemy.

Unfortunately, the Muslims started differing amongst themselves with regards to the recitation of the Qur'aan. The Muslims from Syria were reciting the Qur'aan differently than the Muslims from Iraq.²⁵⁸ They began contending with each other, each regarding his recitation superior to his brother's. These Muslims were not Companions, and therefore were not trained in the proper manner and enunciation of the recitation of the Qur'aan. One of the Companions who was present amongst them, Hudhayfah ibn al-Yamaan, could not believe what was happening. He advised them to leave this argumentation, but realised that some action must be taken to prevent this occurrence on a larger scale. He therefore left Azerbaijan for Madaanah, to report to the caliph 'Uthmaan.

"O Commander of the Faithful" Hudhayfah pleaded to 'Uthmaan, "save this *umma* before it disagrees about its Book, like the Jews and Christians did before it."²⁵⁹ Hudhayfah told 'Uthmaan what had occurred amongst the new Muslims in Azerbaijan. 'Uthmaan, alarmed by this news, convened a gathering of the leading Companions. He informed them of what Hudhayfah had told him, and requested their advice on this matter. The Companions, in return, asked 'Uthmaan what he thought the best plan of action was. 'Uthmaan told them his opinion; Official copies of the Qur'aan should be written and sent to all the provinces, and all other copies destroyed, so that the *umma* would have one standard Qur'aan. Therefore, this standard version would serve to unite the Muslims upon one recitation.

'Abu ibn Abi Ja'afar said concerning this incident, "O People! Do not say evil of 'Uthmaan, but only say good about him. Concerning the burning of the *muq-haf*, I swear by Allaah, he only did this after he had called all of us. He asked us, 'What do you think (should be done) concerning these recitations (in Azerbaijan)?' For it has reached me that each party is claiming that their recitation is better, and this (attitude) might lead to disbelief.' We asked him, 'What do you suggest we do?' He responded, 'I think we should consolidate the Muslims on one *muq-haf*, so that there not be any disagreements or disunity.' We said, 'Verily, this idea of yours is an excellent idea.'²⁶⁰ The action of 'Uthmaan was agreed upon by all of the Companions.

Therefore, after the Companions agreed to his idea, he requested Hafsaah, the daughter of 'Umar ibn al-Khattaab, to loan him the *muq-haf* that 'Abu Bakr had ordered to be compiled, which she did. He then chose a committee of four people,²⁶¹ namely Zayd ibn Thabit, 'Abdullaah ibn az-Zubayr, Sa'eed ibn al-'Aas and 'Abd al-

²⁵⁸ The reason why the recitations of Syria and Iraq differed from one another will be understood after one reads Ch. 10 on the *ajraf*.

²⁵⁹ This incident is reported in al-Bukhaaree. Other narrations imply that such a disagreement had also occurred in Madaanah, and when Hudhayfah informed 'Uthmaan of the situation in Azerbaijan, this further alarmed 'Uthmaan, and caused him to convene a gathering of the Companions.

²⁶⁰ Ibn Abi Duwaan, p. 22.

²⁶¹ According to another opinion, twelve people, but this is the weaker opinion. Cf. Ibn Abi Duwaan, p. 26.

Rahmaan ibn al-Harith to rewrite the *mushaf* of Abuu Bakr. He chose Zayd ibn Thaabit for the same reasons that Abuu Bakr had done before him, and Sa'eed ibn al-'Aas was known for his knowledge of the Arabic language. Immaam adh-Dhahabee (d. 748 A.H.) said, "Sa'eed ibn al-'Aas was one of the members of the committee whom 'Uthmaan chose to write the *mushaf*, due to his eloquence, and because his (Arabic) style was very similar to the Prophet's (ﷺ)." ³⁶² The other two members were respectable Companions, knowledgeable of the Arabic language and of the Qur'aan.

Apart from Zayd, the other three committee members were from the Quraysh. This was done on purpose; 'Uthmaan told them, "If you (three) and Zayd differ (on how to spell a word), then spell it in the dialect of the Quraysh, for verily it was revealed in their dialect." ³⁶³ 'Uthmaan said this in response to a difference that arose amongst them concerning the writing of the word 'absoo' (in 2:248); should they write the word in the Qurayshite style of 'absoo' or the Madanee style of 'absool' (i.e., with a *taa marboosah*)? ³⁶⁴ 'Uthmaan answered them that they should write it as *absoo*, since this was the style of the Quraysh.

This incident shows that the committee consulted the other Companions concerning even such minor details as the spellings of certain words. At times, when there was a difference of opinion, they even called that particular scribe (if it happened to be other than Zayd) who had written the verse for the Prophet (ﷺ), so that they could ask him how he had spelt the word. ³⁶⁵

After the committee finished its task, 'Uthmaan ordered that one copy of this *mushaf* be sent to every province, and ordered the governors of each province to burn all the other copies of the Qur'aan in their provinces. This was a drastic step, but it was necessary if the unity of the Muslims was to be preserved. Every Qur'aan written after this time had to conform letter for letter to 'Uthmaan's *mushaf*. By his wise decision, 'Uthmaan provided a copy of the Qur'aan that would serve as a model for all future *mushafs*. And, as 'Alee pointed out, 'Uthmaan did this with the approval of the Companions. ³⁶⁶ In fact 'Alee ibn Abee Jaasib said, "If I were in charge (of the affairs of the Muslims) when 'Uthmaan had been, I would have done the same as he did." ³⁶⁷

Not only did 'Uthmaan send the actual *mushafi* to each province, he also sent Qur'aanic reciters to teach the people the correct recitation of the Qur'aan. He kept Zayd ibn Thaabit in Madinah; with the Makkian *mushaf*, he sent 'Abdullaah ibn Sa'ib (d. 63 A.H.); to Syria was sent al-Mugheerah ibn Shu'bah (d. 50 A.H.); Abuu 'Abd-ar-Rahmaan as-Sulamee (d. 70 A.H.) was sent to Koolah; and 'Aamir ibn 'Abdul

362 adh-Dhahabee: *Siyar*, v. 3, p. 449.

363 Reported by al-Bukhaaree.

364 cf. al-Haamad, p. 126-7 for examples.

365 Although there are some reports that initially 'Abdullaah ibn Mas'ood did not agree with 'Uthmaan's decision, it is also reported that he later changed his mind, cf. Ibn Abee Dawood, pp. 13-18. According to the famous historian, Ibn Kathir, 'Uthmaan wrote to Ibn Mas'ood asking him to follow the consensus of the other Companions, which he agreed to do, cf. al-Bidayah wa an-Nihayah, v. 7, p. 207.

366 al-Zarqaanee, v. 1, p. 262.

Qays to Bagrah (d. ~ 55 A.H.).³⁶⁷ All of these reciters were well-known for their recitation of the Qur'aan, and it is in fact through them that most of the *qira'at* are preserved.

'Uthmaan's compilation occurred in the year 24 A.H., or according to others in the early part of 25 A.H.³⁶⁸

Aboo Bakr's compilation of the *mushaf* differed from 'Uthmaan's compilation in the following:

- 1) The reason that each of them compiled the Qur'aan was different. Aboo Bakr compiled the Qur'aan in response to the large number of deaths of those who had memorised the Qur'aan, and in fear of its being lost. 'Uthmaan, on the other hand, compiled the *mushaf* in response to the inauthentic recitations that newcomers to Islam, who were ignorant of the Arabic of the Qur'aan, were reciting. He wished to unite the Muslims on the proper recitation of the Qur'aan, and therefore ordered the eradication of all other *mushafs*, so that the people would have only one *mushaf* in their hands.
- 2) The number of people who were in charge of the two compilations was different. Aboo Bakr relied on the person who was the best suited and most qualified to do so, namely Zayd ibn Thabit. 'Uthmaan, on the other hand, used the services of Zayd but also had three of the major Companions, all of whom were known for their knowledge of the Qur'aan, to help him.
- 3) The number of *mushafs* Aboo Bakr ordered to be made was only one, whereas 'Uthmaan ordered several.
- 4) Since Aboo Bakr did not face the problem of inauthentic recitations of the Qur'aan, he did not have to take the step that 'Uthmaan did in destroying all other written copies of the Qur'aan. 'Uthmaan's decision ensured that all future copies would have to rely upon the original 'Uthmaanic ones.
- 5) Aboo Bakr compiled the Qur'aan from 'alayd-palm leaves, wood and the hearts of people,³⁶⁹ whereas 'Uthmaan ordered the re-writing of Aboo Bakr's *mushaf* in the writing style of the Quraysh.
- 6) Aboo Bakr's *mushaf*, according to one opinion, did not concern itself with arranging the *sorahs* properly; only the verses of each *sorah* were arranged. 'Uthmaan, on the other hand, arranged the *sorahs* and verses in their proper arrangement.³⁷⁰
- 7) According to some,³⁷¹ the *mushaf* of Aboo Bakr was written to preserve all seven *ahraf*, but the *mushaf* of 'Uthmaan only included one *hafs* and left out the other six. This opinion, however, does not have any basis to support it.³⁷²

367 *as-Saqqaani*, v.1, p. 404

368 cf. *Aboo Sa'eed*, p. 28. However, the *Tarajim* of Khudrifa ibn Khayyat (d. 240 A.H.) lists the battles of Ardebaan as having occurred in the year 28 A.H. cf. *Tarajim*, p. 168

369 *as-Saqqaani*, v.1, p. 293

370 cf. *al-Hamad*, p. 145

To summarise, the eminent scholar of Islaam Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.) said, "...soon after the year that the Prophet (ﷺ) passed away, Jibreel went over the Qur'aan with him twice, and then last rehearsal is the recitation of Zayd ibn Thabit and others, and it is the recitation that the *Kubalafu as-Rashidoon*, Aboo Bakr, 'Umar, 'Uthmaan and 'Alee ordered to be written in *mus-haf*, and Aboo Bakr (was the first) to write it. Then 'Uthmaan, during his caliphate, ordered it to be written (*agant*), and he sent it to all of the provinces, and the Companions all agreed to this."¹⁷¹

IV. The Different Mus-hafs

A. THE APPEARANCE OF THE Mus-hafs

The Spelling of the Words of the Qur'aan

The spelling of the words of the Qur'aan is not the same as the spelling of modern-day Arabic. There are certain peculiarities of the 'Uthmaanic script that are not present in modern Arabic. Among these peculiarities in the writing of the *mus-haf* is that the 'Uthmaanic script eliminated certain *alifs* (for example the word '*rahmaan*' is written without an *alif*); added certain silent letters (for example the word '*alif*' is written with a silent *aww*); merged particular words (for example when the word '*was*' is followed by '*was*' it is usually written as one word '*waswas*'); and occasionally spelt the same word that occurred in different places differently.¹⁷² Some of these peculiarities were common of the Arabic and specifically Qurayshite script of that time, but later Arabic grammar changed these rules.

Another peculiarity was that when there existed two recitations of a particular word, the word was written such that both recitations would be preserved. For example, the word '*wasalifi*' in (1:4) is written without an *alif*, since there is an alternate recitation '*waslfi*.' Had the *alif* been written on this word, the second recitation would not have been possible from the *mus-haf* of 'Uthmaan; however, by writing it without an *alif*, both recitations are possible. The nature of the Arabic script and manner of writing allows for this, in contrast to Latin-based languages.

Due to these peculiarities of the *mus-haf* of 'Uthmaan, later scholars differed over the legitimacy of changing the spelling of the *mus-haf* to conform to later Arabic. This difference of opinion was primarily based upon the origin of the spelling: was it from the Prophet (ﷺ) himself, or was it by consensus of the Companions? Or, was the spelling of the Qur'aan not based upon either of these two factors, but upon the popular custom of that time? The various opinions can be summarised as follows:

¹⁷¹ Aboo Sulaymaan, p. 31

¹⁷² This discussion has purposely been left short, since it requires a knowledge of Arabic writing. For further detail, see Ubayyidat, pp. 141-43, or Zuhayr, v.1, pp. 169-173. Some scholars have attempted to 'read in' the wisdom behind such subtle changes, but in reality these attempts are based more upon imagination than certain knowledge. cf. al-Sabti, v. 1, pp. 401-413.

1) The spelling of the Qur'aan cannot be changed, and the spelling of the *mushaf* of 'Uthmaan must be adhered to.

The proponents of this opinion differed over why the spelling could not be changed into two groups. The first group claimed that the spelling of the Qur'aan was the *Sunnah* of the Prophet (ﷺ), and that he had ordered the Qur'aan to be written in the manner with which it was. Therefore, because the Prophet (ﷺ) ordered this spelling, it is not allowed to modify it. In other words, the spelling of the Qur'aan was with the approval of the Prophet (ﷺ), and cannot be changed.²⁷¹

This opinion is contradicted by the incident in which 'Uthmaan said to the committee that compiled the Qur'aan, 'If you differ in the spelling of a word, then write it in the spelling of the Quraysh.' Had the script of the Qur'aan been decided by the Prophet (ﷺ), then this committee would never have differed about the spelling of any word.

The second group claimed that the spelling of the Qur'aan was not from the Prophet (ﷺ) but from the Companions. Since the Companions all agreed to the spelling of 'Uthmaan, this constitutes *ijmaa'* (consensus), which later generations are not allowed to change.

Both of these groups, however, concluded that the spelling of the 'Uthmaanic *mushaf* was obligatory upon later generations to conform to. This ruling was the opinion of the vast majority of the *salaf*.

Imaam Ahmad (d. 241 A.H.) was asked concerning the deletion of certain letters that were not pronounced (such as the *ayn* in 'jalaa'). He answered, "It is forbidden (*tharama*) to differ from the writing of 'Uthmaan in (the letters) *ayn*, or *yaa*, or *ayf*, or *ay* (letter) besides these."²⁷² Imaam Maalik (d. 179 A.H.), when asked whether the Qur'aan could be written in newly invented styles and methods, replied, "No! It may only be written the way it was written first!"²⁷³ In fact, Abuu 'Amr ad-Daamee (d. 444 A.H.) said, "I do not know of any scholar who disagrees with Maalik in this issue!"²⁷⁴

Imaam al-Bayhaquee (d. 458 A.H.) said,

Whoever writes the *mushaf* must preserve its letters and not change anything of what (the earlier) generations wrote, for they were more knowledgeable than us, and had purer hearts and tongues, and were more trustworthy. Therefore, we should never presume ourselves to be greater than them.²⁷⁵

2) The spelling of the Qur'aan depends upon the custom of the time.

In other words, the only reason the Companions wrote the Qur'aan with the spelling that they did was because that was the procedure of writing at the time. Since this

²⁷¹ As for those reports in which the Prophet (ﷺ) supposedly commanded the scribes, how to write certain letters, these are very weak or forged. Cf. az-Zarqaanee, v.1, p. 377.

²⁷² Qaasim, p. 145.

²⁷³ Qaasim, p. 147.

²⁷⁴ az-Zarqaanee, v.1, p. 329.

²⁷⁵ az-Zarqaanee, v.1, p. 180.

has changed, the Qur'aan may be written to conform with these changes, as long as the recitation is still exactly the same. This is the opinion of Abuu Bakr al-Baqillamaa (d. 403 A.H.), and al-'Izz ibn 'Abd as-Salaam (d. 660 A.H.). As proof, they use the fact that the Companions were not instructed by the Prophet (ﷺ) to conform to a particular spelling, but rather wrote in the manner that they knew. Thus, if the rules of spelling were different in their time, they would have written the *muq-haf* differently.

In weighing the two opinions above, the first opinion must be conceded to in light of the fact that almost all the scholars of the *muq-haf* were of this opinion. In addition, if the door were opened to change the spelling of the *muq-haf*, this might lead to playing with the Book of Allaah, since the rules of spelling change with time. The *muq-haf* must not be affected by the passage of time, and the 'Uthmaanic *muq-haf* must retain its sanctity.

Therefore, it is concluded that it is obligatory to adhere to the spelling of the *muq-haf* of 'Uthmaan, since this spelling was accepted and agreed upon by the Companions and the generations after them.²⁷⁸

The Script of the Muq-haf

The script in which the 'Uthmaanic *muq-haf* was written was the old *Kaafir* script.²⁷⁹ This script is almost incomprehensible to modern-day Arabic readers. The *muq-hafs* were written without any *harakat*, dots (*nugat*)²⁸⁰ or vowel marks (*jaahidat*).²⁸¹ This was the traditional manner of writing at that time. Therefore, for example, a straight line could represent the letter *baa*, *taa*, *thaa* and *jaa*, and each letter could have any of the vowel marks assigned to it. It was only by context that the appropriate letters and vowels could be differentiated. The Arabs at that time were accustomed to such a script, and would substitute the appropriate letter and vowel depending on the context.

The 'Uthmaanic *muq-haf* was arranged in the order of the *soorahs* present today. There were no indications signifying the ending of the verses, and the only sign that a *soorah* had ended was the *baawatlah*.²⁸² There were also no textual divisions (into

²⁷⁸ In fact, al-Ashar released a *fatwa* in the year 1275 A.H. stating that it was not permissible to print a *muq-haf* or re-write the Qur'aan in modern Arabic. They stated that the spelling of the *muq-haf* must conform to the 'Uthmaanic spelling of al-Juza'id, p. 609.

²⁷⁹ The script of the Arabic is the style of writing of the various letters. For example, the *haat* with which this text is written differs from the *haat* of the chapter title. The script, then, is the style with which the letters are written. This is to be differentiated from the spelling, which was the topic of the previous section.

²⁸⁰ The *nugat* are the dots that are used to differentiate between different letters that have the same basic structure, for example, the only way to differentiate between the letters *jaa* and *taa* is by the dots. If two dots are above the line, it is a *taa*, and if they are below, it is a *jaa*.

²⁸¹ The *jaahidat* of the Qur'aan are the diacritical marks of the *faahid*, *haahid*, and *ghaahid* (in Urdu, the *ay*, *u*, and *oo* and *oo*), and other marks (such as the *shahid*) that are used to pronounce the particular letters correctly.

²⁸² The phrase *Baawatlah al-Rahmaan al-Rahim*, which appears at the beginning of each *soorah* except the *nagah*.

thirtieths, fortieths, etc.). This was done so that the Qur'aan be preserved with the utmost purity; only the text of the Qur'aan, unadorned with later embellishments, was written.

This was the appearance of the original *Uthmaniyy muṣ-ḥaf*. As is well-known, however, the appearance of modern *muṣ-ḥaf* is strikingly different from the simple Uthmaniyy one. The process of this change was gradual.

The first change to occur was the addition of the diacritical marks – the *tasheel*. There are varying reports as to who the first person to add *tasheel* into the Qur'aan was.

The name that is most commonly mentioned is that of a Successor by the name of Abuu al-Awwad ad-Du'aly (d. 69 A.H.), who was also the first to codify the science of Arabic grammar (*naḡw*). According to one report, 'Alee ibn Abee Jaalih asked him to make the *muṣ-ḥaf* easier for the people to recite, but he initially declined to do so, since he did not believe it was necessary. However, he once heard a person recite the verse,

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَالْكَافِرِينَ أَزْمَلُ

«Allah and His apostle break off all ties with the pagans» [3:3]

as "Allah breaks off all ties with the pagans and His Apostle." This drastic change in meaning occurred by changing only one vowel (i.e., pronouncing *azmalu* as *azmalat*). Said Abuu al-Awwad, "I did not think the state of the people had degenerated to this level!" Recalling the advice of 'Alee ibn Abee Jaalih, he went to Zayyaad ibn Abeechee, the governor of Iraq under 'Alee ibn Abee Jaalih, and requested him to supply him with a scribe. Abuu al-Awwad told the scribe, "If I pronounce (the vowel) *a*, then write a dot above the letter. If I pronounce it as *u*, then write a dot in front of the letter. If I pronounce an *i*, then write it below the letter."¹⁸³ Abuu al-Awwad was reacting to the problems that had arisen amongst non-Arabs who had embraced Islam and were new to the Arabic language. They had difficulty reading the script of Uthman, without *tasheel*. Thus, Abuu al-Awwad started the rudimentary art of *tasheel*.

Other reports give the names of Naḡr ibn 'Aagm (d. 89 A.H.), Yahya ibn Ya'mar (d. 100 A.H.), al-Ḥassan al-Baḡree (d. 110 A.H.) and Muḥammad ibn Saareen (d. 110 A.H.). However, some of these reports qualify Naḡr and Yaqha as adding the dots (*anqar*) for the first time, and not the *tasheel*. Yet another report states that it was Abuu al-Awwad who was the first to do this, but at the command of Ḥafṣah ibn Yūsuf (d. 95 A.H.), the infamous governor of Iraq under the fifth Umayyad Caliph, 'Abd al-Malik ibn Marwaan, and not under the caliphate of 'Alee.

In combining all of these reports, the strongest series of events seems to be as follows: Abuu al-Awwad was the first to add the *tasheel* into the *muṣ-ḥaf* on an official

183. al-Ḥamad, p. 462. According to other reports, Zayyaad ibn Abeechee purposely had a person mispronounce the verse in front of Abuu al-Awwad so that he would realize the necessity of adding the *tasheel*. cf. al-Bidāwee, p. 328.

basis, during the caliphate of 'Alee, and his students Yūḥya ibn Yū'mar and Naṣr ibn 'Aqīm were the first to officially add dots (*nuqat*) during the reign of 'Abd al-Malik ibn Marwān (d. 86 A.H.). They were not the first to do so, however, as both al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī and Muḥammad ibn Seereen had preceded them in this endeavour. However, al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī and Muḥammad ibn Seereen had added the *nuqat* on their private *mug-ḥaḍf*, whereas Abū al-Aʿwād and his two students were the first to add the *tashkeel* and *nuqat* on an official basis into the *mug-ḥaḍf*. This sequence of events takes into account all of the narrations, and is the one that most of the researchers in this field have concluded.²⁸⁴ Az-Zarqanī writes,

May Allah have mercy on these two scholars (Yūḥya ibn Yū'mar and Naṣr ibn 'Aqīm), for they were successful in this endeavour (of adding *nuqat* to the Qur'aan), and completed the addition of the *nuqat* for the first time. They conditioned upon themselves not to increase the number of dots of any letter above three. This system spread and became popular amongst the people after them, and it had a great impact in removing confusion and doubts concerning (the proper recitation of) the *mug-ḥaḍf*.²⁸⁵

Thus, Abū al-Aʿwād was the first to add the *tashkeel* into the Qur'aan, and Yūḥya and Naṣr were the first who differentiated the various similar letters of the Arabic alphabet by means of dots. They did this during the reign of the Umayyad Caliph 'Abd al-Malik.

Abū al-Aʿwād died in 69 A.H., and 'Abd al-Malik's reign ended in 86 A.H., which means that less than three-quarters of a century after the Prophet's (ﷺ) death, while some of the Companions were still alive, the Qur'aan had been written down with a rudimentary version of *tashkeel* and *nuqat*.

In the beginning, scribes used to write the *nuqat* in black and the *tashkeel* in red to distinguish it from the actual text of the Qur'aan. There are hundreds of *mug-ḥaḍf* dating from the first two centuries of the *hiyāh* still present with this type of *tashkeel* system.

There are some narrations from the *salaf* concerning their disapproval of these additions. It is narrated from Ibn Maʿīn, an-Nakhaʿī (d. 96 A.H.), Qatādah (d. 117 A.H.) and other scholars of the first two generations concerning the prohibition of adding these dots to the *mug-ḥaḍf*. Other scholars, however, such as al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī (d. 110 A.H.) and Ibn Seereen (d. 110 A.H.), did not see a problem with the addition of these dots.²⁸⁶ Imām Maalik (d. 179 A.H.) was asked concerning the addition of *tashkeel* and *nuqat* in the Qur'aan. He replied, "The people continued to ask me concerning the addition of dots in the Qur'aan, so I say: As for the major *mug-ḥaḍf*, I don't think they should be dotted, nor should anything be added that is not in them. As for the minor *mug-ḥaḍf* – the ones that the children learn from – then I don't see any problem with it."²⁸⁷ Therefore, Imām Maalik was of the opinion that the Qur'aan

²⁸⁴ az-Zarqanī, v 1, p. 406 and al-Badawī, pp. 329-331.

²⁸⁵ az-Zarqanī, v 1, p. 407.

²⁸⁶ cf. al-Ḥamad for these quotes, p. 316.

²⁸⁷ al-Ḥamad, p. 317.

should be left the way that it was written, and the only exception were the *muq-ḥaḥ* that children learnt from. This strictness was due to the concern felt by these scholars to keep the script of the *muq-ḥaḥ* of 'Uthmaan pure from all additions.

However, later scholars of the *ṣaḥīf* became less strict concerning the addition of the *ṣaḥīf* and *ṣaḥīf*. This was due to the benefit that was gained, for it aided the average person in properly reciting the Qur'aan. Khalf ibn Hishām (d. 229 A.H.) reports, "I used to sit in the gathering of al-Kasā'ee (the famous *Qasree*), and the people would add (*ṣaḥīf*) based upon his recitation." Ad-Daane (d. 444 A.H.) writes,

"I happened to come across an old copy of the *muq-ḥaḥ*, written during the beginning of the Caliphate of Hishām ibn 'Abd al-Ma'ālīk. Its date (of writing) was written on the last page: 'Written by Maghīerah ibn Mūsaa, in Raḥb, in the year 110 A.H.' It had *ṣaḥīf*, the *ḥamdh*, and the *ḥas* (*ṣaḥīf*) were in red."²⁹⁸

Both these quotes show that, eventually, the addition of *ṣaḥīf* and *ṣaḥīf* was accepted as a part of the writing of the *muq-ḥaḥ*.²⁹⁹

During the next few centuries, further developments occurred, such as the writing of the *ṣaḥīf* names at the beginning of the *ṣaḥīf*, and the separation of the verses by special symbols and numbers. Initially, the verses were distinguished by placing three dots at the end of a verse. After every five verses, the word *ḥamdh* (five) was written, and after every ten, *ḥamdh* (ten), after which the numbering would start from the beginning, until the end of that particular *ṣaḥīf*. Soon afterwards, the word *ḥamdh* was abbreviated to the letter *ḥam*, and the word *ḥamdh* to a the letter *ayn*, both of which were written in the margin of the *muq-ḥaḥ*. Eventually, the verses were indicated by a circle at the end of each verse, and the sequential number of the verse was written in the circle, as is present in the *muq-ḥaḥ* of today.³⁰⁰

During the first century of the *ḥijrah*, the primary material upon which the *muq-ḥaḥ* was written was parchment. After the Muslim conquest of Trans-oxania in the early part of the second century of the *ḥijrah*, the Muslims learnt from Chinese craftsmen the art of paper-making, and thus paper became the primary material upon which the *muq-ḥaḥ* was written.³⁰¹

The sixth Umayyad caliph, al-Walīd ibn 'Abd al-Ma'ālīk (ruled 86-96 A.H.), was the first to officially order the beautification of the Qur'aan. He ordered the calligrapher Khalīd ibn Abī Ḥayyāj to write the Qur'aan in *Kaḥf* calligraphy. Dur-

²⁹⁸ Both quotes from al-Ḥijāzī, p. 318.

²⁹⁹ The College of Qur'aan and Islamic Sciences at the Islamic University of Madinah established an 'Qur'aan Project' in 1982. The goal was to print a *muq-ḥaḥ* that would be a copy of the 'Uthmaniyyah one in its script, and include *ṣaḥīf*, *ṣaḥīf*, verse numbers, and *ṣaḥīf* names in a different colour, to differentiate between the actual text of 'Uthmaan and later additions. Unfortunately, due to certain problems, the project collapsed, but not before had written a portion of the Qur'aan. To see an example of their work, see *Majma'at Kulliyah al-Qur'aan al-Karīm*, Islamic University of Madinah, 1983, v. 1, pp. 355-362.

³⁰⁰ al-Badawī, p. 337.

³⁰¹ Jones, David. *Qur'aan of the Moslems*. Alexandria Press, London, 1988. p. 6.

ing the Abbasid era, Khaleel bin Ahmad (d. 170 A.H.), one of the teachers of the famous Arabic grammarian Seebawayh, also beautified it and made it simpler. He was also the first to introduce the present system of *taṣṭeeṭ* – a straight line above the letter for the vowel *a*, a line below the letter for *i*, a *ghunna* for *u*, a *shaddah* for showing assimilation, and a small *ḥaa* without the dot to indicate that the letter had no vowel but was not silent.²⁹²

However, the greatest change in the style of writing came in the third century of *hiqab* by Ibn Muqlah (d. 327 A.H.), who is regarded as the founder of the calligraphy of the Qur'ān. He introduced the *Nasḥ* script, which totally replaced the former *Kaṣf* script, and upon which the style of writing of the Qur'ān today is based. Ibn Muqlah also established rules for the writing of each letter. Ibn al-Bawwab (d. 413 A.H.) also played a vital role in the spreading of the *Nasḥ* script. In the seventh century of *hiqab*, 'Aṣmīr 'Alī Taḥṣeeṣ introduced *Khat al-Nasḥ*, another popular script.²⁹³

The Qur'ān in Print

With the advent of the printing press, the *muṣ-ḥaf* changed accordingly. The first Qur'ān that is known to have been printed with movable type techniques was done in 1694 CE, in Hamburg, Germany. It was edited by a Jew, Abraham Hinkellmann, and contained many errors. Al-Ḥamad criticises it as follows:

There are major errors (in this print), and on almost every page the reader will find manifest examples of these... which only proves the poor level of knowledge the editor had of the Arabic language and its rules.²⁹⁴

In 1841, Gustav Flügel released another printed *muṣ-ḥaf*, in which the verse numbering differed from traditional *muṣ-ḥafs*. This *muṣ-ḥaf* was actually a reproduction of a famous Turkish *muṣ-ḥaf*, written by Ḥasfīdh 'Uṭmān (d. 1119 A.H.).²⁹⁵ This was published in Leipzig, and became a standard version for Orientalists for the next two centuries.

The first *muṣ-ḥaf* done by Muslims in this style is reputed to be the one done in St. Petersburg, Russia, in 1787 CE. These were followed by *muṣ-ḥafs* printed in Kazan (in 1828 CE), Persia (in 1833 CE), Istanbul (in 1877 CE) and Cairo (in 1890 CE). A more common one, which took on the role of a 'standard printed version', is one that was ordered by King Fu'ād of Egypt, in 1925. It was written by a committee of scholars from al-Azhar University, under the supervision of Sheikh Mohammad 'Alī Khalaf al-Ḥusaynee.²⁹⁶

²⁹² The origin of these five symbols are the letters *ayf*, *ra*, *was*, the letter *sh* to represent the word *shaddah* (double letter), and the *ḥaa* without a dot to represent the word *ḥashaw* (empty), respectively. cf. al-Bawwab, p. 330.

²⁹³ For one of the most fascinating accounts of the development of the script of the *muṣ-ḥaf*, see al-Ḥamad's description (pp. 68) on this topic.

²⁹⁴ cf. Ḥamad, p. 602.

²⁹⁵ cf. Ḥamad, p. 604.

²⁹⁶ cf. Van Dierdonck, p. 65; cf. Ḥamad, pp. 603–606.

Since then, literally hundreds of other printed *maq-haṭṭ* have followed. One of the more beautiful ones is the 'Madrinah *maq-haṭṭ*' recently printed in Saudi Arabia, in the King Fahd Complex for the Printing of the Holy Qur'aan in Madsinah.

All of these have been in the *qasā's* of Hafs 'as 'Aṣim.²⁹⁷ There are also printed copies of the Qur'aan in the *qasā's* of Warsh 'as Nafi' (printed in Algeria and Morocco, and very recently also by the King Fahd Complex), and in the *qasā's* of Qaloon 'as Nafi' (printed in Libya).

In the present age, almost all *maq-haṭṭ* follow one of two scripts: either *Nashk* (most of the Arab countries), or *Farsi* (the Indian sub-continent). The *maq-haṭṭ* printed in the *qasā's* of Warsh, however, are typically written in *Maghribi* script, which is very unique and confusing for the unaccustomed eye. For example, the letter *qaf* is represented with one dot above a circle (vs. two dots), and the letter *fa* with one dot below it (vs. above it).²⁹⁸

Not only has the *maq-haṭṭ* been printed in different *qasā's* and scripts, it has also been printed in Braille.²⁹⁹ The Ministry of Religious Affairs in Saudi Arabia released a three-volume Qur'aan written in Arabic Braille. Each Arabic letter is represented by a special set of dots, and each diacritical mark also has its special code, and, just like in other *maq-haṭṭ*, is either written above or below the letter. Not only that, but the various signs for stopping (*wasuṭ*) are also included in the *maq-haṭṭ*, as are the verse and *suraḥ* numbers.³⁰⁰

A Warning!

Before completing this section concerning the evolution of the script of the *maq-haṭṭ*, it is very relevant to quote the *ḥadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ) in which he said, "When you decorate your mosques, and beautify your *maq-haṭṭ*, then destruction will be upon you!"³⁰¹ This *ḥadeeth* can be taken as a factual statement, or as a warning. In other words, if taken factually, the Prophet (ﷺ) is informing his *ummah* that when mosques and *maq-haṭṭ* are decorated and beautified, this will be a time of destruction for the Muslims. However, the stronger opinion is that this *ḥadeeth* is a warning to the Muslims,³⁰² in which case any unnecessary and excessive decoration of the *maq-haṭṭ* is to be discouraged. This is one of the indications of the austerity and simplicity of Islam, such that even its places of worship and its Sacred Book must be absent from all types of embellishments, which typically is an indication of arrogance, and a love for this world. Rather, such religious symbols should be examples of modesty and humility.

297 See Ch. 11, The *Qir'ān* of the Qur'aan, for further details.

298 Reported by Ibn Abī Shaybah in his *Muṣannaf*, cf. *aq-hadeeth* # 1371.

299 Due to the fact that there exist other authentic narrations forbidding Muslims to decorate their mosques. Therefore, it makes sense to understand this *ḥadeeth* as a warning and prohibition rather than a factual prophecy.

B. THE NUMBER OF 'UTHMĀNĪH *Muq-haṭṭ*

There are five opinions concerning the number of original *muq-haṭṭ* that 'Uthmān compiled:

- 1) Imām az-Zarkashī follows Abū 'Amr ad-Danacī's (d. 444 A.H.) opinion that the number of *muq-haṭṭ* was four; 'Uthmān kept one in Madinah, and sent the other three to Kūfah, Basrah and Shaam (Syria). Ad-Danacī writes in his *Maqar'*, "The majority of the scholars held that when 'Uthmān wrote the *muq-haṭṭ*, he ordered four copies to be written, and he sent one to each of the major provinces."⁸⁰
- 2) As-Suyūṭī, in his *Ḥisn*, and Ibn Ḥajar (d. 852 A.H.), state that there were five copies, which were sent to the above four cities and Makkah.⁸¹
- 3) Some scholars maintain that there were six copies, the sixth one having been the one 'Uthmān commissioned for his personal use, different from the *muq-haṭṭ* of Madinah.⁸²
- 4) Abū Ḥatīm as-Supṭānī (d. 295 A.H.) stated that there were seven copies, one of which was kept in Madinah, and the rest sent to Makkah, Syria, Bagrah, Kūfah, Yemen and Bahrain (another opinion maintains that the last of the seven was sent to Egypt, and not Bahrain).
- 5) Lastly, some maintain there have been eight copies; in addition to the above seven, they include the personal *muq-haṭṭ* of 'Uthmān.

It is not of very great concern to know the exact number of *muq-haṭṭ* that 'Uthmān ordered to be written, for regardless of the number of original *muq-haṭṭ*, all future *muq-haṭṭ* were written as exact copies of these.

However, if forced to choose between these opinions, the second one is probably the strongest, since it has the strongest historical evidence. At the time that the *muq-haṭṭ* were commissioned, Yemen, Bahrain and Egypt would probably not have merited having a special *muq-haṭṭ* sent to them, and it does not seem too unrealistic to venture that the 'personal' *muq-haṭṭ* of 'Uthmān was none other than the *muq-haṭṭ* of Madinah, which 'Uthmān would have kept in his possession.

C. WERE THESE *MUQ-HAṬṬ* THE SAME?

Did the 'Uthmānī four or eight *muq-haṭṭ* match each other letter for letter? Surprisingly, contrary to popular opinion, the evidence indicates otherwise.

The different copies that 'Uthmān ordered to be written differed from each other in a few letters. There is no extra verse in any one of the *muq-haṭṭ*, but there are additional or different letters in some of the *muq-haṭṭ*. This was not done accidentally or by

⁸⁰ az-Zarkashī, v.1, p. 143.

⁸¹ as-Suyūṭī, v.3, p. 80.

⁸² az-Zarkashī, v.1, p. 143.

chance. Rather, these slight changes were done in order to accommodate the various recitations of a particular verse (the *āyah*). If the Prophet (ﷺ) had recited the verse in a number of ways, and it was possible to accommodate all of these recitations in one particular spelling, then the word was written with that spelling. The example of 'maashiq' and 'mashiq' has already been given before. However, if the recitations could not all be accommodated in one spelling, then it was written with one of the recitations in one *maq-haṭf*, and another recitation in another *maq-haṭf*. The Companions did not write both recitations in one *maq-haṭf* for fear of confusion between the two.³⁰³

The fact that the Uthmaanic *maq-haṭf*s differed is known by two ways:

1) The *qira'at*: Between the various *qira'at*, there occur changes in letters and sometimes words that cannot be attributed to one script, even if this script were without dots and vowel marks. For example, some of the *qira'at*³⁰⁴ read 91:15 as 'wa laa yalhafu...' This is the recitation that most of the readers will be familiar with. On the other hand, other *qira'at*³⁰⁵ read it as 'fa laa yalhafu...', changing the *wa* to a *fa*. This letter change can not be attributed to the same script, and must indicate a difference in the *maq-haṭf* of Uthmaan.³⁰⁶ Another example is the *qira'a* of Ibn 'Aamir, who read 3:184 as 'wa bi zuhri wa bil khaab' whereas the rest of the *qira'at* read 'wa zuhri wa khaab' (i.e., without the two *bas*). Ibn 'Aamir was Syrian, and it is known that the *maq-haṭf* that Uthmaan sent to Syria had the two extra *bas* in it, whereas the other *maq-haṭf* did not. In this example, an actual word is added in one of the *maq-haṭf*.

2) Visual inspection: The second way that it is known that these *maq-haṭf*s differed from one another is by comparing them. Since the various *maq-haṭf* are not present any more, reports must be taken from those who were fortunate enough to have read more than one of the original *maq-haṭf* of Uthmaan, or at least knew and reported from those who did. In fact, a number of scholars had written books specially on this topic:

Some authors have mentioned at least ten scholars of the first four centuries of the *hijrah* who had written specific tracts on this topic, amongst them, al-Kasaa'ee (d. 189 A.H.), and al-Farra' (d. 207 A.H.).³⁰⁷ Unfortunately, the only book that remains of these classical works is the work authored by 'Abdulkath ibn Abi Dawood (d. 316 A.H.), the son of the famous scholar of *hadeeth*, Abi Dawood (d. 275 A.H.), which he entitled *Kitaab al-Maqahif*.³⁰⁸

³⁰³ al-Zawqir, vii, p. 262.

³⁰⁴ Those of 'Aqim, Kasaa'ee, Harun, Abu 'Aamir and Ibn Kathir.

³⁰⁵ That of 'Naafi' and Ibn 'Aamir.

³⁰⁶ This point will be better understood after one reads Ch. 11 on the *qira'at*.

³⁰⁷ cf. Introduction to Ibn 'Abi Dawood, p. 10.

³⁰⁸ Unfortunately, the first (and only) person to edit and publish it was the famous Orientalist scholar Arthur Jeffery (published in Cairo, 1966), as part of his famous work *Manuscripts for the History of the Text of the Holy Qur'an*, which is discussed in greater detail in Ch. 17.

Khaalid ibn Iyās (d. circa 150 A.H.) reported that he read the *muq-haf* of 'Uthmaan, and found that it differed with the *muq-haf* of Madeenah in twelve verses, which he quoted.³⁰⁹ The first of these was 2:132 'na nana...' instead of 'na ana...' meaning that the first was without an *shif*, whereas the second was with an *shif*. This is in the actual script of the *muq-haf*, and is reflected in the differences between the *qira'at*. Of the ten *qira'at*, Naafi' and Ibn 'Aamir read it with the *shif*, whereas the rest do not. In the same way, all of the other differences in the script of the *muq-haf* are still found in the differences between the *qira'at*.

There are more than just twelve differences, though. Khaalid ibn Iyās only compared the *muq-haf* of 'Uthmaan with the *muq-haf* of Madeenah. The other *muq-hafs* differed from the Madeenah *muq-haf*, as for example in verse 3:184, the *muq-haf* that 'Uthmaan sent to Syria had the extra letters, but the others did not.³¹⁰

These differences, as noted earlier, are only with regards to certain letters and words. There are no verses or phrases that are present in some *muq-haf* without the others.

Actually, if one reflects over this phenomenon, he will be even more certain that the Qur'aan has been preserved even to the minutest detail. This is so because all of the differences that originated in the different *muq-hafs* of 'Uthmaan are still found scattered in the various *qira'at*, showing that the scriptural differences are not accidental, but rather intentional. The Prophet (ﷺ) used to recite the Qur'aan in all of these ways, as will be elaborated upon later.

Therefore, the purpose behind having these trivial changes between the *muq-hafs* was to preserve the various *shraf* of the Qur'aan, even to the most minute detail.

D. WHAT HAPPENED TO THE ORIGINAL *Muq-hafs*?

It is of great historical importance (and curiosity) to know what happened to these original *muq-hafs*.

As for the *muq-haf* of Abū Bakr, after he passed away it was given to 'Umar. On his death-bed, 'Umar did not nominate any one successor after him, but rather a committee of six people. Therefore when 'Umar passed away, there was no immediate Caliph present, as was the case when Abū Bakr passed away. The *muq-haf* was then naturally inherited by Hafṣah, his daughter and a wife of the Prophet (ﷺ). According to a report from Ibn Abīe Daawood's *Kitāab al-Maqāṣif*, Hafṣah was very protective of the *muq-haf*, and even refused to give it 'Uthmaan until he assured her that he would return it.³¹¹ During the caliphates of 'Uthmaan and 'Alī, it remained with Hafṣah.

309. For these and many more differences, see Ibn Abīe Daawood, pp. 37-49.

310. See al-Ḥumalī, pp. 685-702, where he lists around sixty differences between the various *muq-hafs*.

311. Ibn Abīe Daawood, p. 9.

After the caliphate of 'Uthmān, Marwān ibn al-Ḥakam (d. 65 A.H.) became the governor of Madaʿnah. Marwān wanted to eliminate this *muṣ-ḥaf*, since the 'Uthmānic *muṣ-ḥaf* was sufficient for the Muslims, but Ḥafṣah refused to hand it over. Marwān had to wait until Ḥafṣah passed away in 41 A.H. before destroying the *muṣ-ḥaf*.¹¹² He said, "The only reason I did this was because all that is in this *muṣ-ḥaf* (of Abū Bakr) has been written and preserved by the *muṣ-ḥaf* (of 'Uthmān), so I feared that after some time people would doubt the veracity of this *muṣ-ḥaf*, or they would say that there was something in it that had not been written down. (Therefore, to prevent these doubts I burnt it)."¹¹³

As for the 'Uthmānic *muṣ-ḥaf*, Ibn Kathīr (d. 774 A.H.), of *Tafsīr ibn Kathīr* fame, wrote in his monumental history, *al-Bidāyah wa al-Nihāyah*, that he had seen one of them. It had been sent from Palestine to Damascus, and it was 'very large, in beautiful clear strong writing with strong ink, on parchment, I think, made of camel skin'.¹¹⁴ Some say this copy made its way to England via Leningrad, but this does not seem likely. Another opinion states that it was burned in a fire that occurred in the Grand Mosque of Damascus, in the year 1310 A.H. (1893 CE). Ibn al-Jazāree (d. 832 A.H.) also reported seeing the *muṣ-ḥaf* of Syria.¹¹⁵

Ibn Battūṭa (d. 779 A.H.), the famous Muslim traveller, reports seeing many *muṣ-ḥafs* that were copied directly from the *muṣ-ḥaf* of 'Uthmān. As for the Madaʿnah manuscript:

Ibn Jaḥar (d. 614 A.H./1217 CE) saw the manuscript in the mosque of Madaʿnah in the year 580 A.H./1184 CE. Some say it remained in Madaʿnah until the Turks took it from there in 1334 A.H. / 1913 CE. It has been reported that this copy was removed by the Turkish authorities to Istanbul, from where it came to Berlin during World War I. The Treaty of Versailles, which concluded World War I, contains the following clause:

Article 246: 'Within six months from the coming into the force of the present treaty, Germany will restore to His Majesty, King of Hedjaz, the original Koran (sic) of the Caliph Othman, which was removed from Medina by the Turkish authorities and is stated to have been presented to the ex-Empress William II.'

This manuscript then reached Istanbul, but not Madaʿnah.¹¹⁶

This copy is now on exhibit at the Topkapı Museum in Istanbul, Turkey, for all to see.

There is also a copy of a *muṣ-ḥaf* in Tashkent (former USSR) that is alleged to be an 'Uthmānic copy, although some say that it is a copy of the original. If this is an 'Uthmānic *muṣ-ḥaf*, it might actually be the *muṣ-ḥaf* that 'Uthmān kept for himself,

112: In fact, he ordered for it to be destroyed the very hour that Ḥafṣah was buried.

113: *Ibid.*, p. 25.

114: *Quṭūb* p. 134, *Vol. Dersāf*, p. 62.

115: *al-Zarqanī*, v. 1, p. 403.

116: Taken from *Van Denak*, p. 62.

and the one he was reading from when he was murdered. It came to Samarkand (after the Umayyads had taken it from Mada'inah to Meccah) in 890 A.H. (1485 CE), and remained there until, in 1869, the Russians took it to St. Petersburg. They returned it to Samarkand (close to Tashkent) in 1924, and it has remained in Tashkent since. The Russian authorities had made facsimiles of the *maq-haf*, and because of this the *maq-haf* is available through this medium at a number of leading universities and private collections.¹⁰⁷

Therefore, there exist at least two *maq-hafs* that are reputed to be official 'Uthmaniyye *maq-hafs*. Even if they are not originals (and this is very difficult to disprove), they are at worst copies of the original, since the style of writing conforms to the first few decades after the *hijrah*.

v. The Verses of the Qur'aan

By 'verse' is meant what is known as an '*ayah*'. This word, linguistically, has a number of meanings to it, including:

- 1) A sign or indication. Allaah says,

وَقَالَ لَهُمْ نَبِيُّهُمْ إِنَّ آيَةَ مُلْكِهِ أَنْ يَأْتِيَكُمُ الْكُتُبُ

«And their prophet said to them (the Children of Israel), 'The sign (*ayah*) of his Kingdom is that there shall come to you a wooden box...» [2:248]

- 2) An admonition or lesson. Allaah says,

إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَآيَةً لِّقَوْمٍ يَتَفَكَّرُونَ

«In this there is a lesson (*ayah*) for those who give thought» [16:11]

- 3) A miracle. Allaah says,

سَأَلْنَا مِنْهُمْ لِمَ يَذْكُرُونَ

«Ask the Children of Israel how many miracles (*ayah*) we gave them» [2:211]

- 4) A verse or sentence. Allaah says,

وَلَقَدْ نَزَّلْنَا آيَةً مُّحْكَمَةً لِّكُلِّ لِقَاءٍ وَأَنذَرْتَهُمْ ذِكْرًا
بِمَا يَكْفُرُونَ فَأَلْأَوْا إِنَّمَا الْفُتُورُ إِلَّا كَذِبٌ لِّمَن لَّا يَعْلَمُونَ

«And when We change a verse (*ayah*) (in the Qur'aan) in place of another – and Allaah knows best what he sends down – they say, 'You (O Muhammad) are but a forger.' Nay (but) most of them are ignorant» [16:104]

¹⁰⁷ Al-Jamad describes this *maq-haf* in great detail, and concludes that it is the strongest candidate for being an original *maq-haf* of 'Uthmaan. As for the other copies in Egypt that are reputed to be 'Uthmaniyye *maq-hafs*, he concludes that this is very unlikely, as they have *maqaf* and *ishtihaf* marks. Even less likely candidates for the 'Uthmaniyye *maq-haf* are a number of *maq-hafs* of Iran and Iraq which are claimed to be Ali's personal *maq-haf*. Al-Jamad, 104-5.

When used in Islamic sciences, it is defined to be a part of the Qur'aan composed of sequential letters and words, separate from what is before it and after it, with a beginning and end, occupying a specific place in a specific *soorah*.¹¹⁸

Combining the above linguistic meanings, an *ayah* is a verse of the Qur'aan, and a miracle from Allah (since it is inimitable).¹¹⁹ It contains lessons for mankind to benefit from, and admonitions for the believers and disbelievers.

The Necessity of this Knowledge

The knowledge of where a verse begins and ends is essential for a number of reasons, including:¹²⁰

- 1) The acceptability of the prayer. Some scholars state that, if a person has not memorised the *Rasheedh*, he must recite seven other verses of the Qur'aan instead of it, and this cannot be done unless one knows the beginning and end of a verse. Most scholars also encourage the recitation of three short or one long verse after the *Rasheedh*, and this recitation is also dependent upon this knowledge.
- 2) The proper recitation of the Qur'aan. It is preferable – but not mandatory – to pause at the end of every verse, and many scholars have stated that this is the Prophet's (ﷺ) *Sunnah*. Likewise, it is not encouraged to start or stop a recitation from the middle of a verse; any recitation should be started from the beginning of a verse, and concluded at the ending of one. In addition, certain rules of recitation (*qira'at*) depend upon the location of the end of a verse.
- 3) The acceptability of the Friday sermon. Some scholars have stated that it is obligatory for the Friday sermon to include at least one full verse in it.
- 4) The ease in finding particular passages in the Qur'aan. The finding of a particular passage is simplified by the knowledge and numbering of the verses of the Qur'aan.

The Origins of this Knowledge

There are two opinions as to how the location of the beginning and ending of a verse is known.

The first opinion is that all of this knowledge is from the Prophet (ﷺ) – in other words, the beginning and end of every single verse was taught to the Companions by the Prophet (ﷺ). As proof, the adherents of this opinion bring forth the numerous *hadith* in which the Prophet (ﷺ) clearly mentions particular verses in certain *soorahs*. For example, the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Whoever memorises the last ten verses of *Soorah al-Kahf* will be saved from the tribulation of Dajal,"¹²¹ and, "Verily, there is a *soorah* in

318. cf. al-Zarqaan, v. 1, p. 129.

319. See Chapter 17 under 'The Quantity for *Jaaz*' for a discussion of the inimitability of a verse.

320. Mawla, 'Abd al-Razzaq Mawla al-Kilani, IUM Press, Madrasah, 1990, p. 38.

321. Reported by Muslim.

the Qur'aan composed of thirty verses that interceded for its companions until he was forgiven. It is,

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

«Blessed be He in Whose Hands is the Dominion» [67:1]

(i.e., *Soorah al-Mulk*),³¹² and, "Read the last two verses of *Soorah al-Baqarah*, for indeed I was given them from under the Throne (of Allaah),"³¹³ and, "...and in it (*Soorah al-Baqarah*), there is a verse which is the Queen of all other verses (It is) the 'Verse of the Foot-Stool.'³¹⁴ These narrations show that the Qur'aan had already been divided into verses by the Prophet (ﷺ).

The second opinion, and perhaps the stronger one, states that most of this knowledge is from the Prophet (ﷺ), and some of it is based upon the personal reasoning (*ijtihad*) of the scholars of the *sunah*. Those who hold this opinion give as proof the fact that there exists a difference of opinion over some 'verses' in the Qur'aan (as shall be discussed below). Thus, taking into account this fact, and the above narrations from the Prophet (ﷺ), they claim that most of the locations for the breaks between the verses were well-known, and from the Prophet (ﷺ), whereas some locations were arrived at based upon *ijtihad*.

The reason that certain locations are subject to a difference of opinion is explained as follows: When the Prophet (ﷺ) used to recite the Qur'aan, he would stop at particular places. Those places where he continually stopped whenever he (ﷺ) recited that passage are taken as verse breaks, without any difference of opinion. The difference of opinion occurs at those places where he (ﷺ) sometimes stopped and sometimes did not; some scholars took this to be a stop for breath, and thus did not count it as a verse break, whereas other took this to be the beginning of a new verse. Moosa writes:³¹⁵

The reason for the difference of opinion over the verse (breaks) is that the Prophet (ﷺ) would stop (while reciting the Qur'aan) - The locations upon which the Prophet (ﷺ) always stopped, and never connected, are agreed upon as verse breaks, and there is no difference of opinion over them. Then there are locations upon which the Prophet (ﷺ) never stopped, but rather always continued his recitation, so these too are agreed upon that they are not verse breaks. And then there are other locations upon which the Prophet (ﷺ) sometimes stopped, and sometimes did not; these locations are the reason for the difference of opinion, and where (the scholars) performed *ijtihad*.

Of course, even when *ijtihad* was resorted to, there were certain rules that these scholars employed to discern the exact location of the break. Of primary importance

³¹² Reported by Abou Dawood.

³¹³ Reported by Ahmad.

³¹⁴ Reported by at-Tirmidhi.

³¹⁵ Moosa, p. 32.

was the context of the verse; what was the average length of its sister verses? what was the rhythm and rhyme of the passage? what was the ending sound and now of the verses before it and after it?⁵²⁶ Thus, they compared the particular verse with its sister verses, and established its beginning and end based upon them.

It should be emphasised again that the actual arrangement of the words and phrases is the same – the difference of opinion occurs only where one verse ends and the next verse begins.⁵²⁷

The Number of Verses

With this in mind, how many verses are there in the Qur'aan?

As mentioned above, most of the verse breaks are agreed upon, and some are subject to a difference of opinion. Thus, the scholars of the Qur'aan (to be more precise, the scholars of the *qur'aan*) were divided with regards to this question into seven opinions. Each city (and therefore each *qiraa'a*) had its own verse-number. The scholars of Kooifah held the view that there were 6236 verses (and this is the numbering that is present in the *muḥaḍḍif* written in the *qiraa'a* of Hafs 'an 'Aṣim). The scholars of Baṣrah considered there to be 6204 verses. In Damascus, the scholars agreed that the verses were 6227 in number, whereas in Hama (Palestine) they held that there were 6232 verses. In Makkah, 6210 verses was the common opinion, whereas in Madeenah the earlier scholars said there were 6217 verses, and the later ones held there to be 6214 verses.⁵²⁸

Again, the difference occurs only in where to stop one verse and start another. What might be one verse for the scholars of Kooifah might be considered as two by the scholars of Madeenah, and so on. So, for example, some of the *qiraa'aat* consider the last verse of Soorah Faṭṭah to start from 'Sami' aladheer an'asur'a ...' whereas others consider it to start from 'Ghayy il-maghdoobi...', thus breaking the last 'verse' into two verses.

The Arrangement of the Verses

Even though there is a difference of opinion over the actual verse numbering, there is no difference of opinion over the fact that the arrangement and order of the verses in each *suraḥ* is from the Prophet (ﷺ) himself. The scholars of Islaam have agreed (*ijmaa'*) on this point. Abū Ja'far ibn Zubayr (d. 807 A.H.) said,

"The arrangement of the verses in the *suraḥ* is a matter which is from the command of the Prophet (ﷺ) and we cannot question it (ie., *ta'weel* *qabool* in it). This is a matter in which there is no difference of opinion among the Muslims."⁵²⁹

526- cf. Moosa, pps. 34-38 for more details and examples.

527 The only 'verse' in the Qur'aan over which there is a difference of opinion concerning its status is the *hamd* at the beginning of each *suraḥ*, and this difference will be elaborated on in a separate section.

528 al-Damiri, p. 3, Moosa, p. 37.

529 Qatari, p. 479.

The Prophet (ﷺ) used to mention to the scribe writing the verse where to put the verse in the Qur'aan. He (ﷺ) did not used to do this by his own judgement, for Jibreel used to tell him, and Jibreel was inspired by Allaah with this knowledge.

Uthmaan ibn Abi al-'Aas reported that he was once sitting by the Prophet (ﷺ) when he noticed that the Prophet (ﷺ) raised his eyes and fixed his gaze (an indication that he (ﷺ) was being inspired), then he said, "Jibreel came to me and commanded me to put this verse at a certain place in this soorah,

إِنَّ اللَّهَ يَأْمُرُ الْعَذْلَى

«Allaah commands you with justice...» [16:90]¹⁰

In other words, the Prophet (ﷺ) was told not only in which soorah to place the verse but also in which portion of the soorah to do so.

'Abdullaah ibn az-Zubayr was reading the Qur'aan when he came across this verse,

وَالَّذِينَ يُتَوَفَّوْنَ مِنْكُمْ وَيَذَرُونَ أَزْوَاجًا وَصِيَّةً
لَهُنَّ رِجَالُهُنَّ مَتَاعًا إِلَى الْعَتَلِ غَيْرِ الْخَصْرِ

«And those of you who die and leave behind their wives should bequeath for them a year's maintenance and residence, without naming them on...» [2:240]

He went to 'Uthmaan ibn 'Affaan, and asked him, "This verse has been abrogated by the verses after it, so why do you write it?" He answered, "O my nephew, I will not change anything from its place."¹¹ In this narration, 'Uthmaan signified that he knew the place of the verses, but he was not willing to leave anything out that the Prophet (ﷺ) had not ordered him to.

Apart from these proofs, the fact that the Prophet (ﷺ) used to recite complete soorahs in the prayer, and to the Companions individually, shows that the arrangement of the verses must have been taught by the Prophet (ﷺ) to the Companions. In all of the prayers in which the recitation is aloud, the Prophet (ﷺ) would have had to recite various soorahs. There are reports, for example, that he (ﷺ) recited Soorah Saadiah in Fajr, and he (ﷺ) recited al-Baqarah, and Aale-'Imraan, and Naas', and Arafat, and many more soorahs in the prayer,¹² and he recited Soorah Qaaf more than once during the Friday sermons. In addition, the Prophet (ﷺ) used to recite the entire Qur'aan during the month of Ramadhan, and this was witnessed by Zayd ibn Thabit. Therefore, the Companions must have heard the various verses put together to form the soorah.

This is why as-Suyootee said, "The recitation of the Prophet (ﷺ) in front of the gatherings of the Companions proves that the arrangement of the verses is from him,

100 Reported in *Musnad Ahmad*

101 Reported by al-Bukhaaree

102 cf. *as-Suyootee*, s. 1, p. 342

and the Companions could not change the order of the verses from what the Prophet (ﷺ) recited. Therefore, the knowledge of the order of the verses is *mutawatir*.³³³ This is reflected in the fact that there is absolutely no known difference of opinion in the arrangement of the verses for each *surah*.

The Number of Words and Letters

There are 77,437 words in the Qur'aan, and 323,671 letters, with difference of opinion in both of these numbers. The reason this difference of opinion exists is due to the fact that certain *qir'aa*t pronounce letters that are not written in the script, and, as mentioned earlier, the *maqafat* of 'Uthmaan were not identical to one another.

For example, Haggaz ibn Yusauf (d. 95 A.H.), the infamous governor of Iraq, called the scholars of Bagdad, and he chose al-Hasan al-Bagzer (d. 110 A.H.), Abuu al-'Aaliyah (d. 90 A.H.), Naḡr ibn 'Aaḡm (d. 89 A.H.) and two more scholars, and commanded them, "Count the number of words in the Qur'aan." So they stayed four months counting the letters and words, and they concluded that there were 77,439 words, and 323,015 letters in the Qur'aan.³³⁴ Other opinions give different numbers, but they are in the same range as the examples cited. Imaam as-Sakhaawee's (d. 643 A.H.) statement should be kept in mind in such discussions. He wrote, after mentioning the various opinions, "And I don't see any benefit (in all of these numbers). For, if it had any benefit, it would be for a book that is possible to be added to or subtracted from. As for the Qur'aan, this is not possible."³³⁵ Also, the Companions and those after them agreed that these numbers have no Islamic significance or valid exegetical interpretations whatsoever.³³⁶

The longest verse is the 'Verse of Loaning', 2:282. The shortest verse is 93:1, 'Wa al-ḡaḡa' and 89:1, 'Wa al-fajr'.³³⁷ Both consist of six letters in writing, but only five in pronunciation.

The longest continuous string of related letters is 'fa-maqaymahawwawuh', in 15:22, which consists of eleven letters.

333 as-Suyootee, v. 1, p. 32.

334 as-Zarkashyee, v. 1, p. 249.

335 as-Sakhaawee, p. 234.

336 cf. Qutayba, p. 356.

337 This is according to the *qir'aa*t of Hafs. Some of the *qir'aa*t consider the disjointed letters to be a separate verse, which would make these letters the smallest verse in the Qur'aan, for these *qir'aa*t.

THE BISMALAH AS A VERSE

The *basmalah* is the phrase that occurs at the beginning of each *soorah* of the Qur'aan, except for *Soorah al-Tawbah*, and reads, as every Muslim knows,

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

'Bismillaah ar-Rahmaan ar-Rahim'

(In the Name of Allaah, the Ever-Merciful, the Bestower of Mercy).

There is a difference of opinion amongst the scholars of the Qur'aan over whether this phrase is to be considered as a verse at the beginning of each *soorah*, in particular *Soorah al-Faatihah*, or whether this is merely a phrase said for blessings between the *soorahs*, and is meant to identify where one *soorah* ends and the next begins.

The scholars are agreed that the *basmalah* does not form a part of *Soorah al-Tawbah*, and that it is a verse of the Qur'aan in 27:30 (which reads, ﴿يٰٓسٰىرُ ۙ اِنَّ هٰذَا لَآ اِلٰهَ اِلَّا هُوَ ۚ اَلْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ الَّذِىٓ اَنْزَلَ هٰذَا ۙ اِنَّ هُوَ لَظَهِيْرٌ ۝۳۰﴾, "Verily, it (the letter) is from Sulaymaan, and it (reads) In the Name of Allaah, The Ever-Merciful, the Bestower of Mercy!"), but disagree as to its status at the beginning of the other *soorahs*. There are five opinions on this matter, as follows:¹⁰

- 1) The *basmalah* is a separate verse at the beginning of every *soorah*. This would imply that the *basmalah* is the first verse of every *soorah*.
- 2) The *basmalah* is only a part of a verse at the beginning of every *soorah*. In other words, the *basmalah* is the first part of the first verse in every *soorah*, and not a separate verse.
- 3) The *basmalah* is a verse only at the beginning of *Soorah al-Faatihah*, and not for other *soorahs*.
- 4) The *basmalah* is a separate verse, not a part of any *soorah*, that has been placed at the beginning of the *soorah*. In other words, the *basmalah* is not to be counted as a verse in any *soorah*, but is a verse of the Qur'aan.
- 5) The *basmalah* is not a verse of the Qur'aan, but rather a phrase which is used to distinguish one *soorah* from another.

It can be seen that the above opinions can be divided into two main categories: those who claim that the *basmalah* at the beginning of the *soorahs* is a verse in the Qur'aan, and those who claim that it is not.

The scholars who claim that the *basmalah* at the beginning of the *soorahs* is a verse of the Qur'aan, such as Imaam ash-Shaafi'ee (d. 204 A.H.), Imaam Ahmad (d. 241 A.H.), and others, use as evidence the fact that the *muz-haf* that 'Uthmaan ordered to be written all contained the *basmalah* at the beginning of the *soorahs* (except for the ninth *soorah*, *Soorah al-Tawbah*). This, according to them, automatically implies that the *basmalah* at the beginning of the *soorahs* is a verse in the Qur'aan, since the Companions only wrote in the 'Uthmaan's *muz-haf* what was agreed to be the Qur'aan,

and did not write anything besides it. In addition, they also use as evidence those narrations in which the Prophet (ﷺ) recited the *basmalah* at the beginning of certain *suraahs*, such as the narration in which the Prophet (ﷺ) smiled with pleasure, and said, "Last night, a *suraah* was revealed to me



«Basmalāh in-Rahmaan ar-Rahim» Verily, We have given you this [Fountain] of Knowledge. »¹⁹⁹ [108:1-3]

In this narration, the Prophet (ﷺ) started the *suraah* with the *basmalah*, and it can be inferred that it was revealed with the *suraah*.

However, those that do not hold the *basmalah* at the beginning of the *suraahs* to be a part of the Qur'aan, such as Imam Maalik (d. 179 A.H.), Abou Haneefah (d. 150 A.H.) and others, use the fact that the purpose of the *basmalah* is to signify where a new *suraah* starts, as the following narration of Ibn 'Abbas indicates. Ibn 'Abbas said, "The Prophet (ﷺ) did not know where a *suraah* ended until the *basmalah* was revealed to him."²⁰⁰ Another narration that this group uses is the *hadeth* in which the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Allah has said, 'I have divided the prayer between Me and My servant, so when he says,



«All Praise is due to Allah» [1 :]

I respond, "My servant has Praised Me." »²⁰¹ In other words, in this narration, which mentions the entire *Suraah al-Fatihaah*, the *basmalah* is not mentioned, thus implying that it is not a verse. An even more explicit narration is the one reported by Abou Hurayrah, who said that the Prophet (ﷺ) said,



«All Praise is due to Allah» [1 :]

as the 'Mother of the Qur'aan' and the 'Mother of the Book' and the 'Seven oft-repeated verses.'²⁰² In this narration, the Prophet (ﷺ) started *Suraah al-Fatihaah* without reciting the *basmalah*, showing, according to these scholars, that it is not a verse of the Qur'aan.

Based on this classic difference of opinion, the *qur'aan* themselves differed over whether the *basmalah* was a verse in *Suraah al-Fatihaah* and the other *suraahs*. Among the *Qaarees*, Ibn Kathir, 'Aagim and al-Kasaa'ee were the only ones who considered it to be a verse at the beginning of each *suraah*, whereas the others did not.

¹⁹⁹ Reported by Abou Dawood

²⁰⁰ Reported by Muslim and Abou Dawood.

²⁰¹ Reported by al-Bukhaaree and others

To resolve this difference of opinion, some scholars claimed that the *hamdalah* was revealed in some of the *ajraf* of the Qur'aan, and left out of others!¹⁴² This opinion would perhaps resolve the difference of opinion, were it not for the fact that the *hamdalah* is written in *all* the *was-haf* of 'Uthmaan. Had the *hamdalah* been a verse in some *ajraf* and not in others, it would have been written in some of the *was-haf* and left out of others.

Perhaps the strongest opinion amongst these, however, is the opinion that the *hamdalah* is a part of Soorah al-Fatihah, and not a part of the other *soorahs*. For the other *soorahs*, the purpose of the *hamdalah*, as the narration of Ibn 'Abbaas mentions, is to differentiate between the ending of one *soorah* and the beginning of the next. The strongest proof for this opinion is an authentic narration that leaves no room for any doubt. Abou Hurayrah reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "When you recite,

الْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ

«All Praise is due to Allah» [1:1]

then recite (with it), '*Bismillah ar-Rahmaan ar-Rahim*' for verily it (i.e., the *Fatihah*) is the 'Mother of the Qur'aan' and the 'Mother of the Book' and the 'Seven oft-repeated verse', and '*Bismillah ar-Rahmaan ar-Rahim*' is a verse of it."¹⁴³ This narration is explicit in that the *hamdalah* is a verse of Soorah al-Fatihah, and since the narrations that are used to prove that the *hamdalah* is not a verse are all based on implicit reasoning, this narration must take precedence.¹⁴⁴ However, there is no strong proof that the *hamdalah* is a verse at the beginning of the other *soorahs*, for there exist narrations that the Prophet (ﷺ) used to mention other *soorahs* without reciting the *hamdalah*. For example, the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Verily, there is a *soorah* in the Qur'aan composed of thirty verses that preceded for us companions until he was forgiven. It is,

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

«Blessed be He in Whose Hands is the Dominion» [67:1] "¹⁴⁵

This narration shows that the *hamdalah* is not a verse of the *soorah*, as this *soorah* is composed of thirty verses without the *hamdalah*.

The issue of whether the *hamdalah* is a verse at the beginning of the *soorahs* or not is not of significant importance, since the difference of opinion is not over whether the *hamdalah* is an actual *verse* (the scholars are agreed that it is a part of the verse in

142 cf. al-Banna, p. 298. For a discussion of the *ajraf*, refer to Chapter 19.

143 Reported by al-Daraqutni, cf. *as-Sajdah*, # 1185. This *hadith* is narrated through a number of different chains, most of which make this a statement of Abou Hurayrah, and not a *hadith* of the Prophet (ﷺ). This is why some scholars stated that this *hadith* is not authentic, treating that it is a statement of Abou Hurayrah, and not a *hadith*.

144 cf. al-Baqqar, Muhammad ibn Umar Fakhr al-Din 'Abbaas al-Basmalah, ed. Maqsh Ibrahim, *Mubtatah al-Qur'aan, Cassid*, vol. 1, pp. 28-34, for an explanation of the previous 'implicit' narrations.

145 Reported by Abou Dawood.

27-30), but rather, *where* is it a verse, is it only in verse 27-30, or at the beginning of all the *soorahs*, or only of *Soorah al-Fatiḥah*?³⁴⁶ Therefore, the issue of whether the *ḥamdalāh* forms a part of the *soorah* as a verse or not is the only area in which difference of opinion is permitted. As such, it occupies a unique status in that a person who denies the *ḥamdalāh* as a verse of the *soorah* is not to be considered a disbeliever. Contrary to this, to deny any other verse of the Qur'aan is considered to be disbelief. Az-Zarkashī writes, "There is no difference of opinion among the Muslims that a person who denies the *ḥamdalāh* as a verse in the Qur'aan (at the beginning of the *soorahs*) is not to be considered a disbeliever."³⁴⁷

To conclude, the *ḥamdalāh* is counted as a verse at the beginning of *Soorah al-Fatiḥah*, but is not a verse at the beginning of any other *soorah*, and Allāh knows best.

As for the fact that *Soorah al-Tawbah* does not begin with the *ḥamdalāh*, there have been many interpretations seeking to explain this. There are narrations from 'Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib to the effect that the *ḥamdalāh* was left out of *al-Tawbah* since the *ḥamdalāh* signifies peace and mercy, and *al-Tawbah* was revealed as a warning and threat for the pagans. Other weak narrations mention the story that the Companions did not know whether *al-Tawbah* and *al-Anfaal* were two *soorahs* or one, so they purposely left the *ḥamdalāh* out at this place.³⁴⁸ The strongest opinion, however, is as al-Qushayrī says, "The correct reason that the *ḥamdalāh* is not at the beginning of it is because Jibreel did not reveal it with (the *soorah*)."³⁴⁹

VI. The *Soorahs* of the Qur'aan

The word '*soorah*' means an enclosure or a fencing, such as the walls around a city. It is also used to denote an elevated plain.³⁵⁰

When applied to Islamic sciences, it signifies a specific group of verses in the Qur'aan, arranged in a specific manner. Combining its linguistic meaning to the Islamic meaning, a '*soorah*' has 'enclosed' certain verses, and is elevated in status over all other speech. Ibn Kathīr (d. 774 A.H.) writes, "The scholars have differed over the linguistic meaning of '*soorah*.' Some say it is from the root word that signifies elevation... so it is as if the reciter of the Qur'aan rises from one level to another, or due to its (the *soorah*'s) high status... And it is also possible that '*soorah*' signifies the combining of various verses, just as the walls of a city (Ar. *ḥaṣr*) combine and enclose its inhabitants..."³⁵¹

346 az-Zarkashī, *Iḥṣān*, p. 472.

347 This narration will be discussed in the next section.

348 az-Zarkashī, v. 1, p. 363.

349 Ubayyidī, p. 136.

350 Ṭigḥār: Ibn Kathīr, v. 1, p. 9.

The Arrangement of the Soraahs

The scholars of Islaam have agreed (*ijmaa'*) to the fact that it is obligatory to follow the arrangement of the *soraahs* in the writing of the *mush-haf*, and that it is recommended (but not obligatory) to follow this arrangement in the recitation of the Qur'aan, whether this recitation occurs during the prayer or outside of it. However, they have disagreed concerning the origin of this arrangement into three opinions:

1) The first opinion states that the arrangement of the *soraahs* was from the *yaqleed* of the Companions. In other words, when Zayd compiled the official *mush-haf*, he employed his own *yaqleed* in the arrangement of the *soraahs*, and the other Companions agreed to this. This is the opinion of Imam Maalik (d. 179 A.H.) and Abou Bakr al-Baqillanee (d. 403 A.H.)³⁷¹

The proof that is given for this opinion is the fact that the different Companions had different arrangements of the *soraahs* in their respective *mush-hafs*. For example, 'Alee's *mush-haf* was arranged in chronological order, starting with *Soraah al-Baqra*, then al-Muddathir, and so on. Both the *mush-hafs* of 'Ubay ibn Ka'ab and Ibn Mas'ood started with al-Baqarah, then an-Nisaa, then Aale-'Imraan. These differences, according to the proponents of this opinion, show that the arrangement of the *soraahs* was not from the Prophet (ﷺ), for had it been so, these Companions would have written their *mush-hafs* with the proper arrangement of the *soraahs*.

However, this is the weakest of the three opinions, since the *mush-hafs* of the Companions were personal, and were not meant for others to read. Most of them were in fact incomplete, and as such do not constitute any proof. Apart from that, these *mush-hafs* were written during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ), when the revelation of the Qur'aan had not even been completed. Therefore, it would not even have been possible for these *mush-hafs* to have been arranged in the correct order.

2) The second opinion claims that part of the arrangement was done by the Prophet (ﷺ), and part by the *yaqleed* of the Companions. The followers of this opinion, however, have disagreed as to how many *soraahs* were arranged by the Prophet (ﷺ) and how many by the Companions.

The most common opinion amongst this group is that all the *soraahs* were arranged by the Prophet (ﷺ) except for *Soraah at-Tawbah* and al-Anfaal. As proof, they use the following narration:

Ibn 'Abbas narrates that he asked 'Uthmaan, "Why did you pair al-Anfaal, even though it is from the *mushaww*?" with at-Tawbah, which is from the *mu'een*. And why did you not write the *baqalaah* between them, and put both of them in the *qawsi* *soraahs*?" 'Uthmaan answered, "The *soraahs* used to be revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ), so whenever something was revealed he would call a scribe and tell him, 'Put this verse in the *soraah* in which such-and-such is mentioned.' *Soraah al-Anfaal* was one of the first *soraahs* to be revealed in Makkannah, and *Soraah at-Tawbah* was one of the

371 al-Sayooti, s.1, p.82.

372 For a discussion of the *mushaww*, *qawsi* and *mu'een*, see the last section of this chapter.

last parts of the Qur'aan revealed, and its story was similar to it (i.e., *Soorah al-Tawbah* resembled *Soorah al-Anfaal*), so I thought that it was a part of it. The Prophet (ﷺ) passed away before I could ask him concerning this issue, so because of this, I put the two of these together, and did not write the *baraa'id* between them, and put them amongst the seven *fuwa'id soorah*.³⁷³

This narration would be a very explicit proof for those who hold this opinion, if it was not for the fact that the above narration is weak.³⁷⁴ Therefore, this narration cannot be taken as proof in this matter.

This opinion, that all of the Qur'aan except for *al-Tawbah* and *al-Anfaal* was arranged by the Prophet (ﷺ), was held by as-Suyooti (who claimed that this was the opinion of the majority of scholars), al-Bayhaqi (d. 458 A.H.) and others.

It should be pointed out that the proponents of both of the above opinions claim that the present arrangement must be followed, since the Companions all agreed to it (*ijmaa'*).

3) The last opinion states that the *soorah* order was from the command of the Prophet (ﷺ). In other words, the arrangement of the *soorah* was understood by the Companions since the Prophet (ﷺ) taught them this, and this is why 'Uthmaan arranged the *soorah* in the present arrangement.

This is perhaps the strongest opinion on the matter. This is because the Prophet (ﷺ) used to recite the *soorah* to the Companions in a specific order, and he (ﷺ) mentioned the order of some of them in certain *hadeeth*. For example, he said, "Recite the two bright ones: *al-Baqarah* and *Aah-Imraan*,"³⁷⁵ and he (ﷺ) said, "I have been given in place of the Torah the seven *fuwa'id*, and I have been given in place of the Psalms the *sa'een*, and I have been given in place of the Gospel the *muthann*, and I was honoured over the others with the *mufassal*."³⁷⁶ This *hadeeth* will be discussed in the next section; however, it clearly shows that the Qur'aan had been arranged into some order by the Prophet (ﷺ).

Also, when the Prophet (ﷺ) recited the Qur'aan to Jibreel every year, he (ﷺ) must have recited it in a particular order, and Zayd was present when he recited it. When 'Uthmaan compiled the *ring-bay*, Zayd would have used the same order that he had heard from the Prophet (ﷺ). Another proof is that none of the Companions objected to this order. Therefore, the arrangement of the *soorah* must have been known to the Companions, and that is why they agreed to it (*ijmaa'*).

Perhaps the strongest proof is the narration of Hudhayfah at-Thaqafi (d. 42 A.H.), in which he said, "I asked the Companions (during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ)), 'How do you divide the Qur'aan?' They replied, 'We break it into three *soorah*, then

373. Reported by Abou Dawood and others, cf. *Qutuban* p. 143.

374. In its chain is 'Isaak al-Farisi, whom al-Bukhaaree mentioned in his *al-Dira'ie*. Ahmed Shaker said of this *hadeeth*, 'It has no basis.' See *Qutuban* p. 144.

375. Reported by Muslim.

376. Reported by at-Tabaraani in his *Kutub*; cf. *at-Sab'ah* # 1480.

five, then seven, then nine, then eleven, then thirteen, then the *wasfaqat* from Qaaf to the end.¹⁵⁷ In other words, the Companions would recite the Qur'aan in a specific order so that they could finish it every week. This narration shows that the arrangement of the *suraah* was known to all the Companions even during the life of the Prophet (ﷺ).

Imaam al-Karmaniyy said, "The arrangement of the *suraah* is from Allah, and the Qur'aan is written in the *Lauh al-Mahfudh* in this arrangement. It was recited to Jibreel by the Prophet (ﷺ) in this order every year, and he (ﷺ) recited it twice the year he died." Abuu Bakr al-Anbaari (d. 328 A.H.) said, "The whole Qur'aan was revealed to the lower heavens, then it was revealed gradually, over a period of twenty or so years. A *suraah* would be revealed in response to an occurrence, and a verse in response to a happening. Jibreel used to inform the Prophet (ﷺ) of the arrangement and place of the verses and *suraah*, so the arrangement of the *suraah* is like the arrangement of the verses and words – all of it is from the Prophet (ﷺ). Therefore, whoever changes the arrangement of a *suraah* to a place before or after what it should be has ruined the arrangement of the Qur'aan."¹⁵⁸ Al-Hamad writes, "The proofs given (by the proponents of the second opinion) are not explicit, and the possibility remains that the Companions took this arrangement from the Prophet (ﷺ), and this is the correct view."¹⁵⁹

In fact, many of the scholars have discussed the wisdom behind the present arrangement of the *suraah*. The majority of *tafsirs* also discuss the relationship between the *suraah*. In fact, as-Suyootiyy wrote a multi-volume work solely on this topic, entitled *Tawaajuz al-Dawaj fi Tanaasub al-Suwar*.¹⁶⁰

The Number of *Suraah*

There are 114 *suraah* in the Qur'aan, and this is the view held by almost all the scholars. A very small minority held the opinion that *Suraah al-Anfaal* and *at-Tawbah* are in fact one *suraah*, and thus consider there to be 113 *suraah*. Imaam az-Zarkashii said,

And know that the number of *suraah* of the Qur'aan, by consensus of those in authority,¹⁶¹ is 114, as is present in the *wasf* of 'Uthmaan, the first of which is al-Faatihah and the last of which is an-Naas. Muqatil (d. 100 A.H.) said that there were 113, combining al-Anfaal and at-Tawbah as one, but this is refuted by the fact that the Prophet (ﷺ) named each of them separately.¹⁶²

157 Reported by Abuu Dawood.

158 Both quotes from az-Zarkashii, v.1, p. 258. What is meant by changing the arrangement is not to recite one *suraah* before the other in prayer, but this was occasionally done by the Prophet (ﷺ), but rather to consider a *suraah* as having a position that is not consistent with the present arrangement.

159 al-Hamad, p. 122.

160 Published by 'Ashim al-Karsh, Beirut, 1987.

161 *As Ahfad* *Ma'la* *al-Aqad*.

162 See Zarkashii, v. 1, p. 258.

The Names of the Soorahs

As for the names of the *soorahs*, many of them have been given by the Prophet (ﷺ), such as the *hadeeth* quoted above that mentions the names of al-Baqarah, Aal-Imraan and al-Kahf. However, the names of all the *soorahs* are not found in the *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ). Some names were given by the *salaf* as well, and thus it is possible that a *soorah* has more than one name (although there are some who hold that even the names of the *soorahs* are from the Prophet (ﷺ)).³⁶³ For example *Soorah at-Tawbah* is also called al-Baraa'ah, and *Soorah al-Ghafir* is also called al-Mu'min. A *soorah* was typically named for a story, theme or word in it.

The longest *soorah* is *Soorah al-Baqarah*, and the shortest is *Soorah al-Kawthar*.

The Classification of the Soorahs

The *soorahs* of the Qur'aan are grouped into four categories, the *muwsal* (long) *soorahs*, the *mu'een* (hundred) *soorahs*, the *mathaani* (oft-recited) *soorahs* and the *muqatta'at* (dis-jointed) *soorahs*.

These categories are based on a *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ) in which he said, "I have been given in place of the Torah the seven *muwsal*, and I have been given in place of the Psalms the *mu'een*, and I have been given in place of the Gospel the *mathaani*, and I was honoured over the others with the *muqatta'at*."³⁶⁴

1) The *muwsal soorahs*: These are the first seven *soorahs* in the Qur'aan after the *Faatihah*. Some have added at-Tawbah as included in the *muwsal* since there is no *baatalah* that separates it from *Soorah al-Anfaal*. They have been called *muwsal* because they are the longest *soorahs* in the Qur'aan.

2) The *mu'een*: These are the *soorahs* that have over or around a hundred verses, hence their name.

3) The *mathaani*: These *soorahs* are the oft-repeated ones since they are recited in prayers more often than the longer ones. They occur after the *mu'een*.

4) The *muqatta'at*. These *soorahs* are called disjointed or broken because of the frequent occurrence of the *baatalah*. They start, according to the strongest opinion, from Qaaf (or, according to another opinion, al-Hijraan) and finish with an-Naas.

As for the particular *soorahs* that qualify as the *mu'een* and *mathaani*, there does not appear to be any consensus. Some have said that the *mu'een soorahs* ends at *Soorah Faajr*.

This would then imply that the *muwsal* are the *soorahs* from al-Baqarah to at-Tawbah, the *mu'een* from Yonus to al-Faajr, the *mathaani* from Ya Seen to al-Hijraan and

³⁶³ See an-Zarkashy, v. 1, p. 276, where he himself expresses his doubts over the divine origin of the *soorah* names, although it seems that he also leans to this opinion.

³⁶⁴ Reported by al-Jaayidee in his *Kabeer*, cf. al-Sajadeh # 1460.

the *mafsaf* from Qaaf to an-Naas. Again, this classification is not agreed upon by the scholars.³⁴⁵

Other Classifications

The Qur'aan has also been divided into sections to facilitate reading. These divisions have been adopted to assist the completion of the Qur'aan in a certain number of days. The ones that are more common in the *maq-hafl* of today are as follows:

1) *Maaail*: The Qur'aan is divided into seven *maaaail*, so that if a person wishes to finish the Qur'aan in one week, he may read one *maail* a day.

Most of the Companions used to finish the Qur'aan in one week. The narration quoted earlier from Hudhayfah shows that "I asked the Companions of the Prophet (ﷺ) how they used to divide the Qur'aan (for reading purposes). They responded, 'Three *soorahs*, then five *soorahs*, then seven *soorahs*, then nine *soorahs*, then eleven *soorahs*, then thirteen *soorahs*, then the *mafsaf* from Qaaf to the end.'³⁴⁶ In other words, the first day of the week they would recite al-Baqarah, Aala-Imraan and an-Nisaa; on the second day, the next five *soorahs*; and so on, so that the recitation of the Qur'aan would be finished weekly.

In the *maq-hafl* of today, the *maaaail* are different from this narration. This division of the Qur'aan into *maaaail* is not present in most *maq-hafl* printed in Arab countries.

2) *Juz*: The Qur'aan is also divided into thirty parts, each of which is called a *juz*. This is done in order to facilitate its reading in one month. In certain non-Arab countries, this division is also called a *qasaa*.

3) *Hizb*: The *maq-hafl* printed in Arab countries are typically divided into *hizb*. The Qur'aan is composed of sixty *hizb*, and thus every *juz* contains two *hizb*. The beginning of each *juz* is also the beginning of a *hizb*, and the middle of a *juz* is the beginning of another *hizb*. Each *hizb* is further divided into quarters called *ruba'*. Thus, each *juz* contains eight *ruba'*'s.

4) *Ruflu*: The *maq-hafl* printed in the Indian subcontinent are typically divided into *ruflu*, each equivalent to one or two paragraphs of text. The *ruflu* is accompanied by three numbers. The top number denotes the number of the *ruflu* with respect to that particular *soorah*. The middle number indicates the number of verses in that *ruflu*. The bottom number indicates the number of the *ruflu* with respect to the *juz* in which it occurs.

345. Although Tursooni in his work does not hold that it is necessary for the *soorahs* in each of the different categories to be sequential. So, for example, he holds that the *qasaa'* are from al-Baqarah to al-A'raf, and Yussuf, placing al-A'raf with the *mathana'*, and al-Tawba in the *as'ra'*.

346. Reported by Abaa Dawood.

THE BEGINNING OF THE Soorahs



1. The Different Categories

The beginning of the *soorahs* may be divided into ten categories, into which all the 114 *soorahs* may be classified.³⁶⁷

1) The Disjoined Letters (*al-Muqatta'at*). For example, *Alif-Lam-Mim*, *Kaf-Ha-Ya-'Ayn-Sad*, *Ha-Mim*, etc. These are twenty nine *soorahs* in number. This category shall be discussed in greater detail in the next section.

2) The Glorification of Allah. This is divided into two sub-categories.

The first category is the glorification by means of Praise, and by attributing Names and Attributes of Perfection. For example,

الْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ

«All Praise is due to Allah» [1 | 1]

and,

سُبْحَانَ الَّذِي يَدْرِي مَا فِي السَّمٰوٰتِ

«Blessed be He in whose Hands is the Dominion» [67 | 1]

The second category is the glorification by means of negating attributes of weakness and imperfection. For example,

مُتَعَالَى الَّذِي

«Glorified and Exalted be He (i.e., He is Exalted over all evil that is attributed to Him)» [17 | 1]

and,

سَبِّحْ اسْمَ رَبِّكَ الْأَعْلَى

«Glorify the Name of your Lord, the Most High» [87 | 1]³⁶⁸

³⁶⁷ az-Zarkashy, v 1, p 184-185

³⁶⁸ This distinction will be better appreciated if one understands the different meanings of 'Subhan Allah' and 'Mubashshah'. The latter has the connotation of praising Allah because He possesses the Most Perfect Names and Attributes, whereas the former has the connotation of negating from Allah any attributes of imperfection, and thus affirming only Perfect Attributes.

There are a total of fourteen *soorahs* that begin with glorification, half of them are in the first category and half are in the second.

3) A Call. For example, *يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا* "O You who Believe" (5:1 and others); *يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ* "O Mankind" (22:1 and others); *يَا أَيُّهَا النَّبِيُّ* and "O Prophet" (33:1 and others). There are ten *soorahs* that fit into this category, five of which address the Prophet (33).

4) A Statement of Fact. For example, *قَالُوا لَقَدْ أَفْلَحْنَا* "Successful indeed are the Believers" (23:1), or *هَوَّنَا* "He frowned and turned away" (80:1). This occurs in twenty-three *soorahs*.

5) An Oath. For example, *بِالنَّجْمِ* "By the Time!" (103:1), or *بِالنَّجْمِ إِذَا هَوَىٰ* "By the Star when it goes down" (53:1). This occurs in fifteen *soorahs*, all of which are Makkan.

6) A Condition. For example, *إِذَا نَصَرَ النَّبِيُّ الْقَوْمَ الْقَوِيْمَ* "When the Help of Allaah Comes, and the Conquest" (110:1), or *إِذَا زُلْزِلَتِ الْأَرْضُ زِلْزَالَهَا* "When the Earth Befalls" (56:1). This occurs in seven *soorahs*.

7) A Command. For example, *اقْرَأْ بِاسْمِ رَبِّكَ الَّذِي خَلَقَ* "Read, in the name of your Lord!" (96:1), or *قُلْ هُوَ اللَّهُ الْوَاحِدُ* "Say: He is Allaah, the One!" (112:1). There are six *soorahs* that fit into this category.

8) A Question. For example, *مِمَّذَا هُمْ سَأَلُوا* "What are they asking about?" (78:1) or *أَلَمْ تَرَ إِلَى الَّذِي يُدْعَىٰ* "Have you seen him who denies the Recompense?" (107:1). This also occurs in six *soorahs*.

9) An Invocation. For example, *وَيْلٌ لِّلَّذِينَ يَدْعُونَ* "Woe to those who grieve less in measure and weight!" (83:1), *وَيْلٌ لِّلْمُصَلِّينَ إِذَا دُخِرُوا* "Woe to every slacker and backslider!" (104:1), and *لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ الْحَيُّ الْقَيُّوْمُ* "May the two hands of Absoo Lahab perish, and he (along with them)!" (111:1). These are the only three *soorahs* where this occurs.

10) A Reason or Cause. There is only one *soorah* where this occurs: *إِنَّمَا كُنَّا نَعْبُدُكَ* "For the taming of the Quraysh!" (106:1).

II. The Disjointed Letters

The disjointed letters, or the *muqatta'at*, occur at the beginning of twenty-nine *soorahs* in the Qur'aan. These letters, fourteen in number, comprise exactly half the letters of the Arabic alphabet. Three *soorahs* begin with only one letter, ten with two letters, twelve with three letters, two with four letters, and two with five. The most common letter is *meem*, in seventeen *soorahs*. The least common are *haaf* and *noon*, which both occur only once.

There have been numerous interpretations as to the meaning and purpose of these letters, ranging from the ludicrous (some Orientalists claim that these letters are the initials of the scribes who wrote the Qur'aan for the Prophet (33)), to the sensible. Some of the more common interpretations and opinions are discussed below:

1) These letters are from the *Mushashshih*,³⁶⁹ and only Allaah knows their meanings. This opinion is a very common one, and it is definitely the *safest opinion*. Abuu Bakr as-Suldeeq is reported to have said, "Every book has secrets in it, and the secret of the Qur'aan is in the beginning of the *soorah* (as the *mujaawid*)."³⁷⁰

However, even though this opinion is the safest one, it does not rule out the possibility that these letters have some purpose and meaning. Fakhr ad-Deen ar-Raazee (d. 606 A.H.) said, commenting on this view, "It is not possible that Allaah would include something in His Book that His Creation would not understand, because Allaah is the one who has commanded us to reflect over this Book, and seek guidance from it. This cannot be achieved except by understanding its meanings."³⁷¹

2) These letters are from the names of Allaah. There are reports from Ibn 'Abbaas to this effect, such as '*Alif-Lam-Meem*' indicates the three names: Allaah, *Layf* and *Maym*, all of which are amongst the names of Allaah. However, all these reports are not authentic. Other weak reports state that these letters are the greatest name of Allaah (*al-ism al-Akham*), but these reports must be rejected too.³⁷²

3) Allaah has sworn by these letters. In other words, these letters have the same purpose as the other oaths in the Qur'aan, such as "By the Dawn" (89:1). This view is refuted since that is not the proper way the Arabs used to swear, and therefore this opinion does not seem to have much weight.

4) These letters represent numerical values. This opinion is rejected outright, as all such numerical interpretations are unfounded in the Qur'aan or *Sunnah*. Certain fabricated *hadeeth* support this view.

5) They stand for specific meanings. In other words, they are acronyms for phrases. For example, '*Alif-Lam-Meem*' stands for *Am Allaahu 'Alam* (I, Allaah, Know), or Allaah, Jibreel and Muhammad. Again, there is no proof for this.

6) Esoteric Interpretations. These are usually given by certain extremist *Sufi* and other heretical groups. Needless to say, all of these opinions are baseless since there is no proof from the Qur'aan or *Sunnah* to support them.

7) They are from the names of the Qur'aan. Most of the scholars have rejected this view, as the Qur'aan is not referred to as '*Alif-Lam-Meem*,' or any of the other letters.

8) They are meant to baffle the disbelievers. The disbelievers used to say,

لَا تَسْمَعُونَ الْقُرْآنَ وَالْقُرْآنُ يُعْذِرُكُم مَّا كُنْتُمْ تَعْمَلُونَ

"Do not listen to the Qur'aan, and make noise (i.e., babble) in the midst of it, so that you may overcome (the Qur'aan)." [41: 26]

369 See Ch. 12 'The Clear and Unclear Verses'.

370 as-Zarkhashi, v. 1, p. 171. It is essential, however, to verify if this actually was the statement of Abuu Bakr, as as-Zarkhashi reports it without an *isnad*.

371 as-Zarkhashi, v. 1, p. 171.

372 Ubaydaan, p. 208.

though the *muqatta'at* were used by the poets of old, the Qur'aan's style of 'poetry' is unimitable.

In a topic of this nature, it is impossible to authoritatively say which of these opinions is the correct one, since there does not exist absolute proof for any of them (hence, in a way, this aids the first opinion!). Many can be eliminated as baseless or weak (opinions two through seven).

Opinions eight, nine, and ten, although are plausible ones, do not seem to be the primary purpose of the *muqatta'at*. They may, however, be secondary purposes.

This leaves three opinions, the first, eleventh and twelfth. As for the first, as was pointed out earlier, it is true that only Allaah knows for certain the meanings of these letters, but this does not rule out the possibility that they may have meanings that are possible to grasp. Concerning the last two opinions, there does not seem to be any grounds for rejecting either of them. It seems likely, therefore, that they both are the strongest opinions, and Allaah knows best.

It is concluded, then, that the actual purpose of the *muqatta'at* is known only to Allaah; but it does not seem too unreasonable to claim that their purpose is to prove the miraculous nature of the Qur'aan, both by showing the Arabs that the Qur'aan – despite its inimitability – was composed of their letters and words, and by using the techniques of the *jaahiliyyah* poets to challenge and prevail over the eloquence of the poems of old.^{37 38}

III. The Ending of the Soorahs

Just as the beginning of the *soorahs* have a certain unique style, so too do the endings of the *soorahs*. The last part of a speech is the part which the reader will leave with, therefore it must have certain characteristics that make it stand out above the rest of the speech.

The endings of the *soorahs* are typically very comprehensive and forceful, leaving a strong impact upon the reader. An example is the ending of *Soorah Ibrahim*:

هَٰذَا نَبَأُ الْبَاقِرِ وَيُذَكِّرُوا
بِوَعْدِ اللَّهِ ذَرُّوا ذُرِّيَّتَهُمُ الْأَنْهَابَ ﴿٣٦﴾

³⁷⁶ Zaenun, p. 153

³⁷⁷ Also see the opinion of Abuu Isaaq al-Jaaz'amee in his *sefat*, v. 1, p. 7.

³⁷⁸ The Committee of Permanent Scholars (*al-Lajnah ad-Da'imah*) of Saudi Arabia was asked concerning these letters at the beginning of the *soorahs*. In response to this question, they issued a *fatwa* (FF 689, v. 4, p. 144 of their *Fataawa*) which states: "The scholars have differing opinions concerning this issue, but the correct one – and Allaah knows best – is that these letters in the beginning of the *soorahs* are an indication of the *jaaz* of the Qur'aan, and that the creation is incapable of bringing forth something resembling it, despite the fact that it is composed of these same dispersed letters *h a x*, (the Arabic alphabet that they talk in. And this opinion is the one that Shaykh al-Islam Ibn Taymiyyah defended, and Abuu al-Hajjaj al-Mura' agreed with." The Committee members were 'Abdullah bin Qa'ood, 'Abdullah bin Ghudayyan, 'Abd al-Razzaq Azzul, and 'Abd al-Aziz bin 'Abd Allaah bin Baaz.

«This (Qurʾān) is a Message for mankind (and a proof against them), in order that they may be warned thereby, and that they may know that there is only One God who is worthy of worship, and that men of understanding may take heed» [14:52]

Another example is the comprehensive *shāʾir* that forms the last two verses of *Soorah al-Baqarah*. *Soorah Aah-Imrān* ends with the exhortation of being patient and persevering in the cause of Allaah; *Soorah al-Maʾidah* and *al-Hashr* end with the praise and glorification of Allaah, *Soorah at-Tawbah* ends with a beautiful description of the Prophet (ﷺ), and so forth.

An important aspect of this topic is the relationship of the beginning of a *soorah* with its ending. For example, *Soorah al-Muʾminoon* starts off with the phrase,

قَدْ أَفْلَحَ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ

«Indeed, of a variety the believers are successful» [23:1]

and ends with,

إِنَّ الْمَلَائِكَةَ الْكَافِرُونَ

«Surely, the disbelievers will not be successful.» [23:117]

The relationship of the ending of a *soorah* with the beginning of the next one is also a topic of great importance. Typically, the beginning of a *soorah* is related to the ending of the previous one, either by meaning, or wording. For example, the ending of *Soorah al-Faatiḥah* is a request to Allaah to guide us to the Straight Path, and the beginning of *Soorah al-Baqarah* describes the Qurʾān as a guidance, as if in answer to the prayer. Likewise, the ending of *Soorah Aah-Imrān* exhorts the believers to be potent and fear Allaah, and the beginning of *Soorah an-Nisāʾ* commands mankind to fear Allaah, and fulfil the ties of kinship; the ending of *Soorah an-Nisāʾ* contains the laws of being just amongst relatives with regards to the laws of inheritance, and the beginning of *Soorah al-Maʾidah* reaffirms these commands by commanding the believers to be just in fulfilling their promises and obligations.

An example of a relationship in wording is the ending of *Soorah at-Tiūr*,

وَمِنَ اللَّيْلِ فَسَبِّحُوهُ ذُرَّ السَّجُورِ

«And in the night-time, glorify (Allaah's) praises, and at the setting of the stars» [52:49]

and the beginning of *Soorah an-Najm*,

وَالنَّجْمِ إِذَا هَوَىٰ

«By the star when it goes down» [53:1]

both the ending and beginning mention the word “star”¹⁷⁹

THE AHRUF OF THE QUR'AAN



1. The Meaning of the Word 'Ahruf'

The word *ahruf* is the plural of *harf*. Linguistically, 'harf' has a number of meanings, including

- 1) 'A letter or a word.' *Al-ahruf al-ahjadyya*, for example, means the letters of the alphabet
- 2) 'The border, the edge of something, the brink.' For example, Allaah says,

وَمِنَ النَّاسِ مَن يَخُوضُ عُثْرَ الْحَرِّ

«And among mankind is he who wades Allah (as it were) upon a *harf* (i.e., upon the very edge, or in doubt)» [22:11]

- 3) 'To swerve from the truth, to distort.' Allaah says concerning the Jews,

يُحْرِفُونَ أَلْفَاظَهُمْ مِّن مَّوَاقِعِهِ

«...they have displaced (lit., perverted) words from their right places.» [4:46]

Its exact definition in Qur'anic sciences is the subject matter of this chapter, and therefore cannot be defined in this point. However, a temporary definition may be given as follows: The *ahruf* are the various ways that the verses of the Qur'aan are read. Imam al-Qurtubee (d. 671 A.H.) said, "Every variation of a word in the Qur'aan is said to be a *harf*. So, for example, when we say the *harf* of Ibn Mas'ood, it means the way that Ibn Mas'ood used to recite that verse or word."¹

Most English authors translate *ahruf* as 'modes' or 'dialects.' However, in this book the word will be left in Arabic since the meaning is broader than these translated words.

ii. The Number of Aḡraf of the Qur'aan

The Qur'aan was revealed in seven aḡraf. The proof for this is found in many narrations from the Prophet (ﷺ), so much so that it reaches the level of *mutawatt'ah*.¹⁸² Jalāl ad-Deen as-Suyooti lists twenty-one companions who narrated that the Qur'aan was revealed in seven aḡraf.¹⁸³ Some of these narrations are as follows:

1) Ibn 'Abbaas reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Jibreel recited the Qur'aan to me in one ḡarf, and I recited it back to him, but I requested him to increase (the number of ḡarf) and he continued to increase it for me, until we stopped at seven aḡraf." Ibn Shubaah as-Zuhri (d. 124 A.H.), one of the narrators of the *ḡadeeth*, said, "It has reached me that these seven aḡraf are essentially one (an *imṣang*), they do not differ about what is permitted or forbidden."¹⁸⁴

2) Ubay ibn Ka'ab reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) was once on the outskirts of Madaanah (near the tribe of Banoo Ghifar) when Jibreel came to him and said, "Allaah has commanded that you recite the Qur'aan to your people in one ḡarf." The Prophet (ﷺ) replied, "I ask Allaah's pardon and forgiveness! My people are not capable of doing this!" Jibreel then came again and said, "Allaah has commanded you to recite the Qur'aan to your people in two aḡraf." The Prophet (ﷺ) again replied, "I ask Allaah's pardon and forgiveness! My people are not capable of doing this!" Jibreel then came a third time and said, "Allaah has commanded you to recite the Qur'aan to your people in three aḡraf." The Prophet (ﷺ) replied for a third time, "I ask Allaah's pardon and forgiveness! My people are not capable of doing this!" At last, Jibreel came for the fourth time, and said, "Allaah has commanded you to recite the Qur'aan to your people in seven aḡraf, and in whichever ḡarf they recite, they would be right."¹⁸⁵

3) Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭab narrated, "I was sitting in the *ṣaḡaf* when I heard Hishaam ibn Ḥakeem recite *Soorah al-Furqaan*. I was almost about to jump on him in his prayer, but I waited until he finished, and then grabbed him by his garment and asked him, 'Who taught you to recite in such a manner?' He replied, 'It was the Prophet (ﷺ) himself.' I responded, 'You are mistaken, for indeed I learnt this *suraah* from the Prophet (ﷺ) and it was different from your recitation.' Therefore, I dragged him to the Prophet (ﷺ) and complained to him that Hishaam had recited *Soorah al-Furqaan* in a manner different from what he (ﷺ) had taught me. At this, the Prophet (ﷺ) told me to let go of Hishaam, and asked him to recite *Soorah al-Furqaan*. Hishaam recited the *Suraah* in the same way I had heard him before. When he finished, the Prophet (ﷺ) said, 'It was revealed this way.' He then asked me to recite the same *suraah*. When I had finished, he (ﷺ) said, 'It was (also) revealed this way. Indeed, the Qur'aan has been revealed in seven different aḡraf, so recite whichever one is easy for you.'^{186 187}

[81] A *mutawatt'ah ḡadeeth* is one that is reported by a large number of narrators in every stage of the chain—so much so that they could not all be mistaken or agree upon a lie.

[182] as-Suyooti, vol. 1, p. 45.

[183] Narrated by al-Bukhaaree and Muslim.

[184] Narrated by Muslim.

[185] Narrated by al-Bukhaaree and Muslim.

4) In a story similar to 'Umar's, 'Ubay ibn Ka'ab also heard two people reciting the Qur'aan in a manner different from what he had learnt. After some discussion, both parties went to the Prophet (ﷺ) and recited the same portion to him. He (ﷺ) approved of both parties' recitations. At this point, Ubay narrates, "...there occurred in my mind a sort of denial and doubt that did not exist even in the time of *Jashifiyah* (before Islam)! When the Messenger (ﷺ) saw how I was affected, he struck my chest, whereupon I started swearing, and felt as though I were looking at Allaah in fear! Then the Prophet (ﷺ) said, 'O Ubay! A message was sent to me to recite the Qur'aan in one *ahraf*, but I requested (Allaah) to make things easy on my nation. A second message came that I should recite the Qur'aan in two *ahraf*, but I again made the same request. I was then ordered to recite the Qur'aan in seven *ahraf*.'"³⁸⁶

5) Ubay ibn Ka'ab narrates that once the Prophet (ﷺ) met Jibreel, and said, "O Jibreel! I have been sent to an illiterate nation. Among them are old and young men and women, and those who have never read any writing!" Jibreel answered him, "O Muhammad, the Qur'aan has been revealed in seven *ahraf*!"³⁸⁷

There are many other *hadith* that confirm that the Qur'aan was revealed in seven *ahraf*, but these narrations will suffice for the present discussion.

III. What is Meant by the *Ahruf* of the Qur'aan?

Before discussing the answer to this question, it would be useful to mention some points that can be inferred from the above narrations:

- 1) The different *ahraf* are all directly from Allaah, and not from the Companions. In all the narrations where the Companions differed from each other, it was clear that each one had been taught directly from the Prophet (ﷺ), who was inspired by Allaah. This is why the Prophet (ﷺ) said to each one of the *ahraf* recited by 'Umar and Hishaam, "It was revealed this way."
- 2) The reason the Prophet (ﷺ) requested the number of *ahraf* to be increased was to make the memorisation and recitation of the Qur'aan easier for his *Ummah*. The Prophet (ﷺ) prayed to increase the *ahraf* because in his *ummah* were "... old and young men and women, and those who have never read any writing." Therefore, the limitations of the Qur'aan being in only one *ahraf* have been removed by Allaah as a blessing for this *Ummah*.
- 3) The Prophet (ﷺ) used to teach the different *ahraf* to different Companions, depending on the condition and situation of that Companion. It can be assumed that the Prophet (ﷺ) chose the particular *ahraf* to recite to a Companion depending on which one would be the easiest for that particular Companion to memorise, since the purpose of the *ahraf* was to simplify recitation and memorisation. The Prophet (ﷺ) did not teach all the *ahraf* to all the Companions, for 'Umar and Hishaam did not know about the existence of the different *ahraf*. Also, the

³⁸⁶ Narrated by Muslim.

³⁸⁷ Narrated by al-Tirmidhi.

cause for Ubay's doubts was the fact that he was unaware of these *aḥruf*, and the Prophet (ﷺ) had to pray to Allaah to remove his doubts.

- 4) The differences between these *aḥruf* were not so great as to prevent recognition of what was being recited. In other words, even though Hishām was reciting the Qur'aan in a different *ḥarf* than 'Umar, 'Umar could still recognise that Hishām was reciting *Sūrah al-Furqān*, thus showing that the *aḥruf* were not radically different from each other. Also, the narration of Ibn Shihāb shows that the basic meaning of all these *aḥruf* was the same.
- 5) Each one of these *aḥruf* is complete in and of itself. The proof for this is the statement of the Prophet (ﷺ) "...so whichever one of them they recite, they are correct." This is not to say that the *aḥruf* do not complement one another in meaning, but rather that the recitation of the Qur'aan in one *ḥarf* is sufficient.
- 6) The number of *aḥruf* is exactly seven – not more, not less. The Prophet (ﷺ) asked Jibreel to increase the number of *aḥruf* until Jibreel reached seven *aḥruf*; therefore interpretations to the effect that 'seven' indicates an unspecified plurality (this was the opinion of Qaader 'Iyāq (d. 304 A.H.)) are false.

However, one narration in the *Musnad* of Imām Ahmad states that the Qur'aan was revealed in three *aḥruf*, and yet another narration states that it was revealed in ten *aḥruf*. Some scholars have tried to explain the first narrations as meaning that, in the Makkian stage, the Qur'aan was revealed in three *aḥruf*, whereas in the Madeenan stage, Allaah increased this to seven *aḥruf*. Other scholars have given different interpretations to reconcile these *ḥadeeth*.³⁸⁸ However, there is no need to resort to such explanations, since both of these narrations are weak.³⁸⁹ Therefore, the Qur'aan was revealed in exactly seven *aḥruf*.

- 7) The revelation of the Qur'aan in seven *aḥruf* started in Madeenah, after the *ḥijrah*. In one of the narrations, the phrase, "...while the Prophet (ﷺ) was on the outskirts of Madeenah," indicates that this occurred after the *ḥijrah*.
- 8) A last benefit that can be inferred from these *ḥadeeth* (although this is not relevant to the *aḥruf*) is the concern shown by the Companions in the preservation of the correct recitation of the Qur'aan. In all the cases quoted above, the Companions were not content with listening to recitations that were different from theirs – despite the fact that these recitations were said to have been learnt from the Prophet (ﷺ) – until they had taken the matter to the Prophet (ﷺ) himself.

As for what is meant by these seven *aḥruf*, there is a great deal of difference on this issue. Ibn Qutaybah (d. 276 A.H.) recorded thirty-five opinions on this issue, and as-Suyooti listed over forty. Ibn Sa'dīn (d. 231 A.H.), a famous grammarian and reciter of the Qur'aan, even declared that the true meaning of the *aḥruf* was known only to Allaah, and thus to attempt to investigate into this issue was futile! On the other hand, Imām Muhammad ibn al-Jazāree (d. 352 A.H.), perhaps the greatest scholar

388 cf. ibn pp. 78-88

389 cf. al-Muḥṣan, *Ḍaḥīq al-Jawān*, # 1315 and 1316

of the *qur'ān* after the era of the *salaf*, said, "I have sought to discover the meanings of these *ḥadeth* (about the *ahraf*), and have pondered over them, and contemplated this topic for over thirty years, until Allah opened my mind to that which is the correct answer in this matter, *Inshā Allāh!*"³⁹⁰

The reason that such a great difference of opinion exists concerning the exact meaning of the *ahraf* is due to the fact that there does not exist any explicit narration from the Prophet (ﷺ), or the *salaf* concerning the exact nature of the *ahraf*; these various opinions are merely the conclusions of later scholars, based upon their examination of the evidences and their personal reasoning (*ijtihād*).

Therefore, it should be understood from the outset that to arrive at one specific conclusion, and claim with certainty that it alone is correct and all else is wrong, is pure folly. What is desired, however, is to narrow down the various opinions and eliminate as many as possible based upon the evidences.

All of these opinions can be divided into three broad categories, which are discussed in the following sections.³⁹¹

A. THOSE OPINIONS WHICH HAVE NO BASIS WHATSOEVER:

In this category fall those opinions which do not have any *ḥadeth* to support them, nor do they make logical sense. Some of these are:

- 1) Seven different categories of texts. For example: constrained and unconstrained, general and specific, literal and metaphoric, *naẓh* and *maṣnūf*. Other categories include those given by grammarians and linguists, specifying different verb forms.
- 2) An esoteric interpretation by certain Sufi groups, claiming that there are seven levels of knowledge, or seven degrees of meanings to each verse.
- 3) Seven different branches of knowledge, such as *taḥfīẓ*, *sharḥ*'ah, etc.

All these opinions contradict the purpose of the *ahraf*, namely to make the recitation of the Qur'an easier for the *Ummah*. Also, there is no proof for these opinions, and they contradict common sense.

B. THOSE OPINIONS WHICH HAVE SOME APPARENT BASIS, BUT ARE WEAK OPINIONS:

Included in this category are the following opinions:

- 1) These *ahraf* are seven different ways to pronounce the words, without actually changing the letters. However, this opinion contradicts the variations in words that occurs in the *qur'ān*.

³⁹⁰ *Id.* p. 18.

³⁹¹ cf. al-Ḥamad, pps. 133-144, al-Zarqaṇī, v. 1, pps. 117-181, *Id.* 132-150.

- 2) The *aḥruf* are seven types of verses in the Qur'aan: apparent, command, recommendation, specific, particular, general and parable. There is a weak *ḥadīth* to support this.
- 3) Similar to the above, and also based on a weak *ḥadīth*, the different types are: commands and prohibitions, promises and occurrences, *ḥukm* and *ḥusn*, clear and ambiguous.³⁹²
- 4) The seven *aḥruf* are the same as the seven *qur'aan*. This is contradicted historically, as there are more than seven *qur'aan*, and the collection and codification of the *qur'aan* occurred four centuries after the Prophet's (ﷺ) death.³⁹³ None of the major scholars of Islam held this view, as Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.) and, "There is no difference of opinion among the scholars that the seven *aḥruf* are not the same as the seven famous *qur'aan*."³⁹⁴

Unfortunately, most of the Muslim masses understand the *ḥadīth* of the *aḥruf* to refer to the *qur'aan*.

C. THOSE OPINIONS WHICH HAVE STRONG EVIDENCE:

These opinions are the ones that are worthy of serious inspection, as they have strong evidence historically and from the meanings of the *aḥādīth*. There are three opinions in this category:

1) The seven *aḥruf* refer to the seven dialects (*luḡat*) of the Arabs prevalent at the time of the Prophet (ﷺ). Each of these dialects belongs to a tribe among the Arabs, namely, the Quraysh, Hudhayl, Tamem, Hawazin, Thaqef, Kantasah and Yemen (other scholars gave the names of other tribes). Thus, under this opinion, various verses would be pronounced according to the pronunciation of that particular tribe, and words from one dialect would be replaced by other words used by that particular tribe.

Some scholars say that these seven dialects are spread throughout the Qur'aan, meaning that part of the Qur'aan is in the dialect of Quraysh, other parts are in the dialect of Hudhayl, and so forth. Others say that the entire Qur'aan is recited in each of these dialects, thus forming the seven *aḥruf*.

This was the opinion of Abū 'Ubayd al-Qāsim ibn Sallām (d. 224 A.H.), al-Bayhaqee (d. 458 A.H.), Ibn 'Aqīyah (d. 541 A.H.) and others.

2) The seven *aḥruf* denote seven ways of recitation (*ḥalqat*) such that words are replaced by their synonyms. In other words, the seven *aḥruf* have the exact same meanings but different wordings.

This was the opinion of Imām al-Jāzee (d. 311 A.H.), al-Jāhawzee (d. 321 A.H.), Ibn 'Abd al-Barr (d. 463 A.H.) and others.

392 For a discussion of the weakness in the above two *ḥadīth*, see fn. p. 148.

393 See the next chapter for further details on the *qur'aan*.

394 Zarnaj, p. 188.

3) The seven *ahraf* refer to seven different ways that the verse can be changed. In other words, whenever a difference is found between these *ahraf*, this type of difference will fall into one of the following seven categories:¹⁹⁵

1. Change in wording. For example, in 101:5, *fa al-'adai ila-narjafuuh* is changed to *fa al-qoof ila-narjafuuh*, both of which mean the same thing.
2. Differences in wordings or letters such that they conform to the vowelless, dotless script of 'Uthmaan.¹⁹⁶ For example, *fatatbayaruu* is changed to *fatatbabatuu* in 49:6, just by changing the dots. Also, in *Soorah al-Fatihah*, *maashih* is changed to *maash* without any change in the script of 'Uthmaan.
3. Change in word order. For example, in 2:195, *wa qatulu wa qatlu* is changed to *wa qatlu wa qatlu*.
4. Addition or subtraction of a letter or word. For example, in 57:24, *fa ima Allaahu biinna al-ghayyid haameed* is recited without the pronoun, *fa ima Allaahu al-ghayyid haameed*.
5. The form of the word structure is changed. This change could be from plural to singular or dual (or other variations), or from feminine to masculine. For example, in 23:8, the plural *bi amaanahum* is changed to the singular *bi amaanahum*.
6. Differences in inflection points. For example, 2:125, *wa amashshoo min mapam* *Ibraahima mayyilaa* is read in the command *amashshoo*.
7. Differences in pronunciation. For example, lessening the effect of certain *hamzah* (called *tar-kahf*) or pronouncing certain *alif* and *yaa* differently (called *amaafah*).

This was the opinion of Ibn Qutaybah (d. 276 A.H.), al-Baaqillama (d. 403 A.H.), Makkar bin Abi Jaalib (d. 437 A.H.), al-Bazzaz (d. 606 A.H.), Ibn al-Jazayer (d. 832 A.H.), and others. Some of them give different categories, but their general thesis is the same.

Among these three opinion, the third one seems to have the least weight. Despite the fact that it classifies the differences in the *ahraf* into ingenious categories, it does not explain the essence of what the *ahraf* are. In other words, when Hishaam was reciting a different *hurf* from 'Umar, he was probably differing with 'Umar in more than one of these seven categories. Therefore, the third definition does not really answer the question as to the meaning of the *ahraf*.

The first two opinions, on the other hand, have very strong evidences to support them.¹⁹⁷ It seems – and Allaah knows best – that both of these opinions have an element of truth in them, and there does not exist any grounds for rejecting either of them.

195 All of these variations, except for the first, are found in the present-day *quran*.

196 The manuscript of 'Uthmaan did not have dots or diacritical marks to distinguish between certain letters and vowels. See, Chapter 8, on "The Collection of the Qur'aan."

197 See its pp. 166-177.

Therefore, it is concluded that the seven *aḥruf* represent variations based upon, but not limited to, the most fluent Arab tribes of that time. These variations occurred in words, letters, and pronunciations, such that all these variations made it easier for the Companions to memorise the Qur'aan. These variations did not always reach seven different ways of recitation for each verse, but whenever such variations existed, the different ways of recitation never exceeded seven.⁵⁹⁸

IV. Are the *Aḥruf* in Existence Today?

A very crucial question that arises is whether these seven *aḥruf* are still present today.

Of course, this question in essence depends upon how one defines the *aḥruf*. For example, az-Zarqaṇee strongly argues that all the *aḥruf* have been preserved, but this goes back to his definition that the *aḥruf* represent seven ways that the verse can be changed (opinion (3) above). Thus, since these variations are still present in today's *qur'aan*, he argues that all seven *aḥruf* have been preserved.⁵⁹⁹ The present discussion will, of course, utilise the definition that was concluded upon in the previous section.

The scholars of Islaam are divided into three opinions with regards to this issue.

The first group of scholars, composed of at-Tabaree (d. 310 A.H.), at-Tahaawee (d. 321 A.H.), Ibn Hibbaan (d. 354 A.H.) and those who follow them, argue that only one *ḥarf* is in existence today. At-Tabaree holds that the recitation of the Qur'aan in seven *aḥruf* was a concession given to the Companions at the time of the Prophet (ﷺ), but when 'Uthmaan officially compiled the Qur'aan, he specifically ordered the committee assigned to write the *mushaf* to preserve only one *ḥarf*. He writes, "The only recitation that the Muslims have today is the one *ḥarf* that their pious Imam ('Uthmaan) chose for them, leaving the remaining six."⁶⁰⁰ He is alluding to the statement of 'Uthmaan to the committee that wrote the *mushaf*, "... if you differ in (the spelling) of a word, then write it in the script of the Quraysh."⁶⁰¹ Thus, according to at-Tabaree and those who follow his opinion, shows that 'Uthmaan preserved only one *ḥarf*.

In response to the question, "How could 'Uthmaan and the Companions purposely have left out the other six *aḥruf*?" at-Tabaree answers:⁶⁰²

The seven *aḥruf* were revealed by Allah during the time of the Prophet (ﷺ) to facilitate the memorisation of the Qur'aan, since the dialects of the Arabs were many. This facilitation (i.e., the *aḥruf*) was not necessary to preserve, and eventually there was no need of it. In fact, it became the cause of division among the Muslims, as these people, as Islaam began as

⁵⁹⁸ cf. al-Qurraa, p. 79, and al-Hamad's conclusion, p. 144, which is very similar to this one.

⁵⁹⁹ az-Zarqaṇee v. 1, p. 170-172.

⁶⁰⁰ al-Hamad, p. 147.

⁶⁰¹ See Chapter 8 for a discussion of the collection of the Qur'aan.

⁶⁰² Ubaydun, p. 162.

going over the differences in the recitation of the Qur'ān. Therefore, Allah inspired⁴⁴³ 'Uthmān to discard the other six *ahraf* and collect the Qur'ān in one *haf*, so that the *amnah* would be united in its recitation. The Companions agreed to this action of his, and the agreement of the Companions is binding on the *ummah*.

The second group of scholars holds that all of the *ahraf* are in existence today, and the *six-haf* of 'Uthmān was written to preserve all seven *ahraf*. This was the opinion of Abū Bakr al-Baqillāni (d. 403 A.H.), and a small group of scholars. They claim that the Companions would never abandon a recitation that they used to recite during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ), and that they would not discard any knowledge that the Prophet (ﷺ) had given them.

The third group of scholars is composed of Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 724 A.H.), ash-Shāfi'ee (d. 790 A.H.), ar-Rāzī (d. 606 A.H.), Ibn Kathīr (d. 774 A.H.), Ibn al-Jawzī (d. 832 A.H.) and others. They argue that 'Uthmān preserved the *ahraf* to the extent that the script of his *six-haf* allowed him to do so. Thus, these scholars held that a portion of the seven *ahraf* are preserved.

The question then arises: On what basis did 'Uthmān decide which portions of the *ahraf* to preserve? The answer to this is twofold: First, Zayd ibn Thābit was in charge of the collection of the *six-haf*. Zayd had been present when the Prophet (ﷺ) recited the whole Qur'ān for the last time, only months before his (ﷺ) death.⁴⁴⁴ It can be assumed, then, that Zayd was aware of the portions of the *ahraf* that the Prophet (ﷺ) recited, and he must have chosen those to the exclusion of the others. Secondly, the Companions unanimously agreed to discard all readings that conflicted with the *six-haf* of 'Uthmān. Obviously, they would eliminate only that which they knew was not a part of the Qur'ān, and their consensus is binding on the *ummah*.

Ibn al-Jawzī (d. 832 A.H.) writes,⁴⁴⁵

The majority of the scholars of the *ahraf* and the later generations are of the opinion that the 'Uthmānic *six-haf* contains of the seven *ahraf* only that which its script allows. (What is preserved) are the recitations that the Prophet (ﷺ) recited to Jibrīl (during the last year of his life). The present *six-haf* contains all this reading, and not a single letter from it is missing.

The third opinion (i.e., that a portion of the seven *ahraf* have been preserved) seems to be the strongest one, for the following reasons:

1) The Companions were meticulous in preserving the knowledge that they received from the Prophet (ﷺ). They understood their responsibility in transferring

⁴⁴³ The *Asrabi* is *ilham*, which is the type of inspiration that is given to pious people, and is not the *wahy* that is given to the prophets. The mother of Mūsā received this type of inspiration when she was commanded by Allah to let Mūsā adopt in the desert. Refer to Chapter 3 for more detail.

⁴⁴⁴ Actually, the Prophet (ﷺ) recited the whole Qur'ān twice to Jibrīl, and heard it from him twice. Some scholars held the view that these recitations of the Qur'ān occurred in different *ahraf*. See ibn, pp. 263-73.

⁴⁴⁵ Ibn al-Jawzī, *as-Naṣīḥ*, v 1, p. 33, with changes.

this vast knowledge to the *muṣṣaḥḥ*. It is because of this concern of theirs that detailed information exists about every topic of Islam, so much so that the Muslims even know how many white hairs the Prophet's (ﷺ) beard contained!⁴⁹⁶ Therefore, it cannot be said that the Companions purposely left out six *aḡraf* and preserved only one of them in the *muṣṣaḥḥ* of 'Uthmān without bringing forth some strong, unequivocal proof. Al-Qurṭubī writes,

This opinion (that the Companions left out six *aḡraf*) is strange, and extremely weak, for it claims that a part of the Qur'ān was removed by consensus of the Companions, since each of the *aḡraf* is part of the Qur'ān. Therefore, how could 'Uthmān, or any of the Companions for that matter, or rather *all* the Companions, discard something from the Qur'ān without a clear proof from the Creator? Even if we say that the Companions were given the concession of choosing one *ḥaṣf* to recite as, as al-Jāḥiẓ (d. 110 A.H.) claims, and they were not accountable for all seven *aḡraf* since it was a concession from Allah, we say: This concession was given so that they could choose to recite the Qur'ān in any one of these seven *aḡraf*, whichever was the easiest for him. There was no concession, however, in *preserving* these *aḡraf*, either they were responsible for preserving all of them . . . that were not abrogated.⁴⁹⁷

2) The 'Uthmānic *muṣṣaḥḥ*s, as was mentioned earlier, were devoid of dots and vowel points. Since this knowledge was available to the Arabs at that time,⁴⁹⁸ it seems likely that the *muṣṣaḥḥ* was purposely written without these dots or inflection points so that it would encompass different readings, and hence the different *aḡraf*. Also, as was mentioned in the relevant chapter, the script of the 'Uthmānic *muṣṣaḥḥ* was written with specific rules in mind, apparently in order to accommodate the various recitations, and this shows that the *muṣṣaḥḥ* was written with the intent to preserve more than one *ḥaṣf*.

3) If, as al-Jāḥiẓ holds, only one *ḥaṣf* has been preserved, from where then do the differences in the ten *qur'ān* originate from? All scholars are unanimous that these ten *qur'ān* originated from the Prophet (ﷺ) himself, therefore it seems apparent that the *qur'ān* have some integral relationship with the *aḡraf* (as shall be discussed in the next chapter). Concerning this issue, Imām al-Jāḥiẓ is forced to contradict his stance, as Maḥmūd ibn Abī al-Ḥaṣīb (d. 437 A.H.) pointed out:

Al-Jāḥiẓ concedes to the fact that the various *qur'ān* that conform to the *muṣṣaḥḥ* of 'Uthmān are a part of the seven *aḡraf*, and this is what we also believe. However, he also claims . . . that the *muṣṣaḥḥ* (of 'Uthmān) has only preserved one *ḥaṣf*, to the exclusion of the other six. These two positions are contradictory.⁴⁹⁹

⁴⁹⁶ Abū al-Ma'ālī saḥīḥ, "I could not count more than fourteen white hairs in the Prophet's (ﷺ) beard and hair." Reported by al-Tirmidhī in his *Shawā'id*, # 31.

⁴⁹⁷ al-Qurṭubī, p. 71.

⁴⁹⁸ Although there is a strong difference of opinion over this. See al-Jāḥiẓ, p. 151, where he tries to prove that this knowledge did not exist until the Muslims invented it.

⁴⁹⁹ al-Jāḥiẓ, p. 146.

4) The different *ṣuṭṭ-ḥaṣṣ* that 'Uthmaan ordered to be written were not identical to each other, for in a number of places, the addition or deletion of a word or letter occurred in some of the *ṣuṭṭ-ḥaṣṣ*.⁴¹⁰ This change is reflected in the various *qir'ān* in existence today, for within the ten *qir'ān*, there exist word changes and word additions that could not have originated from the same *ṣuṭṭ-ḥaṣṣ*. It seems apparent this was done with a goal in mind, and the strongest conclusion seems to be that, by these differences in the *ṣuṭṭ-ḥaṣṣ*, 'Uthmaan had intended to preserve the differences in the *ashraf*.

These same four arguments, however, cannot be used for the second opinion (that all of the *ashraf* were actually preserved), because of the fact that certain variations that the Companions used to recite as part of the Qur'aan are now no longer a part of the Qur'aan (as will be explained in the chapters of *naṣḥ* and *qir'ān*). These variant readings can be explained as having been a part of the seven *ashraf* before the final reading of the Qur'aan by the Prophet (ﷺ) to Jibreel. This reading, which took place before Zayd ibn Thābit, cancelled the *ashraf* that 'Uthmaan did not preserve.⁴¹¹ Imaam al-Qurṭubī (d. 923 A.H.) said, "In this (last) recitation of the Prophet (ﷺ) to Jibreel, there were two benefits: First, to strengthen and preserve the Prophet's (ﷺ) memorisation of the Qur'aan, and, second, to affirm those verses that were not abrogated and to indicate which verses were."⁴¹²

V. The Wisdom in the Various *Ashraf*

Obviously, it cannot be said for certain the exact wisdom behind any Divine act, for the Creator's knowledge is infinite. However, the scholars of Islaam have said that the revelation of the Qur'aan in seven *ashraf* had the following benefits:⁴¹³

- 1) To facilitate the memorisation of the Qur'aan. This is the only benefit that is explicitly narrated in the *ḥadeeth*. The Arabs did not all speak Arabic in the same way; each tribe and location had slight variations and peculiarities unique to it. If the Qur'aan had only been revealed in one *ḥaṣṣ*, it would have been difficult for the many different Arab tribes to memorise the Qur'aan properly. However, since the Qur'aan was revealed in seven *ashraf*, this greatly eased its memorisation. This was of primary importance in its preservation and propagation.
- 2) To prove the miraculous nature of the Qur'aan. For despite all of these differences, the meanings of the *ashraf* did not contradict one another, but rather were complementary.
- 3) To prove the truthfulness of the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ), for despite the fact that he (ﷺ) was illiterate, the revelation of the Qur'aan occurred in different tribal dialects and different words, all of which consisted of the most fluent and eloquent speech of his time.

410 See Ch. 8, 'The Compilation of the Qur'aan,' for further details and examples.

411 Ibn al-Jawzee, p. 31

412 Usam, p. 8

413 cf. *Iq*, pp. 216-228

- 4) To honour the *ummah* of the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ), and show its superiority over all other nations. No other nation had been given its book in such a manner, in varying *aḥraf* to ease the process of preservation. Thus, the revelation of the Qur'aan showed the unique status that the Prophet (ﷺ), and his *ummah*, occupied over other nations. In one *ḥadīth*, the Prophet (ﷺ) remarked, "The earlier books would be revealed from one door (of heaven), in one *ḥarf*, but the Qur'aan was revealed from seven doors (of Heaven), in seven *aḥraf*."⁴¹⁴

⁴¹⁴ Reported by al-Bukhārī, see *ay-Saḥīḥ* # 909.

THE QIRA'AAT OF THE QUR'AAN



1. The Meaning of the Word 'Qira'aat'

The word 'qira'aat' is the plural of 'qira'ah', which comes from the root *q-r-a* meaning, 'to read, to recite.' 'Qira'ah' means the recitation of something.

In Qur'aanic sciences, it refers to the various ways and manners of reciting the Qur'aan that are in existence today. As Imam az-Zarkashy stated, the Qur'aan is the revelation that was given to Muhammad (ﷺ), and the *qira'aat* are the variations in words and pronunciations of this revelation. Thus the *qira'aat* are the verbalisation of the Qur'aan, and the Qur'aan is preserved in the *qira'aat*.

Each *qira'ah* has its own peculiar rules of recitation (*tajweed*) and variations in words and letters, and is named after the reciter (*Qari*) who was famous for that particular *qira'ah*.

11. The History of the Qira'aat

The primary method of transmission of the Qur'aan has always been and always will be oral. Each generation of Muslims learns the Qur'aan from the generation before it, and this chain continues backwards until the time of the Companions, who learnt it from the Prophet (ﷺ) himself. As Umar ibn al-Khattab stated, "The recitation of the Qur'aan is a *Sunnah*; the later generations must take it from the earlier ones. Therefore, recite the Qur'aan only as you have been taught."⁴¹⁵ This is the fundamental principle in the preservation of the Qur'aan.

In the last chapter, the revelation of the Qur'aan in seven *ahraf* was discussed. As the Prophet (ﷺ) recited the Qur'aan in all of these *ahraf*, the Companions memorised it from him accordingly. Some of them memorised only one *hurf*, others more than this. When the Companions spread throughout the Muslim lands, they took with them the variations that they had learnt from the Prophet (ﷺ). They understood the importance of the oral transmission of the Qur'aan. Umar ibn al-Khattab, during his caliphate, sent several prominent Companions to various cities to teach the people Qur'aan; Ubaydah ibn al-Saamit was sent to Hims, Ubay ibn Ka'ab to Palestine, and Abuu ad-Darda to Damascus.⁴¹⁶

⁴¹⁵ Bk, p. 244

⁴¹⁶ Wabshah, p. 96

Likewise, during his caliphate, Uthmaan also realised the importance of the proper recitation of the Qur'aan, and sent reciters of the Qur'aan all over the Muslim lands, each with a copy of his official *saq-saq*. He kept Zayd ibn Thaabit in Mada'eenah; with the Makkian *saq-saq*, he sent 'Adullah ibn Sa'ib (d. 63 A.H.); to Syria was sent al-Mughheerah ibn Shu'bah (d. 50 A.H.), Abuu 'Abd ar-Rahmaan as-Sulamee (d. 70 A.H.) was sent to Koo'fah, and 'Ammar ibn 'Abdul Qays to Bagdah (d. — 55 A.H.).⁴¹⁷

The Companions, in turn, recited and taught these variations to the Successors (*tabi'een*), who taught them to the next generation (*atba' at-tabi'een*), and so on. Each generation had in its rank those who were famous for their knowledge of the recitation of the Qur'aan.

Thus, among the Companions, there were many who were famous as having heard from the Prophet (ﷺ) most if not all of the Qur'aan. Included in this category are 'Uthmaan ibn 'Affaan, 'Alee ibn Abi Talib, Ubay ibn Ka'ab, 'Abdullah ibn Mas'ood, Zayd ibn Thaabit, Abuu ad-Darda', and Abuu Moosaa al-Ash'aree. These Companions taught those Companions who were younger or had not had as much exposure to the Prophet's (ﷺ) recitation, such as Abuu Hurayrah and Ibn 'Abbaas, who both learnt from Ubay. Some learnt from more than one Companion, as, for example, Ibn 'Abbaas also learnt from Zayd ibn Thaabit.

These Companions then taught the Successors. Since the Companions spread over the various parts of the Muslim world, each region started developing a specific type of recitation. Again, all of these various recitations had originated from the mouth of the Prophet (ﷺ), and the Companions spread the different variations throughout the Muslim world.

These famous among the Successors for the recitation of the Qur'aan are: in Mada'eenah, Sa'eed ibn al-Mu'ayyib (d. 90 A.H.), 'Urwah ibn az-Zubayr (d. 94 A.H.), Sa'ib (d. 106 A.H.), and 'Umar ibn 'Abd al-Azeez (d. 103 A.H.); in Makkah, 'Ubayd ibn 'Umayr (d. 72 A.H.), 'Ammar ibn 'Alee Rab'ah (d. 114 A.H.), 'Isma'eel (d. 106 A.H.), Mujaalad (d. 103 A.H.) and 'Ikrimah (d. 104 A.H.); in Koo'fah, 'Aqamah ibn Qays (d. 60 A.H.), Abuu 'Abd al-Rahmaan as-Sulamee (d. 70 A.H.), Ibrahim al-Nakha'ee (d. 96 A.H.) and ash-Sha'bee (d. 100 A.H.); in Bagdah, Abuu al-'Aaliyah (d. 90 A.H.), Naqir ibn 'Aagim (d. 89 A.H.), Qasraad (d. 110 A.H.), Ibn Sireen (d. 110 A.H.) and Yahya ibn Ya'mar (d. 100 A.H.); and in Syria, al-Mughheerah ibn Abi Shahaab and Khaleefah ibn Sa'ad.⁴¹⁸

Around the turn of the first century of the *hijrah* appeared the scholars of the Qur'aan after whom the *qira'at* of today are named. At this time, along with many other sciences of Islam, the science of *qira'at* was codified. Thus, members of this generation took from the Successors the various recitations that they had learnt from the Companions, and adopted a specific way of reciting the Qur'aan, and this is what is called

417. as-Zarqaanee, vi, p. 409.

418. It should be kept in mind that this is a partial list and is far from exhaustive. Those who are interested may consult Ubaydani, p. 164, Qatizani, p. 170, and as-Zarqaanee, vi, pp. 414-416.

a *qira'at*. Each of these persons is called a *Qaari*, or Reader. These *Qaari*s were the most famous reciters of the Qur'aan in their time, and people from all around the Muslim lands would come to them to learn the Qur'aan.

To summarise, the *qira'at* are particular methodologies of reciting the Qur'aan. They are named after the *Qaari*s who recited the Qur'aan in that particular manner, and were famous as being the leaders in this field. They represent the various ways that the Companions learnt the Qur'aan from the Prophet (ﷺ). They differ from each other in various words, pronunciations, and rules of recitation (*qaw'id*). They are not the same as the seven *ahraf*, as shall be elaborated upon shortly.

The scholars of the succeeding generations started compiling works on the different *qira'at* that were present in their times. For example, Abuu 'Ubayd al-Qaasim ibn Sallam (d. 224 A.H.) compiled twenty-five *qira'at*, Ahmad ibn Jubayr al-Koofi (d. 258 A.H.) wrote a book on five of the *qira'at*, and al-Qaader Isma'eel ibn Ishaq (d. 282 A.H.) compiled his book on twenty *qira'at* (including the famous 'seven'). Even Muhammad ibn Jarir al-Jazari (d. 310) compiled a work on the *qira'at*. However, the most famous of these books is the one by Abuu Bakr Ahmad ibn Mujaahid (d. 324), entitled *Kutub al-Qira'at*, in which he compiled seven of the most famous *qira'at* of his time from the major cities in the Muslim world. He was the first to limit himself to these particular *Qaari*s, for he wanted to combine the most famous recitations of Makkah, Madaenah, Koofah, Bagdah, and Damascus, for these were the five territories from which the knowledge of Islam sprung forth – the knowledge of the Qur'aan, *ahadith*, *hadith* and *fiqh*.⁴¹⁹ He wrote in his introduction,

So these seven (that I have chosen) are scholars from the Hijaz (i.e., Makkah and Madaenah), Iraq (i.e., Koofah and Bagdah) and Syria (i.e., Damascus). They inherited the Succession in the knowledge of the recitation of the Qur'aan, and the people all accepted and agreed upon their recitation, from their respective territories, and the territories surrounding them.⁴²⁰

He purposely chose seven *Qaari*s to match the number of *ahraf* that the Qur'aan was revealed in. Unfortunately, this led many people to mistakenly believe that the different *qira'at* were the same as the *ahraf* that the Prophet (ﷺ) referred to in the various *hadith*. This is obviously false, since Ibn Mujaahid wrote his book four centuries after the Prophet's (ﷺ) death. Due to this misconception, many of the later scholars took Ibn Mujaahid to task, wishing that he had chosen a different number, so that this confusion could have been prevented. Ibn al-Jazari (d. 852 A.H.) wrote,

Many of the scholars disliked the fact that Ibn Mujaahid restricted himself to seven *qira'at*, and said that he was mistaken in doing so, and wished that he had chosen a number greater than this, or less than this, or at least explained the purpose behind choosing this number, so that those people who have no knowledge would not have been misled.⁴²¹

⁴¹⁹ Uraan, p. 14.

⁴²⁰ Ibn Mujaahid, p. 87.

⁴²¹ Ibn al-Jazari, p. 39.

Another misconception that arose was that some scholars assumed that these seven *qira'at* were the *only* authentic *qira'at* of the Qur'aan. Thus, these scholars considered any *qira'a* besides these seven to be defective (*shadh*) *qira'at*. This, too, is a misconception, as there were other authentic *qira'at* that Ibn Mujahid did not compile.

Due to the popularity and excellence of Ibn Mujahid's book, these seven *qira'at* became the most famous *qira'at* of that time,⁴² and the students of knowledge left other *qira'at* to study these seven. Eventually, except for three other authentic *qira'at*, all the other *qira'at* were lost, and only these ten were studied. This does not imply, however, that somehow a portion of the Qur'aan was lost by preserving only these ten. Many of the *qira'at* were merely a mixture of others, so that their loss would not mean a loss of certain pronunciations or words. The Muslims are assured of the fact that they have the complete revelation that Allaah revealed to the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ), for it is Allaah's promise to protect it:

﴿وَلَقَدْ كَرَّمْنَا الْقُرْآنَ الْمَكِينُ﴾

'Verily, it is We who have revealed the Qur'aan, and verily We will guard it.'
[15:9]

III. The Conditions for an Authentic Qira'a'a

It was mentioned in the last section that, during the first few centuries of the *hiyaah*, there were many *qira'at* that used to be recited. The scholars of the *qira'at* therefore established rules in order to differentiate the authentic *qira'at* from the inauthentic ones.

The famous scholar of the Qur'aan, Mu'hammad ibn al-Jazayeri (d. 832 A.H.), said:

Every *qira'a* that conforms to the rules of Arabic, even if by one man
not, and matches with one of the *ruu-haaf* of 'Uthmaan, even if such a match
is not an obvious one, and has an authentic chain of narrators back to the
Prophet (ﷺ), is an authentic *qira'a*. Such a *qira'a* cannot be refuted or
denied, but rather must be believed in, and is amongst the seven *ahad* that
the Qur'aan was revealed in. Therefore the people must accept it, whether it
be from the seven *qira'at* (mentioned above), or from the ten *qira'at*, or
even other than these. And whenever any *qira'a* fails to meet one of the
above mentioned three conditions, then it will be labeled (according to which

⁴² This is very similar to what happened in the history of *hadith*. The reason that six particular books of *hadith* (al-Bukhaari, Muslim, Abuu Daawood, at-Tirmidhi, an-Nasaa'i and Ibn Maajah) are known as the '*Six Authentic Books*' or the '*Six Authentic Books*', is because of one book on the 'Names of Narrators', known as *Ajaab*, written by 'Abd al-Ghaani al-Balghazi (d. 600 A.H.). Due to the thoroughness of this work, people started classifying these six books separately from other works of *hadith*, and many considered these six books as authentic (*saheeh*). This description, however, is only applicable to the two *saheeh* collection of al-Bukhaari and Muslim; the rest of these works contain both authentic and inauthentic *ahadeeth*.

of the conditions are not met) either *weak* (*da'eef*), irregular (*shadidh*), or false (*qasb*). And this (i.e., these conditions) is the strongest opinion among the scholars of the past and the present."⁴²¹

Therefore, Ibn al-Jazaree mentioned three conditions:

1) The *qira'a* must conform to Arabic grammar. It is not essential, however, that the grammar used be agreed upon by all Arabic grammarians, or that the *qira'a* employ the most fluent and eloquent of phrases and expressions. This is the meaning of the phrase, "...even if by one manner." The basic requirement is that it does not contradict an agreed upon principle of Arabic grammar.

Some scholars, however, do not agree with this condition.⁴²² They argue, "If a *qira'a* is proven to have originated from the Prophet (ﷺ), then we cannot apply the rules of grammar to it. If we were to do this, and presumed an error in the *qira'a*, then we would be implying that the Prophet (ﷺ) made mistakes (Allah forbid!)." Therefore, an authentic *qira'a* overrides a rule of Arabic grammar.⁴²³

What this is implying is that it is the Qur'aan, through any of its *qira'at*, that is given preference over any rule of grammar, for the Qur'aan is the Speech of Allah, the most eloquent of Speech, and the rules of grammar must be based on this. Among the scholars of the Qur'aan who held this view are Makkeeh ibn Abi Sa'eed (d. 437 A.H.) and Abuu 'Amr al-Daanae (d. 444 A.H.). For them, the conditions for an authentic *qira'a* are the last two.

Actually, if the practice of the scholars of the Qur'aan is examined, it is apparent that the above difference is a difference in semantics only, for the first category of scholars (such as Ibn al-Jazaree) will reject a rule of grammar as invalid if it contradicts any of the ten authentic *qira'at*. Thus, the attempts by some grammarians to invalidate certain *qira'at* (such as az-Zajjaaj's⁴²⁴ attempt to invalidate the *qira'a* of Hamzah in verse 4:1) have been rejected by all the scholars of *qira'a*, whether they include this condition or not.⁴²⁵ This point will be discussed in greater detail below.

2) The *qira'a* must conform with one of the *saq-haaf* of 'Uthmaan. In the chapter on the compilation of the Qur'aan, it was mentioned that 'Uthmaan sent out between four and eight *saq-haaf* around the Muslim world. All of them were without dots and vowel marks. Also, these *saq-haaf* had minor variations between them.

As long as a *qira'a* satisfied any one of these *saq-haaf*, it was considered to have passed this condition, even if it conformed slightly. For example, the word *maashiih*⁴²⁶ in Soorah al-Furqaan is written in all the 'Uthmaani *saq-haaf* as *m-l-h* (م-ل-ه), which allows for the variation found in other *qira'at* of *maashiih*.⁴²⁷ This is an example where

421 Ibn al-Jazaree, p. 9. I have paraphrased from the Arabic.

422 Cf. az-Zarqaanee, v.1, p. 423.

423 He is 'Abd al-Rahmaan ibn Ishaaq az-Zajjaaj al-Nijawandee (d. 332), a noted Muslim grammarian.

424 az-Zarkashy, *Bahe*, v.1, p. 471.

425 The *qira'a* of 'Aqam and al-Kisa'ee.

426 The *qira'a* of Warsh, Ibn Kathir, Ibn 'Ameer, Hamzah and Abuu 'Amr.

the conformation is "not obvious." An example of an explicit conformation is in 2:259, where one recitation is *hayfa nashkurahu*,⁴²⁹ but without a dot over one letter becomes *hayfa nashkurahu*.⁴³⁰ An example of a *qira'a*'s conforming to one of the *mag-haf* of 'Uthmaan without the others is the *qira'a*'s of Ibn 'Aasim, who read 3:184 as *wa la zahara wa la qiraah* instead of *wa an-zahara wa qiraah* (i.e., without the *dash*), since the *mag-haf* that 'Uthmaan sent to Syria had the two *hafs* in it.

An example of a *qira'a*'s that contradicts all the *mag-haf* of 'Uthmaan is the *qira'a*'s attributed to Ibn 'Abbaas in 18:79, which translates as, "...and there was, behind them, a king who seized every ship by force," whereas Ibn 'Abbaas read it, "...and there was, in front of them, a king who seized every useable ship by force." The two changes in the recitation of Ibn 'Abbaas are not allowed by the *mag-haf* of 'Uthmaan, and cannot, therefore, be considered an authentic recitation.

3) The *qira'a*'s must have an authentic (*isnad*) chain of narrators back to the Prophet (ﷺ). This is the most important condition, and guarantees that the variations that occur in the *qira'at* have all been sent down by Allaah as part of the Qur'aan, recited by the Prophet (ﷺ), and passed down to the Muslim *ummah* without any addition or deletion. As was quoted from 'Umar earlier (and this same statement has also been made by Zayd ibn Thabit, and many of the Successors), "The recitation of the Qur'aan is a *Sunnah*; the later generations must take it from the earlier ones. Therefore, recite the Qur'aan only as you have been taught."

However, an important question is: do these chains of narration have to be *mutawattir*? The overwhelming majority of scholars claimed that they did. The only notable exceptions were from Ma'kkeh ibn Abi Ja'afir (d. 437 A.H.), and later Ibn al-Jazaree (d. 832 A.H.) (whose definition is being quoted). Both of these scholars are highly respected, classical scholars in the field of *qira'at*.

Ibn al-Jazaree wrote, "Some of the later scholars have presumed... that the Qur'aan can only be proven with *mutawattir* narrations! The flaws in this opinion are obvious."⁴³¹

However, this opinion itself goes against the consensus (*ijma'*) of almost all the other scholars. Imaam an-Nawawee (d. 897 A.H.), a commentator of Ibn al-Jazaree's work, wrote:

This opinion is a newly-invented one, contradicting the consensus (*ijma'*) of the jurists and... the four *madh-habs*... and many scholars, so many that they cannot even be counted, such as Ibn 'Abd al-Baqi, Ibn 'Atyyah, Ibn Taymiyyah, Imaam Nawawee, al-Khatib, as-Sullee, as-Zarkashi, Ibn al-Hajj, and many more besides these. As for the sections of the Qur'aan, they were agreed on this since the earliest times, and the only ones to con-

429 The *qira'a*'s of 'Asim, and others.

430 The *qira'a*'s of Naafi', and others.

431 Ibn al-Jazaree, p. 13.

tradition than in the later times are Maḥdī ibn Abī Jaʿfar⁴³² and those who followed him (i.e., Ibn al-Jazārī)⁴³³.

In reality, Ibn al-Jazārī's opinion seems to have more theoretical than realistic value, for even he admits, in another of his works, that the ten *qir'ān* are all *ṣaḥīḥ*. He states, "Whoever says that the *ṣaḥīḥ* *qir'ān* are unlimited, then if he means those in our times, this is not correct, for today there are no authentic *ṣaḥīḥ* *qir'ān* besides these ten; however, if he means in earlier times, then it is possible that he is correct..."⁴³⁴ Therefore, Ibn al-Jazārī was of the view that it was not necessary for a *qir'ān* to be *ṣaḥīḥ* for it to be accepted, but at the same time he did believe that the ten *qir'ān* were all *ṣaḥīḥ*.

Ibn al-Jazārī's conditions were perhaps applicable in his time, when there existed numerous *qir'ān* besides the ten that are present today. According to him, such *qir'ān* could be recited as long as they had an authentic chain of narrators back to the Prophet (ﷺ), even if such chains were *ajfād*. Most of the other scholars of *qir'ān*, however, did not agree with him on this point.⁴³⁵ However, since in our times, only these ten *qir'ān* are in existence, this issue becomes more theoretical than practical, as most of the scholars are in agreement that these ten *qir'ān* are all *ṣaḥīḥ*.

In conclusion, the conditions for an authentic *qir'ān* is that it must be *ṣaḥīḥ*, and conform to at least one of the *waq-ḥ* of 'Uthmān. Any time such a *qir'ān* exists, it overrides any rule of Arabic grammar.

It should be mentioned, however, that there has never existed any *ṣaḥīḥ* *qir'ān* that contradicted any rule of Arabic grammar.⁴³⁶ Al-Qasrī writes,⁴³⁷

432. Maḥdī ibn Abī Jaʿfar is quoted as having been the first to hold this opinion in all the works that I have come across discussing this topic. (also see, al-Qaṣbī, p. 8). However, I came across another work of his entitled *Kunūṣ al-Bayān* 'on the issue of *Qir'ān*, in which he clearly states that any *qir'ān* must be *ṣaḥīḥ* for it to be accepted. For example, on p. 43, while discussing the *ṣaḥīḥ* *qir'ān*, he states, "...and the Qur'ān cannot be confirmed with an *ajfād* narration," on p. 51, "...and this is i.e., taking a *ṣaḥīḥ* *qir'ān* implies confirming the Qur'ān with an *ajfād* narration, and this is not allowed by any of the people (of knowledge)." Elsewhere (p. 39), he clearly states concerning this opinion, "...and this is the opinion we have and hold." I did not see any of the other books that I read mention these quotes, so I do not know whether this was his earlier opinion, or his later one, nor could I ascertain when he wrote the book. In any case, further research must be done to ascertain whether this really was the final opinion of Maḥdī ibn Abī Jaʿfar.

433. al-Qaṣbī, p. 8.

434. *Uṣūl*, p. 12, quoting from Ibn al-Jazārī's *Majma' al-Majma'*. Also, see *Uṣūl*'s discussion on this point, pp. 11-14.

435. Other scholars make a distinction between the Qur'ān and the *qir'ān*, and state that in order for the Qur'ān to be accepted, the narrations must be *ṣaḥīḥ*, but in order for a *qir'ān* to be accepted, an *ajfād* narration will suffice. However, this distinction does not seem to solve the problem, for the *qir'ān* are the Qur'ān, and the Qur'ān is preserved in all of the *qir'ān*. Therefore, if a *qir'ān* is substantiated as authentic, that automatically implies that it is part of the Qur'ān.

436. This is not to say that there have not existed *qir'ān* that Arab grammarians have not found fault with. There have been numerous attempts to prove various grammatical 'flaws' in the *qir'ān*, but other grammarians have always proven that such readings do fit the grammatical basis for them. Cf. al-Qasrī, *Abū al-Aswād*. *Ḥikmat al-Aḥwāl* (Cairo), in *Majma' al-Kalām al-Jawān* of Karam, v. 1, 1983, p. 115, for example.

437. al-Qasrī, p. 114, with paraphrasing. The addition in brackets are mine.

If we ponder over this issue, and reflect over these conditions, we find that this last condition (i.e., the *qira'a* must conform with Arabic grammar) is, in reality, not a 'condition' in the sense of the word, meaning that if this 'condition' is not met, the *qira'a* is rejected, for two reasons:

Firstly, such a case has never occurred, meaning that there is no authentic, *mutawatir* *qira'a* that conforms to the 'Ultimate *naṣṣ ḥaṣṣ*' that has no basis in Arabic grammar.

Secondly, even if we allow for the possibility that there exists such a *qira'a* – an authentic, *mutawatir* *qira'a* conforming to the *naṣṣ*, yet not having any basis that we can discover in Arabic grammar – then this too does not imply the rejection of the *qira'a*. This is because our ignorance of such a grammatical basis does not rule out the possibility of such a basis, since no matter how much our knowledge encompasses, it will still be limited. *Alḥa*, whenever a *qira'a* has a *mutawatir* chain of narrators and conforms with the 'Ultimate script, this is unequivocal proof that it is a part of the Qur'aan, and therefore there cannot be any argument against it.

To conclude, therefore, we say: This last condition (meaning the confirmation of a *qira'a* with Arabic grammar) is in reality a necessary by-product of the other two conditions, and is not a 'condition' *per se*.

As has already been alluded to, there are ten *qira'at* that meet the above requirements, and these will be discussed below. Taqree ad-Deen as-Subkree (d. 756 A.H.) stated,

The seven *qira'at* that ash-Shaatbeer compiled⁴³⁸ along with the other three *qira'at* are all authentic *mutawatir* *qira'at*. This has been recognised by all, and every letter that any of these *qira'at* have differed with the others on, is recognised to have been revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ). None can reject this fact except the ignorant.⁴³⁹

Theoretically, it is possible for there to still exist other authentic *qira'at* besides these ten, since there is no divine law regulating that there can only be ten *qira'at*. Realistically, however, such an existence is impossible, as the scholars of the Qur'aan would have known of them by now.

IV. The Other Types of *Qira'at*

If a *qira'a* fails to meet any of these conditions, it is classified in a different category. Different scholars have adopted different classifications for defining those *qira'at* that do not meet the above three conditions. One of the simpler ones is as follows:⁴⁴⁰

1) The *Ṣaḥeeḥ* (Authentic) *Qira'at*. These are the ten authentic *qira'at*, and the conditions of acceptance were discussed above.

438. Qassem ibn Aḥmad as-Shaatbeer (d. 790 A.H.) compiled the seven *qira'at* of Abū Bakr ibn Maṣṣūd in a poem known as the *Shagḥīḥ* to facilitate its memorisation.

439. as-Sayyegh, v. 1, p. 82.

440. Ubaydun, p. 178.

2) The *Shawdh* (Irregular) *Qira'at*: These *qira'at* have an authentic chain of narration back to the Prophet (ﷺ) and conform to Arabic grammar, but do not match the *muq-daf* of 'Uthmaan. In addition, they are not *mutawwaf*. In other words, they employ words or phrases that the 'Uthmaanic *muq-daf* do not allow. Most of the time (but not all, see as-Suyooty's classification below) this type of *qira'at* was in fact used by the Companions as explanations to certain verses in the Qur'aan. For example, 'Aa'ishah used to recite 2:238 "... wa qatol al-awata" with the addition 'qatol al-ay.' The meaning of the first is, "Guard against your prayers, especially the middle one." 'Aa'ishah's addition explained that the "middle prayer" alluded to in this verse is in fact the 'Asr prayer. There are numerous authentic narrations from the Companions of this nature, in which they recited a certain verse in a way that the *muq-daf* of 'Uthmaan would not allow.

Another explanation for this type of *qira'at* is that they were a part of the *ahraf* that were revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ) but later abrogated, and thus not preserved in the *muq-daf* of 'Uthmaan.

3) The *Da'eef* (Weak) *Qira'at*: These *qira'at* conform with Arabic grammar and are allowed by the *muq-daf* of 'Uthmaan, but do not have authentic chains of narrations back to the Prophet (ﷺ). An example of this type is the recitation of 1:4 as *malak yauzu deen*, in the past tense.

4) The *Ba'at* (False) *Qira'at*: These *qira'at* do not meet any of the three criterion mentioned above, and are rejected completely, even as *tafsir*. For example, the reading of 35:28 as *awna yafshahu Allaahu min 'aladhi' 'alawa*, changes the meaning from, "It is only those who have knowledge amongst His slaves that truly fear Allaah," to, "Allaah is afraid of the knowledgeable of His slaves!" (All praise be to Allaah, He is far removed from all that they ascribe to Him!)

The ruling concerning these last three types of *qira'at*, the *shawdh*, the *da'eef* and the *ba'at*, is that they are not a part of the Qur'aan, and in fact it is *haram* (forbidden) to consider such a *qira'at* as part of the Qur'aan. If it is recited in prayer, such a prayer will not be acceptable, nor is one allowed to pray behind someone who recites these *qira'at*. However, the *shawdh* and the *da'eef qira'at* may be studied under the science of *tafsir* (and other sciences, such as the science of grammar, or *nahw*) as long as they are identified as such. The *shawdh qira'at*, in particular, used to form a part of the seven *ahraf* that the Qur'aan was revealed in, but these recitations were abrogated by the Prophet (ﷺ) himself, and therefore not preserved by 'Uthmaan. Under this category fall many of the recitations that are transmitted with authentic chains of narrations from the Companions, and yet do not conform with the 'Uthmaanic *muq-daf*. These recitations used to form a part of the Qur'aan, and were recited by the Companions, until they were abrogated by the Prophet (ﷺ) before his death.

As-Suyooti,⁴⁴¹ following Ibn al-Jazari (d. 832 A.H.), classifies the various *qira'at* into six categories, which are, briefly:

1) *Muttafa'at*: These are the seven *qira'at* compiled by Ibn Mujahid, plus the other three.

2) *Mash-hoor* (Well-known): These are some of the variations found within the ten authentic *qira'at*, such as the differences between the *muaww* and *guruq* (to be discussed below).

3) *Ajaab* (Singular): These are the *qira'at* that have an authentic chain of narration, but do not conform to the *ruq-haf* of 'Uthmaan, or contradict a rule of Arabic grammar (the same as *shadid* above).

4) *Shadid* (Irregular): These are the *qira'at* that do not have an authentic chain of narration back to the Prophet (ﷺ) (the same as *gharib* above).

5) *Mawdu'at* (Fabricated): These are the *qira'at* that do not meet any of the three conditions (same as *bagh'* above).

6) *Mudraj* (Interpolated): In this category, as-Suyooti classified those readings that the Companions used to add for the sake of interpretation. For example, the verse,

وَلَهُ الْاِخْوَةُ وَالْاُخْتُ

“...and he has a brother or sister.” (4:12)

was recited by Sa'eed ibn Abi Waqqas as, “...and he has a brother or sister from the same mother.”

These types of additions are explained as having been heard by that Companion from the Prophet (ﷺ), either as an explanation of the verse (in which case it was assumed by the Companion to be part of the verse), or that this was one of the *ahraf* of that verse that was later abrogated by the Prophet (ﷺ) during his final recitation to Jibreel.⁴⁴²

As-Suyooti stated that the first two types, *muttafa'at* and *mash-hoor*, are considered part of the Qur'aan, and can be recited in prayer, but the last four types are not a part of the Qur'aan.

V. The Authentic Qira'at and the Qaarees

Now that the various types of *qira'at* have been discussed in detail, it is time to look at the ten authentic *qira'at*, and the *Qaarees* whom they are named after.⁴⁴³ The first seven are the ones that Abou Bakr ibn Mujahid (d. 324 A.H.) preserved in his book, and which ash-Shaybani (d. 348 A.H.) verified in his famous poem known as *ash-Shaybiyyah*.

⁴⁴¹ as-Suyooti, v 1, p. 102.

⁴⁴² cf. as-Suyooti, v 1, p. 102.

⁴⁴³ All of the biographical information in this section, unless otherwise referenced, was taken from al-Banna, v1, pps. 19-42, as-Zarqaani, v1, pps. 456-477, and al-Haafidh, pps. 39-75.

1) *Nasafi' al-Madaneer*:

He is Nasafi' ibn 'Abd al-Rahmaan ibn Abee Na'eem al-Laythee, originally from an Isfahanian family. He was one of the major scholars of *qira'at* during his time. He was born around 70 A.H., in Madannah, and passed away in the same city at the age of 99, in 169 A.H. He learnt the Qur'aan from over seventy Successors, including Aboo Ja'far Ya'zeed ibn al-Qa'qa' (d. 130 A.H.), who took his recitation from Aboo Hurayrah, who took his recitation from Ubay ibn Ka'ab, who took his recitation from the Prophet (ﷺ). After the era of the Successors, he was taken as the chief *Qaaree* of Madannah. Eventually, his *qira'a* was adopted by the people of Madannah.

Among his students was Imaam Maalik (d. 179 A.H.). Imaam Maalik used to recite the Qur'aan in the *qira'a* of Nasafi', and he used to say, "Indeed, the *qira'a* of Nasafi' is the *Sunnah*,"⁴⁴⁴ meaning that this *qira'a* was the most liked by him.

The two students who preserved his *qira'a* are:

i) Qulsoo: He is 'Eesa ibn Meera az-Zarqee (120-220 A.H.). He was the step-son of Nasafi', and lived his whole life in Madannah. After Nasafi' died, he took over his position as the leading *Qaaree* of Madannah.

ii) Warsh: He is Aboo Sa'eed 'Uthmaan ibn Sa'eed al-Miqree (110-197 A.H.). He lived in Egypt, but travelled to Madannah in 155 A.H. to study under Nasafi', and recited the Qur'aan to him many times. Eventually, he returned to Egypt, and became the leading *Qaaree* of Egypt.

2) *Ibn Katheer al-Makkee*:

He is 'Abd Allaah ibn Katheer ibn 'Umar al-Makkee, born in Makkah in 45 A.H. and died 120 A.H. He was among the generation of the Successors (he met some Companions, such as Anas ibn Maalik and 'Abdullaah ibn az-Zubayr), and learnt the Qur'aan from the early Successors, such as Abee Sa'ad, Mufahhid ibn Jabr (d. 103 A.H.), and Darbaas, the slave of Ibn 'Abbaas. Darbaas learnt the Qur'aan from Ibn 'Abbaas, who learnt it from Zayd ibn Thaabit and Ubay ibn Ka'ab, who both learnt it from the Prophet (ﷺ).

Imaam ash-Shaafi'ee (d. 204 A.H.) used to recite the *qira'a* of Ibn Katheer,⁴⁴⁵ and once remarked, "We were taught the *qira'a* of Ibn Katheer, and we found the people of Makkah upon his *qira'a*."⁴⁴⁶

The two primary *Qaaree* who preserved his *qira'a* are:

i) al-Buzzee: He is Abul Hasan Ahmad ibn Buzrah al-Makkee (170-250 A.H.). He was the *mu'allim-ullu* at the Masjid al-Haram at Makkah, and the leading *Qaaree* of Makkah during his time.

⁴⁴⁴ al-Haashimee, p. 39.

⁴⁴⁵ Here, his opinion of the origin of the word 'Qur'aan' of Ch. 2, 'The Meaning of the Word 'Qur'aan'.

⁴⁴⁶ al-Haashimee, p. 39.

n) Qumail: He is Abou 'Amr Muhammad ibn 'Abd al-Rahmaan (195-294 A.H.). He was the leading *Qaari* of the Hijaz. He was also one of the teachers of Abou Bakr ibn Maqalud (d. 324 A.H.), the author of *Kutub al-Qira'at*.

3) Abou 'Amr al-Bagree:

He is Zabaan ibn al-'Alaa ibn 'Ammar al-Bagree. He was born in 69 A.H. and passed away in 194 A.H. He was born in Makkah, but grew up in Bagdah. He studied the Qur'aan under many of the Successors, among them Abou Ja'far (d. 130 A.H.), and Abou al-'Ashyah (d. 95 A.H.), who learnt from 'Umar ibn al-Khattaab and other Companions, who learnt from the Prophet (ﷺ).

The two primary *Qaari* who preserved his *qira'at* are:

i) ad-Doori. He is Hafs ibn 'Umar ad-Doori (195-246 A.H.). He was one of the first to compile different *qira'at*, notwithstanding the fact that he was blind.

ii) as-Sosaei: He is Abou Shu'ayb Saalih ibn Zayad as-Sosaei (171-261 A.H.). He taught the Qur'aan to Imam an-Nasa'ee (d. 303 A.H.), of *Sunan* fame.

4) Ibn 'Ammar ash-Shaamee:

He is 'Abdullaah ibn 'Ammar al-Yahgabee, born in 21 A.H. He lived his life in Damascus, which was the capital of the Muslim empire in those days. He met some of the Companions, and studied the Qur'aan under the Companion Abou ad-Dardaa, and al-Mughbeerah ibn Abi Shihab. He was the Imam of the Umayyad Mosque (the primary mosque in Damascus) during the time of 'Umar ibn 'Abd al-'Azeez (d. 103 A.H.), and was well-known for his recitation. Among the seven *Qaari*, he has the highest chain of narrators (i.e., least number of people between him and the Prophet (ﷺ)), since he studied directly under a Companion. He was also Chief Judge of Damascus. His *qira'at* became accepted by the people of Syria. He died on the day of 'Ashoor,⁴⁴⁷ 118 A.H.

The two primary *Qaari* who preserved his *qira'at* are:

i) Hishaam. He is Hishaam ibn 'Ammar ad-Damashque (153-245 A.H.). He was well-known for his recitation, and his knowledge of *hadeeth* and *fiqh*, and was one of the teachers of Imam at-Tirmidhee (d. 279 A.H.).

ii) Ibn Zhakwani: He is 'Abdullaah ibn Ahmad ibn Zhakwan (173-242 A.H.). He was also the Imam of the Umayyad Mosque during his time.

5) 'Aagim al-Koofee:

He is 'Aagim ibn Abi Najoed al-Koofee, from among the Successors. He was the most knowledgeable person in recitation during his time, and took over the position of Imam of the *Qaari* in Koofah, after the death of Abou 'Abd al-Rahmaan as-

⁴⁴⁷ The death of Muhammad

Sulamee (d. 75 A.H.). He learnt the Qur'aan from Aboo 'Abd ar-Rahmaan (who studied under 'Alee ibn Abee Ja'afah, and was the teacher of al-Hasan and al-Husayn), and from Zirr ibn Hubayth (d. 83 A.H.) and Aboo 'Amr ash-Shaybani (d. 95 A.H.). These learnt the Qur'aan from Ubay ibn Ka'ab, 'Uthmaan ibn 'Affaan, 'Alee ibn Abee Ja'afah, and Zayd ibn Thaat, who all learnt from the Prophet (ﷺ). He passed away 127 A.H.

He taught the Qur'aan to Imaan Aboo Haneefah (d. 150 A.H.), who used to recite in the *qira'a* of 'Aagim. Imaan Ahmad ibn Hambal (d. 204 A.H.) was once asked, "Which of the *qira'a*t do you prefer?" He replied, "The *qira'a* of Madinah (i.e., Naafi'), but if this is not possible, then 'Aagim."⁴⁴

His two students who preserved his *qira'a* are:

i) Shu'ba: He is Shu'ba ibn 'Yaash al-Koofee, born 95 A.H. and passed away 193 A.H.

ii) Hafs: He is Aboo 'Amr Hafs ibn Sulaymaan al-Asadee al-Koofee (90-180 A.H.), a step-son of 'Aagim. He was the most knowledgeable person of the *qira'a* of 'Aagim.

6) Hamzah al-Koofee:

He is Hamzah ibn Habbab al-Koofee, born 80 A.H. He met some of the Companions, and learnt the Qur'aan from al-'Amash (d. 147 A.H.), Ja'far as-Sadiq (d. 148 A.H.) (the great-grandson of Husayn), and others. His *qira'a* goes back to the Prophet (ﷺ) through 'Alee ibn Abee Ja'afah and 'Abdullah ibn Mas'ood. He passed away 156 A.H.

The two primary *Qaaris* through whom his *qira'a* is preserved are:

i) Khalaf: He is Khalaf ibn Hisham al-Baghdadi (150-227 A.H.). He memorised the Qur'aan when he was ten years old.

He also has his own *qira'a*, different from the one he preserved from Hamzah (see below).

ii) Khallad: He is Aboo 'Eesa Khallad ibn Khalid ash-Shaybani. He was born 119 A.H. and passed away 220 A.H.

7) Al-Kisa'ee:

He is 'Alee ibn Hamzah ibn 'Abdillaah, born around 120 A.H. He was the most knowledgeable of his contemporaries in Arabic grammar, and is considered one of the classical scholars in this field. He authored numerous books, and excelled in the sciences and recitation of the Qur'aan. Students used to flock to him to listen to the entire Qur'aan, and they even used to recede where he stopped and started every verse. The Caliph Haroon ar-Rashid used to hold him in great esteem. He passed away 189 A.H.

His two primary students who preserved his *qira'a* are:

i) al-Layth: He is al-Layth ibn Khaalid al-Baghdadee. He died 240 A.H.

ii) ad-Dooree: He is the same ad-Dooree who is the student of Abuu 'Amr al-Bagree (mentioned above), for he studied and preserved both of these *qira'at*.

These are the seven *Qaarees* whom Ibn Majaahid compiled in his book *Kitaab al-Qira'at*. Of these, all are from non-Arab backgrounds except Ibn 'Aamar and Abuu 'Amr. The following three *Qaarees* complete the ten authentic *qira'at*.

8) Abuu Ja'far al-Madanee:

He is Yazeed ibn al-Qa'qa' al-Makhsosmee, among the Successors. He is one of the teachers of Imaam Naafi', and learnt the Qur'aan from 'Abdullah ibn 'Abbaas, Abuu Hurayrah and others. He passed away 130 A.H.

His two primary students who preserved his *qira'a* were 'Eesaa ibn Wardaan (d. 160 A.H.) and Sulaymaan ibn Jamaz (d. 170 A.H.)

9) Ya'qoob al-Bagree:

He is Ya'qoob ibn Ishaq al-Hadhramee al-Bagree. He became the Imaam of the *Qaarees* in Bagraah after the death of Abuu 'Amr ibn 'Alaa. He studied under Abuu al-Mundhir Salaam ibn Sulaymaan. His *qira'a* goes back to the Prophet (ﷺ) through Abuu Moosaa al-Ash'aree. He was initially considered among the seven major *Qaarees* by many of the early scholars, but Ibn Majaahid gave his position to al-Kisa'ee instead. He passed away 205 A.H.

His two primary students were Ruways (Muhammad ibn Munawwil, d. 238 A.H.) and Rooh (Rooh ibn 'Abd al-Mu'min al-Bagree, d. 235 A.H.), who was one of the teachers of Imaam al-Bukhaaree (d. 256 A.H.).

10) Khalaf:

This is the same Khalaf that is one of the two students of Hamzah. He adopted a specific *qira'a* of his own, and is usually called Khalaf al-'Aashir (the 'tenth' Khalif).

His two primary students who preserved this *qira'a* were Ishaq (Ishaq ibn Ibrahim ibn Uthmaan, d. 286 A.H.) and Idrees (Idrees ibn 'Abd al-Kareem al-Baghdadee, d. 292 A.H.)

All of these ten *qira'at* have authentic, *mutawattir* chains of narration back to the Prophet (ﷺ). Each *qira'a* is preserved through two students of the Imaam of that *qira'a*. Of course, these *Qaarees* had more than just two students; the reason that the *qira'at* are preserved through only two is that Abuu 'Amr Uthmaan ibn Sa'eed (d. 444), better known as Imaam ad-Daamee, selected and preserved the recitation of the two best students of each *Qaaree* in his book, *Kitaab al-Tayseer fee al-Qira'at as-Saba'*. These two students are each called *Rasaa* (narrators), and they occasionally differ from each other. Thus, although other *Rasaa* also narrated each *qira'a*, only the

recitation of two main *Rasawi* have been preserved in such detail. References to the recitation of other *Rasawi* are, however, found in the classical works of *qir'ān*.

These *Rasawi* learnt the *qir'ān* from their Imaam, and each preserved some of the variations of the recitation of the *Qaari*. Sometimes, the *Qaari* taught different *qir'ān* to each *Rasaw*. Ḥafṣ quoted 'Aa'im as saying that the *qir'ān* he taught him was that of Abū 'Abd al-Rahmān as-Sulaymī (d. 79 A.H.) from 'Alc ibn Abū Tālib, while the one that he taught Abū Bakr ibn 'Iyāsh (i.e., Shu'ba, the other *Rasaw* of 'Aa'im) was that of Zarr ibn Hubaysh (d. 83 A.H.) from Ibn Mas'ūd.⁴⁹

However, typically the variations between the *Rasawi* are minor when compared to the differences between the *qir'ān* themselves (though usually there are differences in the rules of *ajwūd* of the *Rasawi*). For example, Shu'ba and Ḥafṣ differ from each other in around forty places in the whole Qur'ān.⁵⁰ To preserve even these differences, however, the *qir'ān* are always mentioned including the *Rasaw*. So, when someone recites the *qir'ān* of Naafi', for example, he should mention whether it is through Warsh or Qaloon (for example, by saying, "The *qir'ān* of Naafi' through the *riwayah* of Warsh," or, "The *qir'ān* of Warsh 'as Naafi' " for short).⁵¹

Most of the time, these students, who were *Qaari* in their own right, studied directly under the *Qaari* whose *qir'ān* it was. Thus, for example, Warsh and Qaloon both studied under Imaam Naafi', as did Shu'bah and Ḥafṣ with Imaam 'Aa'im. However, sometimes, there was an intermediary (or even two) between these students and the Imaam. When this occurred, as for example with Ibn Ka'beer, the intermediary was not mentioned above, so as not to prolong the discussion. The interested reader may consult any of the references mentioned in the beginning of this section.

There are four *shaahid qir'ān* (following the original definition above). These are not considered as part of the Qur'ān, but may be used as *isfah*, and, according to some of the *muṣhḥaf*, as a basis for *fiqh* rulings as well.⁵² The *Qaari* whom they are named after are:

1) al-Ḥasan al-Ba'qer. This is the famous Successor, Ḥasan ibn Abū al-Ḥasan 'Yasār Abū Sa'eed al-Ba'qer. He passed away 110 A.H.

2) Ibn Muḥayyir: He is Muḥammad ibn 'Abd al-Rahmān as-Sulaymī al-Makkī. He was one of the Chief *Qaari* of Makkah, along with Ibn Ka'beer. He passed away 123 A.H.

⁴⁹ *Wahab*, p. 106.

⁵⁰ Meaning that they differ from each other in forty words, but since there is only a total of around five hundred times in the Qur'ān, it might appear that this difference amounts to *al-Qaari*, p. 140.

⁵¹ Actually, there is a third level of variation, below that of *ajwūd*, called *awqaf* (pauses). Each *riwayah* has two *ajwūd*. The differences between the *ajwūd* (pl. of *ajwūd*) are, as *ajwūd* for our purposes, concerned mainly on where to stop, contain variations in the particulars of pronunciation, etc. However, on some occasions there are noticeable differences. For example, compare a Qur'ān printed in Pakistan (in Urdu print, for example) and one printed in Saudi Arabia or Egypt, and so. 38/4. The difference in the words *ḥaḥ* and *ḥaḥ* are due to the differences in the way of the *qir'ān* of Ḥafṣ 'as 'Aa'im'.
⁵² Cf. al-Zarkashī, *Beḥ*, pp. 474-480, for a discussion of this point.

3) Yahya al-Yasceedi: He is Yahya ibn al-Muhaarak ibn al-Mugheerah. He passed away 202 A.H.

4) al-Shamsoonee: He is Muhammad ibn Ahmad ibn Ibrahim al-Shamsoonee. He passed away 388 A.H.

These four qira'at contain most of the qira'at that were recited by the Companions and did not conform to the *waq-haf* of 'Uthmaan. Of course, these four qira'at do not contradict the *waq-haf* of 'Uthmaan in every single verse; only occasionally is there a conflict.

VI. The Qira'at Today

The qira'at were once a vital part of the Muslim *awnaah*, and each part of the Muslim world used to recite according to one of the qira'at. Not surprisingly, the people of a particular city would recite in the qira'a of the *Qaaree* of that city. Thus, for example, Makkeet ibn Abee Jaalib (d. 437 A.H.) reported, in the third century of the *hijrah*, that the people of Bagra followed the recitation of Abuu 'Amm, those of Koofoo followed 'Aagim, the Synnab followed Ibn 'Aammr, Makkah took after Ibn Kathree, and Madeenah followed Naafi.

Eventually, however, most of the other qira'at died out and were replaced by other ones. Thus, the situation today is that the vast majority of the Muslim world recites only the qira'a of 'Aagim through the *ruwaay* of Hafs (Hafs 'an 'Aagim). However, there are certain areas in the world where other qira'at are prevalent, and a rough breakdown is as follows:

Qira'a	Percentage of Muslim World	Area
Hafs 'an 'Aagim	95%	Muslim world in general
Warsh 'an Naafi	3%	Algeria, Morocco, parts of Tunisia, W. Africa and Sudan
Qaloon 'an Naafi	0.7%	Libya, Tunisia and Parts of Qatar
ad-Douree 'an Abuu 'Amm	0.3%	Parts of Sudan and W. Africa
Ibn 'Aammr	1%	Parts of Yemen
Total 100%		

Table A The Qira'at Today

This is obviously a very rough breakdown, based on the population in these respective countries.⁴⁵⁹

The *qira'at* today are as a whole only memorised as specialised institutions of higher learning throughout the Muslim world (or, a student may study privately under a scholar who has memorised these *qira'at*). A student of the Qur'aan who wishes to memorise the *qira'at* must, of course, have already memorised the entire Qur'aan in at least one *qira'a*. There are two primary ways of memorising these *qira'at*, and both involve memorising lengthy poems that detail the rules of recitation (*qaw'id*) of each *qira'a*, and the differences between them.

The first way is to memorise the *Shaaṣṣibīyyah* (its actual name is *Ḥifẓ al-Anṣaṣ wa Ḥifẓ al-Takwīn*), which is a poem consisting of 1173 couplets, written by Imām Qaṣīm ibn Aḥmad ash-Shaṣībī (d. 548 A.H.), and then to memorise the *Durrab* (short for *ad-Durrab al-Madḥīyyah*) by Muḥammad ibn al-Jazā'irī (d. 832 A.H.). The first poem deals with the first seven *qira'at*. After a student of the Qur'aan has memorised this, he then moves on to the second poem, which deals with the last three *qira'at*. This is the primary method by which the *qira'at* are taught throughout the Muslim world.

The second method is to learn all ten *qira'at* simultaneously, by memorising the *Ṭayyibah* (short for *Ṭayyibah an-Naṣb fīl-Qira'at al-'Aṣr*), which is a poem that deals with all ten *qira'at*, also by Muḥammad ibn al-Jazā'irī.⁴⁶⁰

VI. The Relationship of the Aḥruf with the Qira'at

The relationship of the *aḥruf* with the authentic *qira'at* must by essence depend upon what the definition of *aḥruf* is, and whether one believes that the *aḥruf* are still in existence today. Therefore, the scholars of Islam have defined this relationship depending upon their respective definitions of the *aḥruf*. The three major opinions on this issue are as follows:⁴⁶¹

1) The opinion of Imām aṭ-Ṭabarī (d. 310 A.H.), Ibn 'Abd al-Barr (d. 463 A.H.), and others, is that all the authentic *qira'at* are based upon one *ḥarf* of the Qur'aan. This is because, as was mentioned in the last chapter, they hold that the *muḥaḥḥaf* of 'Uthmān eliminated the other six *aḥruf* and preserved only one *ḥarf*.

However, this opinion does not seem very strong, since, if the origin of all of the authentic *qira'at* is one *ḥarf*, then where do all the differences between the *qira'at* originate from? In addition, as was mentioned in the previous chapter, the opinion that only one *ḥarf* has been preserved does not seem to be the strongest.

459. This table was taken from *al-Habash*, p. 70. In this author's opinion, he has greatly exaggerated the predominance of the *qira'a* of the 'Aṣm, al-Dawūd's percentage should also be low, and Qulsoo should be more than 0.7%. In addition, Hafs is probably closer to 77 than 79%, and Allah knows best.

460. The *Ṭayyibah* is more advanced than the *Shaaṣṣibīyah-ḥifẓ-Durrab* combination, since Ibn al-Jazā'irī revealed more differences between the various *qira'at* than ash-Shaṣībī did.

461. cf. *ib.* pp. 544-557.

2) The opinion of al-Basqillaani (d. 403 A.H.) and a few scholars is that all of the seven *ahraf* are preserved in the *qira'at*, such that each *hurf* is found scattered throughout the *qira'at*. Therefore, there is no single *qira'a* that corresponds exactly to any one *hurf*, but each *qira'a* represents various *ahraf* such that, in the sum total of the *qira'at*, the *ahraf* are preserved.

This opinion also is based upon these scholars' belief that all of the *ahraf* have been preserved. This opinion seems like a strong opinion, except for the fact that there exists many narrations in which the Companions used to recite differently from any of the present *qira'at* (these are today present in the *shaahid qira'at*). It seems that they were reciting a peculiar *hurf* of the Qur'aan, but this was not preserved in the *qira'at*.⁴⁹⁶

3) The opinion of Makkeer ibn Abi Jaalib (d. 437 A.H.), ibn al-Jazaree (d. 832 A.H.), ibn Hajar (d. 852 A.H.), as-Suyootee, and others, and the one that is perhaps the strongest, is that the *qira'at* represent portions of the seven *ahraf*, but not all of the seven *ahraf* in totality. The differences between the *qira'at*, even the most minute of differences, originate from the seven *ahraf*, but not every difference between the seven *ahraf* is preserved in the *qira'at*. This goes back to our position on the existence of the *ahraf* today, that they exist inasmuch as the script of the *maq-haf* of Uthmaan allows them to. In the last chapter, the methodology that the Companions used to decide which *ahraf* to preserve was discussed. Those *ahraf* that were preserved are the ones that are in existence today, through the variations in the *qira'at*.

To summarise the last two chapters, we quote Makkeer ibn Abi Jaalib (d. 437 A.H.), who wrote:

When the Prophet (ﷺ) died, many of the Companions went to the newly-conquered territories of the Muslims, and this was during the time of Abi Bakr and Umar. They taught them the recitation of the Qur'aan and the fundamentals of the religion. Each Companion taught his particular area the recitation that he had learnt from the Prophet (ﷺ) i.e., the various *ahraf*. Therefore the recitations of these territories differed based on the differences of the Companions.

Now, when Uthmaan ordered the writing of the *maq-haf*, and sent them to the new provinces, and ordered them to follow it and discard all other readings, each of the territories continued to recite the Qur'aan the same way that they had done so before the *maq-haf* had reached them, as long as it conformed to the *maq-haf*. If their recitation differed with the *maq-haf*, they left that recitation.

This new recitation was passed on from the earlier generations to the later ones, until it reached these seven Imams⁴⁹⁷ (Qawm) in the same form, and they differed with each other based upon the differences of the people of the territories – none of whom differed with the *maq-haf* that Uthmaan

⁴⁹⁶ See the chapter entitled, "The *Ahraf* of the Qur'aan," for a discussion of the existence of the *ahraf* today.

⁴⁹⁷ Actually, until it reached the Ten Qawm, and not just the seven.

had sent to them. This, therefore, is the reason that the *Qaween* have differed with each other.⁴⁹⁸

Therefore, the differences in the *qira'at* are remnants of the differences in the way that the Prophet (ﷺ) taught the recitation of the Qur'aan to the different Companions, and these differences were among the seven *ahraf* of the Qur'aan which Allaah revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ). Thus, the ten authentic *qira'at* preserve the final recitation that the Prophet (ﷺ) recited to Jibreel – in other words, the *qira'at* are manifestations of the remaining *ahraf* of the Qur'aan.

VIII. The Benefits of the Qira'aat

Since the *qira'at* are based on the *ahraf*, many of the benefits of the *qira'at* overlap with those of the *ahraf*. Some of the benefits are as follows.

- 1) The facilitation of the memorisation of the Qur'aan. This includes not only differences in pronunciations that the different Arab tribes were used to, but also the differences in words and letters.
- 2) Proof that the Qur'aan is a revelation from Allaah, for notwithstanding the thousands of differences between the *qira'at*, not a single difference is contradictory.
- 3) Proof that the Qur'aan has been preserved exactly, as all of these *qira'at* have been recited with a direct, authentic, *mutawattir* chain of narrators back to the Prophet (ﷺ).
- 4) A further indication of the miraculous nature (*ʿiʿjaz*) of the Qur'aan, because these *qira'at* add to the meaning and beauty of the Qur'aan in a complementary manner, as shall be shown in the next section.
- 5) The removal of any stagnation that might exist with regards to the text of the Qur'aan. In other words, there exist various ways and methodologies of reciting the Qur'aan that are different from each other in pronunciation and meaning, and thus the text remains vibrant and never becomes monotonous.⁴⁹⁹

IX. Some Examples of the Different Qira'aat

It is appropriate to conclude this chapter by quoting various verses that demonstrate some of the differences in the *qira'at*, with a discussion of the various meanings.⁵⁰⁰ Four verses were chosen, the first of which deals with belief, the second and third with stories, and the last with laws. In each verse, it will be seen that, far from

⁴⁹⁸ Ibn Abi Ja'far, Abu Muhammad Malik: *Kitaab al-Bihar: an Ma'ani al-Qur'aan* ed. Dr Muhyi Ramgoolam: Dar al-Munawwar li-Thurath, Beirut, 1979, p. 70.

⁴⁹⁹ This is not to imply that the Qur'aan would have become monotonous had the *qira'at* not existed, but rather that the different *qira'at* are one of the factors that contribute to this miraculous effect. Any person who has dealt with the *qira'at* knows this feeling.

⁵⁰⁰ Many of the differences in the *qira'at* do not affect the meaning of a verse, but rather change only the pronunciation of certain vowels and letters. However, this section discusses only those differences that result in a change in meaning.

contradicting each other, the *qira'at* taken together add much deeper meanings and connotations than any one of them individually. In fact, the various readings between the *qira'at* are considered – in terms of extracting rulings from verses – as two separate verses, both of which must be looked into, and neither of which can abrogate the other.

The scholar of this century, Muhammad Aameer ash-Shanqeeti (d. 1393 A.H.), said in his famous *tafsir*, *Ajasaar al-Rayaan*, "In the event that the different *qira'at* seem to give contradictory rulings, they are considered as different verses..."⁴⁵¹ meaning that both of them must be taken into account for the final ruling to be given. This same principle applies in verses that deal with hopes or belief, as the examples below will show.

1) Soorah Baqarah, verse 4:

كَذَلِكَ يَتَوَرَّعُ الْغَيْبِ

The first reading, that of 'Aagam and al-Kisaaf'ee, is *maathily yawar' ad-deen*. This is the recitation that most of the readers will be familiar with. The word *maathiq* means 'master, owner,' and is one of the Names of Allaah. The meaning of this name when attributed to Allaah is that Allaah is the one who Possesses and Owns all of the Creation, and therefore He has full right to do as He pleases with His creation, and He has the power to do what He pleases with His creation, and no one can stop or question Him.

The verse therefore translates, "The Only Owner of the Day of Judgement." This name (*Maathiq*) is also mentioned in,

قُلْ لِّلّٰهِ مَلِكُهُ الْمَلِكُ

«Say: O Allaah! *Maathiq* (Possessor) of (all) Kingdoms»- [3:26]

Allaah is the Owner who Possesses all things, and on the Day of Judgement, He will Own Rulership and Kingdom. As Allaah says,

الْحَقُّ يَوْمَئِذٍ بِيَمِينِهِ الْحَقُّ بِيَمِينِهِ

«The sovereignty on that day (i.e., the Day of Judgement) will be, the true (sovereignty), belonging to the Most Beneficent»- [25:26]

If Allaah is the only *Maathiq* on the Day of Judgement, this automatically implies that He is the *Maathiq* before the Day of Judgement also, since the one who is the *Maathiq* on that day must be the *Maathiq* of all that was before that Day!

The second reading, that of Naafi', Abou 'Ame, Ibn 'Aamir, Ibn Kaabeer and Hamzah, is *maathily yawar' ad-deen*, without the *alif*. The word '*maathiq*' means, "king, sovereign, monarch," and is also one of the Names of Allaah. This also has the connotation of the one who has power to judge. A king (*Maathiq*) possesses not only wealth

and property (like a *Maalik*), but also the authority to rule, judge and command. The verse therefore translates, "The King (and the Only Ruling Judge) of the Day of Judgement." *Maalik*, as one of the names of Allaah, is mentioned in the Qur'aan:

الْمَلِكُ

«The King» [39:23]

and also,

مَلِكِ النَّاسِ

«The King of Men» [114:2]

The name of Allaah '*Maalik*' is a description of Allaah (i.e., *ghaf dhawtanyyah*), since He is 'The King'; whereas the name '*Maalik*' is a description of Allaah and His actions (i.e., *ghaf fi'lyyah*), since He is 'The Owner' of all of His creation.⁴⁶²

It can be seen that the two readings increase the overall meaning of the verse, each giving a connotation not given by the other, and thus increasing the beauty and eloquence of the verse.

The result of the two *qira'at* is that Allaah is the *Maalik* on the Day of Judgement, and the *Malik*. So on that Day, He will be the Owner (*Maalik*) of the Day of Judgement – no other person will be an owner besides Him in Judgement, even though they might have been owners of judgement in this world. And Allaah is the King (*Malik*) of the Day of Judgement, besides all else of His creation, who, in this world, were mighty and arrogant kings – so on this day these (kings) will know for sure that they are in reality the most humiliated of creation, and that the true Might, and Power, and Glory and Kingship belongs only to Allaah, as Allaah, all Glory and Praise be to Him, has said,

يَوْمَ هُمْ سَوْسَاءَ مُنْقَلَبِينَ

عَلَىٰ أَعْقَابِهِمْ لَمْ يَرْجِعُوا إِلَىٰ السَّلَافِ أَلَمْ تَرَ أَنَّهُمْ لَكَاظِمِينَ ﴿٤٠﴾

«The Day when they will (all) come out, nothing of them will be hidden from Allaah. Whose is the Kingdom on this Day?» (Allaah Himself will reply.) It is Allaah's, the Unique, the Irresistible- [40:40]

So, Allaah has informed us that He is the *Malik* of the Day of Judgement, meaning that He is the only one whom Kingship belongs to, besides all the kings and rulers of this world, and on this day these kings and rulers will be in the greatest humiliation and disgrace, instead of their (worldly) power and glory.

And, Allaah has informed us that He is the *Maalik* of the Day of Judgement, meaning that He is the only one whom Ownership belongs to. So, there is none that can pass judgements or rule on that Day except Him.⁴⁶³

462 al-Haameed, p.88.

463 Baurrenzel, v. 1, p. 403.

2) Soorah al-Baqarah, verse 259.

This verse tells the story of a man who passed by a deserted town, and wondered how Allaah would ever bring it back to life. Thus, as a miracle for him, Allaah caused him to die for a hundred years, then brought him back to life. Allaah also brought the man's donkey back to life in front of his eyes.

The first reading of the relevant part of the verse, by al-Kisa'ee, Ibn 'Aasim, 'Aasim and Hamzah, is, "*hayfa nundawwuhu*." This is in reference to the resurrection of the donkey. The word *nundawwuhu* means, "to cause to rise." The verse therefore translates, "Look at the bones (of the donkey), how We raise them up," meaning, "...how We cause the bones to join one another and stand up again (from the dust)."

The second reading, by Abuu 'Amr, Naafi', and Ibn Kathir, is, "*hayfa nundawwuhu*." The word *nundawwuhu* means, "to bring to life, to resurrect." The verse then translates, "...how We resurrect it and bring it back to life."

Again, both readings give different meanings, but put together these readings help form a more complete picture. The bones of the donkey were 'raised up' from the dust and 'resurrected' (meaning clothed with flesh) in front of the man. Each reading gives only a part of the picture, but put together, a more graphic picture is given.

3) In the last portion of the same verse, the readings differ as follows:

The first reading, that of Naafi', Ibn Kathir, 'Aasim, Ibn 'Aasim and Abuu 'Amr, is, "*Qadlee a'laam ane Allaahu 'alaa kulli shayin qadeer*." This translates as, "He said, 'I (now) know that Allaah is indeed capable of all things.'" This shows that, after this miraculous display, the man finally believed that Allaah could bring the dead back to life, and repented of his previous statement.

The second reading, that of Hamzah and al-Kisa'ee, is, "*Qad'alee ane Allaahu...*" which translates as, "It was said (to him), 'Know that Allaah is capable of all things.'" In this reading, after the resurrection of the donkey was shown to him, he was ordered to believe that Allaah was indeed All-Powerful.

Once again, each reading adds more meaning to the overall picture. After this miraculous display, the man was commanded to know that Allaah is indeed capable of all things. He responded to this command, and testified that, indeed, Allaah is capable of all things.⁴⁶⁴

4) Soorah al-Maa'idah, verse 6.

For the last example, it will be seen that even different *fiqh* ruling are given by the differences in the *qira'at*.

The relevant verse discusses the procedure for ablution (*wuḍūʿ*). In the reading of Naafi', Ibn 'Aasim, al-Kisa'ee and Hafs, the verse reads as follows: "O you who believe! When you intend to pray, wash your faces and your hands up to the elbows, wipe your heads, and (wash) your feet up to the ankles..." The word 'feet' is read

⁴⁶⁴ In this verse in particular, the *ijma'* of the Qur'an can be felt, for the very same verse is the command and response!

ayudhina, and in this sense, it refers back to the verb 'wash.' Therefore, the actual washing of the feet is commanded, according to this recitation.

The remaining *qira'at* pronounce the word *ayudhina*, in which case it refers back to the verb 'wipe,' so the verse would read, "...wash your faces and hands up to the elbows, and wipe your heads and feet..." According to this recitation, washing is not obligatory, and wiping is sufficient.

This is an apparent contradiction between the *qira'at*. Does one 'wipe' his feet (meaning pass water over it, similar to how the head is wiped in ablution), or does one actually wash his feet (like the hands and face are washed)? In fact, there is no contradiction whatsoever, for each recitation applies to a different circumstance. In general, the ablution is performed by 'washing' the feet. However, if a person is wearing shoes or socks, and he had ablution before putting them on, he is allowed – in fact even encouraged – to 'wipe' over his feet, and is not obliged to wash them.⁴⁵⁵ Az-Zarkashy said, "These two verses can be combined to understand that one reading deals with wiping over the socks, while the second reading deals with washing the feet (in case of not wearing socks)."⁴⁵⁶

Therefore, each of these recitations adds a very essential ruling concerning the ablution, and there is no contradiction between them.

It can be seen from this section that the *qira'at* are a part of the eloquence of the Qur'aan, and form an integral factor in the miraculous nature of the Qur'aan. For indeed, what other book in human history can claim the vitality that is displayed in the *qira'at* – the subtle variations in letters and words that change and complement the meaning of the verse, not only in story-telling but also in beliefs and commands and prohibitions! To add to this miracle, all of these changes originate from the one script of 'Uthmaan! Indeed, there can be no doubt the Qur'aan is the ultimate miracle of the Prophet (ﷺ).

455 See *Fiqh al-Jawahid*, v.1, pp. 44–46, for further details on this issue.

456 az-Zarkashy, v.1, p. 52.

THE CLEAR AND UNCLEAR VERSES- AL-MUHKAM WA AL-MUTASHAABIH



The Qur'aan has been revealed in the most eloquent of Arabic. Therefore, in order for a person to fully understand and appreciate the Qur'aan, he must be knowledgeable of various aspects related to the Arabic language.

Among these aspects is the knowledge of the how words give particular meanings (for example, *'aam* and *khass*, *mufid* and *mufayyid*), how the word or text is used (for example, *hujjat* and *majaz*), and how the text gives the desired meaning (for example, *manooq* and *mafhoom*).⁴⁰⁷ Also essential are other categories of texts (such as the *muhkam* and *mutashabih*, and the *naasikh* and *mansookh*).

1. Definition of Muḥkam and Mutashaabih

The word *muḥkam* comes from *ḥ-ḳ-m*, which has the following meanings:

- 1) 'To judge, to pass a verdict.' One of Allaah's Names is *Al-Ḥakam*, meaning 'The One who judges.' This also has the connotation of a standard, such that one has a criterion by which to judge good or evil.
- 2) 'To prevent, to obstruct.'

A *muḥkam* verse is one that it is clear in its meaning, not open to interpretation. Imam al-Qurtubee (d. 671 A.H.) said, "The *muḥkam* is the (phrase or word) whose interpretation is known, its meaning understood and its exposition clear."⁴⁰⁸ An example of a *muḥkam* verse is,

⁴⁰⁷ This is one of the areas where *ʿilm al-Qur'aan* overlaps with *ʿilm al-fiqh*. In fact, it is true to say that those topics are dealt with in much greater detail in works of *ʿilm al-fiqh* than in works of *ʿilm al-Qur'aan*. In reality the detailed explanation of such concepts to a non-Arabic audience is not only tedious, but of relatively little value, as in order to advise and benefit from these concepts, a strong command of the Arabic language is necessary. However, in order to acquaint the reader with some essential aspects of this knowledge, the more important categories were chosen (the *muḥkam* and *mutashabih*, the *'aam* and *khass*, the *mufid* and *mufayyid*, the *hujjat* and the *majaz*, the *manooq* and the *mafhoom*, and the *naasikh* and the *mansookh*). These categories were not discussed in as much detail as other concepts in this work (an exception was made, however, for the *muḥkam* and *mutashabih*, due to the numerous points prevalent about it, and the *naasikh* and *mansookh*, due to its importance). Those interested in furthering their studies may consult any standard work of *ʿilm al-fiqh*.

⁴⁰⁸ Umdat, p. 197.

الْحَسْبُ لَكُمْ رَبُّ الْعَالَمِينَ

«All praise is due to Allah, the Lord of the Worlds» [1:1]

This verse is *muhkam* since there is no ambiguity in it.

The word *mutashabih* comes from *sh-b-h*, which means 'to resemble, to be similar to.' 'Mutashabih' has two meanings, the first one is 'resembling,' and the second 'unclear.' The second meaning is related to the first, since those objects which resemble one another are difficult to distinguish, hence 'unclear.'

It is used in both of these meanings in the Qur'aan and Saṣaḥ. For example, the Jews say in the Qur'aan,

إِنَّ الْبَقَرَ شَتَّىٰ مَحَلِّاتٍ

«... to us, all cows look alike (Ar. *mutashabihat*)» [2:70]

In this verse, the word is used in the first meaning ('resembling'). It is used in the second meaning ('unclear') in the famous *ḥadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ) in which he said, "The *ḥaṣaf* is clear, and the *ḥamaṣ* is clear, but between the two are matters which are unclear (Ar. *mutashabihat*)..."⁴⁶⁹

Mutashabih does *not* mean 'allegorical,' as some translators claim.⁴⁷⁰

THE QUR'AAN AS MUHKAM AND MUTASHABIH

On occasion, Allah calls the entire Qur'aan *muhkam*. For example, He said,

الْقُرْآنَ كِتَابَ الْوَكِيدِ ۝١

«Alif-Laam-Raa These are the verses from the *Ḥafṣ* Book» [10:1]

and,

الْقُرْآنُ أَنْزَلْنَاهُ

«Alif-Laam-Raa, (This is a) Book the verses whereof are Perfected (Ar. *ahḥaḥṣat*)» [11:1]

In these verses, Allah is saying that the whole Qur'aan is a clear, perfect Book which acts as a Criterion between good and evil. Imam at-Tabarrī (d. 310 A.H.) said, "Allah has protected (*ahḥaṣa*) His verses from any evil entering it, or any flaw, or any falsehood. Then, He set it forth with commands and prohibitions. This is because *ahḥaṣa* something means to better it and protect it."⁴⁷¹ As Allah says of the Qur'aan,

لَا يَأْتِيهِ الْفُتُورُ مِنْ بَيْنِ يَدَيْهِ وَلَا مِنْ خَلْفِهِ تَنْزِيلًا مِزَانًا حَكِيمًا ۝١٠٦

469 Narrated by al-Bukhārī.

470 For example, Yusuf 'Alī. See 'A Review of Some Translations' in Ch. 15 for a more detailed discussion.

471 Zamzūz, p. 163.

‘Falsehood cannot come to it from before it or from behind it, (It is) sent down by the All-Wise, Worthy of Praise’ [41-42]

On other occasions, Allaah calls the entire Qur’aan *mutashābih*:

لَقَدْ نَزَّلَ الْحَسَنَ الْكُرْآنَ كِتَابًا مُتَشَابِهًا مَثَابًا

‘Allaah has sent down the best statements, a Book that is *mutashābih*, offered’ - [39: 23]

The meaning of *mutashābih* in this verse is that the verses of the Qur’aan resemble and complement one another in their eloquence and beauty, and in their beliefs and laws, so that there are no contradictions or differences in them.

In one verse in the Qur’aan, however, Allaah describes the Qur’aan as being part *maghām* and part *mutashābih*.

The verse in question is,

الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا بِالْكِتَابِ الْمُنِيرِ وَالَّذِينَ آمَنُوا بِالْكِتَابِ
وَأُتُوا بِهِ مُتَشَابِهًا فَأَمَّا الَّذِينَ فِي قُلُوبِهِمْ زَيْغٌ فَيَتَّبِعُونَ مَا تَغَيَّيَ
وَهُمْ أَقْبَعُ أَلَيْسَ أَتَى الْقَوْمَ أَتَايَهُمْ فَيَقُولُوا سَمْعًا وَنُسْأَلُنَا
وَأُولَئِكَ هُمُ الْفَاسِقُونَ ٥

‘He (Allaah) is the one who has sent down to you (O Muhammad) the Book. In it are verses that are *maghām* – they are the foundation of the Book – and others are *mutashābih*. So as for those who have a deviation in their hearts, they follow that which is *mutashābih*, seeking to cause confusion and chaos, and seeking for its *is’wef*. But none knows its *is’wef* except Allaah, and those well grounded in knowledge; they say, ‘We believe in it, all of it (both the *maghām* and *mutashābih*) is from our Lord. And none is a *correct admonition* except those of understanding.’ [3: 7]

The word *is’wef* has purposely not been translated above, because its meaning depends upon how one reads the verse. Therefore it is necessary to first explain the meaning of the word *is’wef*. The word ‘*is’wef*’ has three meanings:

- 1) To understand a word in light of one of its connotations, despite the fact that this connotation is not the primary intent of the word. This is done due to some external evidence from the word itself, such as the context in which it occurs. For example, the phrase, ‘He was a lion in the battlefield,’ is not understood in its literal sense. The word ‘lion’ is primarily used to denote an animal, but in this context it does not make sense. Therefore, it is necessary to make *is’wef* and understand the word ‘lion’ in this phrase as meaning one of its connotations, namely, ‘a brave person.’ This meaning of *is’wef* is the most common one.

- 2) To explain a word or phrase. This is the same as *tafsir*, in which case something is explained so that it is understood. For example, when Moosaa did not understand the actions of Khidr, Khidr explained to him why he had done these acts,⁴⁷² and said,

ذَٰلِكَ تَأْوِيلُ مَا لَمْ تَسْطِعْ عَلَيْهِ سَبْرًا

«This is the *ta'weel* (interpretation) of (those) things which you were not capable of being patient over» [18:82]

- 3) The actuality of an event. In other words, when and how something occurs. It is with this meaning of *ta'weel* that Allaah says,

فَلْيَنْظُرُوا لِقَاءِ يَوْمِهِمْ

«Do they (the disbelievers) await for us (the Day of Judgment's) *ta'weel* (i.e., do they await for its fulfilment).» [7:53]

Also, Yousuf tells his family when the dream that he had finally comes true,

هَٰذَا أَنَا وَإِلَىٰ رَبِّي الْمُنَاقِلُ

«This is the *ta'weel* (i.e., fulfilment) of my dream of old...» [12:100]

With these meanings of *ta'weel* explained, the original verse under discussion is examined. In it, Allaah differentiates the *muhkam* verses from the *mutashabih*. He calls the *muhkam* verses, or those verses that are clear in meaning, the foundation of the Book. As the authentic *tafsirs* of the Qur'aan show, these verses are the verses pertaining to *halal* and *haram* and the laws of *Islām*.⁴⁷³ These verses are clear and explicit in their meanings, and none can distort the intent of such verses.

As for the second portion of the verse, there are two ways of reading it.⁴⁷⁴ Both of these originate from the Companions (and thus from the Prophet (ﷺ)). The first way is to stop after the phrase, «...except for Allaah.» This was the reading of Ibn Mas'ood. The verse therefore reads, «...and none know its *ta'weel* except for Allaah.» When read in this context, '*ta'weel*' signifies the actuality, such as the time and methodology of a phrase.

The second way of reading this verse is to stop after «...those well grounded in knowledge,» so that the verse reads, «...and none know its *ta'weel* except for Allaah and those well grounded in knowledge.» This is the reading of Ibn 'Abbas. If one stops at this point, the context implies that the meaning of *ta'weel* is the interpretation. Therefore, 'those well grounded in knowledge' are aware of the interpretation of the *mutashabih*. Ibn 'Abbas stated, "I am of those well-grounded in knowledge, who know the meaning (of the *mutashabih*)."⁴⁷⁵

⁴⁷² See the story of Moosaa and Khidr in *Suraah al-Kahf*, verses 60-82, for the various acts that Khidr did.

⁴⁷³ cf. Ibn Kathir, v. 1, p. 329

⁴⁷⁴ *Ibid.*, v. 1, p. 370-372

⁴⁷⁵ *al-Sayroorah*, v. 2, p. 4

Therefore both of these readings are correct, and each changes the meaning of the word '*is'een*' accordingly. The *mutashābih* verses can be understood from one perspective (from the perspective of simply understanding these verses from their linguistic meanings), and cannot be understood from another perspective (from the perspective of the *actuality* of these verses).

THE EXACT MEANING OF MUḤḤAM AND MUTASHĀBIH

The scholars of *uloom al-Qur'aan* have differed over the exact meaning of *muḥḥam* and *mutashābih*. Az-Suyooti lists almost twenty opinions concerning this issue alone.⁴⁷⁶ However, in reality, almost all of the definitions that az-Suyooti quotes have a similar meaning. Az-Zarqaanee states, "If we look at these various opinions, we do not really find contradictions or discrepancies between them, but rather we see that they are all similar and close in meaning."⁴⁷⁷

Some of the meanings that az-Suyooti quotes are:

- 1) The *muḥḥam* is that which is clear in and of itself, in contrast to the *mutashābih*.
- 2) The *muḥḥam* are the verses whose meaning is understood, whereas the *mutashābih* are those verses whose meaning is not understood.
- 3) The *muḥḥam* is that which can only hold one valid meaning, whereas the *mutashābih* has many.
- 4) The *muḥḥam* can be understood by itself, whereas the *mutashābih* must be understood in light of other verses.
- 5) The *muḥḥam* does not need any interpretation in order for it to be understood, whereas the *mutashābih* needs interpretation.

As can be seen, the various definitions have the same theme: the *muḥḥam* verses are those verses that are clear in meaning, and cannot be distorted or misunderstood, whereas the *mutashābih* verses are those verses that are not clear in meaning by themselves, and in order to properly understand the *mutashābih* verses, it is necessary to look at them in light of the *muḥḥam* verses.

The Prophet (ﷺ) once recited this verse and then said, "So when you see those who follow the *mutashābih* of the Qur'aan, then these are the ones whom Allaah has mentioned, so beware of them."⁴⁷⁸ In this *ḥadeeth*, the Prophet (ﷺ) warns Muslims against those people who follow the *mutashābih* without properly understanding them in light of the *muḥḥam*. The phrase, "...follow the *mutashābih*," implies that these people who are being warned against take *only* the *mutashābih* verses, and interpret them according to their desires. Therefore, those people who interpret the *mutashābih* verses in light of the *muḥḥam* verses are not blameworthy. The proof for this is the statement of Ibn 'Abbaas quoted above, who, after reciting this verse, said,

⁴⁷⁶ *Ibid* v. 2, pp. 17

⁴⁷⁷ az-Zarqaanee, v. 2, p. 154

⁴⁷⁸ Narrated by al-Bukhaaree

"I am of those well-grounded in knowledge, who know the meaning (of the *mutashaabih*)."⁴⁷⁹ This shows that the correct interpretation of the *mutashaabih* is possible, and there is no harm if one is qualified to do so. What is blameworthy is the improper interpretation of the *mutashaabih*.

In conclusion, Allaah has called the whole Qur'aan *saghfir*, meaning that it is a clear source of guidance and a criterion between good and evil; He has also called the whole Qur'aan *mutashaabih*, meaning that its verses are similar to one another in beauty and aid one another in meaning, and, finally, He has called part of it *saghfir* and part *mutashaabih*, meaning that part of the Qur'aan is clear and not open to distortion, and part of it is unclear and open to distortion by those 'who have a deviation in their hearts.' The portion that is *saghfir* forms the foundation of the Book, meaning that it comprises all the moral and social laws that mankind needs for its guidance. The *mutashaabih* portion of the Qur'aan is clear in its meaning to 'those well grounded in knowledge,' and it is necessary to understand these *mutashaabih* portions in light of the *saghfir* ones. The actuality of the *mutashaabih* verses, however, is known only to Allaah.

The Attributes of Allaah as Mutashaabih?

One of the issues that has been the subject of great controversy at certain times in Islamic history is the question: Are the verses pertaining to the Attributes of Allaah from the *mutashaabih*?⁴⁸⁰ What is meant by 'mutashaabih' in this question is that only Allaah knows the true meaning of these Attributes.

The opinion of all the scholars of the *safef*, without any exception, is that the Attributes of Allaah are *saghfir* from one perspective, and *mutashaabih* from another perspective. The Attributes are *saghfir*, meaning they are understood, in the sense that the linguistic meaning and connotations of these Attributes are known; and the Attributes are *mutashaabih* in the actuality and 'how-much' of the Attributes. For example, Allaah describes Himself with the Attribute of 'Knowledge'. The meaning of the word 'knowledge' is well-known and understood. When this Attribute is applied to Allaah, we know and understand the meaning of this Attribute, but the actuality of this 'Knowledge' can never be understood, since our limited minds cannot comprehend the infinite Knowledge of Allaah.

This agrees with the two recitations of the verse of Soorah Azh-Zummar:

وَمَا تَسْأَلُهُمْ عَلَيْهِمْ ۖ إِنَّ اللَّهَ ذَا الْعَرْشِ الْعَظِيمِ ۚ يَوْمَ تَأْتِي سُورَةُ الْاٰزْجِ ۚ وَتُحْكَوْنَ فِيْهَا ۚ اِنَّهُمْ لَفِيْ شَكٍّ مِّنْهُ ۚ

⁴⁷⁹ al-Buruj, v. 2, p. 4.

⁴⁸⁰ This point has not been discussed in the detail that it needs, since the detailed explanation of the proper meanings of the Attributes of Allaah is not directly related to the topic being discussed. However, due to the fact that groups such as the *Ash'ariyy* use the concept of *Mutashaabih* and suggest as a means of denying the Attributes of Allaah, it was decided to briefly discuss this issue. It is hoped that a more detailed discussion of this and other topics related to the Names and Attributes of Allaah may be available in English soon, *Insha Allaah*.

... and none know its *as'weel* except for Allaah, and those well grounded in knowledge, they say, 'We believe in it, all of it (both the *asṣaḥḥ* and *mutaḥabbibūn*) is from our Lord... [3-7]

As was mentioned in the previous section, if one stops after the word, 'Allaah', this implies that only Allaah knows the *as'weel* – in this case, the 'actuality' and 'how-ness'. Thus, no one knows the actuality of the Attributes except Allaah. On the other hand, if one does not stop at this place, the verse then implies that Allaah, and those well-grounded in knowledge know the *as'weel* – in this case, the 'interpretation'. Thus, those well-grounded in knowledge understand the verses pertaining to the Attributes of Allaah. In other words, the Attributes of Allaah are known from one perspective (that of their meanings and interpretations), and unknown from another perspective (that of their actuality and how-ness).⁴⁸¹

Many of the scholars of the *Aḥ'arree*, however, claim that some of the verses pertaining to the Attributes of Allaah are all from the *mutaḥabbibūn*. What they seek to imply is that the meaning and interpretation of these verses is known only to Allaah. In addition, when the *Aḥ'arree* see a person of *Aḥ'ar-Sana'ah* discuss the Attributes of Allaah, they quote the *ḥadīth* mentioned above: "So when you see those who follow the *mutaḥabbibūn* of the Qur'aan, then these are the ones whom Allaah has mentioned, so beware of them"⁴⁸² implying that the person who mentions the Attributes of Allaah, as found in the Qur'aan, is the one who is following the *mutaḥabbibūn*!

Examples that are claimed to be from the *mutaḥabbibūn* are the verses pertaining to the Hands (*yad*) of Allaah (48:16), His Eyes (*ayn*) (11:37), His Face (*wajh*) (55:27), and His Rising over (*ʿalawna*) the Throne (20:5). It is claimed by these scholars that the meaning of these verses is known only to Allaah. In addition, they claim that the apparent (Ar. *ẓāhir*) meaning of these verses is definitely not the meaning that is desired. After this bold claim, these scholars split into two categories with regards to these verses. The first group claimed that the true meaning of these verses can never be known or understood by mankind, but instead the meanings are 'entrusted' (Ar. *ʿaqḍ*) to Allaah, and are not discussed. This group then attributed this philosophy to the *salaf*, and claimed, "The philosophy of the *salaf* is *refused* of the Attributes of Allaah." The second group, on the other hand, claimed that the apparent (*ẓāhir*) meanings of these verses can be 'interpreted' to mean other attributes. So, for example, the 'Hand' of Allaah is, in reality, the 'Capability' of Allaah; the '*ʿalawna*' over the Throne means the 'Conquering' of the Throne, and so forth.

The detailed refutation of these views may be found in the books of *ʿaqedah*; however, since there does not exist any material in English on this topic, a summarised refutation is as follows.

Firstly, their claim that the 'apparent' meaning of the verses is not intended has a number of implications, amongst them:⁴⁸³

481. Ibn Taymiyyah, *al-Jawābiriyah*, p. 58.

482. Narrated by al-Bukhārī.

483. Taken from *Daʾ al-Qayyim, al-Sana'ah*, v. 1, p. 114-104

- 1) That Allaah has revealed in His Book verses which, apparently, seem to mislead and deceive mankind, instead of guiding them.
- 2) That Allaah did not reveal the truth concerning His Attributes, but rather hinted at them in such evaded and vague language that the truth cannot be arrived at except by claiming that the verses pertaining to this topic are not to be understood except after great effort and distortion of their meanings.
- 3) That Allaah required His servants not to believe in the apparent meanings of what He revealed, but instead believe the exact opposite of what the verses clearly state.
- 4) That Allaah is always revealing verses concerning His Attributes whose apparent meanings oppose the truth.
- 5) That the best of this *ummah*, the *salaf*, from the first of them to the last of them, did not understand this important concept properly, for no quotes are found from them that agree with what the *Ash'arees* say. This implies that, either the *salaf* were ignorant of these concepts (in which case the scholars of these *Ash'arees* are more knowledgeable than the *salaf*), or that they knew the truth but did not explain it (in which case the *salaf* were not sincere in spreading the religion of Islam). Both of these possibilities cannot be true, as the *salaf* are the most knowledgeable and sincere generations of this *ummah*, by testimony of the Prophet (ﷺ).
- 6) That the *salaf* were ignorant, illiterate people, reading these verses pertaining to the Attributes of Allaah, and not understanding anything from them, nor caring to understand them, or even asking about them.
- 7) That, if what the *Ash'arees* say is true and all of these implications are correct, it would have been more beneficial and wiser not to reveal these verses, since the revelation of these verses has caused nothing but deception and doubts.

All praise is due to Allaah, He is above all that they ascribe to Him! Verily, Allaah, all Praise and Glory be to Him, is more knowledgeable of His Attributes than His creation is, and He is more capable of clearly explaining His Attributes than His creation is!

Secondly, the primary problem with the *Ash'arees*, as was explained in the section on the *balance* of Allaah, is they did not understand the verses pertaining to the Attributes of Allaah properly. Instead, they only understood these verses as referring to human-like (anthropomorphic) attributes, and, based on this assumption, they denied the meanings of these verses. So, for example, when Allaah says, "The Ever-Merciful *raising* over the Throne" (Allaah has stated seven times in the Qur'aan that He has '*raising*' over His Throne, e.g.,

الرَّحْمَنُ عَلَى الْعَرْشِ اسْتَوَى

‘The Ever-Merciful ‘rose over’ (*istawa*) over the Throne’ (20:5)

the only understanding that these *Ash'arees* had of this verse is that it implied a body that is in need of another physical object (the Throne) to rest upon! Based on this anthropomorphic understanding, they then negated the meaning of the verse. Likewise, when Allaah says,

يَدَايِهِ مَبْسُوتَتَانِ

«His two Hands are outstretched» [5:64]

the only understanding that the *Ash'arees* had were two human-like physical hands! Had they only realised that Allaah is above their limited imaginations, and that His Attributes cannot be compared or equated with those of His creation, it would have saved them from these serious errors!

Allaah clearly states,

لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ وَهُوَ السَّمِيعُ الْبَصِيرُ

«There is nothing similar to Him, and He is the All-Hearing, All-Seeing» [42:11]

This verse in and of itself is a clear and simple refutation of the *Ash'arees*; after stating that there is nothing similar to Him, Allaah then immediately affirms for Himself two Attributes that are also found in the creation, that of hearing and sight! Why is it that, in this case, the *Ash'arees* understand that Allaah has the Attributes of Hearing and Seeing, but these two Attributes are not similar to the hearing and seeing of mankind, why is it that they understand this properly, yet fall into errors with regards to other Attributes?

The Names and Attributes of Allaah are unique to Him, just like the names and attributes of the created are unique to them.

So Allaah has called Himself with certain Names and Attributes, and these Names and Attributes, when ascribed to Allaah, have unique meanings which none share. And, He has called His servants with names (and attributes) that are peculiar to them... These names are the same when they are separated from their owners, but when they are ascribed to their owners, each one takes on specific characteristics that are unique to a, different from the other...

So, for example, Allaah has called Himself *al-Hayy* (The Ever-Living), for He said,

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ الْحَيُّ الْقَيُّومُ

«Allaah! There is no deity except Him, the Ever-Living (al-Hayy), the Sustainer of all» [3:255]

Likewise, He has also described some of His creation with 'Life' (*hayy*), for He said,

يُخْرِجُ الْحَيَّ مِنَ الْمَيِّتِ وَيُخْرِجُ الْمَيِّتَ مِنَ الْحَيِّ

‘He brings out the living (*hayy*) from the dead, and brings out the dead from the living.’ - [30: 19]

And neither is this *al-Hayy* (i.e., Allah) like the other *hayy* (i.e., man), since *al-Hayy* is one of the Names of Allah, particular to Him, and the *Hayy* as ‘He brings out the living (*hayy*) from the dead’ is the name of life that is particular to the created, specific to him.

And Allah has called Himself *Samee’* (All-Hearing) and *Basir* (All-Seeing), for He said,

إِنَّ اللَّهَ كَانَ سَمِيعًا بَصِيرًا

‘...truly, Allah is *Samee’* and *Basir*’ - [4: 58]

and He has called some of His servants *samee’* and *basir*, for He said,

إِنَّا خَلَقْنَا الْإِنْسَانَ مِنْ نَضِيجٍ مُزْجٍ وَفَعَلْنَاهُ سَمِيعًا بَصِيرًا

‘Verily, We have created man from drops of mixed semen... and made him *samee’* and *basir*’ - [76: 2]

But neither is the *Samee’* like the *samee’*, nor is the *Basir* like the *basir*.⁴

And Allah has called Himself *Ra’oof* (The One Full of Kindness) and *Rahim* (The Most Merciful), for He said,

إِنَّ اللَّهَ وَالْكَافِينَ الرَّؤُوفَ الرَّحِيمَ

‘Verily, Allah is, for mankind, the *Ra’oof*, the *Rahim*’ - [22: 67]

and He has called some of His creation *ra’oof* and *rahim*, for He said,

لَقَدْ كَانَ مِنْكُمْ رَسُولٌ مِنْ أَنْفُسِكُمْ قَرِيبٌ
عَلَيْكُمْ مَا تَحْسَبُونَ خَرِيسٌ عَلَيْهِ كُتُبٌ بِالْمُؤْمِنِينَ
رَؤُوفٌ رَحِيمٌ ﴿١٤٨﴾

‘Verily, there has come to you a Messenger from amongst yourselves... for the believers, he is *ra’oof*, *rahim*’ - [3: 138]

But neither is the *Ra’oof* like the *ra’oof*, nor is the *Rahim* like the *rahim*.⁵

And He has also described Himself with certain Attributes, and described His creation with these same attributes - (For example) He has attributed to Himself the Attribute of Speech (*qadira*), for He said,

وَكَلَّمَ اللَّهُ مُوسَى تَصَدُّقًا

‘And Allah spoke directly (*qadira*) to Moses’ - [4: 164]

– And He described some of His creation with the attribute of speech, for He said,

فَلَمَّا كَلَّمَهُ

«...then, when (the king) spoke (Jalāḥim) to (Yūsuf) ...» [12: 34]

But neither is this *Kalām* like the other *qalām*...!

And He has described Himself as being *awḥā* over the Throne, for He has mentioned this seven times in His Book. And He has also described some of His creation as being *awḥā* over objects, for He said,

يَسْئَلُونَكَ

«So that you (mankind) may *awḥā* over their backs (i.e., so that you may ride on the backs of your animals)» [43:13]

...and neither is the one *awḥā* like the other *awḥā*!⁴⁸⁴

The purpose of this long quote is to show that there are names and attributes of Allāh that have also been given to the creation, but the difference between the *actuality* of the two is as great as the difference *between* the two. Therefore, it is not proper to deny or distort these Attributes merely on the assumption that they give human-like qualities, for Allāh has negated any similarity with His creation!

لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ وَهُوَ السَّمِيعُ الْبَصِيرُ

«There is nothing similar to Him, and He is the All-Hearer, All-Seeing» [42:11]

The proper methodology with regards to these Attributes is to affirm their linguistic meaning in a manner that befits Allāh, and not to delve into the actuality or ‘how-ness’ of them, since these are concepts that cannot be grasped by the human mind.

In addition, the presumption of the *Ash’arites* that the apparent (*alẓāhir*) meanings of these verses are anthropomorphic necessitates certain facts, including:⁴⁸⁵

- 1) This presumption of theirs is, in itself, a very mean and low presumption, for how can it be assumed that Allāh would reveal verses in His Book whose apparent, clear meanings are anthropomorphic?
- 2) In arriving at this presumption, the *Ash’arites* absolutely ignored the verses that negate any relationship between the Attributes of Allāh and those of His creation, such as,

لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ

«There is nothing similar to Him» [42:11]

In other words, the One Who revealed,

يَا أَيُّهَا الْمَرْءُ كُنْ

484 Translated (by meaning) from *al-Talīmīyah*, pp. 14-19

485 cf. *al-Talīmīyah*, p. 52

«Both His Hands (yad) are outstretched» (3/64)

is the same One Who revealed,

لَهُنَّ كُتُبٌ شَرَفٌ

«There is nothing similar to Him» (42/11)

Why do not the *Ahl'ara'* take the meanings of *both* of these verses, and Attribute to Allaah what Allaah has Attributed to Himself (in this example, that His two Hands (yad) are outstretched), while at the same time negating what He has negated (in this example, that these two Hands (yad) are not similar in any manner to the hands of the creation)?

- 3) This presumption of theirs led them to deny many Divine Attributes, Attributes that are clearly mentioned in the Qur'aan and Sunnah, such as the proper understanding of the *kalām* of Allaah (as was discussed earlier); the fact that Allaah Loves and Hates, is Pleased with and gets Angry with some of His Creation, and many more Attributes.
- 4) The net result of all of this was that, in their over-zealousness to remove any resemblance between Allaah and the creation, they ended up comparing Allaah with inanimate objects, or with non-existent objects, or ascribing to Him contradictory Attributes.⁴⁸⁶ The example of this with regards to the Attribute of *kalām* was given previously, in negating the fact that Allaah speaks with a voice, they in essence equated Him with a mute or inanimate object!

Thirdly, there exist numerous quotes from the *ahlaf* concerning the fact that these verses are to be understood in their literal sense. Perhaps the most famous incident is the response that Imaam Maalik (d. 179 A.H.) gave to the man who asked him,

الرَّحْمَنُ عَلَى الْعَرْشِ اسْتَوَى

«The Ever-Merciful 'rose over' (*istawa*) His Throne» (20/3)

how is this 'rising' (*istawa*)?

Imaam Maalik responded, "Istawa' is well-known (in meaning), but the 'how' of it is unknown. Yet believe it is obligatory, and asking questions about such matters is an innovation. Get this man away from me, for I think he is an evil person"⁴⁸⁷ In this very explicit text, Imaam Maalik stated that the meaning of *istawa* is well-known in the Arabic language, yet, when this Attribute is applied to Allaah, the actuality of it is

⁴⁸⁶ An example of this is their claim that Allaah is neither above, nor below this world, nor to the left of it, nor to the right of it, nor is He in front of it nor behind it, nor is He inside of it, nor outside of it, nor is He connected to it, nor is He disconnected from it! Thus, despite the fact that there exists literally hundreds of verses and *ahadith* describing, either explicitly or implicitly, that Allaah is above His creation (cf. *al-Ikhtisaar*'s cf. *Uthar* for the full proof). If it were asked to give a definition of something that was non-existent, even the greatest philosopher could not come up with a better description than this description that the *Ahl'ara'* gave to their Creator!

⁴⁸⁷ Reported by *al-Daqa'iq* cf. *Uthar*, p.254

unknown. Imam Maalik did not deny the fact that *istawa* has a meaning to it (contrary to the philosophy of *tafweeq* mentioned above), nor did he deny the fact that it is permissible to attribute this to Allaah (on the contrary, he said, "...belief in it is obligatory"). What Imam Maalik denied was the fact that mankind has been given knowledge of the *extensibility* of the *istawa*, thus, "...the 'how' of it is unknown."

Also, the questioner indicated that he understood the verse properly, for he asked, "How is this *istawa*?" This shows that the questioner understood what the verse meant, namely that Allaah has 'Risen over' (*istawa*) His Throne; his question was not about what *istawa* meant, but *how* this *istawa* occurred. In response, Imam Maalik did not criticize or rebuke him for understanding the literal, apparent meaning of the verse (that Allaah has the Attribute of *istawa*), but instead criticized him for asking something besides the apparent meaning – for asking the 'how-ness' of the Attribute. In fact, Imam Maalik told him, "*al-Istawa* is well-known," meaning, "Everyone knows what *istawa* means!"

Lastly, the phrase, "...and belief in it is obligatory" is another refutation of the belief of the Ash'arites. This phrase shows that to believe in this *istawa* is obligatory for the 'it' in the phrase 'belief in it is obligatory' refers back to the *istawa* "*al-Istawa* is well-known, and belief in it is obligatory..." It must be asked of the Ash'arites, who claim that the meanings of these verses are unknown, "Belief in *what* is obligatory?" In other words, what was Imam Maalik referring to when he said, "...belief in it is obligatory?" Imam Maalik understood that this Attribute had a meaning to it, otherwise he would not have said, "...belief in it is obligatory" (in other words, if this Attribute had no known meaning – the philosophy of *tafweeq* – there would be nothing to believe in! Therefore, the fact that 'it' must be believed in shows that there is *something* to believe in – the Attribute of *istawa*!).

It should be understood that all the scholars of the *salaf* agreed in their interpretation and understanding of the Attributes of Allaah. They would take the apparent meanings of these verses (thus believing in what Allaah revealed), without comparing the Attributes found in them with the attributes of the creation (thus rejecting the concept of anthropomorphism). The teacher of Imam al-Bukhaaree (d. 256 A.H.), Nu'aym ibn Hummaad (d. 228 A.H.), said, "Whoever compares Allaah to His creation has committed disbelief, and whoever denies what Allaah has affirmed for Himself has committed disbelief. And there is no anthropomorphism in what Allaah has affirmed for Himself, or what the Prophet (ﷺ) has affirmed for Him."¹⁸ The famous Imam and scholar of *fiqh*, Ishaaq ibn Rahawayh (d. 238 A.H.) said,

There will only be anthropomorphism if someone says, 'Allaah's hand is like my hand', or 'His seeing is like my seeing', so this is anthropomorphism. As for if a person says, as Allaah Himself has said, '(Allaah has the Attributes of) Hand (*yad*), and Hearing, and Seeing' and he does not say *how* (these are), nor does he give comparisons (based on the attributes of

the creation), *then also it is not anthropomorphic!* Allah has said, 'There is nothing similar to Him, and He is the All-Hear, All-Seer (42:11).⁴⁸⁹

In conclusion, the Qur'aan has been revealed in clear, lucid Arabic, and Allah has addressed His creation in the language that they know. To presume that the verses pertaining to the Attributes of Allah carry no known meanings, or that they carry meanings absolutely contrary to the meanings of their words as known by the Arabs, is in reality a very dangerous and incorrect presumption. Why else has Allah revealed these concepts, in these clear wordings, except that they be understood in this manner?

Instead of 'reading in' and presuming anthropomorphism in the Speech of Allah, the *Ash'arites* should instead impugn their own intelligence and understanding of these verses. If the *Ash'arites* claim that the verses pertaining to the Attributes of Allah are from the *mutashabih*, they should then understand them in light of the *swaḥiḥ* verses, such as,

لَا شَيْءٌ مِثْلُهِ
لَا يَـُٔوِي سِتْرُهُ

«There is nothing similar to Him» [42:11]

This is the proper methodology of understanding the *mutashabih* verses.

The statement, "The verses pertaining to the Attributes of Allah are from the *mutashabih*," is a vague and imprecise phrase, for it carries a correct meaning, and an incorrect and dangerous one. The correct meaning of this phrase is that the actuality of the Attributes of Allah are known only to Allah, and it is impermissible to delve into these concepts. The incorrect meaning of this phrase, and the one that the *Ash'arites* intend, is that the Attributes of Allah that are mentioned in the Qur'aan and Sunnah are not to be understood by mankind by their linguistic meanings; instead, they should either be ignored and not discussed (the essence of the concept of *isfahāq*), or re-interpreted until their meanings conform with their desires.

To conclude this section, we quote the famous scholar al-Khateeb al-Baghdadee (d. 436 A.H.), who wrote,

As for the Attributes (of Allah), then all that has been narrated in the authentic *sunnaḥ* – the methodology of the *salaf* is to affirm them, and to take them on their apparent meanings (*biḥaṣḥ*), but at the same time to deny any resemblance or 'how-ness' of them. Some groups denied these Attributes, so they ended up denying what Allah Himself had affirmed. Other groups tried to affirm them in such a manner that they ended up comparing them to the attributes of the creation. And the proper methodology is to take the middle path, between the two extremes, for the religion of Allah is between the extremes. And the basic principle in this regards is that to speak of the Attributes of Allah is as if to speak of the Essence of Allah, so therefore the same methodology is followed. So, as it is well known

that to affirm the Creator, all Glory be to Him, is in reality an affirmation of the Existence of the Creator, and not how He Exists, likewise, the affirmation of His Attributes is an affirmation of their existence, and not an affirmation of their reality.

So if we say, "Allāh has a 'Hand' (*yad*), or Hearing, or Seeing," then these are all Attributes that Allāh has affirmed for Himself. And we do not say, 'The meaning of '*yad*' is 'Power', nor that the meaning of 'Hearing' and 'Seeing' is 'Knowledge', and neither do we say that all of these are physical limbs. So we do not compare these Attributes with the hands, and ears, and eyes (of the creation) which are physical limbs and organs by which (these attributes) occur. Rather, we say that it is obligatory to affirm these Attributes, since they were found (in the Qur'ān or *naṣaḥ*), and it is obligatory to negate any resemblance between them (i.e., between the attributes of Allāh and the attributes of the creation), because Allāh has said,

لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ ۚ وَهُوَ السَّمِيعُ الْبَصِيرُ

«There is nothing similar to Him, and He is the All-Hearing, All-Seeing.» [42:11]

So when the people of innovations condemned the people of narrations for narrating these *ḥadīth*, and confined those who were weak in knowledge that they (i.e., the people of narrations) were narrating things that were not befitting to *naṣaḥ*, and were not permissible in the religion, and accused them with the *disbelief* of the *anṣar* *naṣir* *ḥadīth*...⁴⁸⁹ they were responded to by saying that there are, in the Book of Allāh, verses that are *muḥḥam*, whose meaning is understood apparently, and there are also verses that are *mutashābih*, which cannot be understood except by referring them to the *muḥḥam* verses. And it is obligatory to affirm all of these (senses), and believe in both of them (the *muḥḥam* and the *mutashābih*). And likewise the *naṣaḥ* of the Prophet (ﷺ) is understood in a similar manner, and dealt with in the same way – that the *mutashābih* are understood in light of the *muḥḥam*, and both are accepted.⁴⁹⁰

OTHER CATEGORIES OF MUTASHĀBIH

Some of the definitions of *mutashābih* were given in the previous section. These definitions concentrated on one theme: that the *muḥḥam* verses are clear in and of themselves, whereas the *mutashābih* verses require external factors to understand them.

There are yet other definitions of '*mutashābih*' that deal with another meaning of the word: that of 'resembling'. As was mentioned at the beginning of this chapter,

⁴⁸⁹ It is not as if al-Ḥanbalī al-Baḥḥalāndar is relating the *anṣar* and their accusations against the *anṣar* *naṣir* *ḥadīth*.

⁴⁹⁰ *al-Dalāʾil*, al-Ḍaww, p. 48.

'mutashābih' has two meanings: 'to be unclear', and 'to resemble'. Some of the scholars have defined the *mutashābih* verses as those verses which resemble one another in their wording. There is no contradiction between this definition of *mutashābih* and between the one that was discussed previously, the previous definition utilized one of the meanings of the word '*mutashābih*' ('to be unclear'), and this definition utilizes the second meaning of the word '*mutashābih*' ('to resemble').

It can also be said that the discussion of the previous section involved the *mutashābih* with regards to meanings, whereas this definition involves the *mutashābih* with regards to wordings. Each of these two definitions is a separate science, and it is the second definition that will be elaborated upon in this section.

The definition of this category is quoted by as-Suyooti as: "The *muḥḥas* are those verses which are not repeated, and the *mutashābih* are those verses whose wording is repeated."⁴⁹² In other words, a phrase or sentence is repeated somewhere else in the Qur'aan, either exactly the same, or with a slight difference.

Az-Zarkashī lists many phrases in the Qur'aan that occur more than once, in exactly the same wording. For example:⁴⁹³

- 1) Those phrases which occur twice (e.g., "...but most of them are not thankful" [10:60 and 27:23])
- 2) Thrice, (e.g., "Do they not travel through the land.." [30:9, 38:44 and 40:21])
- 3) Four times, (e.g., "And when We said to the angels.." [2:34, 17:61, 18:50 and 20:116])
- 4) Five times, (e.g., "Obey Allaah and obey the Messenger" [4:59, 5:92, 24:64, 47:33 and 64:12])
- 5) Six times, (e.g., "In this are signs for a people who believe" [6:99, 16:79, 27:86, 29:24, 30:37, and 39:32]); and so forth.

As for those phrases which re-occur in other verses with a slight difference in wording, az-Zarkashī also divides them into various categories, classifying them based upon the type of difference between the verses:

- 1) The difference involves the addition or subtraction of a letter or word (e.g., "It is the same, whether you warn them or not, they will not believe" (2:6), and, "And it is the same, whether you warn them or not, they will not believe" (36:10)), or,
- 2) the exchange of word order (e.g., "...We will feed them and you.." (6:151) and, "...We will feed you and them.." (17:31)); or,
- 3) the exchange of a word with its synonym (e.g., "There gushed forth therefrom twelve springs" (2:60), and "There flowed forth therefrom twelve springs" (7:158)); or,

⁴⁹² as-Suyooti, v. 2, p. 1.

⁴⁹³ az-Zarkashī, v. 1, pp. 135-139.

4) the change from singular to plural.⁴⁹⁴

There have been a number of books written concentrating on these differences, and how they change the meaning of the verse.⁴⁹⁵ These subtle changes bring about different meanings, and vast the context within which they occur. Thus, part of the job of the interpreter of the Qur'aan is to analyse why one phrase occurs in a certain manner in one part of the Qur'aan, and in a slightly different manner in another part.

For example, the command prohibiting infanticide occurs twice in the Qur'aan; in one verse, Allaah says,

نَحْنُ نَرْزُقُهُمْ وَإِيَّاكُمْ

«... We will provide them sustenance and you (also)» [17:31]

and in the other, Allaah says,

نَحْنُ نَرْزُقُكُمْ وَإِيَّاهُمْ

«... We will provide sustenance for you and for them» [6:151]

At first glance, there does not seem to be any benefit in reversing the order of the pronouns 'you' and 'them'. However, if the two verses are examined closely, the reason and wisdom why each one occurs in a particular order is seen.

The first verse reads,

وَلَا تَقْتُلُوا أَوْلَادَكُمْ خَشْيَةً إِنْ يَكُنْ نَحْنُ نَرْزُقُهُمْ وَإِيَّاكُمْ

«And do not kill your children for fear of poverty; We will provide them sustenance and you (also)» [17:31]

whereas the second verse reads,

وَلَا تَقْتُلُوا أَوْلَادَكُمْ مِنْ إِيَّائِي نَحْنُ نَرْزُقُكُمْ وَإِيَّاهُمْ

«And do not kill your children because of poverty; We will provide sustenance for you and for them» [6:151]

The two verses cater to different situations. The first verse is addressed to those parents who fear that they will be inflicted with poverty in the future because of their children. These parents are worried that they will not be able to provide enough for their children. Allaah refutes this fear by stating that He will provide for the sustenance of the children, as well as the parents. The second verse, on the other hand, is addressed to those parents who are already inflicted with poverty, presuming that it is their children's fault. In this case, the parents are actually feeling the effects of this poverty, and are not managing to feed themselves properly. Allaah assures them that

⁴⁹⁴ There are more categories of *Munabihah* than these; cf. Chapraan, pp. 202-204; see Zakariya, v. 1, pp. 113-134.

⁴⁹⁵ One of the classics that is available in print is *al-Bihar fi Munabihah al-Qur'aan* by Mujaahid ibn Jannah al-Karmani (d. 903 A.H.), Dar al Wala, Cairo, 1991.

they do not have to fear this poverty, for He will provide for them, and for their children. Thus, the exchange of the pronouns in the two verses adds a subtle meaning to each verse.⁴⁹⁶

II. The Haqeeqee and the Majaazee

If a word is used in its literal sense – in other words, its original and primary intent – then this is referred to as its *haqeeqee* meaning. For example, to apply the word 'offspring' to one's children is a *haqeeqee* meaning.

On the other hand, if a word is used in a metaphorical sense – in other words, a meaning or connotation that is not the primary use of the word – then this is the *majaazee* meaning. For example, to apply the word 'offspring' to include grandchildren is a *majaazee* meaning.

Examples that are given of *majaz* in the Qur'aan are the verses,

وَأَنزِلْنَا إِلَيْكَ مِنَ الرِّيحِ

«And lower unto them (one's parents) the wing of submission and humility through mercy.» [17:24]

(the use of 'wing' is *majaazee*, for there is no actual wing);

وَسْأَلِ الْقَرْيَةَ الَّتِي كُنَّا بِهَا

«And ask the town where we were.» [12:82]

(the 'town' with its houses and walls is not asked, but rather the 'people of the town' are asked, another example of *majaz*), and,

جِدَارًا يُرِيدُ أَنْ يَنقَضَ

«a wall that wished to collapse.» [18:77]

(meaning that the wall was very close to collapsing).⁴⁹⁷

It should be noted that there are a number of scholars throughout history, such as Shaykh al-Islam Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.), and Muhammad al-Ameen ash-Shanqeetee (d. 1293 A.H.),⁴⁹⁸ who denied the existence of *majaz* in the Qur'aan (and in the Arabic language), and this has been and still is a topic of debate among the scholars.

⁴⁹⁶ al-Kur'aaneen, p. 178.

⁴⁹⁷ cf. Ibn Qudaamah, p. 15.

⁴⁹⁸ There are perhaps the two most famous scholars who have denied the existence of *majaz* in the Arabic language and the Qur'aan. Some scholars stated that *majaz* exists in the Arabic language, but is not present in the Qur'aan. The vast majority of scholars, however, (including the sons of Muhammad al-Ameen ash-Shanqeetee), have concluded to the existence of *majaz* in the Qur'aan. In fact, the famous Ghazale scholar Ibn Qudaamah (d. 670 A.H.) wrote in an extensive and detailed, "Whoever denies *majaz* has indeed been arrogant" (Rasaleh, p. 354). The topic of *majaz* and whether it exists in the language or not should not be made a topic of *ijmal*, in the sense that if one affirms the existence of *majaz* in the Arabic language, or =

The Attributes of Allaah as Majaz?

Perhaps the strongest reason that led some scholars to deny the existence of *majaz* verses in the Qur'aan is due to the fact that many of the scholars of innovation (such as the Ash'arites) have claimed that some of the verses pertaining to the Attributes of Allaah are *majaz*.¹⁰ This claim, in essence, enabled them to deny many of the Attributes mentioned in the Qur'aan, such as *wajh* (Face), *yad* (Hand), *'arsh* (Throne) and others. These scholars claimed that *yad* is *majaz* for 'Capability', *'arsh* for 'Power', and so forth.

However, even if it is claimed that there are *majaz* verses in the Qur'aan, the Attributes of Allaah can never be claimed to be examples of *majaz* for the following reasons:

- 1) All verses and words are always taken in a *haqqiqee* manner unless there is reason or proof to believe otherwise. This fact is agreed upon by all linguists. Thus, in order to say that the 'Throne of Allaah' is *majaz* for 'Power', one needs to bring clear proof from the Qur'aan or *Sunnah* to prove this point. If there is lack of evidence, the word will be interpreted in a *haqqiqee* sense, viz., that Allaah has a Throne, but it cannot be imagined by humans. Concerning this particular example, the understanding of the 'Throne of Allaah' as being *haqqiqee* is proven by many other verses, such as the verse,

وَحُشِبَاتُ عَرْشِهِ عَلَى الْمَاءِ

«and His Throne was over the water...» [11:7]

and,

وَرَأَى الْمَلٰٓئِكَةَ حَاطِّتٍۢ مِنْ حَوْلِ الْعَرْشِ

«And you will see the angels surrounding the Throne from all sides...» [39:75]

and,

الَّذِينَ يَحْمِلُونَ الْعَرْشَ وَمَنْ حَوْلَهُ يُسَبِّحُونَ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّهِمْ

«The (angels) who bear the Throne, and the (angels) around it, glorify the praises of their Lord...» [40:7]

and,

وَنَحْمِلُ عَرْشَ رَبِّكَ لَوْلَا فَدَمَّرْنَا هَهُنَا مَعَكُمْ يَوْمَ الْقِيٰمَةِ

«eight angels will, on that Day, bear the Throne of your Lord above them» [68:17]

¹⁰ In the Qur'aan, then, he is to be considered an innovator. This is because the existence of *majaz* is a matter of *ghibah*, and is not related to the fundamentals of faith. Therefore, throughout Islamic history, many scholars of the correct *iqraah* (such as Ibn Qudamah) affirmed the concept of *majaz*, but stated that the Attributes of Allaah cannot be examples of *majaz*. It is thus improper to make this concept (i.e. 'Does *majaz* exist in the Arabic language and the Qur'aan?') a point of difference between the *Ahl al-Sunnah* and the people of innovation, and Allaah knows best...

All these verses clearly show that the Throne of Allaah is a *ḥaqeeqee* throne, for how else was it above water, and how else will the angels surround it, and eight angels hold it, unless it is a *ḥaqeeqee* Throne? Can it be imagined that the 'Power' of Allaah was *over* water, and that angels will surround the 'Power', and eight angels will carry this 'Power'? In addition, there are numerous authentic *ḥadeeth* that clearly signify that the Throne is a *ḥaqeeqee* throne. Likewise, all the other Attributes of Allaah can be proven in a similar manner.

- 2) It is not appropriate that the fundamentals of faith, such as the Names and Attributes of Allaah, be revealed in unexplicit and vague language. Rather, it is essential that these fundamentals of faith be revealed in the clearest and most explicit language; in a manner that leaves no room for doubt, confusion or ambiguity. To claim that Allaah, all Praise and Glory be to Him, revealed His Names and Attributes in *mayjaze* form is, in reality, to claim that Allaah did not explain His Names and Attributes properly, but rather hinted at them in vague, couched language; in language that, outwardly, appears to mislead and deceive, rather than guide and instruct (all Praise is due to Allaah, He is above all that they ascribe to Him!). The Qur'ān describes itself in many verses as being a shining light; a revelation in clear, simple Arabic, a Book that guides mankind; that takes him from the darkness to the Light; it is possible that one of the most important topics of faith – that of the Names and Attributes of Allaah – is revealed in such obscure and vague language?
- 3) The very concept of *mayjaaz* rests upon the perceived and well-known. In other words, when it is said, "And ask the town...", the only reason that the reader understands, without any doubt, that it is not the actual town that is asked, but the people of the town, is that it is well-known that towns cannot be asked questions – it is the people who are asked. Likewise, when it is said, "Zayd was a lion during the battle," the only reason that it is understood that Zayd was not an actual animal during the battle is that Zayd is well-known *not* to be an animal, and thus, it is understood from this that Zayd was a very brave person. The point that is trying to be made is that *mayjaaz* can only be used when the subject is well-known and understood, and thus there is no danger that a person might be confused between the *ḥaqeeqee* meaning and the *mayjaaze* one. In matters of the unseen, however, such as the Attributes of Allaah, *mayjaaz* simply cannot be applied, due to the fact that the Attributes of Allaah cannot be perceived or fully understood by the creation. Since there can be no analogical relationship between the Attributes of Allaah and those of His creation, there can be no *mayjaaz* when it comes to describing the Attributes of Allaah.
- 4) One of the ways in which *mayjaaz* is defined is: *Mayjaaz* is that which is permissible to negate. Therefore, when the phrase, "Zayd was a lion on the battlefield" is heard, it is possible to say, "No, Zayd was not a lion. He was a brave person." If it were claimed that the Attributes of Allaah are *mayjaaz*, it is as if a person is allowed to deny what Allaah has said (i.e., if a person says that the verse,

يَدَايَاهُ مَبْسُوطَتَانِ

= both of His hands are outstretched = [3:64]

is *maḥḥab*, in essence this person claims that it is possible to say, "No, both of Allah's hands are not outstretched," thus clearly and explicitly going against the verse in the Qur'an)

- 5) To claim that some of the verses that mention Allah's Attributes are *maḥḥab* is, in essence, to claim that *all* of the verses that mention Allah's Attributes are *maḥḥab*. What is there that makes these scholars consider some Attributes of Allah as *maḥḥab* (for example, the *ayn*, *yad*, 'eye, and 'elbow') and others as *ḥaqiqe* (such as the Knowledge, Life, Hearing and Seeing of Allah)? Just as these scholars acknowledge that Allah has the Attributes of Knowledge, Life and others, but these Attributes are not similar to those of the creation, they should also acknowledge that Allah has a *ayn*, *yad*, and other Attributes, but these are different than the *ayn* and *yad* of the creation. If they claim that some of the verses that mention Allah's Attributes are *maḥḥab*, there is no defence if someone were to claim that *all* the verses mentioning Allah's Attributes are *maḥḥab*. In fact, some of the deviant groups (such as the *Filāṣifa*, or 'Philosophers') did an actuality claim that all the verses pertaining to the matters of the unseen were *maḥḥab*. They thus denied the existence of Heaven and Hell, and angels and *jinn*, amongst other things! The claim that *maḥḥab* exists in the verses pertaining to the fundamentals of faith is an extremely dangerous claim, as it opens the door to many extreme deviations from the true religion of Islam.

Of course, all of these points come after the fact that *all* the scholars of the *ṣalaf* were of the opinion that Allah's Attributes are *ḥaqiqe*, and are affirmed as Allah Himself affirmed them, but that they do not resemble at all the attributes of the creation.

In conclusion, Ibn 'Abd al-Barr (d. 463 A.H.) stated,⁴⁹⁹

The *Ahl al-Sunnah* have unanimously agreed in affirming those Attributes (of Allah) that are found in the Qur'an or *Sunnah*, and believing in them, and understanding them as *ḥaqiqe*, not as *maḥḥab*, except that they do not explain the 'how-ness' of these Attributes, nor do they limit them to a particular manner. As for the people of innovations, from the *Jahmiyyah*, and the *Ibāḥidīyah*, and the *Khawarij*,⁵⁰⁰ then they deny those Attributes, and they do not understand them as a *ḥaqiqe* matter. And they presume that one who affirms those Attributes is an anthropomorphist (i.e., giving human-like qualities to Allah)? In reality, those who affirm these Attributes (the *Ahl al-Sunnah*) consider these people to be deniers and negators (of Allah's Attributes), not affirmers! And the truth in this matter is with those people who say what the Qur'an and *Sunnah* says (i.e., affirm these Attributes).

⁴⁹⁹ *Majma' al-Bihar*, v. 5, p. 188

⁵⁰⁰ The author adds "and the *Ibāḥidīyah*"

After quoting this, Imam ad-Dhahabi (d. 748 A.H) stated, "He has spoken the truth – I swear by Allah!! He who misinterprets all these Attributes, and carries what has been narrated of them upon *wasaya*, will eventually end up negating the Creator of all (His Attributes), and comparing Him to non-existent objects..."⁹⁰¹

iii. The 'Aam and the Khaas

The '*aam*' (lit. 'general') is a word that applies to all the members of a specific set, no matter how small or large that set is. For example, Allah says,

كُلُّ نَفْسٍ لَّهَا أَهْلٌ لَّوْنٌ

«Every soul shall have death» [3:185]

This verse is applicable to every soul, be it a human, animal or *jinn*.

Khaas (lit. 'specific'), on the other hand, is a word that is used to denote a limited number of things, including everything to which it can be applied. The primary difference between '*aam*' and '*khaas*' is that '*khaas*' applies to a single subject or a specified number of objects; in other words, the scope of its application is limited, unlike the '*aam*'.⁹⁰²

There are three categories of '*aam*'

1) '*Aam*' that is totally unspecified. This is rare in the Qur'aan. An example of this is the verse,

وَاللَّهُ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ عَلِيمٌ

«Allah is aware of all things» [4:176]

since there are no exceptions to this verse.

2) '*Aam*' in wording, but '*khaas*' in meaning. This is also uncommon in the Qur'aan. An example of this is the verse,

ثُمَّ أَوْرَثْنَا مَرْثَتَهُمُ الْقَوْمَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا

«Then depart from the place whence the people depart...» [2:199]

The '*people*' referred to in this verse are the other tribes of Arabia besides the Quraysh. Even though the wording seems to be '*aam*' (i.e., all people), the meaning is in fact '*khaas*' (i.e., the tribes of Arabia).

3) '*Aam*' that has been specified. This is the most common type of '*aam*' in the Qur'aan. An example of this is the verse,

⁹⁰¹ ad-Dhahabi, *at-Tihsan*, p. 269

⁹⁰² Kamali, p. 105

حُرِّمَتْ عَلَيْكُمْ أُمَّهَاتُكُمْ
وَبَنَاتُكُمْ وَأَخَوَتُكُمْ وَعَمَّاتُكُمْ وَخَالَاتُكُمْ وَبَنَاتُ
أَخَوَاتِكُمُ الْأَخْتَبَاتُ وَأُمَّهَاتُكُمْ أَلْفِي أَرْبَعَتِكُمْ
وَأَخَوَاتُكُمْ بَيْنَ أَرْبَعَةٍ وَأَرْبَعَةٍ هَذَا بِكُمْ
وَرَبِّتِكُمْ أَلْفِي فِي حُجُورِكُمْ بَيْنَ نِسَائِكُمْ
أَلْفِي دَعَلُكُمْ بِهِنَّ

«Forbidden to you (in marriage) are ... your step-daughters ... who have been born of your wives with whom you have had intercourse with. » [4:23]

This verse has specified an *ʾaṣm* in that only a specific type of step-daughter is forbidden in marriage.

These two complementary categories are primarily used together in deducing the laws of the *Shariʿah*. The Qurʾān might give a general ruling in one place, yet another verse or *ḥadeeth* may specify that rule not to apply in certain circumstances.

IV. The Muṭlaq and the Muqayyad

A *ṣawṭ* (lit., 'unconditional') verse is one that is absolute in its scope, not limited to what it applies. It differs from the *ʾaṣm* in that the *ʾaṣm* applies to all members that are included in its meanings simultaneously without exception, whereas the *ṣawṭ* can only apply to one member of its meaning. In other words, *ʾaṣm* applies to all the members of a specific set, whereas *ṣawṭ* only applies to any one member of that set. An example of a *ṣawṭ* verse is,

فَتَعْرِفُوهَا

« (the penalty for *zihar*⁹³) is the freeing of a slave » [58:3]

The condition or quality of the slave has not been specified, so the verse is *ṣawṭ*. Since only one slave must be freed, it is not *ʾaṣm*, had it applied to all slaves, then it would be *ʾaṣm*.

The *muqayyad* (lit., 'qualified') occurs when a *ṣawṭ* is specified by an adjective. For example, the word 'house' is *ṣawṭ*, but 'a two-story house' is *muqayyad*, since there is a condition attached to the house. An example in the Qurʾān is where Allāh states,

وَمَنْ قَتَلَ مُؤْمِنًا خَطَاً فَتَحْرِيرُ رَقَبَةٍ مُؤْمِنَةٍ

«Whoever kills a believer unintentionally must free a believing slave ...» [4:92]

⁹³ This was a practice of the Arabs of *Jahiliyyah*, when a man would tell his wife that she was forbidden for him sexually, by saying that she was like the back of his mother.

This verse is *muqayyad* since it specifies that in this case the slave must be a Muslim.

These categories are also used in interpreting the text and deducing laws. In particular, when one ruling appears in *mutlaq* form, and a similar ruling for another case in *muqayyad*, is the *mutlaq* ruling affected by the *muqayyad* one? For example, with regards to the penalty for *ghibaa*, does the slave that is freed have to be a Muslim, since the exact same ruling (that of freeing a slave), when mentioned in the context of the penalty for involuntary manslaughter, is *muqayyad* that the slave must be a Muslim? So, does the *muqayyad* ruling concerning involuntary manslaughter affect the *mutlaq* ruling regarding *ghibaa*?³

According to the majority (the *Shafi'ees*, *Madh'is* and *Hanbalites*), in this case the *mutlaq* is affected by the *muqayyad*, and the slave that is freed in the case of *ghibaa* must be a Muslim. According to the *Hanafi's*, on the other hand, the *mutlaq* is not affected by the *muqayyad* in this case, and it is allowed to free a non-Muslim slave in the case of *ghibaa*.⁴

V. The Mantooq and Maftoom

The *mantooq* of a verse is the apparent meaning that can be understood directly from the words in the sentence. For example, the command to fast a specific number of days in the verse,

فَصِيَامُ ثَلَاثَةِ أَيَّامٍ فَاذْكُرُوا أَنْفُسَكُمْ وَأَنْفُسَ الَّذِينَ أَفْرَأْتُمْ

«...then he must fast three days during Hajj and seven when he returns...»
[2:196]

is obvious, and is the *mantooq* of the verse.

The *maftoom* of a verse, on the other hand, is an understanding of the verse that is not explicit in the words of the sentence. There are two main types of *maftoom*: *maftoom al-muwafaqah* and *maftoom al-mukhtalafah*.

Maftoom al-muwafaqah is defined to be the extension of a ruling from a mentioned case to an unmentioned one due to a commonality between the two. For example, Allah commands believers with regards to their parents

وَلَا تَقْرَبُوا مَا بَيْنَهُمَا

«And do not say 'if' to them» [17:23]

This verse automatically implies that beating or abusing parents is also forbidden. Even though the verse does not explicitly prohibit beating or abusing them, the *maftoom al-muwafaqah* of the verse clearly indicates this, since saying 'if' to them, beating them and abusing them all share one commonality: that of causing harm and discomfort to them.

³41 of *Qay'aan*, p. 242. Of course, this is a very oversimplified discussion of the topic. In reality, there are a number of different categories where this occurs, and the example given is only of one type.

Maḥḥam al-muḥḥaḥḥim, on the other hand, is defined to be the application of the opposite ruling of a mentioned case to an unmentioned case, due to the fact that the mentioned case contains a condition that is not found in the unmentioned case. For example, Allaah says,

وَمَنْ لَمْ يَسْتَطِعْ مِنْكُمْ طَوْلًا أَنْ يَنْكَحِ
الْمُحْصَنَاتِ الْمُؤْمِنَاتِ فَمِنْ مَّا مَلَكَتْ أَيْمَانُكُمْ
فَمِنْكُمْ الْمُؤْمِنَاتُ¹

«And whoever amongst you does not have the means to marry free, believing women, they may marry believing girls from among the (slaves) whom your right hands possess.» [4:29]

It can be understood from this verse – the *maḥḥam al-muḥḥaḥḥim* – that if one is capable of marrying free women, he is not allowed to marry slave girls.

Again, these categories are used in deducing laws from the Qur'aan

VI. The Naasikh and the Mansookh

Due to the importance of this topic, and its integral relationship to *'aloon al-Qur'aan*, it will be discussed in a separate chapter.

ABROGATION IN THE QUR'AAN AN-NAASIKH WA AL-MANSOOKH



1. The Definition of Naskh

Both of the words *naasikh* and *mansookh* come from the root *n-s-kh*, which has the following meanings:⁹⁰⁵

- 1) 'To remove, to abolish, to abrogate'. For example, Allaah says in the Qur'aan,

مَا نَنْسَخْ مِنْ آيَةٍ أَوْ نُنسِهَا لَكُمْ بَلَاءٌ يَحْكُمُ بَيْنَنَا

'We do not abrogate (Ar. *naasikh*) a verse, or cause it to be forgotten, except that We bring something that is better than it ...' [2:106]

and in another verse,

يَنْسَخُ اللَّهُ مَا يُلْقِي الْغَائِبُونَ

'... but Allaah abolishes (Ar. *naasikh*) what Satan throws in ...' [22:52]

- 2) 'To transcribe, to copy'. This may be used, for example, with reference to recording or copying a written record. Allaah says,

إِنَّا نَسْتَكْرِئُكَ مَا تَقْرَأُ مِنْ كِتَابِكَ

'Verily, We were recording (Ar. *mansookh*ing) what you used to do' [45:29]

From this connotation, a scribe is also called '*naasikh*'.

- 3) 'To replace, to supersede'.

As for its definition in Islamic sciences, it is: The abrogation of a ruling by a ruling that was revealed after it.

Therefore, at least two rulings must be involved, the *naasikh* and the *mansookh*.⁹⁰⁶ The *naasikh* ruling is the ruling that repeals the *mansookh*; *naasikh*, the active partici-

⁹⁰⁵ As for which of these meanings is the primary one, and which an annotation, this is of little consequence to non-Arabic readers. Cf. Zaid, pp. 93-61 and ash-Shanqeeti, pp. 10-11 for a discussion of this point.

⁹⁰⁶ At least two because there can be more than one *naasikh* and/or *mansookh* verse. In other words more than one verse can abrogate a ruling, and one verse can be abrogated more than one ruling.

ple, is the ruling that does the abrogating, while *mansookh*, the passive form, is the ruling that is abrogated.

The Breakdown of the Definition

The phrase: 'The abrogation...', implies that the first ruling has been completely repealed. This differentiates it from another phenomenon found in the Qur'aan, that of 'specification' (*tahdeeq*). 'Specification' involves one verse limiting or restricting a general ruling found in another verse, whereas *naskh* involves abrogating the first ruling in toto (i.e. it is not applied in any circumstances or conditions). The differences between *naskh* and *tahdeeq* will be elaborated on later.

This also implies that *naskh* must involve an actual abrogation of a previous Islamic law, and is therefore different from another phenomenon known as 'imitation' (*hadas'ah*). In other words, in order for *naskh* to occur, there must have previously existed an Islamic ruling on exactly the same subject which was then abrogated by a later ruling. Therefore, any laws that were revealed without any precedent Islamic rulings are not considered as examples of *naskh*, but rather of 'imitation' (*hadas'ah*). For example, marriage to one's step-mother was allowed in pre-Islamic Arab culture. After the advent of the Prophet (ﷺ), a verse was revealed that prohibited marriage to one's step-mother (verse 4:22). Even though this verse repealed the legitimacy of this pre-Islamic custom, it cannot be considered an example of *naskh*, since there existed no previous Islamic rulings on the topic. This verse is, however, an example of 'imitation', since this verse abrogated certain pre-Islamic practices, but not any Islamic ruling, thus 'imitating' a new Islamic ruling.

The phrase '...of a ruling...', implies that *naskh* is only valid in laws, and not in belief ('*aqeedah*). In other words, *naskh* cannot occur with regards to belief in Allaah, His Names and Attributes, the Day of Judgement, and other matters related to the fundamentals of belief. It is concerning these non-abrogated beliefs that Allaah says,

مَنْ رَزَقْنَاهُ مِنْ بَيْنِ يَدَيْنَا مَوَازِينَ يُؤْتِيهِمْ، وَهُوَ وَاللَّهُ يَأْتِيهِمْ
إِلَٰهًا وَمَا وَسَّيْنَاهُ يُؤْتِيهِمْ وَيُؤْتِيهِمْ وَيُؤْتِيهِمْ وَيُؤْتِيهِمْ
وَلَا تَكْفُرُوا بِهِ

-He has ordained for you the same religion which He ordained for Noah, and that which We have inspired to you (O Muhammad), and that which we have ordained for Ibrahim, Moses, and Eesa, saying that you should establish the religion and make no divisions in it- [42:13]

Also, the ruling that is abrogated (the *mansookh*) must originate in the Qur'aan or *Sunnah*; *naskh* cannot occur with respect to *ijma'* (consensus) or *qiyas* (analogy). In other words, no ruling that is derived from *ijma'* or *qiyas* can be abrogated.³⁰

³⁰ This is due to the fact that *naskh* can occur only during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ), as shall be mentioned shortly, whereas *ijma'* and *qiyas* must occur after the Prophet (ﷺ) (as any student of *usul al-fiqh* knows), therefore, these cannot be abrogated.

Lastly, this phrase also implies that the understanding of a verse (*maḥṣūn*) can also be abrogated, even though its explicit wording (*manṣūq*) remains applicable. An example that will help explain this will be discussed later on in the chapter.

The phrase '...by a ruling...', means that the *nasakh* ruling (the one that does the abrogating) must also come from the Qur'aan or *Sunnah*, *ghibah* (personal reasoning) or *qiyas* (analogy) cannot abrogate a ruling from the Qur'aan or *Sunnah*.

The phrase '...after it', implies that the *manṣūq* ruling (the ruling that is abrogated) must precede the *nasakh* ruling in time. This also implies that *nasakh* could only occur in the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ), since after his death no new rulings from the Qur'aan or *Sunnah* are going to be revealed.

Nasakh is primarily a Madinese phenomenon, since at this stage the laws of Islam were finalised.

The Salaf and the Term 'Nasakh'

It should be pointed out that the *salaf* did not use the term '*nasakh*' to refer exclusively to abrogation. They also used the term to apply to specification (*taḥḍiq*) and imitation (*baḍa'ah*). The first person to limit the meaning of the word *nasakh* to apply to abrogation only was Imām ash-Shāfi'ee (d. 204 A.H.), in his famous treatise on *usūl al-fiqh* entitled *ar-Risalah*.⁵⁰⁸

Therefore, when coming across statements from the scholars of the first three generations that claim that a particular verse was 'abrogated' (*nasakhā*) by another verse, this cannot be immediately taken as an example of *nasakh*. It is this exact factor which has been one of the greatest causes of confusion with regards to the number of *nasakh*/*manṣūq* verses in the Qur'aan (as shall be elaborated upon shortly). For example, Ibn 'Abbās stated that the verse,

لَا تَدْخُلُوا بُيُوتًا غَيْرَ بُيُوتِكُمْ حَتَّى تَسْتَأْذِنُوا

'Do not enter any houses, except your own, without permission' - [24/27]

was 'abrogated' (*nasakhā*) by the verse,

لَيْسَ عَلَيْكُمْ جُنَاحٌ أَنْ تَدْخُلُوا بُيُوتًا غَيْرَ مَسْكُونَةٍ

'And there is no sin on you if you enter unoccupied houses that are of benefit to you (without permission)' - [24/29]

This is not an example of *nasakh* (in its later definition) in the least, for the second verse specifies that the 'houses' mentioned in the first verse only applies to occupied houses. In other words, this is an example of *taḥḍiq*, and not *nasakh*.⁵⁰⁹ In the terminology of Ibn 'Abbās and the *salaf*, *nasakh* also meant what is referred to today as *taḥḍiq*.

⁵⁰⁸ ar-Risalah, p. 104

⁵⁰⁹ ash-Sharḥ al-mufteḥ, p. 17

Books Written on Naskh

Due to the importance of this topic, there have been a great many books written on the *nasakh* and *mansookh* verses of the Qur'aan. In fact, it would probably be no exaggeration to say that, after the subject of *tafsir*, the topic that has been given the most attention in *‘uloom al-Qur'aan* is that of *naskh*.

One of the first to write a treatise concerning this topic is the famous Successor, Qataadah as-Sadsoos (d. 117 A.H.). Some of the more famous authors to have written on this topic are Ibn Shihhaab as-Zuhree (d. 125 A.H.), Ahmad ibn Hambal (d. 241 A.H.), Abou Dawood (d. 275 A.H.) and as-Tirmidhee (d. 280 A.H.), both of *Sunnah* fame, and Abou 'Ubayd al-Qasim ibn Salhaam (d. 224 A.H.), whose book is considered to be the best classical discussion of the subject.

After this era, many more authors wrote separate books on *naskh*, such as Makkeeh ibn Abou Jaalib (d. 437 A.H.), Ibn Hazm adh-Dhahiree (d. 456 A.H.), Ibn al-'Amber al-Mashkeeh (d. 543 A.H.), Abou al-Faraq ibn al-Jawzee (d. 597 A.H.), and the famous Jalal ad-Deen as-Suyootee (d. 911 A.H.).⁵⁰

Without a doubt, the most thorough discussion of the topic of *naskh* written in this era is the book *'an-Nasikh fee al-Qur'aan* by Dr. Mustafa Zayd. In it, the author discusses practically every verse that has ever been claimed to have been abrogated, and offers his own conclusions of the validity of each claim. Another excellent work is *al-Ayaat al-Mansookhah fee al-Qur'aan*, by Dr. 'Abdullaah ibn Muhammad al-Amern ash-Shanqejee.

II. The Proof of Naskh

The vast majority of scholars have upheld the validity of *naskh*. Only some *Shie'ee* and *Ma'azilee* scholars (such as Abou Muslim al-Isfahannee, d. 322 A.H.), have raised objections concerning *naskh*. Abou Muslim claims that, while it is not inconceivable that *naskh* can occur, there are no rulings to demonstrate it.⁵¹ However, as Ibn al-Jawzee (d. 597 A.H.) mentioned, Abou Muslim was the first scholar to deny the validity of *naskh*, and in this he went against the consensus (*ijmaa'*) of all the scholars before him.

Abou Muslim's view has been aptly refuted, since the Qur'aan and *Sunnah* is very explicit on the occurrence of *naskh*. The Qur'aan says,

مَا يَنْصَحُ بَرٌّ لَوْ كُنَّا نَمُوتُ فَأَنْتَ بِمَحَرِّهَا أَوْ يَرْوِيهَا
أَلَمْ يَأْتِ الْفَقْرَافُ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ وَخَرُّهُ

⁵⁰ This list has been summarized from ash-Shanqejee, p. 5.

⁵¹ It should be pointed out that Abou Muslim did not deny what has been defined as *naskh* above, but rather he did not agree with such. In Abou Muslim's opinion, all the examples of *naskh* are actually examples of *asbha*, since, for him, every '*nasakh*' was specified by the '*mansookh*' to have been meant only for a limited time. In other words, Abou Muslim held the view that *asbha* was also possible by time – a condition which no other scholar had put. cf. ash-Shanqejee, p. 66.

«We do not abrogate a ruling, or cause it to be forgotten, except that We substitute in its place something better than it, or similar to it. Are you unaware that Allaah is indeed capable of all things?» [2:106]

In another verse, Allaah says,

وَلَمَّا بَدَّلْنَا آيَةً مَكَانَ آيَةٍ قَالُوا لِمَ لَا نُفِىَ
بِمَا بَرَأْنَا مِنْ آلِهَتِكُمْ إِنَّهُمْ لَكَاذِبُونَ

«And when We change a verse (in the Qur'aan) in place of another – and Allaah knows best what He sends down – they say, "You (O Muhammad) are but a forger! Nay, (but) most of them are ignorant!"» [16:101]

In these verses, the concept of *naskh* is very explicit.

Apart from these verses, there are numerous instances in the Qur'aan or Sunnah where *naskh* has been mentioned explicitly. For example, initially, a Muslim in battle was prohibited from fleeing from the enemy if he were faced with ten enemy soldiers (a ratio of 1 to 10, cf. 8:65). However, Allaah then revealed,

الَّذِينَ هَفَّفُوا
أَلْفَ هَكْمٍ وَكَيْفَ أَنْ يَكُنْ مَعَكُمْ
سَابِقَةٌ يُقَاتِلُونَ

«Now, Allaah has lightened your (burden), for He knows that there is a weakness in you. So if there are one hundred of you, they shall overcome two hundred...» [8:66]

The ratio was then reduced to one Muslim for every two non-Muslim soldiers.⁵¹² In this verse, the occurrence of *naskh* is explicit.

With regards to *naskh* in the Sunnah, the classic *hadith* that is quoted is the Prophet's (ﷺ) statement, "I used to forbid you to visit graves, but now you may freely do so, for they remind you of death."⁵¹³ Once again, the occurrence of *naskh* is explicit.

III. The Conditions for Naskh

There are a number of conditions that the scholars of *usool al-fiqh* and *uloom al-Qur'aan* have laid down in order to substantiate any claim of *naskh*. One of the reasons for this is that *naskh* is called only as the last-resort, since the very concept of *naskh* implies discarding a ruling for another one. As long as both rulings can be applied, *naskh* is not resorted to.

⁵¹² cf. ash-Sharhpage, p. 59

⁵¹³ Narrated by al-Bukhari

The more important conditions are as follows:³⁴

- 1) The most important condition for *naskh* to have occurred is that the two rulings in question must directly contradict each other, such that both rulings cannot be applied at the same time, and there exists no way to reconcile them. This is because, as just mentioned, *naskh* is only called as a last-resort, when there exists no other way to explain the two rulings. Therefore, if one of the rulings can apply to a specific case, and the other ruling to a different case, this cannot be considered an example of *naskh*.
- 2) The *nasakh* ruling must have been revealed after the *mansuq*, or else there cannot have been any abrogation. For the claim of *naskh* to be substantiated, a later ruling must have repealed an earlier one. This can be ascertained in two ways: either there is a direct reference in the *nasakh* ruling concerning the previous ruling (e.g., 2:187 and 8:66), or the relative time-frame of the verses in question is known (by the narrations concerning *nash* and *madani* revelations, the narrations concerning *ahad an-nasool*, and other narrations). In other words, it must be known for certain that the *nasakh* ruling was revealed after the *mansuq* ruling.
- 3) Both the *nasakh* and *mansuq* rulings must originate in the Qur'aan or *Sunnah*. This is because *qiyas* and other forms of *ijtihad* cannot abrogate a command from Allah or the Prophet (ﷺ). As for consensus (*ijmaa'*), it is not possible for *ijmaa'* to occur against an explicit command in the Qur'aan or *Sunnah*, therefore this also cannot be the source of *nasakh*/*mansuq* rulings. In other words, only Allah has the right to abrogate any command that originated from Him, either in the Qur'aan or through the tongue of His Prophet (ﷺ).
- 4) Most scholars have also added the condition that the *nasakh* ruling must originate from an equal or greater authority than the *mansuq*. In other words, an *ahad hadeeth* cannot, according to those who hold this opinion, abrogate the Qur'aan or a *mutawattir hadeeth*, since it is of a lesser authority. However, this view is not correct, and will be discussed in greater detail below.

IV. The Categories of Naskh

The various legal rulings that have been affected by *naskh* may be classified in different categories. They may be classified with respect to the sources of the *nasakh* and *mansuq* rulings, or with respect to their existence or non-existence in the Qur'aan, or with respect to the rulings of the *mansuq* in comparison with the *nasakh*.

³⁴ For other conditions of *naskh*, see Ibn al-Jawzi's conditions (Mabharat, pp. 73-87), Ibn al 'Arabi's (Mudghara, v. 2, pp. 1-4), and Ibn al-Qayyim's (pp. 33-37).

A. THE SOURCES OF THE NAASIKH AND MANSOOKH

As was mentioned in the previous section, *naash* can only occur within the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*, other sources of the *shari'ah*, such as *qiyas* and *ijmaa'*, do not play a role in *naash*. Therefore, the *naash* ruling can come only from the Qur'aan or *Sunnah*, and the *mansookh* ruling can only be found in the Qur'aan or *Sunnah*. Putting all these possibilities together, there are four logical scenarios of *naash* with regards to the sources of the *naash* and *mansookh*:

1) The Qur'aan abrogating the Qur'aan.

This category is agreed upon by all those who consider the validity of *naash*. An example of this is the waiting period of a widowed lady, initially she was to be maintained from the wealth of her deceased husband for a period of one year:

وَالَّذِينَ يَتَوَفَّوْنَ مِنْكُمْ وَيَذَرُونَ أَزْوَاجًا وَلِيَّاتٍ
لَّا زَوْجَ لَهُنَّ فَرِّقُوا بَيْنَهُنَّ إِلَى أَمْوَالِهِنَّ غَيْرَ الْمَحْرَاجِ

«And those of you who die and leave behind their wives should bequeath for them a year's maintenance and residence, without turning them out.» [2:240]

Later on, this ruling was abrogated by the verse,

وَالَّذِينَ يَتَوَفَّوْنَ مِنْكُمْ وَيَذَرُونَ أَزْوَاجًا وَلِيَّاتٍ بِأَعْيُنِنَ
أَرْبَعَةُ أَشْهُرٍ وَعَشْرٌ

«And those of you who die and leave behind their wives, their (wives) should wait four months and ten days.» [2:234]

2) The Qur'aan abrogating the *Sunnah*.

The majority of scholars have agreed to the validity of this type of *naash*. An example of this is the changing of the *qiblah*; the Muslims used to pray towards Jerusalem by the command of the Prophet (ﷺ) (i.e., the *Sunnah*), but eventually the Qur'aan revealed that the direction of the *qiblah* was to be Makkah,

قَدْ رَأَيْنَا تَلْوَتَكَ وَتَوَلَّيْتَ فِي السَّمَاءِ
فَلَوْلَا بَشِيرُكَ فَمِنْ أَمْرِنَا قَوْلُكَ وَتَوَلَّيْتَ شَطْرَ الْمَسْجِدِ
الْحَرَامِ

«Verily! We have seen the turning of your face (O Muhammad!) towards the heavens. Surely, We shall turn you to a *qiblah* that shall please you! So turn your face in the direction of the *Masjid al-Haram* (to Makkah).» [2:144]

The initial *qiblah* was based on the *Sunnah*, and the abrogation came down in the Qur'aan. This incident is clear proof that the Qur'aan can abrogate the *Sunnah*.

3) The *Sunnah* abrogating the Qur'aan.

This category may be further subdivided into two categories:

i) A *muttawwa'at hadith* abrogating the Qur'aan. This was allowed by Imam Malik (d. 179 A.H.), Abu Haneefah (d. 150 A.H.), and one of the opinions of Imam Ahmad (d. 241 A.H.). They reasoned that both are forms of revelation from Allah, and since both give indisputable knowledge (*qat'ee ash-shubuh*), they may abrogate one another.

An example of a *muttawwa'at hadith* abrogating the Qur'aan is the verse concerning leaving bequest to heirs:

كُلِّبَ عَلَيْكُمْ
إِذَا حَضَرَ أَحَدُكُمْ الْمَوْتُ إِنْ تَرَكَ خَيْرًا الْوَصِيَّةُ لِلْوَلَدَيْنِ
وَالْأَقْرَبِينَ

It is prescribed for you, when any of you approaches death and he has wealth, that he make a bequest to his parents and next of kin. - [2:180]

This ruling was abrogated by the *hadith* of the Prophet (ﷺ) in which he said, "There is no bequest to an heir."¹⁶

ii) An *ajwad hadith* abrogating the Qur'aan. Most of the scholars did not allow this type of *naasikh*, since, they reasoned, the Qur'aan is *muttawwa'at*, and provides indisputable knowledge of authenticity (*qat'ee ash-shubuh*), whereas an *ajwad hadith* does not provide indisputable knowledge (*ghayr qat'ee ash-shubuh*).

This view, although representing the majority opinion, is not necessarily the correct one. Ash-Shanqeeti discusses this question in detail,¹⁷ and concludes that an *ajwad hadith* can abrogate the Qur'aan, although such an occurrence is rare. He does give the condition, however, that it must be known for certain that the *ajwad* narration occurred *after* the revelation of the verse. An example of this, according to ash-Shanqeeti, is the prohibition of the flesh of domesticated donkeys, for it is known that this occurred during the Battle of Khaybar, and as such 'abrogated' the previous ruling that it was allowed (by the understanding of 16:45).¹⁸

Imam ash-Shafi'ee (d. 204 A.H.) did not allow the Qur'aan to abrogate the *Sunnah*, nor the *Sunnah* to abrogate the Qur'aan. He felt the Qur'aan could only abrogate the Qur'aan, and the same with the *Sunnah*.

4) The *Sunnah* abrogating the *Sunnah*.

This was also allowed by all those who upheld the validity of *naasikh*. This category may be further subdivided into four categories:

¹⁶ Reported by Abu Dawood.

¹⁷ ash-Shanqeeti, pp. 36-44. Also see al-Albani's comments on this *hadith* in *Ahjaat al-Jam'at*, p. 7, where he states that an *ajwad hadith* can abrogate the Qur'aan.

¹⁸ ash-Shanqeeti, p. 39.

- i) A *mutawattir hadith* abrogating another *mutawattir hadith*.
- ii) An *ahad hadith* abrogating another *ahad hadith*.
- iii) An *mutawattir hadith* abrogating an *ahad hadith*.
- iv) An *ahad hadith* abrogating a *mutawattir hadith*.

The first three categories are agreed upon by all scholars. The last category, that of an *ahad hadith* abrogating a *mutawattir* one, is held by those who allow an *ahad hadith* to abrogate the Qur'aan (such as ash-Shanqeetee). The majority, however, do not allow the occurrence of the fourth category.

B. THE VERSE AND RULING IN THE QUR'AAN

With respect to verses in the Qur'aan, it is possible that either the recitation of the verse, or the ruling, or both, have been abrogated. As was alluded to in earlier chapters, there existed verses that used to be recited as part of the Qur'aan, but whose recitation was later abrogated at the command of Allaah. Some of these abrogated verses dealt with legal rulings.

Thus, (with respect to the Qur'aan only, and not the *Sunnah*) *naasikh* may be classified as follows.

1) The Abrogation of the Ruling and the Verse (*Naasikh al-Hukm wa al-Tilaawah*).

In other words, neither is the verse present in the *mag-haf*, nor is its ruling applied. An example of this type is the report of 'Aa'ubah, in which she said, "It had been revealed in the Qur'aan that ten clear sucklings (of a baby with a woman) made marriage unlawful (i.e., that the baby would be considered her foster-child). This was later abrogated (and substituted) by five sucklings, and the Prophet (ﷺ) died and it was before that time (found) in the Qur'aan."⁵¹⁸ In this case, neither is the relevant verse found in the *mag-haf*, nor is the ruling applicable.⁵¹⁹

2) The Abrogation of the Ruling without the Verse (*Naasikh al-Hukm doowa al-Tilaawah*).

When this occurs, the relevant verse is still recited and is present in the *mag-haf*, but the ruling does not apply. An example of this is the verse prescribing the waiting period of one year for the widow (2:240). Even though this ruling does not apply any

⁵¹⁸ Reported by Muslim. This does not mean that the verse had been accidentally left out of the *mag-haf*, but rather that it was abrogated only a short time before the Prophet (ﷺ) died (cf. Qutuban, p. 238). Some scholars (such as Mujaahid Zayd) have rejected this narration, claiming that it is *ahad* (none only 'Aa'ubah narrated it), and in order for a verse of the Qur'aan to be accepted, it must be narrated as a *mutawattir hadith*. This may be refuted, however, by saying that the *hadith* is *ijma'*, as it is reported in Muslim, Muwatta, Abou Dawood and al-Tirmidhee, and also that 'Aa'ubah is not reporting a verse from the Qur'aan (which needs a *mutawattir* transmission) but rather an *ayah*, or *ayah*, and this does not need *mutawattir* transmission.

⁵¹⁹ Although there is a difference of opinion regarding the minimum number of sucklings that are required to prohibit marriage. Some scholars say five, based on this *hadith*, whereas others say three or even one. In any case, the verse that initially prescribed ten sucklings can be taken as an example of this category.

clearly shows the fact that the recitation of this verse was abrogated. 'Umar ibn al-Khatta'ab narrated, "I once came to the Prophet (ﷺ), and the verse pertaining to stoning was mentioned. I asked the Prophet (ﷺ), "O Messenger of Allaah! Dictate to me the verse, so that I may write it!" The Prophet (ﷺ) responded, "No, I cannot do this anymore,"⁵²³ meaning that he was not allowed to do so anymore. This narration is explicit in the abrogation of the verse.

There are also references to a number of verses not related to commands and prohibitions whose recitation was abrogated. An example of this are those verses revealed with regards to the martyrs of the 'Well of Ma'oonah'.

A group of disbelievers posed as Muslims, and came to the Prophet (ﷺ), requesting him to send them some teachers. The Prophet (ﷺ) sent them seventy Companions to teach them the Qur'aan and other aspects related to the religion. When the Companions left with this group, they were massacred by the disbelievers. In response to this incident, Anas ibn Maalik reported, "Allaah revealed verses of the Qur'aan concerning them (the martyrs): 'Tell our people that we have met our Lord, and He is pleased with us, and we are pleased with Him.' This was then abrogated after we had been reciting it for a while, and (instead) Allaah then revealed,

وَلَا تَحْسَبَنَّ الَّذِينَ قُتِلُوا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ أَمْوَاتًا

-Do not presume that those who have died in the way of Allaah are dead... (3:169).⁵²⁴

This report is explicit in that there existed verses that were recited in prayer, and whose recitation was later abrogated. This report also shows that the Companions understood and were familiar with the concepts of *nafth*.

Another report of this nature is by Ubay ibn Ka'ab. He stated, "We used to consider the verse, 'If the son of Aadam had two valleys of gold, he would wish for a third, for nothing will ever fill the belly of Aadam's son except dust, and Allaah forgives him who repents,' as a part of the Qur'aan. However, [the recitation of this verse was abrogated] by the revelation of *Soorah al-Takweer*."⁵²⁵

Even though the above 'verse' was abrogated as being part of the Qur'aan, it still remained a statement of the Prophet (ﷺ), and is found in many collections of *hadith*.⁵²⁶ Ubay ibn Ka'ab also reported, "*Soorah al-Ahzab* used to be equal (in length) to *Soorah al-Baqarah*, or even longer."⁵²⁷ This implies that there existed many verses whose recitation had been abrogated, as the *Soorah al-Ahzab* that is present in today's *mushaf* is less than a fourth of *Soorah al-Baqarah*.

⁵²³ Reported by al-Bayhaqi and others of al-Sajjastani, v. 6, p. 975.

⁵²⁴ al-Mutta'ani, p. 111.

⁵²⁵ Narrated by al-Takreezi in his *Shahih Musajjid al-Aqsa*.

⁵²⁶ For example, in al-Bukhaari, Muslim, *Musnad of Ahmad*, al-Tirmidhi and others.

⁵²⁷ Reported by Ibn Hibbaan.

Lastly, there are also reports which explicitly show the occurrence of *nasikh*, and the total obliteration of the abrogated verse. Abuu Umaamah ibn Sa'hl reported that a person had memorised a certain *versah*, so he tried to recite it in prayer one night, but was unable to. In the morning, he went to the Prophet (ﷺ) and found two people also waiting for him. When the Prophet (ﷺ) came, he asked, "O Messenger of Allaah (ﷺ)! I tried to recite such-and-such a *versah* last night, but could not do so!" At this, the second man said, "I also came because of the same reason!" and the third, "And I too!" The Prophet (ﷺ) explained, "It was abrogated last night,"¹²⁸ meaning that they had been caused to forget the relevant verses. In this report, it is clear that divine intervention caused these Companions who had memorised the verses to forget them, thus abrogating even the memory of the verse! This narration also shows that the Prophet (ﷺ) was informed by Allaah whenever a verse was abrogated, since he (ﷺ) knew that these particular verses had been abrogated the night before.

C. THE RULINGS OF THE *NASIKH* AND *MANSOOKH*

The *nasikh* ruling might be a concession from the *mansookh*, or it might be one that requires more effort. With respect to the degree of difficulty of the rulings, the rulings of *nasikh* and *mansookh* may be divided into four categories:

- 1) The *nasikh* ruling is more difficult or more constrained than the *mansookh*.

An example of this are the rulings pertaining to adultery. Initially, the punishment for both married and unmarried illegal sexual intercourse was lifelong imprisonment (cf. 4:15). Allaah then revealed the verses of flogging for the unmarried and stoning for the married persons (cf. 24:2).

- 2) The *nasikh* ruling is equivalent to the *mansookh* ruling in difficulty.

For example, the verses that were revealed concerning the change of the *qiblah* from Jerusalem to Makkah, in this case, the *nasikh* ruling is equivalent to the *mansookh* in effort.

- 3) The *nasikh* ruling is a concession from the *mansookh*.

In this case, the *nasikh* ruling was easier for the Muslims than the *mansookh*. An example that has already been quoted is with regards to the waiting period of widows; it was reduced from one year to four months and ten days. Another example that was mentioned is with regards to the prohibition of fleeing from the battlefield when the ratio of Muslims to non-Muslims was 1 to 10; this was later abrogated and the ratio reduced to one Muslim for every two non-Muslims.

Another example is the procedure of fasting. Initially, fasting was prescribed

¹²⁸ Reported by at-Tahawee. There is a difference of opinion whether Abuu Umaamah actually waited from the Prophet (ﷺ). However, since he saw the Prophet (ﷺ), he is considered a Companion, and thus the *hadith* is considered authentic (at-Tahawee al-Kamus, v. 2, # 409). In any case, at-Tahawee also brings another narration (v. 5, p. 177) which mentions a Companion between Abuu Umaamah and the Prophet (ﷺ), so this incident is authentic. *Index / Back*

كَمَا كُتِبَ عَلَى الَّذِينَ مِن قَبْلِكُمْ

... as it was prescribed for those before you... [2:183]

This meant, as per the laws of the previous nations, that a Muslim could not eat, drink or have intercourse after he had prayed the evening prayer (*Tahajjud*), or gone to sleep at night. After this, Allaah revealed,

أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا لَا تَحْزَنْ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا كُنْزُوكُمْ
لَهُمْ وَأَنْتُمْ بِرَأْسِ الْكُفْرِ إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَغَنِيٌّ عَنِ الْعَالَمِ
أَفَتَعْذِرُكَ أَنْ تُقَاتِلُوا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ وَأَقَاتِلَ اللَّهُ لَكُمْ وَأَخِي لَكُمْ

«It is now lawful for you to have sexual relations with your wife on the night of the fast... Allaah knows that you used to decieve yourselves (by having relations with them), so He has turned to you and accepted (your repentance)» [2:187]

Therefore, a Muslim may eat, drink or have sexual relations until dawn.

4) There is no *nasikh* command in place of the *mansukh*.

In other words, Allaah repealed the law *in toto*. An example of this is the command to give charity before going to see the Prophet (ﷺ) privately. Allaah revealed,

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا إِذَا تَوَلَّيْتُمْ إِلَى الْقَوْمِ الَّذِينَ هُمْ يُحَرِّمُونَ مَا حَرَّمَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِمْ

«O you who believe! When you want to consult the Messenger in private, spend something in charity before your private consultation» [58:12]

Allaah then repealed this law totally,

أَتَقْدِرُونَ عَلَى أَنْ تَقْرَأُوا عَلَيْهِمْ مَا كُتِبَ عَلَيْهِمُ مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ وَلَقَدْ يَتْلُونَ
الْقُرْآنَ عَلَيْكُمْ فَانصتوا لَهُ لَعَلَّكُمْ تُفْلِحُونَ

«Are you afraid of spending in charity before your private consultations? If you do not do it, and Allaah has forgiven you (for not doing it), then (at least) offer prayers perfectly.» [58:13]

Therefore Allaah forgave this charity from them, and they were not required to do it.

v. The Blessings of Naskh

With respect to the Qur'aan, there are two types of *nasikh* that occurred. There is a general *nasikh*, in which the Qur'aan abrogated the previous scriptures that were revealed to other nations, and there is the specific *nasikh*, in which some verses of the Qur'aan abrogated others. It is the second category that has been the discussion of this chapter so far. However, both of these types of *nasikh* have benefits behind them.

Benefits of the General Naasib

From the beginning of time, Allaah has revealed to mankind a general code of beliefs and set of laws that would guide them to a better life in this world, and provide for them an everlasting life in the Hereafter. The most important of these messages, and one that has remained a constant theme for all the prophets, is that of the Oneness of Allaah (*tawheed*).

وَلَقَدْ بَعَثْنَا فِي كُلِّ أُمَّةٍ رَسُولًا أَنِ اعْبُدُوا اللَّهَ وَاجْتَنِبُوا الصُّلُوبَ

«And verily We have sent among every nation a Messenger, (saying), 'Worship Allaah alone, and avoid all false deities...» [16:66]

Included with the belief of *tawheed* was the belief in messengers (*rusul*), and belief in the Day of Judgement (*sa'haarah*). These fundamentals of belief, or '*asra'idah*', remained unchanged for all prophets and messengers, in all times and places.

However, as a manifestation of Allaah's mercy, mankind was not left without guidance in its social and political life. Rather, their Creator provided for them a set of laws that would govern them in their mutual affairs, and instruct them concerning all that was beneficial for them, and warn against all that was harmful to them. These code of laws varied from time to time, and from place to place, for each set of peoples had their own specific problems and peculiar situations that needed to be catered to. Allaah says,

وَلِكُلِّ أُمَّةٍ جَعَلْنَا مَنْشُورًا لِّذِكْرِ اسْمِ اللَّهِ

«And for every nation, We appointed (their) religious ceremonies, so that they may mention the Name of Allaah...» [22:34]

Since each prophet was sent to a different nation, it was possible for one messenger to abrogate the laws of a previous messenger.

وَمَنْ يَتَّبِعْ مَا بَرَكْتُ بِهِ مِنْ آيَاتِي وَلَا يَتَّبِعْ مَا كُفِّرْتُ بِهِ

«(And 'Eesa said to his people) I have come confirming that which was before me of the Truth, and to notify lawful for you part of what had been forbidden to you...» [3:50]

In other words, the laws that 'Eesa came with were meant to abrogate the laws of Moosa.

With the coming of the religion of Islaam, however, all previous laws and religions were abrogated.

وَمَنْ يَتَّبِعْ غَيْرَ الْإِسْلَامِ دِينًا فَلَنْ يُقْبَلَ مِنْهُ

«And whoever seeks a religion other than Islaam, it will never be accepted from him» [3:85]

The role and status of the Qur'aan with respect to other religions is made clear in the following verse:

وَأَنزَلْنَا إِلَيْكَ الْكِتَابَ
وَالْحَقُّ مُصَدِّقٌ لِّمَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ وَمُهَيِّمٌ عَلَيْهِ

«And We have sent down to you (O Muhammad) the Book in truth, confirming the Scripture that came before it, and a *muhayyimu* over it» [5:48]

The word '*muhayyimu*' means that the Qur'aan is a witness over the previous scriptures, so that all that conforms with it from the previous scriptures is accepted, and all that contradicts it is rejected. The Qur'aan, therefore, acts as a *naasikh* agent over the previous scriptures, which are *mansukh* when they conflict with the Qur'aan.⁵²⁹

This is one of the greatest blessings of the Qur'aan, for it shows that it is the most complete Book (since nothing can abrogate the Qur'aan after it), and that it is superior to all other Scriptures (since it abrogates all previous Books). It also demonstrates the superiority of the *ummah* of the Prophet (ﷺ) over all other nations, since the set of laws that have been revealed to it are perfect for all and suitable for all nations, at all times. This is in contrast to all other laws, which were only meant for a specific nation, at a specific time.

Benefits of the Specific Naasikh

With regards to the specific *naasikh* of the Qur'aan, this too has many benefits to it. Makkeer bin Abee Taalib (d. 437 A.H.) stated,

And this (meaning *naasikh*) is from Allaah, and it means to be for the betterment of His worshippers. So, He commands them with a ruling at a specific time, since He knows that it will be for their betterment for that particular time, but He already knows that this command will be removed from them at a later time, since at this later time that particular ruling will not be for their benefit.⁵³⁰

These principles are clearly laid down in the following verse:

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا أَطِيعُوا اللَّهَ وَأَطِيعُوا رَسُولَهُ
فَإِنَّ لِلْمُتَشَكِّكِ فِي هَذِهِ الْفُتُونَةَ وَفِي هَذِهِ الْفُتُونَةِ
الْعَذَابُ

«He (meaning Muhammad) commands them with all that is honourable and good, and forbids them from all that is evil and immoral, he allows for them all that is pure and beneficial, and prohibits for them all that is evil and harmful...» [7:157]

⁵²⁹ Cf. Tafsir bin Kathir on this verse.

⁵³⁰ an-Nihayaa, p. 116

Thus, every case of *naash* is for the betterment of mankind. As Allaah says,

مَا نَنْسَخْ مِنْ آيَةٍ أَوْ نُنسِهَا نَأْتِ بِخَيْرٍ مِنْهَا أَوْ لَكُمْ كَلِمَاتٌ
أَلَمْ تَعْلَمُوا أَنَّ اللَّهَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ ﴿١٠﴾

«We do not abrogate a ruling, or cause it to be forgotten, except that We substitute in its place *something better than it, or similar to it. Are you unaware that Allaah is indeed capable of all things?*» [2:106]

Each type of *naash* that was discussed in the previous section has its benefits. As for the abrogation of the ruling without any replacing ruling, or with a higher ruling, the benefit in this is obvious, in that it lightens the burden of worship, and is a manifestation of the Mercy of Allaah. As Allaah says,

يُرِيدُ اللَّهُ أَنْ يُخَفِّفَ عَنْكُمْ

«Allaah wishes to lighten (the burden) on you...» [4:28]

and,

الَّذِينَ خَفَّفَ اللَّهُ عَنْكُمْ

«Now has Allaah made it easier for you...» [8:66]

If the *naash* ruling is equivalent to or more difficult than the *mansookh*, this is a means of testing the believers so that

يُيَسِّرَ اللَّهُ الصَّيِّتَ مِنَ الطَّيِّبِ

«...Allaah may discern the filthy from the pure...» [18:37]

Also, if the *naash* is more difficult, the rewards for that particular deed will also multiply. It should be remembered that what might seem like something difficult to us might in fact be beneficial to us or to the Muslims.

وَعَسَى أَنْ تَكْرَهُوا
شَيْئًا وَهُوَ خَيْرٌ لَكُمْ وَعَسَى أَنْ تُحِبُّوا شَيْئًا وَهُوَ شَرٌّ لَكُمْ
وَاللَّهُ يَعْلَمُ وَأَنْتُمْ لَا تَعْلَمُونَ

«And it is possible that you *detest* something, even though it is beneficial for you. And it is possible that you *love* something, even though it is harmful for you. And Allaah knows, and you do not know» [2:216]

Thus, the stoning of the married adulterer might be a hardship for him, but it serves as a very severe deterrent for others, and a betterment for society.

As for the abrogation of a ruling without the recitation of the verse, this is a reminder from Allaah to the believers of His blessings, so that they may thank Him for

His Mercy. This verse is also a blessing to recite, for the recitation of each letter gives the reward of ten. If the recitation of the verse was also abrogated, this is another indication of the Mercy of Allaah, since He allowed the believers to implement the *Shari'ah* in a gradual manner, so that it would not be a great burden on them.

As for the abrogation of the recitation of a verse without its ruling, this is another type of test from Allaah, to see if a believer has faith in the Messenger (ﷺ), since the ruling will then come from the *Sunnah*, and not the Qur'aan. Thus, the believer must truly believe in the Prophet (ﷺ), and follow the Qur'aan and his (ﷺ) *Sunnah* in order to be successful.

vi. The Benefits of Knowing Naasikh and Mansookh

From all the examples that have been given, it is apparent that this knowledge is an essential one. Some of the benefits of knowing *naasikh* and *mansookh* are:

- 1) To understand and implement the Qur'aan properly.

Without knowing which verses are abrogated, a person might apply those verses that are not meant to be applied. This is why the scholars of Islaam were very concerned in preserving this knowledge. Once, 'Alee ibn Abee Taalib passed by a judge and asked him, "Do you know the *naasikh* from the *mansookh*?" The judge replied that he did not. 'Alee then told him, "You are destroyed (because you are judging between people while you are not qualified to do so) and you destroy other people (because you give them rulings that are incorrect)."¹³¹ And Ibn 'Abbaas explained the verse,

وَمَنْ يُؤْتَ الْحِكْمَةَ فَقَدْ أُوتِيَ خَيْرًا كَثِيرًا

«And whoever has been blessed with wisdom has indeed been given a great blessing.» [2:269],

by saying, " (Wisdom is in knowing) the *naasikh* from the *mansookh*, the *mutlaq* from the *muqayyad*, the earlier (revelations) from the later (ones), and the *qayyum* from the *qalil*."¹³²

It can be seen from the examples that were given in the previous section that a person is obliged to know the *naasikh* from the *mansookh* if he wishes to derive laws from the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*. It should come as no surprise, therefore, that this knowledge is one of the conditions for a person to be an interpreter of the Qur'aan (*mufassir*), or scholar (*mujaalid*). Imaam ash-Shaafi'ee (d. 204 A.H.) said,

"It is impermissible for any person to give verdicts concerning the religion of Allaah, unless he is knowledgeable of the Book of Allaah, and its *naasikh* from its *mansookh*, and its *mutlaq* from its *muqayyad*, and its interpretation, and its process of revelation, and its *mutlaq* from its *muqayyad*.

¹³¹ Ibn Haneh, p. 5

¹³² Quraan, p. 134

and its *asbab an-nasoo'*. In addition to this, he must be knowledgeable of the *Sunnah*.⁵³³

2) The knowledge of the gradual revelation of the *shar'e'ah*.

Allaah revealed the laws of Islaam gradually, so that it would be easier for the Muslims to implement the new religion. By knowing the *anwasih* from the *mansookh*, a Muslim can appreciate the blessings that were given to this *ummah* in this gradual revelation. Also, it increases one's belief (*imaan*) in Allaah, as it demonstrates to him some aspects of the infinite Wisdom and Knowledge of Allaah.

3) The defence of the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*.

The concept of *nasikh* has been used by the enemies of Islaam (in particular, Orientalists and the 'Muslim' scholars that have been influenced by them) to ridicule and mock the religion, and to try to show contradictions and discrepancies in the *shar'e'ah*. Thus, it is essential that Muslims understand and appreciate the concept of *nasikh*, so that they are not deceived by the distortions and misinterpretations of those who seek to destroy Islaam.

VII. The Difference Between *Nasikh* and *Takhsees*

The phenomenon of *takhsees* ('specification') was mentioned at the beginning of this chapter. It is essential that the concept of *nasikh* not be confused with that of *takhsees*, and for this reason many scholars of *uloom al-Qur'aan* included in their works the differences between *nasikh* and *takhsees*.

Takhsees is defined to be the specification of a general ruling (*ahkam*), such that what seems to be a general ruling only applies in certain cases. For example, the Qur'aan orders the amputation of the hand of the thief,

وَاللَّارِقُ الشَّارِقُ فَاقْطَعُوا أَيْدِيَهُمَا

«And the thief – male or female – cut off their hands» [5:38]

The verse is general (*ahkam*), and implies that the hand of every thief must be cut. The Prophet (ﷺ), however, qualified that the thief in this case must steal above a certain monetary value. If he stole below this value, this ruling will not apply to him. Therefore, the Prophet (ﷺ) specified the general ruling of the verse. This, then, is an example of *takhsees*: the hand of every thief will not be cut; only those thieves who steal above a certain monetary value are punished.

Nasikh differs from *takhsees* in the following manners:⁵³⁴

- 1) *Nasikh* may only occur with regards to laws and rulings (*ahkameen*). *Takhsees*, on the other hand, may occur with respect to other matters. For example, Allaah says,

⁵³³ *an-Nahaa*, p. 114

⁵³⁴ *ash-Sharqaayee*, p. 34

وَالْعَصْرِ ۝ إِذَا الْإِنْسَارُ نَحِسُوا ۝ إِلَّا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا
وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ وَتَوَاصَوْا بِالْحَقِّ وَتَوَاصَوْا بِالنُّصْرِ ۝

«By the time! All of mankind is in a loss, Except those who believe, and do righteous deeds, and exhort one another in truth, and exhort one another in patience» [93: 1-3]

The second verse is general ('aam), implying that all of mankind will be in loss. The last verse, however, is an example of *tafḥiṣ*, since it qualifies those of mankind who are not in a loss.

- 2) *Naṣḥ* implies a total abandonment of the previous ruling, no matter what the case. *Tafḥiṣ*, on the other hand, is defined to be the implementation of a previous ruling in only some of the original cases. In other words, after a *tafḥiṣ* occurs, the ruling is not totally invalid, but rather valid in a narrower frame. Therefore, the *mansookh* cannot be applied after the *naasikh* is revealed, but the rulings of *asw* still apply after the *tafḥiṣ*.
- 3) The *naasikh* must be revealed after the *mansookh*, whereas there is no such time restriction on *tafḥiṣ*.
- 4) *Naṣḥ* only occurs with respect to the Qur'aan or the *Sunnah*. *Tafḥiṣ*, on the other hand, may apply to Qur'aan, *Sunnah*, *ḥadīth*, or *ḥyāṣ*. Also, the *naasikh* ruling may only come from the Qur'aan or *Sunnah*, whereas *tafḥiṣ* may be based on common sense or *ḥukm*.

VIII. The Number of Naasikh/Mansookh Verses in the Qur'aan

The scholars of Islaam have differed greatly with regards to the number of verses in the Qur'aan that are *mansookh*. (It should be pointed out that the difference of opinion is concerning those verses whose recitation has not been abrogated, and are still found in the *mushaf*. As for those verses whose recitation has been abrogated, there is no means of ascertaining their exact number, since many of them have been abrogated even from memory.)

Some of the various opinions are given in Table A.

The names of the scholars are listed according to the number of cases that were considered as candidates for *naṣḥ*. What is meant by 'Candidates for *naṣḥ*' are the number of verses which were discussed by that author as being *possible* to be considered as examples of *naṣḥ*. The second column gives the number of *naṣḥ* cases that were actually concluded by the author as being *legitimate* examples. Thus, for example, Ibn al-'Araber discusses around three-hundred verses which could be considered as examples for *naṣḥ*. However, of these many verses, he concludes that only a little over a third are actual cases of *naṣḥ*, the rest of the examples are shown by him not to be examples of *naṣḥ*.

Scholar	Number of Verses as Candidates for Nasikh	Number of Verses Concluded are Nasikh
Abu Bakr ibn al-Arabee (d. 543 A.H.)	297 cases	105 cases
Mustafa Zayd	283 cases	6 cases
Ibn al-Jawzee (d. 597 A.H.)	247 cases	22 cases
Ibn Hazm (d. 456 A.H.)	214 cases	all
Makkeeh ibn Abee Jaafir (d. 437 A.H.)	200 cases	-
Abu Ja'far an-Nahhas (d. 338 A.H.)	134 cases	20 cases
az-Zarqaani	22 cases	12 cases
as-Sayooti (d. 911 A.H.)	21 cases	20 cases
ash-Sharqawi	7 cases	all
Walee Allaah ad-Dehlawi (d. 1176 A.H.)	5 cases	all

Table 5 The Number of Cases of Nasikh

It can be seen from this table³³¹ that there is a very wide difference of opinion regarding the exact number of cases of *nasikh* in the Qur'aan. The opinions range from 214 for Ibn Hazm, all the way down to only five for ad-Dehlawee.

The reason that such a diverse opinion exists is that many verses are considered examples of *nasikh*, when in fact they are examples of *raf'leeq*, or do not fall under *nasikh* at all. In particular, with regards to those who have over a hundred examples of *nasikh*, they all consider the 'Verse of the Sword' as having abrogated dozens of verses.

The 'Verse of the Sword'

The 'Verse of the Sword' is the verse that gave permission for the Muslims to fight the disbelievers wherever they were:

³³¹ This table was compiled from ash-Sharqawi, pps. 91-94, Madhfuuroo, pps. 280-32, an-Nahhas' work, and al-Mulbassar's work. It should be noted that most authors did not give a specific conclusion for some verses. In those cases, such verses were included in the first column of the table, but not in the second.

فَإِذَا انشَاقَّتْ الْأَشْهُرُ الْحُرُمُ
فَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ عَسَىٰ وَهْدُهُمْ رِجْدًا ۖ فَرُّوا وَأَعْرَضُوا عَنْهُمْ
وَالْعُقُوبَةُ لَهُمْ حَكِيمٌ

«Then, when the Sacred Months have elapsed, call the polytheists wherever you find them, and capture them, and besiege them, and prepare for them each and every ambush...» [3:5]

This was one of the last verses to be revealed, and perhaps the last verse that dealt with the treatment of the disbelievers. According to the scholars that have over a hundred cases of *nasikh*, any verse that had commanded any type of treatment with the disbelievers before this verse was revealed was 'abrogated' by this verse. For example, with Ibn al-'Arabī, of the 105 cases that he stated are examples of *nasikh*, no less than 75 were 'mansukh' by the 'Verse of the Sword'. The majority of Ibn al-Jazmī's cases are also considered to be *mansukh* because of this verse.

In a masters dissertation specifically on this topic,⁵³⁶ Uthmaan 'Alī discusses 147 verses that have been claimed to have been abrogated by the 'Verse of the Sword,' and concludes that only five of them can actually be said to be abrogated. He gives a useful categorisation of the types of verses that have been claimed to have been abrogated by the 'Verse of the Sword'. The main categories are:

- 1) Those verses which are statements of fact; for example,

وَقُولُوا لِنَايِبِهِمْ

«And say good speech to mankind...» [2:81]

- 2) Those verses which give warnings and threats to the disbelievers; for example,

قُلْ تَتَّقُوا اللَّهَ
أَتَسْمِعُونَ مَا كَانُوا يَسْمَعُونَ
مَنْ كَذَّبَ لَهُ عَذَابُ النَّارِ ۖ إِنَّهُ لَا يَجِدُ الْكَافِرِينَ

«Say: O my people! Do your work according to how you do it, surely, I too am working. Surely, you will come to know for which of us will be the (happy) end in the Hereafter. Certainly the wrong-doers will not be successful...» [6:135]

- 3) Those verses which command the believers to turn away from the evil treatment of the disbelievers, and to deal with them peacefully; for example,

فَرِّهِمْ يَوْمَئِذٍ سَبْعًا ۖ وَأُولَٰئِكَ هُمُ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ

⁵³⁶ Alī, Uthmaan Mu'āmin *Majma' al-ḥyaṭ al-Madī'ah fi ḥaqiqat al-ḥijab al-ḥaqīqī*, Masters Diss., Islamic University of Madinah, 1992

«So leave (the disbelievers) to speak nonsense, and play around, until they meet their Day which they have been promised» [43:83]

and,

﴿خُذِ الْعَفْوَ وَأْمُرْ بِالْعُرْفِ وَأَعْرِضْ عَنِ الْجَاهِلِينَ﴾

«Show forgiveness, enjoin what is good, and turn away from the foolish» [7:199]

- 4) Those verses which command the believers to be patient; for example,

﴿فَاصْبِرْ عَلَىٰ مَا يَقُولُونَ﴾

«So bear patiently what they say...» [20:140]

- 5) Those verses which remind the Prophet (ﷺ) that his only duty is to spread the message, for example,

﴿قُلْ أَطِيعُوا اللَّهَ وَأَطِيعُوا الرَّسُولَ ۚ قُلْ إِنَّمَا أَنَا بَشَرٌ
مِّثْلُكُمْ فَأَتْلِيزُوا إِن تَوَّابُونَ قَاهِنُونَ وَأَعْلَى الرَّسُولِ
إِلَّا إِلَهَ الْاَلَمِ الْاَلَمِ الْاَلَمِ ۝﴾

«Say, Obey Allah and obey the Messenger. But if you turn away, he (i.e., Muhammad (ﷺ)) is only responsible for the duty placed upon him (i.e., to convey the message), and you (are responsible) for that which is placed upon you. If you obey him, you shall be on the right guidance. The Messenger's duty is only to convey (the message) in a clear way» [24:34]

- 6) Those verses which command the believers to return an evil with a similar evil, and to fight only in self-defence; for example,

﴿وَقَاتِلُوا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ الَّذِينَ يَفْقَهُوْا تَعَدُّوا﴾

«And fight in the way of Allah those who fight against you, but do not transgress the limits...» [2:190]

- 7) Those verses which command the believers to respect the treaties that they had with the disbelievers; for example,

﴿قُلْ تَوَلَّوْا أَعْدَاءَكُمْ وَاقْتُلُوهُمْ
مِنْ بَيْنِ يَدَيْهِمْ وَلَا تَلْبِسُوا بَيْنَهُمْ وَلَا تَعْلَمُوا
إِلَّا الْاَلَمِ الْاَلَمِ الْاَلَمِ ۝﴾

«...but if they turn back, then take hold of them, and kill them wherever you find them, and do not take helpers or allies from them. Except those who join a group, between you and whom there is a treaty (of peace)...» [4:89-90]

It can be seen from the examples and categories quoted that, in reality, most of these verses cannot be considered to have been abrogated in the least. Some of them merely apply to situations other than those that they were revealed for. Almost all of these *mansūkh* verses can still be said to apply when the Muslims are in a situation similar to the situation in which these verses were revealed. Thus, the 'Verse of the Sword' in reality does not abrogate a large number of verses; in fact, az-Zarqaanee concludes that it does not abrogate *any* verse!⁵⁹⁷

Another reason why there exists such a difference of opinion is that many scholars failed to understand the meaning of the word '*nāṣiḥ*' when used by a Companion or Successor. As was mentioned earlier, for them, the word '*nāṣiḥ*' did not necessarily mean abrogation. For example, Ibn 'Albaas stated that the verse,

قُلِ الْأَمْوَالُ لِلَّهِ وَالرَّسُولِ

«The spoils of war are for Allah and His Messenger» [8:1]

was 'abrogated' by,

وَأَعْلَمُوا أَنَّمَا غَنِمْتُمْ مِنْ قَبْلِ أَنْ يَقُولَ مُمْسِكْهُ الْوَرِثَةُ وَالرَّسُولُ

«And know that all war-booty that you obtain – one-fifth is for Allah and His Messenger...» [8:41]

However, this is a perfect example of *asphases*, for the second verse clarifies how much of 'the spoils of war' are to be given to the state.

Yet another reason for this difference of opinion is that many verses are understood to be *mansūkh* but in reality are not. For example, many scholars stated that the verse,

وَقُلْ لِلَّهِ الشَّرْقُ وَالْمَغْرِبُ ۚ إِنَّهُ يَتُوبُ إِلَىٰ رِجْلَيْهِ ۚ وَهُوَ الْعَزِيزُ الرَّحِيمُ

«And to Allah belongs the east and west. So wherever you turn (in prayer), you will find the Face of Allah» [2:115]

was abrogated by the verse which commands the believers to face Makkah (verse 2:149). In reality, the first verse is not abrogated, since it is a statement of fact implying that all directions belong to Allah, and Allah has the right to command the believers to face any direction in prayer. As Allah says,

يَسْأَلُ الْغَيَاسُ أَتُوبُونَ أَمْ لَا ۚ وَأَنْتُمْ قُلُوبُكُمْ أَتُوبُونَ أَمْ لَا ۚ إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ الْغَيَاسُ ۚ إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ الْغَيَاسُ ۚ إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ الْغَيَاسُ ۚ

«It is not pety that you turn you face east or west, but (true) pety is (found in) one who believes in Allah...» [2:177]

and,

سَيَقُولُ أَتْلَهُ ۚ مِنَ النَّاسِ مَا وَلَّيْتُمْ مِنْ قِبَلِهِمْ أَنْ يَقُولُوا
عَلَيْهَا قُلُوبُكُمْ ۚ وَالشَّرْقُ وَالْمَغْرِبُ

«The fools among men will say, "What has caused them (the Muslims) to turn from their qiblah that they used to be upon?" Respond: To Allaah belongs the east and west.» [2:142]

Thus, the verse that is claimed to be abrogated is actually not even commanding anything in the first place; it is merely emphasising that all directions belong to Allaah.

A Last Example

Another example in which there is a difference of opinion are the verses concerning the prohibition of alcoholic drinks. This example is taken by the majority of scholars to be a classic case of *nasakh*. Other scholars, however, held the opinion that these verses were not 'abrogated' as such.¹²⁸ Since this particular example also helps to define the exact meaning of *nasakh*, it shall be discussed in greater detail.

There are two verses that are claimed to be *mansukh*. The first one is,

يَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ الْخَمْرِ
وَالْمَيْمِرِ قُلْ فِيهِمَا إِثْمٌ كَبِيرٌ وَمَنْعُوعٌ لِّالشَّرِّ فِيهِمَا
أَكْثَرُ مِنَ الْبَعْرِ

«They ask you concerning wine and gambling. Say: There is much harm in them, and some benefit, but the harm is greater than the benefit» [2:219]

and the second one is,

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا لَا تَقْرَبُوا الصَّلَاةَ وَأَنْتُمْ سُكَرَىٰ

«O you who Believe! Do not approach prayer when you are drunk.» [4:43]

The verse that is considered to be the *mansukh* ruling is,

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا إِنَّمَا الْخَمْرُ وَالْأَسْبَقَرُ وَالْمَيْمِرُ وَالْأَنصَابُ وَالْأَذْنُمُ رِجْسٌ
مِّمَّنْ عَمَلِكُمُ الْفَاسِقِينَ كَذَّبُوا

«O you who believe! Verily, intoxicants, are an abomination of Satan's handiworks, so avoid them» [5:90]

Historically speaking, it was this verse that was understood by the Companions to explicitly prohibit wine, as the previous verses had only limited its consumption. There is no difference of opinion that wine is prohibited, but do these verses constitute valid examples for *nasakh*?

The first '*mansukh*' verse, according to the scholars who claimed that *nasakh* did not occur, is not really *mansukh* at all, there is still much harm and some benefit in wine. The same applies for the second '*mansukh*' verse; Muslims are still prohibited from praying while drunk. Therefore, according to these scholars, since the explicit

meaning of the verses (i.e., the *mansook*) is still applicable, these verses do not come under *naskh*, since no verse was, according to them, 'abrogated.'

In other words, what these scholars are claiming is that the explicit texts of these verses are not abrogated, wine still contains 'much harm and some benefit' and Muslims still cannot 'approach prayers' while they are drunk. Even though the verse prohibiting prayer in a state of drunkenness can be understood to imply that drinking is not prohibited at other times, or in small quantities, this is only an *understanding* of the verse, and not *explicit* in the text.

In order to refute this view, it is essential to go back to the original definition of *naskh*. According to the majority of scholars, if the understanding (*mafhoom*) of a verse is abrogated, this falls under *naskh*. Az-Zarkashee said, "It is possible for the understanding of a verse to have been abrogated, either with the explicit meaning of the verse, or without it."⁵¹⁸ This was also the opinion of the majority of the scholars.

Therefore, in this case, the explicit text (*matn*) of the verse (i.e., "Do not approach prayers in a state of drunkenness") was not abrogated, but the understanding (*mafhoom*) of the verse (i.e., it is permissible to drink, as long as one is not drunk during the time of prayer) was abrogated. This comes under *naskh*.

In the same way, there are many other examples where the scholars are in disagreement over whether to classify certain verses as *nasakh/mansookh* or not. It would not be an exaggeration to say that there is less difference of opinion concerning the *laws* of these verses rather than whether the verses can be considered examples of *naskh*.

Conclusion

This section is concluded by stating that great care needs to be taken when it comes to the number of *nasakh/mansookh* pairs in the Qur'aan. It can definitely be said that there is great exaggeration in some books concerning the number of *nasakh* and *mansookh* pairs in the Qur'aan, but at the same time there is unequivocal proof to show that *naskh* has indeed occurred on several occasions. As as-Sayootee wrote, "In reality, it (meaning *naskh*) is rare, despite the fact that many have exaggerated the number of verses of it."⁵¹⁹

It seems, however, that the number of *nasakh/mansookh* verses in the Qur'aan does not exceed a dozen, and Allaah knows best.⁵²⁰

⁵¹⁸ az-Zarkashee, *al-Baah*, v 4, p. 139.

⁵¹⁹ as-Sayootee, v 2, p. 12.

⁵²⁰ cf. ash-Shanqaar's work, where he concludes that there are only seven cases of *naskh*.

THE MIRACULOUS NATURE OF THE QUR'AAN – I'JAAZ AL-QUR'AAN



1. Definition of I'jaaz

The word *i'jaaz* comes from 'a-j-z, which means 'to be incapable of, to be weak'. Therefore, the miracles that the prophets performed are called *mu'jizat*, since mankind is incapable of performing such feats.

This word is not used in the Qur'aan or Sunnah, and neither did the Companions use it. However, like many other terms in Islamic sciences, it was coined by later scholars and accepted among the *usamah*.¹⁴² Probably the first to use this term was Imam Ahmad ibn Hambal (d. 204 A.H.).¹⁴³

'Mu'jizat' are defined to be acts performed by prophets of a miraculous nature that humans are incapable of imitating. *I'jaaz* is the concept; *Mu'jizat* the actual act. An example of a *mu'jizat* is the transformation of the staff of Moses into a serpent. The Qur'aanic term for this concept is *'ayah*, or *bayyinat*.

There are a number of conditions that the scholars have given for an act to be considered a *mu'jizat*.¹⁴⁴

- 1) It has to occur with the command of Allah.
- 2) It must be out of the ordinary occurrences of nature.
- 3) It cannot be performed again by any person or object.
- 4) It must occur at the hands of a person who claims prophethood.
- 5) The act must match the claim of the prophet. For example, if the prophet claims that he will turn a staff into a snake, but instead it turns into another creature, this will not be considered a *mu'jizat*.

¹⁴² There is no harm in coining new terms to denote acts or concepts that have a basis in Islam, as the naming of a concept does not necessarily fall into *bid'ah*. However, inventing new concepts or acts of a religious nature is a *bid'ah*.

¹⁴³ Fathree, Muhammad Huseef *Muqarrarin I'jaaz al-Qur'aan* and 'Abd al-Qadir al-Jazairi *Musnad Durr*, Cairo-Liège, 1960, p. 13.

¹⁴⁴ *Ibid*, p. 25.

- 6) The act must not refute the prophet's claim. For example, if a prophet claims that a certain stone will speak, and the stone speaks and says that that person is a liar in his claim to prophethood, this will also not be considered a *mu'jizah*.

When applied to Qur'aanic sciences, the term *i'jaz* is used to denote the inimitable quality of the Qur'aan. In other words, the Qur'aan is set apart from all other books in that it cannot be rivalled or imitated. This is exclusive to the Qur'aan; no other book can claim this. No matter how eloquent the poet, how knowledgeable the scholar, how well-versed the grammarian – none can bring forth anything similar to this, since the Qur'aan is the Speech of Allaah, and the difference between the Speech of Allaah and the speech of His Creation is the difference between Allaah and His Creation.³⁴⁵

Other Types of Supernatural Acts

There are other types of miraculous acts, besides *mu'jizat* (plural of *mu'jizah*). When a supernatural act occurs at the hands of a pious person, this act is called a *khawassah*. Thus, the *khawassat* (plural of *khawassah*) are miracles given to the believers of a prophet. In general, the miraculous nature of a *khawassah* is inferior to that of a *mu'jizah*. An example of a *khawassah* is the incident in which two Companions returned to their houses from the mosque of the Prophet (ﷺ) during a dark night, and a light shone in front of them, leading the way. When the time came for them to separate paths, the light split into two and led each one to his house.³⁴⁶

Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.) wrote, concerning *khawassat*: "Many of the scholars have mentioned that, in reality, the *khawassat* of the pious are included in the *mu'jizat* of their prophets, as they are signs and miracles that prove (the truthfulness) of his prophethood. And that is the correct opinion."³⁴⁷ In other words, the very fact that a *khawassah* occurs to one of the followers of a particular prophet is proof of that prophet's truthfulness, and thus can be included in the general *mu'jizat* of that prophet.

When a supposedly 'supernatural' act occurs at the hands of an evil person, such as a magician or an innovator, this is no miracle whatsoever, but rather magic (*sihir*). In fact, these acts have absolutely no miraculous nature to them; they are merely physical feats that can be performed by man or jinn. Due to the fact that the jinn have different physical capabilities than man (for example, they can carry very heavy objects, and travel at extremely fast speeds), certain people might be deceived into presuming these acts to be 'miracles'. In reality, they are only physical acts of the evil jinn, aided by their human counterparts. Therefore, no believer can ever be fooled by the tricks of a magician.

³⁴⁵ The last portion of the sentence, "The difference between...," is a statement of the famous Successor Abul 'Abd al-Rahmaan al-Bulqaani, although some weak narrations trace it to a statement of the Prophet (ﷺ). cf. *al-Lisaa'ah*, v. 2, p. 357.

³⁴⁶ Reported by al-Bukhaari.

³⁴⁷ *Ibid.*, p. 35.

أَمْ يَحْسُرُونَ أَنْ يُبْلَغَ السَّجِرُونَ

'Is this magic? But the magicians will never be successful!' [10:77]

وَلَمَّا اتَّفَقُوا عَلَىٰ

مُوسَىٰ مَا يَشْرِيهِ الْيَهُودُ إِنَّهُ سَوِّطُهُ إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَبْلُغُ

عَمَلُ الْمُفْسِدِينَ ﴿٨١﴾

'And when (the magicians) cast down (what they had), Moses said, 'What you have brought is magic. Surely Allah will destroy it, for Allah does not set right the work of evil-doers.' [10:81]

وَأَلْقَىٰ مَا فِي يَمِينِهِ فَلَظِفَ مَا سَحَرُوا فَمَاحَسَرُوا

كَذَّبُوا بِآيَاتِنَا فَاحْشَرُوا

'And throw (O Moses) what is in your hand! It will swallow up all that they have made. That which they have made is only the trick of a magician, and the magician will never be successful, no matter whatever amount (of skill) he may attain.' [20:68]

Thus, the 'miracles' of the magician are the weakest forms of 'miracles', and cannot in any way rival the real miracles of the *al-haqqaniyat* and *awjaniyat*.

ii. The Proof for Ijaaz

Part of the *Sannat* of Allaah is that whenever He sends a prophet, He gives that prophet certain miracles and signs to prove his prophethood to his people. The miracles of Moosaa, 'Eesaa and the other prophets are well-known to all Muslims. Allaah says,

وَرَسُولًا إِلَىٰ بَنِي إِسْرَءِيلَ أَنِّي قَدْ أَرْسَلْتُكَ بِرُوحِنَا مُوسَىٰ

أَنِّي أَنزَلْتُ لَكَ الْفُلَّ وَجَعَلْنَاهُ لَكَ مَلَكًا وَسَوَّيْنَاهُ

فَبْنِوْا عَلَيْهِ صَوْرَةَ الْبَنَاتِ وَأَتْرَفْنَاهُ الْوُثْيَنَ وَالْأَنْصَارَ

وَأَتَىٰ الْكَلْبَ وَبَدَأَ يَتَعَصَّىٰ عَلَيْهِمْ يَتْلُو عَلَيْهِمْ وَتَوَلَّىٰ وَخَمَسُونَ

فِي يَوْمٍ يَعْلَمُونَ إِنِّي وَلِيُّ الْكَافِرِينَ لَعْنَةُ الْكَافِرِينَ فَتُؤْمِنُونَ ﴿٤١﴾

'And We will make from ('Eesaa) a Messenger to the Children of Israa'eel, (saying), 'I have come to you with a sign from your Lord, that I design for you out of clay, as it were, the figure of a bird, and breathe into it, and it becomes a bird by Allaah's leave, and I had here who was born blind, and the leper, and I bring the dead to life by Allaah's Leave. And I inform you of what you eat, and what you store in your houses.' Surely, therein is a sign for you, if you believe.' [3:49]

So many, in fact, are the miracles that were given to certain nations, that Allah send,

سَلِّمْ عَلَىٰ بَنِي إِسْرَءِيلَ ۖ وَلَٰكُم مَّا كَانَتْ لَكُمْ مِنْ أَمْنِهِمْ يَنْتَوُونَ

«And (just) ask the Children of Israel! how many miracles We gave them...»
[2:241]

Despite all these miracles, however, the majority of people rejected their prophets.

The disbelievers of Makkah were no exception to the disbelievers of old, and rejected the call of the Prophet (ﷺ). They asked him for miracle after miracle.

وَلَا إِلَٰهَ إِلَّا هُوَ ۚ فَكَيْفَ تَسْتَغْثَرُونَ
الْأَرْضَ مِنْهُ ۖ إِنَّهُ لَوَكُونُ لَكُمْ جَنَّةٌ مِّنْ جَنِّبِهِ ۖ وَكَفَّيْكُمْ
الْأَنْهَارَ بِقُلُوبِهَا أَفَبُغِيضٍ لَّكُمْ ۖ لَوْ شِئْتَ لَتَكُونَنَّ
زُعْفَىٰ ۖ أَوْ لَكُنَّ مِنَ الْهَاطِلِ فَكَيْفَ تَقِيلُ ۖ
لَوْ يَكُونُ لَكُمْ دِينَارٌ مِّنْ ذُرِّيَّتِهِ أَوْ تَرَىٰ فِي السَّمَاءِ وَلَّىٰ قَوْمٍ
بِزُفٍّ ۚ فَكَيْفَ تَنزِلُ ۖ أَلَيْسَ لَكُم مَّا تُفَرِّقُونَ ۖ قُلْ شَهِدَ اللَّهُ أَنِّي
كَأَنَّمَا لَأَيُّكُمْ رَسُولٌ ۚ

«And they say, 'We shall not believe in you until you cause a spring to gush forth from the earth for us; Or you have a garden of date palms and grapes, and cause rivers to gush forth as their midst abundantly; Or you cause the heavens to fall upon us in pieces, as you have pretended, or you bring Allah and the angels before (us) face-to-face; Or you have a house of innumerable material (i.e., gold and silver), or you ascend up into the sky and even then we will put no faith in your ascension until you bring down for us a book that we would read?' Answer them (O Muhammad), 'Glorified be my Lord! I am just a man, sent as a Messenger'» [17:90-94]

In another place, the result of the showing of these miracles has been told,

وَلَوْ أَنزَلْنَا إِلَيْهِمُ الْمَائِدَةَ وَفَجَّرْنَا لَّهُمْ أَنْهَارًا وَجَعَلْنَا
عَلَيْهِمْ جُلُودًا مِّنْ نَّحْوِ مَا كَانُوا يُيَسَّرُونَ ۖ إِلَّا أَن يُشَاءَ اللَّهُ وَلَٰكِنْ
أَصْحَابُ هِمْلٍ ۚ

«And even if We had sent down unto them angels, and the dead had spoken so there, and We had gathered together all things before their very eyes, even then they would not have believed, unless Allah willed, but most of them behave ignorantly!» [6:114]

Allaah then tells the disbelievers the ultimate miracle that the Prophet (ﷺ) has been given:

وَقَالُوا لَوْلَا آيَاتُ رَبِّكَ عَلَيْنَا
 مَا نَبَتْ مِن دُونِهِ قُلْ إِنَّمَا آيَاتُكَ وَمَا أَنَا إِلَّا نَذِيرٌ
 مُّبِينٌ ﴿٢٨﴾ أَوَلَمْ تَكْذِبُوا أَنَّا نُرْسِلُ عَلَيْكَ آيَاتِنَا فَتَكْفُرُ
 بِهَا وَيَقُولُ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا أَنِ اسْمُ الْفَاتِنِ
 يُرْسِلُكَ ۖ ﴿٢٩﴾

«And they say, 'Why are not miracles sent down to him from his Lord?' Say 'The signs are only with Allaah, and I am only a plain warner.' *Is Allah a sufficient (miracle) for them that We have sent down to you the Book which is recited to them?* Verily, heaven is a treasury and a remainder for a people who believe» [28:30-1]

Even this, however, was not sufficient for the disbelieving Makkans. They claimed that the Prophet (ﷺ) was a liar who forged the Qur'aan, or a magician, or one possessed by *jinn*. They even claimed that they could imitate the Qur'aan:

وَلَمَّا قُلْنَا عَلَيْهِمْ هَاتِنَا
 فَاتُّواهُم بِسُوءِ تَوَكُّلٍ أَتَيْنَا أَشِدَّ عَلَى الْمَكِينِ
 ﴿٣٠﴾

«And when Our verses are recited to them, they say, 'We have heard this! If we wish, we can say something similar to it. These are nothing but stories of old'» [31]

In response to this, Allaah challenged them to fulfil this claim of theirs:

The Challenge!

These verses are called the verses of *sabaddi* (challenge), and this challenge proves the inimitable and miraculous quality of the Qur'aan.

There are five verses that issue the *sabaddi*. They are, in the order that they occur in the Qur'aan, as follows:

وَلَمَّا حُشِرَ فِي رَوْسٍ وَمَكَرُوا مَكْرًا
 فَاتُّوا بِسُوءِ تَوَكُّلٍ وَكَانُوا فِي دُورٍ الْغُرُ
 ۖ ﴿٣١﴾ إِن كُنتُمْ تَهْتَكُونَ ۖ إِن كُنتُمْ تَقُولُونَ
 لَنَنصُرَنَّكَ إِن كُنتُمْ تَعْلَمُونَ ۖ ﴿٣٢﴾

- 1) The initial challenge was to produce something similar to the whole Qur'aan. This was then reduced to ten *suraah*, then to finally to one *suraah*. This is the most common opinion, and is the opinion of Ibn Kathir (d. 774 A.H.).
- 2) The initial challenge was to produce only one *suraah* (10:38). This was then increased to ten *suraah*, then to the whole Qur'aan. Finally, in the last of these verses revealed (2:24), Allah reduced the challenge back to one *suraah*.
- 3) The initial challenge was to produce the whole Qur'aan. When they were unable to do this, the challenge was reduced to ten *suraah* that would imitate the Qur'aan in prose and syntax, but not in content. Lastly, the challenge was reduced to one *suraah* that matched the Qur'aan in prose and content. This is the opinion of az-Zarkashi in his *al-Baraa'im*.⁵⁴⁹
- 4) There is no graduality in these challenges. In other words, in each verse Allah is challenging the same thing: to produce something similar to the Qur'aan, be it in one *suraah*, ten *suraah* or the whole Qur'aan. It is the *quality* of the Qur'aan that must be imitated if the challenge is to be met, and not the *quantity*.

Of these four opinions, the third one (which is very similar to the first opinion) seems to have the strongest proof.⁵⁵⁰ This is because the Qur'aan uses the word 'forged' when issuing the challenge to produce ten *suraah* similar to the Qur'aan, whereas this qualification is not mentioned in any other verse. This hints to the fact that these ten *suraah* did not have to be as 'authentic' as the other imitations. In other words, the content of these ten *suraah* did not have to have *i'jaaz*; it was only the *prose* that had to be imitated. When the Quraysh were unable to do even this, the challenge was reduced to one *suraah* (10:38), and, lastly, the final challenge and prediction given:

فَإِنْ لَّمْ تَفْعَلُوا وَلَنْ تَفْعَلُوا فَاتَّقُوا
الْيَوْمَ الَّذِي وَفُّوا هَٰذَا النَّاسَ وَلَهُمْ أَعْدَاءُ كَثِيرٌ

-But if you do not do it – and if a society you cannot do it – then fear the Day
whose fuel are men and stones, prepared for the disbelievers- [2:23-24]

Another question that must be answered is whether this challenge is still operative, or was it meant only for the disbelievers during the Prophet's (ﷺ) time? The Arabs during the time of the Prophet (ﷺ) used to pride themselves in their skill of poetry and their eloquence, so Allah issued this challenge to them. However, this does not mean that this challenge was only meant for them, since the Qur'aan is meant to be a miracle until the Day of Judgement. The truth of the matter is that there is still an open challenge to 'all of *jinns* and mankind' to produce something similar to the Qur'aan, and this challenge will continue to be operative until the Day of Judgement.

⁵⁴⁹ az-Zarkashi, v. 2, p. 110

⁵⁵⁰ cf. ib., p. 123

III. The Qur'aan as the Miracle of the Prophet (ﷺ)

The Qur'aan is the miracle of the Prophet (ﷺ). He (ﷺ) was given this miracle as the ultimate proof of his prophethood.

وَقَالُوا لَا تَنْزِيلَ إِلَّا إِلَهُكُمُ
مَا نَسْتَفِيقُونَ رَبِّيَ يَقُولُ الْأَبْرَارُ وَمَا تَنْزِيلُ إِلَّا أَنبَاءُ
مُتَّبِعِينَ ۝ أَوَلَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ الْبَرَاءَةُ إِذْ قَالَ اللَّهُ إِنِّي مَعَهُ
بِتِلْكَ آيَاتِي وَلَئِنْ نَسِيتُ لَتُذَكِّرُنَّ فِي بَيْتِهِ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَتَّقُونَ ۝

«And they say, 'Why are not miracles sent down to him from his Lord?' Say: 'The signs are only with Allaah, and I am only a plain warner.' Is it not a sufficient (miracle) for them that We have sent down to you the Book which is a reminder to them? Surely, herein is a mercy and a reminder for a people who believe.» [29:50-1]

When the disbelievers asked for miracles from the Prophet (ﷺ), Allaah revealed that the Qur'aan itself is sufficient as a miracle.

The Prophet (ﷺ) also alluded to the status of the miracle of the Qur'aan when he said, "There has not been a single prophet except that Allaah gave him miracles because of which people believed in him. I have been given (as my miracle) the Inspiration (i.e., the Qur'aan) which Allaah revealed to me. I hope, therefore, that I will have the largest number of followers on the Day of Judgement."⁹⁹¹

The fact that the Prophet (ﷺ) said that he hoped he would have the most number of followers on the Day of Judgement shows that his miracle, that of the Qur'aan, is greater than any miracle that any previous prophet was given. The beauty of this miracle can best be appreciated in the concept of *i'jaaz*.

The Qur'aan is not the only miracle that was given to the Prophet (ﷺ). Among his other miracles was the splitting of the moon in half, the increase of an inadequate amount of food to a very large quantity, the speaking of stones, animals and trees to him, and the spouting of water from his (ﷺ) hands when the Companions were short of it.⁹⁹² However, none of these miracles were permanent – they occurred in front of specific groups of people at specific times and places. There exist detailed narrations concerning these events, and the Muslims must believe in them. The fact remains, however, that later generations must believe in the narrations of those present at the time of the miracle, for they themselves were not present.

⁹⁹¹ al-Bukhaaree.

⁹⁹² There are more miracles than these. See al-Waada'i, *Muqbil ibn Hudaib*, *Jaahid al-Musallim wa Dalal' al-an-Nabawiah*, Dar al-Arqam, Kuwait, 1987, for one of the most authentic lists.

Man being the frail creature that he is, the impact of the written word is much less than the impact of sight. These miracles of a surety occurred, but the effect that these miracles had on those who saw them is much greater than the impact that it will have on later generations who merely read about them. The beauty and the power of the *I'jaaz* of the Qur'aan is that it removes the constraints of time and place upon the miracle – the Qur'aan is a permanent miracle for all generations after the Prophet (ﷺ) to see and appreciate, no matter where they live, or what time frame they are born in.

The famous Muslim historian and sociologist, Ibn Khaldun (d. 808 A.H.), states in his *Muqaddimah*:

Know that the greatest of all miracles, and the most sacred and blessed, and the clearest in proof, is the Qur'aan that was revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ). This is because all other miracles, in general, were brought forth separate from the actual inspiration (that the prophet received), as a means of proving the truthfulness of the inspiration. As for the Qur'aan, it is the inspiration and the miracle *in one*, and is therefore not in need of any external miracles (to prove itself), unlike all the previous inspirations. It is, therefore, the clearest and most powerful miracle, since it combines the *hoor* and the *proof* in one (for, it combines the *hoor* that it is the truth from Allah, and the *proof* for the *hoor*). This is the meaning of the Prophet's (ﷺ) *wa'ee* (what I mean), 'I do hope, therefore, that I will have the largest number of followers on the Day of Judgement.' This shows that a miracle as clear and powerful as this one – for it is the inspiration *in its essence* – must have the greatest number of believers and followers.¹³³

And Shaykh al-Islam Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.) wrote,

'The greatest (of all miracles) is the Qur'aan that the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) came with, for it is the religion of Allah and His Speech, and it is the proof of the prophethood of Muhammad (ﷺ). Its very revelation is one of the most supernatural and extraordinary of acts, for it is the call (to the worship of Allah), and the proof (of the prophethood of Muhammad (ﷺ)), and the miracle (all in one)!'¹³⁴

IV. The Types of *I'jaaz*

How is the Qur'aan inimitable? In other words, what aspect of the Qur'aan makes it so miraculous? And what are those aspects of the Qur'aan that cannot be imitated?

There have been numerous responses by the scholars of *'illoom al-Qur'aan*, the Arabic of the Qur'aan; the laws and *sharai'ah* that the Qur'aan came with; the predictions that it gives; the diligence with which it was preserved, and so forth. In reality, the correct opinion is that all of these aspects, and more, form an integral part of the

¹³³ *Ibid.*, p. 111.

¹³⁴ *Majma' al-Fatawa*, vii, p. 324.

i'jaz of the Qur'aan. In other words, the beauty of the Qur'aan is that it is not just miraculous in one facet, but rather from all facets and angles that one can look at it.

As-Zarkashee, in trying to answer how the Qur'aan is an example of *i'jaz*, quotes over a dozen aspects of *i'jaz*, and then concludes, "...the statement of those who have researched the issue thoroughly is that the *i'jaz* of the Qur'aan is due to all of the previous factors simultaneously, and not by any one of them only. For (the *i'jaz*) is in combining all of these facets..."³⁹⁵

The scholar Muhammad ibn Juzay al-Kalbee (d. 741 A.H.) divided the *i'jaz* of the Qur'aan into ten categories:

- 1) The eloquence of the Qur'aan above that of any human speech.
- 2) The unique arrangement and organization of its verses and *surahs*, and the manner in which the words are arranged.
- 3) The impossibility to produce anything similar to it by the disbelievers during the Prophet's (ﷺ) time and those after them.
- 4) The stories and accounts of the nations and prophets of old, since the Prophet (ﷺ) had no recourse to such information.
- 5) The predictions which occurred in the Qur'aan, and which later came true.
- 6) The Names and Attributes of Allah, all Glory be to Him, and the attribution of all that Benefits Him, and the negation of all that does not Benefit Him, and the call of the Creator to the created to worship Him (in other words, the perfect *iqbalah*). All of this is not possible for a human to bring forth, unless he was inspired by Allah.
- 7) The laws and *shara'e'ah* that the Qur'aan came with, and the morals and conduct that it called for. All of this leads to the betterment of life in this world and in the Hereafter. The perfection of a set of laws that can be applied to any society at any time and place is humanly impossible, and the *shara'e'ah* is the only example of such a set of laws.
- 8) The fact that it has been protected and remained unchanged over such a long period of time, despite the fact that all other religious books have been distorted.
- 9) The ease by which it is memorised, and this is known by experience and observation. This is in contrast to all other religious books, for none of them are memorised like the Qur'aan.
- 10) The deep meanings that are present in it, and the fact that a reader never tires of reading the Qur'aan, no matter how many times he has heard it or read it. This is in contrast to any other book, since a person cannot read it more than a few times without it getting monotonous and mundane.³⁹⁶

³⁹⁵ As-Zarkashee, v. 2, p. 106.

³⁹⁶ Paraphrased from Darwish, p. 56.

Again, the *i'jaaz* of the Qur'aan cannot be limited to one list. There are other aspects of the *i'jaaz* of the Qur'aan that have not been mentioned in this list, including the Qur'aan's stating of scientific facts that were unknown at the time of the Prophet (ﷺ), the impact that it has on those who listen to it, the miraculous nature of the *ahraf*, and what remains of them in the *qira'at*, the euphonious quality of the Qur'aan, and many more aspects. Some of these aspects will be discussed in greater detail below.³⁴⁷

A. THE LANGUAGE AND STYLE OF THE QUR'AAN

The miracles that were given to the prophets were chosen so that they would have the greatest impact on that particular nation. Thus, since the people of the time of Moosaa greatly excelled in the 'art' of sorcery and magic, the miracles that were given to Moosaa were of a similar type, except much stronger and more powerful (for example, the staff, the shining hand, the splitting of the Nile, and others). Likewise, the people at the time of 'Eesaa excelled in the art of healing and medicine, and therefore, the miracles that were given to 'Eesaa were of a similar type (for example, healing the leper, curing the sick, raising the dead, and others).³⁴⁸

During the time of the Prophet (ﷺ), the Arabs had reached the peak of eloquence, and this was their most prized art! Poetry was what they valued the most, and each tribe competed with others to see which one could produce the most skilled and eloquent poet. During the annual fair of 'Ukazah, poets from all over Arabia would compete for the honour of having their poem was the highest praise that of being posted on the door of the Ka'bah until the next fair.

Due to this pride that was prevalent among the Arabs, the miracle that was given to the Prophet (ﷺ) was of a similar nature; Allaah revealed the Qur'aan in an Arabic that was so emotive and eloquent that the Arabs could clearly see it was a miracle from their Creator. On top of this, Allaah challenged them to bring forth anything similar to the Qur'aan, and told them that such attempts would be futile.

وَلَا يَسْتَكْبِرُونَ فِي رَبِّهِمْ إِنَّهُمَا زَاكَّانَ تَيَّابُونَ
فَذُكِّرُوا بِشُورَةٍ مِنْ قَبْلِهِمْ. وَآذَنُوا شَهْدَ آدَمَ بْنِ دَاوُدَ الْمَلِكِ
إِنْ كُنْتُمْ سَادِقِينَ ﴿٣٤٨﴾ فَإِنْ لَمْ تَقْعَلُوا وَلَنْ تَقْعَلُوا مَا أَكْفَرُوا
الَّذِينَ آتَى وَفُورَهَا النَّاسَ وَالْجَعْدَةَ أَهْلَتْ بِالْكَفْرِ ﴿٣٤٩﴾

³⁴⁷ Some of the aspects of *i'jaaz* have already been discussed, such as the compilation of the Qur'aan, the diligence with which all the knowledge that is essential to understand the Qur'aan has been preserved (such as *ahraf*, *on-missal*, *nasikh* and *mansukh* verses, *muwajjah* and *munawjjah*, etc.), and the *ahraf* and *qira'at*. It would, in fact, be no exaggeration to say that every chapter in this book is merely a discussion of one of the many facets of *i'jaaz*.

‘And if you are in doubt as to what We have sent down to Our servants, then produce a *surah* similar to it... if you are truthful. But if you do not do it – and of a *surah* you cannot do it – then fear the Fire whose fuel are men and stones, prepared for the disbelievers’ (2:23–24)

Some of the aspects of the literary *‘ijaz* of the Qur’ān are as follows:⁵⁵⁹

- 1) The placement of a particular word in perfect context, over its synonyms. The connotations given by the chosen word are better than those that would have been given by its synonyms.
- 2) The unique sentence structure and syntax, which does not follow any one pattern but varies throughout the Qur’ān. Each style is unique, and its rhythm clear and resounding.
- 3) The use of different tenses (past vs. present, plural vs. singular, etc.) to give deeper meanings to a passage.
- 4) The pronunciation of a word matches its context. In other words, when discussing topics that are encouraging and bearing glad tidings, it uses words that are easy to pronounce and melodious to hear, and vice-versa.
- 5) The perfect combination of conciseness and detail. When the subject requires elaboration, the Qur’ān discusses the topic in detail, and when a short phrase will get the message across, it remains brief.

Ab-Arthur University also summarised the various types of literary *‘ijaz*. Their list is as follows:⁵⁶⁰

- 1) The form of the Qur’ān reflects neither the sedentary softness of the townsmen nor the nomadic roughness of the Bedouins. It possesses in right measure the sweetness of the former and the vigour of the latter.
- 2) The rhythms of the syllables are more sustained than in prose and less patterned than in poetry. The pauses come neither in prose form nor in the manner of poetry but with a harmonious and melodic flow.
- 3) The sentences are constructed in an elegant manner which uses the smallest number of words, without sounding too brief, to express ideas of utmost richness.
- 4) The Qur’ānic words neither transgress by their banality nor by their extreme rarity, but are recognised as expressing admirable nobility.
- 5) The conciseness of expression attains such a striking clarity that the least learned Arabic-speaking person can understand the Qur’ān without difficulty. At the same time there is such a profundity, flexibility, inspiration and radiance in the Qur’ān that it serves as the basis for the principles and rules of Islamic sciences and arts for theology and the juridical schools. Thus, it is almost impossible to express the ideas of the text by only one interpretation, either in Arabic or in any other language even with the greatest care.

559 cf. ib. pp. 199–280; Qasbiyan, pp. 264–268; Ubaydast, p. 324.

560 Taken verbatim from Khulafā, p. 24–25.

- 6) There is a perfect blend between the two antagonistic powers of reason and emotion, intellect and feeling. In the narrations, arguments, doctrines, laws, and moral principles, the words have both persuasive teaching and emotive force. Throughout the whole Qur'aan the speech maintains its surprising solemnity, power and majesty which nothing can disturb.

The literary aspect of *Ijaaz*, although the strongest and most apparent aspect of *Ijaaz*, is the most difficult aspect to discuss in a non-Arabic work. The Qur'aan is an "Literate Arabic" (26-195), and in order to understand this concept of *Ijaaz*, a thorough understanding of the Arabic language is essential.

Instead of detailing and giving examples of these various aspects of literary *Ijaaz* – a task which is well-nigh impossible to do in a foreign language – it would perhaps be more prudent to give a few examples of the impact that the eloquence of the Qur'aan had on its first listeners.

Perhaps one of the most famous stories is the story of al-Waleed ibn al-Mugheerah. Al-Waleed was the most eloquent and highly esteemed poet of Makkah at the time of the Prophet (ﷺ). He once passed by the Prophet (ﷺ), and heard him reciting the Qur'aan. This had a visible effect on him, and he went away shaken and startled by what he had heard. The news of this incident spread throughout Makkah. Abou Jahl, afraid that the people of Makkah might be affected by this news and convert to Islam, rushed to al-Waleed, and told him, "O my uncle! Say something (against Muhammad) so that the people will know that you are against him and have (his message)."

Al-Waleed replied, "And what can I say? For I swear by Allaah, there is none amongst you who knows poetry as well as I do, nor can any compete with me in composition or rhetoric – not even in the poetry of *jumal*! And yet, I swear by Allaah, Muhammad's speech (meaning the Qur'aan) does not bear any similarity to anything I know, and I swear by Allaah, the speech that he says is very sweet, and is adorned with beauty and charm. Its first part is fruitful and its last part is abundant (meaning that it is full of deep meanings), and it conquers (all other speech), and remains unconquered! It shatters and destroys all that has come before it (of poetry, because of its eloquence)!" Abou Jahl responded, "Your people will not be satisfied until you speak against him!" Al-Waleed therefore requested Abou Jahl, "Leave me for a few days, so that I may think of an appropriate response to give to the Quraysh." After the few days were over, Abou Jahl came back to him and asked him what he had prepared. Al-Waleed, during this time, could not think of any explanation to give except, "This (the Qur'aan) is a type of magic that has an effect on its listeners." In response to this, Allaah revealed,

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَبِالْإِسْلَامِ آمَنَّا ۝ لَا تَرْفَعُ رَأْسَكَ
فِي الْكَرْبَةِ ۝ تَتَذَكَّرُ الْبَدْرَ ۝ تَتَذَكَّرُ الْبَدْرَ ۝ تَتَذَكَّرُ الْبَدْرَ ۝
تَتَذَكَّرُ الْبَدْرَ ۝ تَتَذَكَّرُ الْبَدْرَ ۝ تَتَذَكَّرُ الْبَدْرَ ۝
تَتَذَكَّرُ الْبَدْرَ ۝ تَتَذَكَّرُ الْبَدْرَ ۝ تَتَذَكَّرُ الْبَدْرَ ۝

-Nay! Verily he (i.e., al-Waleed) has been stubborn in opposing our verses and signs... Verily, he thought and plotted, So let him be cursed, how he plotted! And once more let him be cursed, how he plotted! Then he thought! Then he frowned and was unmoved, then he turned back and was proud! Then he said, "This is nothing but magic from old, this is nothing but the word of a mortal!" I will cast him into the Hell-fire." - [74:16-26]⁵⁶¹

Thus, then, is the testimony from the greatest poet alive at the time of the Prophet (ﷺ)⁵⁶²

Yet another incident is that of 'Utbah ibn Rabe'e'. 'Utbah was once sitting with other members of the Quraysh, and the subject of Muḥammad (ﷺ) came up. The elders of the Quraysh began complaining about all the problems that this 'new' message had caused among their people, and started to discuss various ways that they could rid themselves of this irritating problem. 'Utbah suggested that perhaps the Prophet (ﷺ) could be convinced of giving up his message, if only it was explained to him in a gentle manner the problems that his message had been causing. Common sense, 'Utbah argued, would prevail. As proof of his convictions, 'Utbah himself volunteered to be the one to go and talk to the Prophet (ﷺ).

He therefore set out to meet the Prophet (ﷺ), and started to try to convince him (ﷺ) to abandon preaching this 'new' message, and let the Quraysh return to the paganism of their ancestors. After finishing his plea to the Prophet (ﷺ), he (ﷺ) asked, "Have you finished, O Abso al-Waleed (the *uncle* of 'Utbah)?" When he replied in the affirmative, the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Then listen to me:

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ
 حَمْدٌ ① تَبْلُغُ مِنَ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ ② كَتَبَ مُبَشِّرَاتٌ
 مَا تَكُنُ أَفْرَاقُهَا الْقَوِيُّ يَتْلُوهُ ③ نَبِيٌّ وَرَسُولٌ ④
 أَكْثَرُ قَوْمٍ فَهَمٌ لَا يَسْتَعْمِلُونَ ⑤

-In the name of Allah, the Ever-Merciful, the Bestower of Mercy *Has Mercy*. A revelation from Allah, the Ever-Merciful, the Bestower of Mercy (This is) a book whose verses are explained in detail – a Qur'aan in Arabic, for a people who reflect. Giving glad tidings, and warning of (a severe punishment). But most of them turn away, so they listen not. - [41:1-6]

The Prophet (ﷺ) continued to recite, until he finished the *surah*. 'Utbah sat quietly, entranced by what he was hearing. Then the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "You have heard what you have heard, so do as you please."

When 'Utbah returned to his people, they said to themselves, "I swear by the Lord of the Ka'bah, that 'Utbah is not the same as the 'Utbah that left us!"

⁵⁶¹ Ubaidat, p. 225 from *Sorah bin Hisham*, v.1, p.270. Any person who understands even the most basic amount of Arabic can not help but notice the sheer power and eloquence of these very verses themselves!

And indeed, it was not the same 'Urbah. He said, "O people! I have heard a speech the like of which I have never heard before. I swear by Allaah, it is not magic, nor is it poetry, nor is it sorcery. O gathering of Quraysh, listen to me. Leave this man alone, for I swear by Allaah, the speech that I have heard from him (meaning the Qur'aan) will soon be news (among the other tribes)."⁹⁶² meaning that the Qur'aan will be the cause of some great event among the Arabs.

Another Companion, Unays al-Ghifariyy, was also one of the many people who clearly saw the beauty of the Qur'aan. Unays was one of the famous poets of Arabia. He once went to Makkah to do some trading, and happened to come across the Prophet (ﷺ), and listened to him recite the Qur'aan. So attracted was he to this recitation, that he was delayed from returning to his caravan. When he finally arrived, he was asked the reason for his delay. He responded, "I have met a person in Makkah who claims to be sent by Allaah. The people claim that he is a poet, or a sorcerer, or a magician. Yet, I have heard the words of sorcerers, and these words in no way resemble those uttered by a sorcerer. And I also compared his words to the verses of a poet, but such words cannot be uttered by a poet. By Allaah, he is the truthful, and they are the liars!"⁹⁶³

Yet another story is that of Jubayr ibn Mu'tim. Jubayr once heard the Prophet (ﷺ) recite *Soorah al-Isa* in the Maghrib prayer, and he was not a Muslim at that time. He narrates, "I heard the Prophet (ﷺ) recite *Soorah al-Isa* in the Maghrib prayer, and it was the first time Islam entered and settled in my heart." In another narration, he said, "...and it was as if my heart was about to fly (because of its beauty)"⁹⁶⁴ And the story of 'Umar's conversion is well-known. After listening to *Soorah al-Fa*, he said, "How beautiful and eloquent is this speech!" and immediately went to the Prophet (ﷺ) to announce his conversion.

In fact, so obvious is the eloquence of the Qur'aan, that even those who have tried to imitate it have miserably failed. After the Prophet's (ﷺ) death, Musaylamah 'the Liar', who had claimed to be a prophet, started to rebel against the Muslim state under the new caliphate of Abuu Bakr. The Companion 'Amr ibn al-'Aas was traveling in the vicinity of Musaylamah, and Musaylamah's people found him and brought him to Musaylamah. 'Amr asked Musaylamah whether he had received any 'revelation'. Musaylamah replied that he had, and started to quote it to 'Amr. After he had quoted three 'verses', 'Amr could not contain his patience anymore, and burst out, "You know as well as I do that you are among the liars!" With that, 'Amr left Musaylamah's camp, and returned to Madeenah. In another incident, two messengers of Musaylamah came to Abuu Bakr, and recited to him some of Musaylamah's 'revelations'. Abuu Bakr replied, "*Sadgaan Allaah!*" Woe to you! This speech is not divine! How is he managing to mislead you (with it)!"⁹⁶⁵

⁹⁶² Itz, p. 142

⁹⁶³ Narrated by Muslim

⁹⁶⁴ Narrated by al-Bukhaaree

⁹⁶⁵ Itz, p. 151. Among the 'revelations' of Musaylamah are the following 'verses': "The frog! Daughter of two frogs! We protect what you protect! Your top part is in water, and your bottom part is on land. Neither do you stop the one walking a drink, nor do you quench the water! To us belongs half the earth, and to Quraysh the other half, but the Quraysh are a rebellious people." There is no much in common concerning the eloquence of these verses, for other examples at Musaylamah's literary 'genre', cf. Itz, pp. 150-151.

The eloquence and beauty of the Qur'aan is so great that it is considered to be the ultimate authority and reference work for Arabic rhetoric, grammar and syntax, even by non-Muslim Arabs.⁵⁶⁶

To conclude, it is appropriate to quote the famous scholar Ibn al-Atheer (d. 606 A.H.), who said: "If we begin to investigate into the wisdom and secrets of the eloquence of the noble Qur'aan, we sail into a deep ocean that has no escape from it!"⁵⁶⁷

B. THE PREDICTIONS OF THE QUR'AAN

The Qur'aan contains many predictions of the events to come in the future. Included in this category are all the descriptions of the Day of Judgement, and Heaven and Hell. However, when these events come true,

لَا يَنْفَعُ نَفْسًا إِذَا ضَلَّتْ سَاعَتَهَا مِنَ الْقَدْرِ

«...no good will it do to a person to believe then, if he had not believed before.» [6:158]

Without a doubt, though, the greatest prediction of the Qur'aan is concerning its own *ʿaam*. In other words, the Qur'aan has predicted that it will remain unrivalled and unlimited for all of eternity.

قُلْ لِي أَخْبَرُكُمْ بِالْأَشْيَاءِ الَّتِي كُنْتُمْ تَعْمَلُونَ ۚ هَٰذَا الْقُرْآنُ
لَا يَأْتُونَ بِشَيْءٍ مِّثْلِهِ وَلَوْ كَانَتْ كُلُّ سَمَاءٍ رِجْسًا

«Say, let all of mankind and jinn gathered together to produce the like of the Qur'aan, they could not produce it – even if they helped one another!» [17:88]

The futility of trying to imitate the Qur'aan has explicitly been foretold:

فَإِنْ لَّمْ تَفْعَلُوا وَلَوْ كُنْتُمْ فَاعِلِينَ ۚ
لَا تَنفَعُ الْإِنْسَانَ شَيْءٌ إِذَا فَلَاحَ الْآخِرَةُ

«And if you are in doubt as to what We have sent down to Our servants, then produce a *soorah* similar to it... if you are truthful. But if you do not do it – and of a surety you cannot do it – then fear the Fire whose fuel are men and stones, prepared for the disbelievers» [2:23-24]

Ibn Kathir (d. 774 A.H.), commenting on this verse, said, "...and of a surety you cannot do it...", meaning that this is a challenge for all of eternity, and this, in itself, is another miracle, since Allaah has predicted, in very certain and sure terms, without any doubt or fear, that nothing will be able to match this Qur'aan, for all of eternity. And this is exactly what has occurred! None have successfully challenged it to this day

⁵⁶⁶ cf. Ubaydasi, p. 224

⁵⁶⁷ *ib.* p. 206.

of ours, and neither can they do so, for how can they do so when the Qur'aan is the *ghaam* of Allah...⁵⁶⁸

The Qur'aan has also predicted the fact that it will remain uncorrupted and preserved for all of eternity.

بَلَدْنَاهُ لَكَ الْكَرِيمَ ۖ وَنَحْنُ نَحْفَظُهُ ۚ ۝١٥٩

Verily, it is We who have revealed the Qur'aan, and of a surety We will guard it (from corruption) – [15:9]

There are also predictions related to worldly events. For example, the Qur'aan predicted the outcome of a battle that would occur between the Romans and the Persians. Before the advent of Islam, the Persians had attacked the Romans, and conquered a part of Syria, which had been under Roman control. A few years before the *hijrah* of the Prophet (ﷺ), the Romans attacked back, and tried to regain their lost territory. The Muslims in Makkah were hoping that the Romans would win, so they were Christians (and thus closer in faith to them), while the disbelievers of Makkah were hoping that the Persians would win, since they were fire-worshippers. During this battle, the Persians won, and this was a cause of great celebration for the disbelievers of Makkah. At this, Allah revealed,

الَّذِينَ ظَلَمُوا رُومَ ۖ وَآتَى الْأَرْضَ وَهُمْ يَتَعَدُّونَ ۚ ۝١
عَلَيْهِمْ سَعْيُهُمْ ۖ فِي رِجَالِهِمْ يَرْجُونَ ۚ ۝٢
فَإِذَا زُلْزِلَتْ أَسْوَاقُ الْعَرَبِ ۖ فَهُمْ يَنْصَرُونَ ۚ ۝٣

–*Alif-Lam-Mim*. The Romans have been defeated. In a land nearby, and they, after their defeat, will soon be victorious. Within three to six years...⁵⁶⁹
– and on that day, the Muslims will rejoice with the help of Allah – [30:1-3]

5]

Exactly seven years after the revelation of these verses, the Romans attacked the Persians again, and this time they were victorious, and managed to regain their territory. This battle occurred on the same day as the Battle of Badr, when the Muslims were themselves 'rejoicing' because of their victory over the Quraysh. Thus, this verse predicted two events: the victory of the Romans, and the victory of the Muslims.⁵⁷⁰

Other predictions also tell of the victory in the Battle of Badr (54:45), the eventual conquest of Makkah (48:27), and the establishment of Islam as the ruling authority in the land (24:55). Even though there are not a large number of predictions of this nature in the Qur'aan, they are nonetheless an integral aspect of the concept of *ijaaz*.

⁵⁶⁸ Ibn Kathir, v. 1, p. 64.

⁵⁶⁹ The Arabic word *sa'at*, meaning a few years. The word *bal* implies a number greater than two but less than ten.

⁵⁷⁰ Ibn, p. 101.

C. THE STORIES IN THE QUR'AAN

The Qur'aan mentions the stories of many prophets and nations of old. The Prophet (ﷺ) had no recourse to such information. He had lived amongst the Quraysh for forty years, and during this time had never studied under any priest or monk, nor had he read any history. Yet, despite his illiteracy, all of a sudden, he started to inform his people of the histories of the previous nations – from the creation of the Heavens and the Earth, to the building of the Ka'bah by Ibrahim, from the creation of Adam to the flood of Noah, from the splitting of the Nile by Moses to the virgin birth of 'Issa, from the camel of Saalih to the whale of Yunus... from where did he (ﷺ) obtain all of this knowledge?

قُلُوبَنَا
 اللَّهُ مَا كُنَّا نَدْرِي عَلَيْكُمْ وَلَا أَدْرَاكُمْ بِهِ فَقَدْ لَبِثْتُ
 فِيكُمْ عُمُرًا مِنْ قَبْلِهِ أَفَلَا تَعْقِلُونَ ﴿١٥﴾

-Say: If Allah had willed, I would not have recited (the Qur'aan) to you, nor would He have made it known to you. Verily, I lived amongst you a lifetime before this (revelation started). Have you no sense? - [10: 16]

In other words, the fact that the Prophet (ﷺ) had spent forty years of his life amongst the people of Makkah, during which time he (ﷺ) was not known for any literary activity, was a very powerful factor that proved that his revelation was not from himself, but from Allah.

The Qur'aan mentions the stories of the people of old as a sign of the Prophet's (ﷺ) prophethood:

وَالَّذِينَ أَنْعَمَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِمْ نُوحِيهِمْ
 إِلَيْهِمْ وَمَا كُنْتَ تَدْرِيهِمْ أَذْكُرُونَ أَفَتَعْجَبُ إِذَا يَخْتَفُونَ
 مِنْهُمْ وَمَا عَصَفْتَ لَهُمْ أَذْكُرُونَ ﴿١١﴾

-This is part of the news of the unseen, which We inspire you with. You were not with them (the brackets) when they can keep with their pens as to which of them should be charged with the care of Mary, and neither were you with them when they disputed- [3: 44]

And also,

بَلَدًا
 مِنْ أَنْعَمَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِمْ نُوحِيهِمْ إِلَيْكَ مَا كُنْتَ تَعْلَمُهَا الْكَافِرُونَ
 مِنْ قَبْلِكَ هَذَا

-This is the news of the unseen which We reveal unto you. Neither you nor your people knew them before this. - [11: 49]

Before beginning the story of Yousuf, Allaah reminds the Prophet (ﷺ),

عَلَّمَ نَبَأَهُمْ بِذَلِكَ أَنْ خَشِنَ الْأَعْيُنَ
وَمَا أَوْحَيْنَا إِلَيْكَ هَذَا الْقُرْآنَ وَرَأَى عَصِيكَ مِنْ قَبْلِهِ
لَنْ نَقُولَ إِلَّا الْغَيْبَ ۚ ﴿٢﴾

‘We relate to you the best of all stories through Our revelation to you of the Qur’aan. And before this (revelation), you were among those who knew nothing of this!’ [12:3]

At the conclusion of the same story, Allaah says,

ذَلِكَ مِنْ أَنْبَاءِ الْغَيْبِ
نُوحِيهِمْ إِلَيْكَ وَمَا كُنْتَ تَدْرِيهِمْ إِذْ اتَّخَذُوا أَمْثَلَهُمْ وَهُمْ يَحْكُمُونَ

‘This is part of the news of the unseen that We reveal by inspiration to you. You were not present with them when they arranged their plans (nor were you present) when they plotted together!’ [12:102]

Likewise, after mentioning the stories of a number of prophets, Allaah says,

وَمَا كُنْتَ وَجْهَ الْعَرَبِ الْقُسْوَى إِذْ فَضَّلْنَا آلَ مُوسَى الْأَقْرَبَ وَمَا كُنْتَ
مِنْ آلِهِمْ ۚ ﴿٤٤﴾ وَذَلِكَ لِكَيْ تُحْكَمُوا وَيُحْكَمَ إِلَيْكُمْ عَذَابُ
الْعَذَابِ وَمَا كُنْتَ أُولَى أَهْلِ مَدْيَنَ فَتَلَوْنَا عَلَيْهِمْ
بِكُرْآنِنَا أَنْ كَفَّ أَسْفَافَهُمْ ۚ ﴿٤٥﴾ وَمَا كُنْتَ وَجْهَ
الْعَرَبِ إِذْ دَعَاكَ

‘And you (O Muhamma!) were not on the western side (of the mountain) when We made clear to Moses the commandment, nor were you among those present! But We created generations (after Moses), and long were the ages that passed over them! And (neither) were you a dweller amongst the people of Madyan, reciting Our verses to them, but We were the ones sending Messengers! And neither were you at the side of (Mount) Toor when We called. = [28:44-46]

There are many verses of this nature in the Qur’aan.

The Purposes of the Stories

One of the primary purposes of these stories is to guide the remnants of the previous nations to the truth. The Christians, for example, are told that ‘Esaan preached pure monotheism, and the Jews are told to reflect upon their own religion, and the religion that the Prophet (ﷺ) brought. They are reminded that only Allaah knows the past,

أَمْ كُنْتُمْ شُهَدَاءَ إِذْ حَضَرَ يَعْقُوبَ الْمَوْتُ

«Or were you present when death approached Jacob?» (2:133)

As Allaah says,

إِنَّا عِندَ الْقُرْآنِ

يَقُصُّ عَلَىٰ سِرِّهِمْ أَكْثَرَ الْأَمْرِ مِمَّا يُخْفُونَ ﴿٢٦﴾

«Verily, this Qur'aan narrates to the Children of Isra'el most of the (points) over which they differ» [27: 76]

Other purposes of these stories is to establish belief in the prophets (as this is one of the fundamentals of faith); to affirm the patience of the Prophet (ﷺ) and the believers (by mentioning how the prophets of old were treated by their peoples); to explain the methodology of calling to the way of Allaah (all the prophets began their call by preaching the true worship of Allaah, *tasbeeh*); and to guide the Muslims to better morals, since each story of the Qur'aan contains much wisdom and guidance to benefit from.

The stories in the Qur'aan, therefore, are one of the signs of the truthfulness of the Prophet (ﷺ), and another aspect of the *ujoom* of the Qur'aan.

D. THE BELIEFS AND LAWS OF THE QUR'AAN

The Qur'aan was revealed as a guidance for mankind. The primary purpose of the Qur'aan is to define the true set of beliefs (*'aqedah*) with regards to the Creator, and to implement these beliefs in a system of laws (*sharae'ah*) that will benefit the creation in this life and the next.

As an indication of the truthfulness of the Qur'aan, the *'aqedah* and *sharae'ah* of the Qur'aan are perfect. In *'aqedah*, the topic of primary importance is that of the Creator: His Existence (*Tawheed ar-Ruboodhiyyah*), His Names and Attributes (*Tawheed al-Ahsaa' aw al-Sifaat*) and His sole Right to be Worshipped (*Tawheed al-Uloohiyyah*). No other religion even comes close to this concept of perfect Monotheism. Jews, Christians, even Hindus, all claim to be monotheistic, but the Trinity of the Christians and the paganism and idolatry of the Hindus make it obvious that such a claim is a false one. The Jews, although perhaps closer than many other religions to monotheism, attribute to their god forgetfulness, weariness and ignorance, amongst other things, and do not have a firm set of spiritual beliefs.

With regards to all other beliefs in the Islamic *'aqedah*, they distinctly stand out from all other religions in their purity, and appeal to human rationale. For example, the belief in prophets as recipients of divine revelation, and as the means of communication between God and man, also implies a sense of integrity and honour for the prophets. This integrity of the prophets is denied by the Christians and Jews, who ascribe, amongst other crimes, the crimes of murder, incest and drunkenness to the prophets of Allaah – allegations which Islam vehemently denies.

The *shari'ah* is another indication of the *r'jau* of the Qur'aan. The *shari'ah* is the law of Allaah, immutable in its broad aspects.⁵⁷¹ In its final form, it was revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ) over fourteen hundred years ago, in a specific place and time, and amongst a specific people. Yet, these laws, when applied in reality, prove to be for the betterment of the individual and society – irrelevant of the time, place or people. No matter what aspect of the *shari'ah* is taken, it is found to be perfect in all regards. The laws governing personal hygiene, familial life, societal roles, financial transactions, political dealings – choose what you wish – the *r'jau* is apparent.

For an example, let us examine the laws pertaining to marriage in the Qur'aan. Instead of following the path of the Christian priests in forbidding all relations with women, the Qur'aan allows – in fact even encourages – marriage:

وَالَّذِينَ هُمْ عَنْ آلِهَاسِهِمْ يَتَزَوَّجُونَ

«And marry those among you who are single.» [24:32]

It prohibits incest:

حُرِّمَتْ عَلَيْكُمْ أُمَّهَاتُكُمْ وَأَبْنَاؤُكُمْ وَإِخْوَانُكُمْ وَأَوْدَاجُكُمْ وَعَمَّاتُكُمْ

«Forbidden to you are your mothers, your daughters, your sisters, your paternal aunts.» [4:23]

adultery:

وَلَا تَقْرَبُوا الزَّوْجَ

«And do not approach unlawful sexual intercourse.» [17:32]

and even sexual indecency:

وَلَا تَقْرَبُوا السَّوْءَ

«And do not approach *fahshah* (shameful deeds, debauchery and lewdness)» [6:151]

At the same time, it allows for plurality of wives, thus taking into consideration the biological differences between men and women, and societal needs that vary from time and place.

فَلَكُمْ مِّنْ نِّسَاءٍ مَا شِئْتُم مَّتَىٰ وَفَلَيْتَ

«marry women of your choice, two, three or four.» [4:3]

Instead of the cruel treatment that the women of old were subjected to, the Qur'aan laid down the perfect guidelines for husbands:

⁵⁷¹ Then, it room for change in *fiqh*, as long as this change does not go against the Qur'aan, *Sunnah* or *mas'alah*. The concept of *mas'alah mu'amalah*, for example, takes into consideration public interest when enacting, or not enacting, a law of *Karamah*, pp. 267-82

وَبِالْأَرْوَاقِ وَالْمَعْرُوفِ

«...and treat them (your wives) with equity and kindness...» [4:19]

It clearly defined the roles of men and women, in a manner that is in accordance with the way they were created:

الرِّجَالُ قَوَّامُونَ عَلَى النِّسَاءِ بِمَا فَضَّلَ اللَّهُ بَيْنَهُمَا
عَلَى تَقْوَاهُمْ وَبِمَا آتَوْهُنَّ مِنْ أَمْوَالِهِمْ

«Men are the protectors and maintainers of women, because Allah has made one of them to excel the other, and because they (men) spend to support them (women)» [4:34]

These verses, it should be kept in mind, were revealed in a society where girls were buried alive, women had no rights whatsoever, sexual licentiousness prevailed, and prostitution in all its forms was rampant. Yet, these verses provided – and will continue to provide for all of eternity – a perfect marital and familial set of laws.

The same can be said for every single moral issue that the Qur'aan discusses. In comparison, there is no system of man-made laws that has remained unchanged or provided a perfect set of rules for the betterment of society. If the constitution of any country is examined, one will find discrepancies, absurd laws, and discriminatory and unjust legislations. In addition, such constitutions will never remain constant, but instead change with the passage of time. This is one of the strongest proofs of the inherent deficiency in these laws.¹⁷⁷

In conclusion, the *aqeedah* and *shari'ah* of Islaam are further proofs for the *rjaaz* of the Qur'aan, since they provide for a perfect code of beliefs and system of laws for all of humanity.

E. THE SCIENTIFIC FACTS OF THE QUR'AAN

One of the more popular aspects of the *rjaaz* of the Qur'aan in these times concerns its comments on aspects of science that the Prophet (ﷺ) and his people could not have known about. There are a number of books written about this topic, perhaps the most popular being Maurice Bucaille's *The Bible, the Qur'an, and Science*.¹⁷⁸

177 The American Constitution, for example, initially equated a black slave to three-fifths of a white man. This strange fraction was decided upon to resolve a conflict between those who wanted black people to equal one white man, and those who claimed that black people were not to be considered men at all; the difference of opinion could only be resolved with this fraction. In 1919, the 18th Amendment of the Constitution prohibited the transportation and manufacture of alcoholic drinks, yet, due to public indifference at this law, it had to be repealed in the 21st Amendment less than fifteen years later.

178 This book is a very useful book in that it details many verses of a 'scientific' nature. Sometimes, however, the author's interpretations are not consistent with the understanding of the verse, such as pp. 162-9. Also, one of the last chapters, 'The Qur'aan, the Haditha, and Modern Science', presents a very charged view of *qadiriyyah*, and shows the author's unfamiliarity with the subject. His stance towards the validity of *qadiriyyah* and the status of the Prophet (ﷺ) is also not correct.

It should be remembered, however, that the Qur'aan is not meant to be a book primarily devoted to a discussion of 'science', but rather a book that is meant for the guidance of mankind. As such, any references to subjects of a scientific nature are typically brief and not very descriptive.⁵⁷⁴ The *Fajr*, however, appears in the fact that even in these limited descriptions, the Qur'aan conforms exactly to modern science, and imparts knowledge that was unknown during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ). These descriptions are free from retroactive ideas that plagued humanity from the earliest of times, such as the concept that the Earth is stationary, and all the other planets and stars rotate about it.

There are numerous examples of such verses, such as the description of the formation of human life. The sperm of man is referred to as a 'mixture of liquids' (76:2), since the sperm is composed of various secretions from the testicles, the seminal vesicles, the prostate and other glands. From the literally millions of sperms produced and ejaculated, only one sperm is actually used in the fertilisation process – a very small quantity. This is referred to in a number of verses by the word '*nuṣṣah*' (cf. 75:37), which signifies a small quantity of mixed fluid. The sperm then joins the female egg, and forms the zygote. This occurs in the mother's womb, a 'safe lodging' (23:13).

The embryo, during its development, is surrounded by three layers: the abdominal wall, the uterine wall, and the placenta, with its chorionic-amniotic membranes. These three layers are referred to in the verse,

أَنشَأَكُم فِي بُطُونِ أُمَّهَاتِكُمْ
خَلْقًا مِّنْ نَّبْطٍ خَلْقًا فِي ظُلُمٍ لَّكُمُ الثَّلَاثُ

«We created you in the wombs of your mothers, from one stage to another, and all along three veils of darkness surrounded you...» [39:6]

From this,

وَمَا عَلَّمْنَاهُ الشُّعْرَ حَتَّىٰ إِذَا فُشِّتَ لَبَاسُهُ
أَلَمَ يَرَهُ الْيَتِيمَ فَتَنًا وَهُوَ يُعْرَفُ فَكَانَ
أَكْرَمَ قَرْنًا إِنَّ اللَّهَ أَحْسَنُ الْكَافِرِينَ ﴿١٤﴾

«... We made the mixed liquid (zygote) from something which clings (the embryo 'clings' to the womb by means of the umbilical cord), then We made the thing which clings into a chewed lump of flesh, then We made out of that flesh, bones, then We clothed the bones with flesh, and then We brought it forth as a new creature. So Blessed be Allah, the best of creators» [23:14]

⁵⁷⁴ Although this is not always the case – an exception being the evolution of the human embryo, which is described in great detail in the Qur'aan.

During the delivery process, the passage of the baby from the mother's womb to the outside world occurs through the birth canal. Typically, this canal is extremely narrow and tight. However, shortly before the birth, certain changes occur, including the release of certain hormones, the contractions of the uterus, and the breakage of the 'bag of water' surrounding the baby, all of which contribute to making the canal loose. This is referred to in 80:20, "Then We made the passage (through the birth canal) easy."

Perhaps the best way to appreciate the beauty of the above verses is to see pictures of the human embryo as it goes through the various stages of development. The reference to a 'chewed lump of flesh' is strikingly similar to the appearance of the embryo after the first month. The embryo, at this stage, is partly out of proportion, for the head is disproportionately larger than the body. This is mentioned in the verse.

فَمَا أَصْلَحَ لَهُمْ مِنْ أَفْرَافٍ فَمِمَّنْ لَمْ يَلْقَ فَتْنًا مِّنْ قَبْلِ هَٰذَا ۖ وَمِنَ الْقَوْمِ الْكَافِرِينَ

"We created you from dust, then from a sperm drop, then from a clinging embryo, then from a lump of flesh (partly) in proportion and (partly) out of proportion." [22:5]

The vocal yet simple descriptions given in these verses were unknown to the people of the Prophet's (PBUH) time, demonstrating the *‘ismah* of the Qur'an in science.⁵⁷

Other facts that are given in the Qur'an include the description of the formation of milk (16:66), the notion of orbits for the planets (21:33 and 36:40), and the description of the water cycle (15:22, 35:9 and more). Every verse that discusses nature and the creation falls into this category. In many verses, Allah Himself commands mankind to ponder over the Creation, and mentions these as an indication of His Existence and Power.

يَسْجُدُ
لِقُلُوبِ السَّمْعَوِيَّةِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَالْخَيْطِ الْأَيْلِ وَالنَّهَارِ الْأَيْتِ
لِأُولِي الْأَكْبَابِ ۝ الْيَوْمَ يَكُونُ أَفْقَيْسُكُمْ وَقَعُودُ
عَقْلِ حُسْبِيهِمْ وَتَنْفَعُ حُكْمُودُهُمْ خَلْقُ السَّمْعَوِيَّةِ وَالْأَرْضِ

Verily, in the Creation of the Heavens and Earth, and in the alteration of the night and day, there are signs for men of understanding. Those who remember Allah standing, sitting and lying down on their sides, and contemplate the creation of the Heavens and Earth, - (3:190-191)

¹⁹⁵ Perhaps the most detailed study of the voices pertaining to the development of the embryo is the book *The Developing Human* by Keith Moore, with James Adamson by Abdul Mayed Aramian (Dallas: Oxford, Inc., 1985). Most of the above material was taken from this reference.

One final note on the concept of science as an *ijaz* of the Qur'aan: there can *never* be a real contradiction between the Qur'aan and the Laws of Allaah concerning the creation (i.e., actual science). The Qur'aan is the Book of Allaah, and since it is from Allaah,

لَا رَيْبَ فِيهِ

«there is no doubt in it» [2:1]

Likewise, the laws that govern the creation are also from Allaah. What is studied as 'science', on the other hand, is the *attempt* by man to understand the creation and laws of Allaah. Therefore, it is possible for a scientific assumption to be incorrect, and this is clearly demonstrated by such historically scientific 'facts' as the Earth being flat, or the orbiting of the Sun around the Earth. These concepts were believed in so strongly by the 'scientists' of their time that, on occasion, those who opposed them were harassed and even killed. Yet, later scientists discovered the inaccuracy of these concepts.

Therefore, when there is a conflict between the meaning of a clear, explicit verse (meaning *qat'ee ad-dalaalah*) of the Qur'aan and 'modern' science, a Muslim *must* take the verse of the Qur'aan – without hesitation – over any scientific 'fact'. A rejection of such a verse, or even the apparent meaning of such a verse, would be tantamount to a rejection of Allaah's knowledge. For example, the theory of evolution is, for the most part, agreed upon by the majority of non-Muslim scholars. Whether there is strong proof to back up this theory or not is irrelevant – the Qur'aan is clear that Allaah created Adam from His own Hands, and

وَمِنْهَا ذَكَرْنَا نُوحًا وَإِبْرَاهِيمَ وَآدَمَ

«from him He created his mate, and from these two He spread forth many men and women» [4:1]

Therefore a Muslim can never believe in the theory that men are descendants of apes, no matter what 'proof' might seem to exist.³²⁶ Neither is it allowed, as some Muslim rationalists have done, to try to interpret clear Qur'aanic texts to suit modern theories. Following the above example, to try so interpret the story of the Creation of Adam and Eve as actually having been the creation of some Neanderthal neo-human species is almost as blasphemous as rejecting the verse in the first place.¹

It is possible, however, for there to be an *apparent* conflict between a verse and a scientific fact, when no such conflict exists. This occurs when some scholars take one of the possible linguistic meanings of a verse, such that this meaning conforms with the verse, but is not the *only* meaning that may be derived from it (basically, the verse

³²⁶ This, despite the fact that the theory of evolution is in itself full of flaws and not without its problems

is *dharar ad-dalalah*). For example, some scholars have understood certain verses of the Qur'aan (e.g., "And it is He who has spread out the Earth" (13:5), and (15:19)) to indicate that the Earth is flat, since the phrase '*madd*' occurs, which means 'to spread out'. However, this verse is not explicit in stating that the Earth is flat, and to conclude this from the above verses requires a degree of interpretation. Since there exists clear proof that the Earth is not flat, this interpretation must be rejected. The meaning of the verse, therefore, is that Allah has created this Earth as a very vast place for mankind, and not that the Earth is flat.

Also, it is essential that scientific facts are not read in where they do not exist. Unfortunately, this has become an all too common trend among 'modernistic' Muslims who have specialised in science, but are not very familiar with the interpretation of the Qur'aan.⁵⁷⁸ Once again, the Qur'aan "...is a book of guidance... and not a book of science, nor a mass of cryptic notes on scientific facts."⁵⁷⁹

For example, many people interpret the following verse as a prediction of space travel by man:

يَتَخَفَتِ الْهَيَاةُ الْأَمِينِ أَنْ تَقْطَعَ
لِتَشْهَدَ لِمَنْ أَقَامَ السَّعَادَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ تَأْتَدُّوْنَ لَا تَشْهَدُونَ
إِلَّا بِأَمْرٍ ۖ

«O Assembly of Men and Jinn! If you have power to pass through the zones of the Heavens and Earth – then pass! But you will never be able to pass them except with authority (from Allah)» [78:33]

However, a look at the next verse, and the authentic *tafsirs* of Ibn Kathir and al-Tabarani, will show that this verse is in reference to the *jinn* listening to the whispers of the angels in the Heaven (or to the Resurrection of the creation on the Day of Judgement), and not to inter-galactic travel!

In conclusion, although the scientific aspect of the Qur'aan is one of the aspects of its *i'jaz*, it must be put in its proper place, and a proper methodology needs to be followed in order to extract examples of such verses. It does more harm than good when certain verses in the Qur'aan are 'bent over backwards,' so as to say, to seek to prove that they contain certain implied scientific facts. One only needs to read works

⁵⁷⁸ Such people feel that, in order to prove the veracity of the Qur'aan, they must prove that everything that science talks about must have already been discussed in the Qur'aan. However, the remarkable nature of the Qur'aan does not need such whimsical verification, as this chapter shows.

⁵⁷⁹ Von Derfler, p. 157. In other words, there are not scientific allusions shared under every third verse in the Qur'aan, waiting to be unearthed by some over-zealous, highly-imaginative Muslims!

in which this methodology was followed to see how ludicrous the conclusions are. (For example, Muhammad Rashid Rida (d. 1935), one of the founders of the 'Modernist' movement, claimed that the 'Jews' that the Qur'aan was referring to actually alluded to the discovery of disease-carrying microbes!) When such facts are clear and explicit from the verse, they should be mentioned (such as the examples quoted above), but when they go against the intent and meaning of the verse, they should be abandoned.³⁸⁰

F. THE EFFECT THE QUR'AAN HAS ON ITS LISTENERS

An aspect of *fi-jawab* that is not discussed in most works is the effect that the Qur'aan has on those who listen to it.³⁸¹ No person can remain unaffected after he has listened to the Qur'aan. Is it possible for a person to see a miracle as clear as the Qur'aan and remain indifferent of it? The effect that the Qur'aan had on Jubayr ibn Mut'im, Umar ibn al-Khattaah and al-Waleed ibn al-Mughirah has already been discussed above.

The Qur'aan itself discusses the effect that it has on its listeners in many verses. For the disbelievers, the Qur'aan can only cause them despair, and increase their arrogance, since they must reject what they know to be true. The Qur'aan says:

وَالَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا لَا تَسْمَعُوا لِهِمْ أَلْفَوْا وَالْقِرَآنَ يَلْعَبُونَ ۖ

«And those who disbelieve say, 'Do not listen to this Qur'aan, and babble in the midst of its (recitation)' so that you may overcome (it)» [41:26]

وَلَقَدْ سَرَّهٖ بِهٖ هَٰذَا الْقُرْآنُ وَيُذَكِّرُهَا بِمَا كَانُوا يَعْبُورُونَ ۝

«And surely We have explained in this Qur'aan (Our Signs) so that they may take heed, but it only increases them in arrogance» [17:41]

وَلَا تَذَكَّرُ بِهِ نَبِيِّيُّ الْقُرْآنِ وَحَدَّثُوا بِذَلِكَ فَأَعْرِضُوا عَنْهُ ۖ

«And when you (O Muhammad) make mention of your Lord in the Qur'aan solely, they turn on their backs, fleeing in extreme dislike» [17:46]

وَلَقَدْ كَرَّمْنَا بَنِي آدَمَ ۖ وَجَعَلْنَاهُمْ فِرْقَانًا ۖ

لَمَّا تَلَّ عَلَىٰ عِبَادِهِمْ مَا كُنَّا فَعَسَىٰ لَئِنْ سَمِعْتَهُمْ لَا تَعْلَمَ ۖ

۝ وَإِذْ يَقُولُ بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ عَرْشٌ جَبَّارٌ ۖ

«Wise to every unful her – who hears the Verses of Allaah (being) recited to him, yet persists in pride as if he heard them not. So unavailing to him a painful torment! And when he learns something of Our Verses, he makes of them a jest» [43:7-9]

³⁸⁰ This topic is also discussed in greater detail in Chapter 15, under 'Scientific Ignorance'.

³⁸¹ This is more applicable to those who listen to it and understand it in Arabic, or mean, if not all, of this Qur'aan is lost in translation.

As for the believers,

وَالَّذِينَ آمَنُوا تَزِيدُهُمْ مِنْهُ وَقَوْلِ الْكَافِرِينَ إِنَّهُمْ لَا يَزِيدُهُمْ مِنْهُ شَيْئًا إِلَّا هُمْ يَسْتَكْبِرُونَ
إِنَّمَا أَفْكَاكُ الْمُرُورِ ۚ إِنَّمَا تَكْفُلُ الْآفَافُ إِنَّهُمْ يَكْتُمُونَ وَأَعْيُنُهُمْ فِي غَیْطٍ مُّضْمَرٍ ۚ

«And whenever there comes down a scroll, some of (the hypocrites) say, 'Which of you has had his Faith (increase) increased by it?' As for those who believe, it has increased their Faith, and they repeat.» [9:124]

وَالَّذِينَ آمَنُوا إِذَا نُزِّلَ عَلَيْهِمْ آيَاتُ الْمُرْسَلِ قَالُوا هَذَا إِلَهنا وَإِلَهُ آبائنا وَإِلَهُ آبائنا مَا كُنَّا بِنَافِعٍ
الْمُتَّبِعِينَ ﴿٥٨﴾

«And when they listen to what has been sent down to the Messenger, you see their eyes overflowing with tears because of the truth that they have recognised. They say, 'Our Lord! We believe, so write us down among the witnesses'» [5:85]

At the same time, it also increases their fear of Allaah,

إِنَّمَا الْمُؤْمِنُونَ الَّذِينَ إِذَا ذُكِرَ اللَّهُ وَجِلَتْ
قُلُوبُهُمْ وَإِذَا تُلِيَتْ عَلَيْهِمْ آيَاتُ تَزِيدُ تَزِيدُهُمْ إِيمَانًا

«The believers are those who, when Allaah is mentioned, feel a tremor in their hearts, and when His verses are recited to them, it increases their faith» [8:2]

اللَّهُ مَزَّلَ أَحْسَنَ الْكِتَابِ كِتَابًا مُّشْتَبِهًا قُلْ إِنَّا نَقُودُهُمْ
جُلُودَ الْوَيْدِ يَحْسَبُونَ رَبَّهُمْ ثُمَّ لَمْ يَلِدْهُمْ وَلَهُمْ
إِنَّ ذِكْرَ اللَّهِ

«Allaah has sent down the best of statements, a Book, its part resembling each other in goodness and truth, oft repeated. The skins of those who fear their Lord shiver from it (when they recite it or hear it). Then their skin and their heart shiver to the remembrance of Allaah» [39:23]

And how could it not have this effect, for does not Allaah say,

قُلْ أَطِيعُوا اللَّهَ وَأَطِيعُوا الرَّسُولَ ۚ إِنَّ اللَّهَ شَدِيدُ
الْعِقَابِ ۚ قُلْ إِنَّمَا أَعِظُكُمْ بِمَا نَسَى الْإِنسَانُ لَعَلَّهُ يَتَذَكَّرُ

«Had We sent down this Qur'aan on a mountain, you would surely have seen it humbling itself and crumbling out of the fear of Allaah! Such are the parables which We put forward to mankind that they may reflect.» [79: 21]

G. THE LACK OF CONTRADICTIONS IN THE QUR'AAN

One of the aspects of *i'jaaz* that the Qur'aan alludes to is that it contains no contradictions in it. The Qur'aan challenges,

أَلَمْ يَتَذَكَّرْ أَلَمْ يَقْرَأُوا الْقُرْآنَ وَكَانَ مِنْ مِثْلِهِ الْقُرْآنُ جَدِيدًا
مِثْلَ مَا كُنْتُمْ يَكْفُرُونَ ﴿٨٢﴾

«Do they not ponder over the Qur'aan? Had it been from other than Allaah, they would have surely found in it many contradictions!» [4: 82]

The fact that there are no contradictions in the Qur'aan, despite it having been revealed over a period of twenty-three years, in different circumstances, catering to different problems, is a clear indication of its divine origin. In addition, the lack of contradictions in its *asbab* and *shari'ah* are further proofs for its origin.

H. THE EASE BY WHICH THE QUR'AAN IS MEMORISED

There is not a single practising Muslim on the face of this Earth except that he has memorised some portion of the Qur'aan, verbatim. In comparison, one need only look at other religions and see the number of its adherents who have memorised any portion of their Holy Scriptures. In no other religion is such great emphasis placed on memorising its Holy Scriptures than in Islam; and no other religion has adherents who have memorised, in totality, its Holy Scripture.

Every Muslim knows by experience the ease with which the Qur'aan is memorised. In contrast, an attempt to memorise a passage out of another work or play is an arduous task. The meanings of such passages may be put to memory, but the actual words and sentences are extremely difficult to memorise, and even harder to keep in memory. And the longer such passages get, the more impossible it becomes to memorise. The memorisation of the Qur'aan, on the other hand, suffers no such obstacles, although perseverance is needed in memorising larger passages, the ease of memorisation still remains the same.

In addition, the memorisers of the entire Qur'aan (*hafizah*) are so common and numerous that there is not a single community of Muslims in the world except that they are present amongst them. Every person in the Muslim community knows of memorisers (*hafizah*), and such people are not considered rare or exceptional. It is not too uncommon to meet small children who cannot even communicate in proper sentences, yet have put the entire Qur'aan to memory.³⁸² Also, it is possible to meet people

382. This author mentions the case of one of his friends in the College of Qur'aan at the University of Madinah. He had memorised the entire Qur'aan before he had completed six years of age!

who, due to old age, have forgotten many facts and experiences of life, but the Qur'aan is still preserved in their memories, as if etched out on wood! Such a person might not even remember the events of yesterday, yet when he recites the Qur'aan, it is as if he is reciting directly from the *umq-hayf*.

The fact that the Qur'aan can be memorised is one of the specialities and exclusive blessings of this *ummah*, for no other nation was given the blessing of being able to memorise its Holy Scripture. Ibn al-Jawzee (d. 397 A.H.) wrote in the introduction to his book *al-Hath 'ala Hifdh al-Th* (The Encouragement of Memorising Knowledge),

"All praise is due to Allaah, who has favoured us, by His grace, above all other nations ..., and blessed us with the memorisation of the Qur'aan. For Allaah has made our *ummah* unique by the fact that it can memorise the Qur'aan, and knowledge. Those who were before us used to read their Scriptures from parchments (i.e., without memory), and were not capable of memorising it. So how can we thank the One who has blessed us to such a degree that a seventy-year old man from amongst us can easily recite the entire Qur'aan from memory?"³⁸³

V. Intrinsic vs. Extrinsic

The *s'jaar* of the Qur'aan is a fact that no Muslim can or has denied. However, is the *s'jaar* of the Qur'aan inherent in the Qur'aan, or is it external to the Qur'aan?

Abuu Ishaaq an-Nadhaam (d. 224), of the *Mu'azirah*, was the first to claim that the Qur'aan was not inherently miraculous, but rather externally. According to an-Nadhaam, Allaah would prevent any person from imitating it.³⁸⁴ In other words, according to him, the Qur'aan was capable of being imitated, but if any person tried to do so, Allaah would prevent him and take away his capabilities and powers. This is called '*ya'faah*', or 'aversion', since Allaah would avert any such attempts. An-Nadhaam was influenced by Hindu philosophy, for the Hindus believed that the Vedas could be produced by mankind, since it was not miraculous in itself, but if any attempted to produce it, Brahma would destroy such attempts.³⁸⁵

An-Nadhaam was later followed in this opinion by Abuu Ishaaq al-Isfara'eenee (d. 418 A.H.) of the *Abi al-Sinnah*, al-Murtadhaa of the *Shaa'ah*, and other scholars. The *s'jaar*, according to these scholars, was not internal to the Qur'aan, but rather external through the Power of Allaah.

This opinion is the incorrect one. As-Suyootsee said,

This opinion is rejected, because of the verse in the Qur'aan

قُلْ لِيْ اَعْصِيْ الْاَمْرَ بِالْعِلْمِ عَلٰى اَنْ اَتُوْا بِشَيْءٍ مِّنْ اَمْرٍ
لَّا تُوْذَرُوْنَ بِهٖۤ اِنَّكُمْ كُنْتُمْ قَبْلَ هٰذَا تَفْسُقُوْنَ فَاَنْتُمْ مِّنْ قَبْلِ هٰذَا
تَكْفُرُوْنَ ﴿١٠٠﴾

³⁸³ Ibn al-Jawzee, p. 11

³⁸⁴ *Ibid.* p. 163

³⁸⁵ *al-Faayer*, p. 100

'Say: If all of mankind and jinn gathered together to produce the like of the Qur'aan, they could not produce it – even if they helped one another' (17:88)

This verse mentions their incapability to (re)produce the Qur'aan, despite the fact that they still possess their faculties and powers. If (the *i'jaaz* of the Qur'aan) were in the elimination of their power, there would be no benefit in their 'gathering together', for it would be the same as if dead corpses were gathered together. Since the Qur'aan challenges them to 'gather together', this clearly shows that the Qur'aan itself is the source of *i'jaaz*.³⁸⁶

In other words, the fact that Allaah is informing them of the facility of their gathering together is a proof that they still possess the power and capabilities that they normally do. If they did not possess their usual faculties, there would be no point to the challenge of 'gathering together'. The miracle is not that Allaah will eliminate their power to imitate the Qur'aan, but rather that the Qur'aan itself is imitable.

If the opinion of *ajafat* were correct, this would imply that the *i'jaaz* is not in the Qur'aan, but rather with Allaah, which would mean that the Qur'aan by itself has no unique qualities to it. This view cannot be accepted, since the Qur'aan is the Speech of Allaah, and His Speech must be different from the Speech of the creation. Also, a number of different aspects of *i'jaaz* were discussed in the previous section, all of which show that the *i'jaaz* of the Qur'aan is internal to the Qur'aan itself. The eloquence, laws and beliefs, predictions, and the effect that it has on its listeners are all internal to the Qur'aan.

The correct view, therefore, and the view of the majority of scholars, is that the Qur'aan inherently has this quality of *i'jaaz*, without the need for Divine intervention to avert the plans of those who try to imitate it.

VI. The Quantity for *I'jaaz*

What is the minimum portion of the Qur'aan that qualifies as *i'jaaz*? In other words, what is the minimum portion of the Qur'aan that is capable of proving its miraculous nature?

There are three major opinions on this matter:

- 1) The *i'jaaz* of the Qur'aan is dependent on the whole Qur'aan. In other words, a *soorah* by itself does not have *i'jaaz* – only the Qur'aan taken in its entirety is a miracle. This is the opinion of some of the *Ma'haddithah*.
- 2) The *i'jaaz* of the Qur'aan is present in any *soorah* in its entirety, whether it is a short *soorah* or a long one. By analogy, any group of verses equivalent to a small *soorah* also qualifies as having *i'jaaz*. In other words, a few verses are sufficient to prove the miraculous nature of the Qur'aan. Since the smallest *soorah* is three verses long, those who hold this opinion state that those small verses (or their equivalent) are sufficient to qualify as *i'jaaz*.

³⁸⁶ *al-Sayraat*, v. 2, p. 151. I have paraphrased from the Arabic.

- 3) The *i'jaz* of the Qur'aan is present throughout the Qur'aan, without there being a minimum quantity. Even the smallest portion of the Qur'aan is a miracle by itself, as long as it forms a comprehensible phrase or sentence (but not necessarily a whole verse). As long as a phrase or a sentence can be recognized as the 'Qur'aan', and can be called such, it is considered to be an example of *i'jaz*.

There is proof for all of these opinions in the Qur'aan, for Allah challenges to bring forth a whole 'Qur'aan' similar to it (17:88), or one *surah* (10:38), or even some speech equivalent to it (52:34).

The first opinion was held by some of the *Mufasssah*, the second by most of the scholars of *ulloom al-Qur'aan*, and the third by Shaykh al-Islam Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 724 A.H.), and others.⁵⁸⁷ Perhaps the last opinion is the strongest one.

After quoting these various opinions, Qattani, in his *Mabadi'uh*, concludes,

And we do not think that the *i'jaz* is limited to a certain minimum quantity, for we find it (*i'jaz*) in the sounds of the letters of the Qur'aan, and in the occurrence of its words, as we also find it in its verses and *surahs*. The Qur'aan is the Speech of Allah, and this is sufficient (for it having *i'jaz* throughout).⁵⁸⁸

Qattani's remark is convincing, but perhaps a qualification might be added: Any portion of the Qur'aan gives some aspect or aspects of *i'jaz*, whether it be in its eloquence, or in its laws, or a combination of other aspects. However, a portion of the Qur'aan does not necessarily give every single aspect of *i'jaz*; only the whole Qur'aan can be taken as an indication of *i'jaz* in its totality. In other words, a portion of the Qur'aan is miraculous in some aspects, but only the whole Qur'aan is miraculous in every aspect, and Allah knows best.⁵⁸⁹

⁵⁸⁷ *al-Awqaf*, p. 389.

⁵⁸⁸ Qattani, p. 204.

⁵⁸⁹ cf. al-Zarkashi, n. 2, p. 105, where he uses a similar argument for another aspect of *i'jaz*. Also see al-Awqaf's conclusion, p. 113, which is very similar to this one. This does not mean, of course, that a portion of the Qur'aan can be imitated, but only that a portion of the Qur'aan does not substantiate every aspect of *i'jaz* – only the whole Qur'aan can be claimed to do so.

THE INTERPRETATION OF THE QUR'AAN – TAFSEER



The topic of *tafseer* is the most important topic of *'uloom al-Qur'aan*, since in many ways it is the primary goal of *'uloom al-Qur'aan* – to understand and implement the Qur'aan properly. This has also been the first topic of *'uloom al-Qur'aan* to have been written on, and without a doubt the one in which most of the works in this field have been written about.

1. The Definition of Tafseer and Ta'weel

The word '*tafseer*' comes from '*fawara*', which means, 'to explain, to expound, to elucidate, to interpret.' The word *tafseer* is the verbal noun of '*fawara*', and means 'the explanation or interpretation of something.'

According to another opinion,⁹⁹⁰ the word *tafseer* is a transposition from *s-f-r*, which means, 'to expose, to uncover.' Thus, a woman who uncovers her face is called a '*safira*', and the act of uncovering her face is called '*safara*.' Therefore, according to this definition, '*tafseer*' would mean uncovering the meanings and exposing the secrets of the Qur'aan. However, the stronger opinion is the first one, even though both of these meanings are correct.

In Islamic sciences, *tafseer* is defined to be: The science by which the Qur'aan is understood, its meanings explained, and its rulings derived.⁹⁹¹

Another common word that is heard in this subject is the word '*ta'weel*'. What, then, is the difference, if any, between *tafseer* and *ta'weel*?

The word '*ta'weel*' is from *a-w-l*, which means 'to return, to revert,' which implies going back to the original meaning of a word to see what its meanings and connotations are. The meanings of the word '*ta'weel*' were given earlier, and are repeated here.

The word '*ta'weel*' has three meanings:

- 1) To understand a word in light of one of its connotations, despite the fact that this connotation is not the primary intent of the word.

⁹⁹⁰ al-Zarkhashi, v 2, p. 147

⁹⁹¹ al-Sayooti, v 2, p. 223.

- 2) To explain a word or phrase.
- 3) The actuality of an event.

With these two definitions in mind, there are five main opinions as to the difference between *tafseer* and *ta'weel*, as follows:⁷⁹²

- 1) They are equivalent in meaning. This was the opinion of at-Tabaree (d. 310 A.H.), as his commentary of the Qur'aan uses these two terms interchangeably.
- 2) *Tafseer* is used in explaining a word which carries only one meaning, whereas *ta'weel* is used in choosing one of the connotations of a word that possesses many connotations.
- 3) According to al-Maunireeder (d. 333 A.H.), when the interpretation is based on certain knowledge, that is called *tafseer*, whereas when it is based on personal reasoning (*ijtihad*), it is known as *ta'weel*.
- 4) Abou Jaahib at-Tha'labee held the view that *tafseer* was the explanation of the literal meaning of the verse, whereas *ta'weel* was the actual intent behind the verse. For example, the *tafseer* of the verse,

إِنَّ رَبَّكُمُ عَلِيمٌ ۝١٤

'Verily your Lord is ever-Watchful' (89:14)

is that Allaah is aware of all that man does, but the *ta'weel* is that the verse is a warning to man not to lapse into sins or to belittle the commandments of Allaah.

- 5) *Tafseer* is meant to give the meanings of the individual words in a verse, whereas *ta'weel* gives the meaning of the verse as a whole.

There is no one correct opinion amongst these five, since various authors use these two words in all of these meanings. However, the most common understanding in modern usage of the two words is the second one, namely that *tafseer* is used to explain the meaning or intent of a verse which has only one connotation, whereas *ta'weel* is used when one of the possible connotations of a verse or word is chosen over the others due to external factors.

II. The Necessity and Importance of Tafseer

The question arises: Why is there a need for *tafseer*? After all, does not Allaah say in the Qur'aan:

إِنَّ هَذِهِ الصِّرَاطُ الْمُسْتَقِيمُ ۝١٧

'Verily this Qur'aan leads to the path that is most right' (17:9)

and thus everybody can find the Straight Path through this Book? And is not the Qur'aan a complete source of guidance in and of itself, as it says,

⁷⁹² cf. al-Bayhaque, v.2, pgs. 221-2, or-Roomee, pgs. 8-9, Zaaribeen, p. 14.

وَرَزَّلْنَا عَلَيْكَ الْكِتَابَ تِبْيَانًا لِّكُلِّ شَيْءٍ وَهُدًى وَرَحْمَةً وَبُشْرَىٰ لِلْمُسْلِمِينَ

«And We have sent down the Book to you as an explanation for everything, a guidance, a mercy and glad tidings for Muslims» [16:89]¹⁹³

Indeed, it is true that anyone who approaches the Qur'aan with a pure heart, seeking the guidance of Allaah, will find it. As Allaah says,

هَٰذَا يَوْمُ الْبَاقِ وَهُدًى وَبُورْطَانٌ لِلْمُتَّقِينَ

«This (Qur'aan) is a declaration for mankind, a guidance and an admonition for those who ward off evils» [3:138]

But this in no way implies that a person who is unaware of the numerous *baa'ed* of the Prophet (ﷺ) in explaining the Qur'aan, and of the reasons behind the revelation of specific verses, and of the intricacies of Arabic grammar and principles of rhetoric, and of the various *qira'at*, and of the knowledge of the abrogated rulings, and of all of the other topics of *ulloom al-Qur'aan* will benefit from the Qur'aan to the same degree that a person who does know these facts will. For example, an Arabic linguist or grammarian might be able to see a certain wisdom behind the phrasing of a verse that the average person may not. A person specialised in the topics of *ulloom al-Qur'aan* will be better able to grasp the intended meanings of a verse, and derive rulings from it, in contrast to the average layman, who is not qualified to derive rulings from the Qur'aan.

As-Suyooti also discusses the necessity of *tafsir* in his *al-Iqnaa*.¹⁹⁴ He begins by stating that it is a known fact that Allaah communicates with man in a way that he will be able to understand. This is the reason that every messenger has been sent in the language of his people. However, there are three basic reasons why *tafsir* is necessary despite these facts. First of all, Allaah uses the most clear, eloquent and concise language, and in doing so the meaning is clear to those who are well-grounded in the Arabic language, but not so clear to those who are not. Secondly, the Qur'aan itself does not always mention the events or references for which each particular verse was revealed, and these must be known in order for the verse to be fully and totally understood. Lastly, some words may have multiple meanings, and it is the job of the person that does *tafsir* to explain what is meant by the word.

It can be said that the purpose of *tafsir* is to elaborate the principles which the Qur'aan came to clarify.¹⁹⁵

- 1) The elaboration of a perfect set of beliefs with regards to the Creator, and the relationship of the created with the Creator.
- 2) The perfection of personal conduct and good morals.
- 3) The establishment of a set of laws and code of conduct to govern individual and familial relations.
- 4) The establishment of laws governing societal and political dealings between communities and nations.

¹⁹³ as-Suyooti, ed., p. 223

¹⁹⁴ cf. *ib.*, pp. 64-66.

- 5) The narrations of the history of the previous nations, so that the pious among them may be followed, and the impious to act as a warning.
- 6) To give the good news of Paradise and the blessings in store for the believers, and the evil tidings of the punishment of Hell in store for the disbelievers.
- 7) To prove the truthfulness of the Prophet (ﷺ), and this is done by explaining the marvellous nature of the Qur'aan (i'jaz).

Therefore, the job of a *tafsir* is to explain all of the above points to mankind.

From the above discussion, the importance of *tafsir* should become apparent. The science of *tafsir* is meant to explain to mankind the Book that has been revealed to them from Allah. The Qur'aan is like a treasure trapped in a glass receptacle, mankind can view and benefit from this treasure, but they are in need of *tafsir*, for *tafsir* acts like the key that unlocks the treasure, so that mankind can benefit from it to the greatest possible extent. Iyas ibn Mu'awiyah (d. 122 A.H.) said, "The example of a people who recite the Qur'aan and do not know its explanation is like a group of people who have a written message from their king that comes to them during the night, and they do not have a lamp. Therefore, they do not know what is in the message. The example of one who knows *tafsir* is like a person who comes to them with a lamp and reads to them what is in the message." And the Successor Sa'eed ibn Jubayr (d. 95 A.H.) said, "Whoever recites the Qur'aan and does not explain it, is like an ignorant person."³⁹⁵

As-Suyooti said,

(The science of *tafsir*) is the most honourable of all sciences for three reasons. The first reason is with respect to its topic. It deals with the Speech of Allah, which contains every kind of wisdom and virtue. It contains pronouncements about what has passed, reports of what will happen and judgments concerning what happens between the people. Its wonders never cease. The second reason is with respect to its goal. Its goal is to lead mankind to the firm handhold of Allah, and to the true happiness, one that does not end. The third reason is with respect to the great need for this science. Every aspect of this religion and this world, in the near or distant future, is in need of the sciences of the *shar'iah* and knowledge of the religion, and this knowledge can only be obtained through the understanding of the Book of Allah.³⁹⁶

Apart from these reasons, the Qur'aan itself commands its readers to ponder over it, and to reflect upon its meanings, for it says,

كِتَابٌ أَنْزَلْنَاهُ فِيكَ ذِكْرًا لِقَوْمٍ يُفَكِّرُونَ

«(This is) a Book which We have sent down to you, full of blessings, so that they may ponder over its verses, and that men of understanding may remember» [38:29]

It is the science of *tafsir* which is the fruit of 'pondering over its verses.'

³⁹⁵ Both quotes taken from Zarabozo, *ibid.*, p. 12.

³⁹⁶ as-Suyooti, n. 2, p. 234, of Zarabozo, p. 12.

III. The History of Tafseer

A. THE TIME OF THE PROPHET (ﷺ)

It is no surprise to discover that the science of *tafseer* started during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ) himself. In fact, one of the primary roles of the Prophet (ﷺ), as shall be expounded on later, was to interpret the Qur'aan. Allaah says,

وَأَرْسَلْنَاكَ
الْمُسْتَضَرِّشِينَ لِلنَّاسِ مَا نُزِّلَ إِلَيْهِمْ وَلَعَلَّهُمْ يَتَفَكَّرُونَ

«And We have sent down to you (O Muhammad (ﷺ)) the Remembrance, so that you may clearly explain to mankind what has been revealed to them, and so that they may give thought» [16:64]

The science of *tafseer* during the Prophet's (ﷺ) life was a relatively easy matter. This was so for a number of factors. Firstly, the Companions were witnessing the revelation of the Qur'aan, and the circumstances during which it was revealed. They were aware of the reason behind the revelation of a verse (*asbab an-nuzool*), and as such did not need to search for this knowledge as later interpreters would have to. Secondly, the Arabic of the Companions was the Arabic of the Qur'aan, as the Qur'aan was revealed in their dialect. Therefore the Arabic of the Qur'aan was, in general, understood by them without any difficulties. Lastly, and most importantly, the Prophet (ﷺ) was alive, and the Qur'aan was still being revealed, so even if there were any difficulties in understanding any verse, they could turn to the Prophet (ﷺ) for an explanation. An example quoted earlier is with regards to the verse,

الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَلَمْ يَلْبِسُوا إِيمَانَهُمْ بِظُلْمٍ

«Those who believe and do not mix their belief with injustice» [4:82]

The Companions asked, "O Messenger of Allaah! Who amongst us does not do injustice (to his soul)?" The Prophet (ﷺ) replied, "Have you not read the statement of Luqmaan,

إِنَّ أَكْبَرَ إِتْرَافٍ أَنْ تُشْرِكَ بِي

«Verily, *shirk* is a great injustice» [31:13].²⁷

In other words, the Prophet (ﷺ) informed them that the injustice referred to in this verse was *shirk*, or the association of partners with Allaah.

The Companions were careful that they understood every single verse in the Qur'aan properly. Abou 'Abd ar-Rahmaan as-Sadamee (d. 75 A.H.) reported that whenever the people who taught them the Qur'aan, like 'Uthmaan ibn 'Affaan, 'Abdullaah ibn Mas'ood, and others, learnt ten verses of the Qur'aan, they would not proceed further until they had understood whatever ideas and regulations those verses con-

tained. They used to say, "We learned the Qur'aan, and studied its ideas and arguments all together."⁵⁹⁸ This narration shows that the Companions were eager to understand Qur'aan, so much so that they would not memorise any verses until they had already understood what they knew.

The role of the Prophet (ﷺ), and quantity of the Qur'aan that he interpreted, will be elaborated upon in the next section.

B. THE PERIOD OF THE COMPANIONS

After the death of the Prophet (ﷺ), the science of *tafsīr* took on a more systematic approach. Thus it can be considered that the first true *mufasssirs* were actually the Companions. The sources that the Companions used for *tafsīr* were the Qur'aan, the statements of the Prophet (ﷺ), the principles of Arabic grammar and rhetoric, their own personal reasoning (*ijtihad*), and pagan and Jewish-Christian customs that were prevalent at the time of the revelation of the Qur'aan. These sources will be discussed in greater detail in the following section.

There were many among the Companions who were well known for their knowledge of the interpretation of the Qur'aan. As-Suyooti wrote, "There are ten who were famous for their knowledge of *tafsīr* among the Companions: the four *Khawāṣṣ al-Raashidīn*,⁵⁹⁹ 'Abdullaah ibn Mas'ood, 'Abdullaah ibn 'Abbaas, Ubay ibn Ka'ab, Zayd ibn Thabit, Abū Moosaa al-Ash'ari and 'Abdullaah ibn Zubayr. As for the *Khawāṣṣ*, 'Alee ibn Abi Talib has the most narrations amongst them; as for the other three, their reports are very rare to find, since they died relatively early."⁶⁰⁰ In other words, the *tafsīr* narrations of Abū Bakr, Umar and Uthmaan are not as common due to the fact that they were not compiled because of their relatively early deaths. Also, during their time, there was no great need to interpret much of the Qur'aan, as the Companions were many and wide-spread. During later times, however, such as during the Caliphate of 'Alee, the need to interpret the Qur'aan was much greater than before.

There were others besides these ten Companions who were well known for their knowledge of *tafsīr*, such as Anas ibn Malik, Abū Hurayrah, Jaabir ibn 'Abdullaah and 'Aa'ishah, except that they were not in the same category as the ten whom as-Suyooti mentioned.

The most knowledgeable Companion with regards to the interpretation of the Qur'aan is considered to be Ibn 'Abbaas. 'Abdullaah ibn Umar said, "Ibn 'Abbaas is the most knowledgeable of this *ummah* concerning the revelation given to Muḥammad (ﷺ)."⁶⁰¹ This is due to the fact that the Prophet (ﷺ) himself prayed for Ibn 'Abbaas,

⁵⁹⁸ Ibn Taymiyyah, p. 12.

⁵⁹⁹ A term that means "The rightly-guided caliphs", used to denote the first four caliphs: Abū Bakr, Umar, Uthmaan and Alee.

⁶⁰⁰ as-Suyooti, v. 2, p. 239.

⁶⁰¹ adh-Dhahabee, v. 1, p. 729 ha. reference to adh-Dhahabee, whenever it appears in this chapter, refers to *Idr adh-Dh-Dhahabee's Tafsīr al-Mufassṣat* unless otherwise specified.

for he (ﷺ) said, "O Allaah! Give him the knowledge of the Book, and of Wisdom!" and in another narration, "O Allaah! Give him the knowledge of the religion, and interpretation."⁶⁸² He used to accompany the Prophet (ﷺ) during his youth, as he was his (ﷺ) cousin. Also, his aunt Maymoonah was a wife of the Prophet (ﷺ).

Ibn 'Abbaas was held in great esteem by the Companions, despite his age (he was only thirteen when the Prophet (ﷺ) passed away). Umar used to let Ibn 'Abbaas enter into the meetings of the older Companions, so some of them complained, "Why is it that you let him enter, even though we have sons the same age as him (whom you do not allow to enter)?" Umar answered, "Since he is amongst the most knowledgeable of you!" So he called them one day, to prove to them this statement, and he asked them, "What do you think of the verse,

إِذَا الْغَلَّةُ فَصَّرَ أَقْوَامًا مَلْعُوجًا

'When the help of Allaah comes, and the Conquest' [110:1]'

Some of them did not reply, while others said, "We have been commanded to thank Allaah and ask for His forgiveness whenever we are helped and aided to victory." Umar asked Ibn 'Abbaas, "And do you think the same also, O Ibn 'Abbaas?" He answered, "No!" Umar asked, "Then what do you say?" He replied, "This is an indication to the Prophet (ﷺ) from Allaah that his life is about to end. The verse means, 'When the help of Allaah comes, and the Conquest' then this is a sign of your approaching death, therefore,

فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ وَاسْتَغْفِرْ لَهُ إِنَّكَ مِنَ الْمُنِيبِينَ

'Glorify the Praises of your Lord, and ask for Forgiveness, for verily He is ever-accepting repentance' [110:3]

'Umar said, "I don't know any other meaning to this except what you have said!"⁶⁸³

The narrations of Ibn 'Abbaas, along with those of 'Abdullaah ibn Mas'ood, 'Alee ibn Abee Talib, and Ubay ibn Ka'ab, are the most numerous narrations from Companions that are to be found in *tafseer* literature. Each one of them established centres of learning during their lifetimes, and left many students among the Successors after their deaths.

The Companions did not leave narrations concerning every single verse in the Qur'aan. This is because the people of their time understood much of what the Qur'aan discussed, and only where the possibility for misinterpretation or ignorance existed did the Companions give their own interpretations of the relevant verse. Such interpretation typically consisted of explaining a verse in clearer words, or explaining a particular phrase or word with pre-Islamic poetry. Another characteristic of this time is the relatively trivial differences in *tafseer*, as compared to later generations.

682 Reported by al-Bukhaaree.

683 Reported by al-Bukhaaree.

C. THE PERIOD OF THE SUCCESSORS

After the generation of the Companions, the students of the Companions took over the responsibility of explaining the Qur'aan. The Successors used the same sources to interpret the Qur'aan that the Companions did, except that they added to the list of sources the interpretations of the Companions. They understood that an interpretation given by the Companions of the Prophet (ﷺ) could not be compared to an interpretation of any person after them. Therefore, the sources for interpreting the Qur'aan during this generation were: the Qur'aan, the statements of the Prophet (ﷺ) that the Companions had informed them of, the Companions' personal reasoning (*qir'ānah*) of the verse, the Arabic language, their own personal reasoning (*qir'ānah*), and Judaeo-Christian tradition.

After the death of the Prophet (ﷺ), the Companions spread out to different Muslim cities in order to teach people the religion of Islam. Each one taught many Successors, most of whom became scholars in their own right in due time.

Historically, three primary learning centres were established in the Muslim empire: Makkah, Madeenah and Kooifah. Each of these areas became leading centres of knowledge during the period of the Successors, including the knowledge of *tafsīr*.

In Makkah, where Ibn 'Abbās had taught, his primary students became the scholars of this area. In particular, Sa'eed ibn Jubayr (d. 95 A.H.), Mujāhid ibn Jabr (d. 104 A.H.), 'Ikrimah (d. 104 A.H.), Jarroos (d. 106 A.H.), and 'Ataa ibn Rabaah (d. 114 A.H.) became leading authorities in this field, and their names are still to be found in many works of *tafsīr*.

In Madeenah, the influence of 'Ubay ibn Ka'ab was the strongest in the arena of *tafsīr*, and his students Aban al-'Ashyah (d. 90 A.H.), Muhammad ibn Ka'ab al-Quradee (d. 118 A.H.) and Zayd ibn Aslam (d. 136 A.H.) emerged as the scholars of *tafsīr* in Madeenah during this period.

In Kooifah, 'Abdullaah ibn Mas'ood left behind his great legacy to 'Alqamah ibn Qays (d. 61 A.H.), Ma'rooq (d. 63 A.H.), and al-'Aswad ibn Yazid (d. 74 A.H.). Other Successors from Kooifah who were famous for their knowledge of *tafsīr* were 'Aasim ash-Sha'bee (d. 109 A.H.), al-Hasan al-Bagree (d. 110 A.H.) and Qatadah as-Sadussee (d. 117 A.H.).

During this period, greater emphasis was placed on Judaeo-Christian tradition (known as *Isra'eeilyaah*), and because of this, many of these narrations entered into Islamic literature. Most of the people who narrated these traditions were Jews and Christians who had embraced Islam, such as 'Abdullaah ibn Salaam (he was a Companion, d. 43 A.H.), Ka'ab al-Ahbaar (he embraced Islam after the death of the Prophet (ﷺ) and did not see him; he died 32 A.H.), Wāhib ibn Munabbih (d. 110 A.H.), and 'Abdul Maalik ibn Jurayj (d. 150 A.H.). Much of the Judaeo-Christian traditions prevalent in *tafsīr* literature can be traced back to these scholars.

Also during this time, the differences in interpreting the Qur'aan were much greater than during the time of the Companions. Another characteristic of this period is the

increase of forged narrations attributed to the Prophet (ﷺ). This was due to the political and religious strife that was rampant throughout the Muslim territories at that time. Lastly, the quantity of verses for which narrations exist from the Successors is greater than that for the Companions, since more verses needed explanation than during the time of the Companions.

D. THE COMPILATION OF *Tafsīr*

After the period of the Successors, the stage of the actual compilation and writing of *tafsīr* began. The most important works were by scholars of *ḥadeeth*, who, as part of their narrations and works of *ḥadeeth*, also had sections on *tafsīr*. Therefore, during this stage, the narrations of *tafsīr* were considered a branch of *ḥadeeth* literature. Some of the scholars of this period that were known for their *tafsīr* narrations include Yuseed ibn Haaroon as-Sulamee (d. 117 A.H.), Sufyaan al-Thawri (d. 161 A.H.), Sufyaan ibn 'Uyaynah (d. 198 A.H.), Wakee' ibn al-Jarrah (d. 197 A.H.), Shu'bah ibn al-Hajjaaj (d. 160 A.H.), Aadam ibn Abi Iyas (d. 220 A.H.), and 'Abd ibn Humayd (d. 249 A.H.). None of their works have survived intact until the present day.⁶⁰⁴

The next stage in the history of *tafsīr* saw the separation of *tafsīr* literature from *ḥadeeth*, and the emergence of independent works solely on *tafsīr*. Another stride during this stage was that every verse was discussed, so that *tafsīr* was not only limited to those verses for which narrations from the Prophet (ﷺ) and Companions existed; rather, these *tafsīrs* encompassed all the verses in the Qur'aan.

In attempting to answer who the first person to write a comprehensive *tafsīr* of the Qur'aan was, the researcher is faced with a rather significant impediment: a lack of almost all manuscripts written during the first century of the *ḥijrah*. However, there are a number of references in later works to such manuscripts, and among the earliest works referenced is that of Sa'eed ibn Jubayr (d. 95 A.H.).⁶⁰⁵ Most likely, this work was not a complete *tafsīr* of the Qur'aan, but rather composed of narrations from the previous generations. An interesting narration in the *Fihrist* of Ibn Nadeem (d. 438 A.H.) reads as follows:⁶⁰⁶

'Umar ibn Bakayr, one of the students of al-Furaa, was with the governor Hisham ibn Sa'īd. He wrote to al-Furaa: 'The governor sometimes questions me concerning (the *tafsīr* of) a verse in the Qur'aan, but I am unable to respond to him. Therefore, if you think it suitable to compile something with regards to the Qur'aan, or write a book concerning this, I can return to this book (wherever he takes me)'. al-Furaa said to his students, 'Gather together so that I may dictate to you a book on the Qur'aan' – and he told the *mu'allif* to recite Soorah al-Faatiḥah, so that he may interpret it, until the whole book (i.e., the Qur'aan) was finished. The narrator of the story, Abi al-'Abbas, said, 'No one before him ever did anything like it, and I don't think that anyone can add to what he wrote.'

604 *al-Fihrist*, v 1, p. 172.

605 *ibid.*, v 1, p. 175.

606 *ibid.*, v 1, p. 174, from the *Fihrist*.

Al-Farraa died in the year 267 A.H., and thus we can say that this is definitely one of the earliest works of this nature.⁶⁰⁷ Ibn Maajah (d. 273), of *Sam'an* fame, also wrote a *tafsir* of the Qur'aan, but again this was limited to narrations from the previous generations.

One of the greatest classics available is without a doubt the monumental *tafsir* of the Qur'aan by Muhammad ibn Jarreer an-Jaaree (d. 310 A.H.). This *tafsir*, although heavily based on narrations, also discusses the grammatical analysis of the verse, the various *qira'at* and their significance on the meaning of the verse, and, on occasion, Ibn Jarreer's personal reasoning (*ijtihad*) on various aspects of the verse. In many ways, this can be considered to be the first *tafsir* to attempt to cover every aspect of a verse. Other *tafsirs* followed quickly; in particular the *tafsirs* of Abuu Bakr ibn Mundhir an-Nanapoori (d. 318 A.H.), Ibra'heem Hamaam (d. 327 A.H.), Abuu Shaykh ibn Hibbaan (d. 369 A.H.), al-Haakim (d. 405 A.H.) and Abuu Bakr ibn Mardawayh (d. 410).⁶⁰⁸

This era also saw the beginning of the specialisation in *tafsir*, with *tafsirs* being written, for example, with greater emphasis on the grammatical analysis and interpretation of the Qur'aan. Greater emphasis was also placed on personal reasoning (*ijtihad*), and *tafsirs* written solely for the defence of sectarian views (such as the *tafsirs* of the *Mu'tazilah*), and even for the defence of one's *fiqh madh-hab* (such as the *tafsirs* of the *Haafsiyyah*, *Shaa'fi'iyah* and *Maafsihiyyah*) appeared. Another aspect that started during this era was the deletion of the *isnad* from *tafsir* narrations, and this led to the increasement of weak and fabricated reports in *tafsir* literature.

A Summary

To summarise, it is possible to divide the history of *tafsir* into five periods.⁶⁰⁹ The first period is considered to be the time of the Companions and Successors, and consisted mainly of narrations concerning those verses over which there was a difference of opinion or misunderstanding, in addition to the *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ) dealing with *tafsir*. Personal reasoning (*ijtihad*) from the Companions and Successors was, in general, only resorted to when absolutely necessary.

The second period is the era of the late Successors, and the generation after them. During this time, *hadeeth* literature had begun to be compiled, and *tafsir* narrations therefore became a part of *hadeeth* works. Also during this time, the various *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ) and narrations from different Companions began to be compiled, whereas in the first period, these narrations were typically limited to a specific area.

The third stage saw the rise of independent *tafsir* works, based on the *hadeeth* works of the previous generation, and thus *tafsir* became an independent science among the Islamic sciences. This stage, which can be said to begin in the second half

⁶⁰⁷ This work, unlike many others from its era, is available in manuscript form, and part of it has been published by Dar al-Kutub al-Ma'riyah, 1996.

⁶⁰⁸ *al-Ith-Haabee*, p. 173.

⁶⁰⁹ *al-Ith-Haabee*, v. 1, pp. 131-36.

of the third century, also produced the first complete Qur'aanic *tafsirs*, whose commentary was not limited to only those verses concerning which narrations existed from previous generations. However, during this stage, the primary source of *tafsir* still remained narrations from the previous generation.

It was only during the fourth stage where reliance on narrations decreased, and much greater emphasis was placed on personal reasoning, and *tafsirs* were written based on sectarian bias. For example, as-Suyooti narrates concerning the verse,

قُلْ لِّلْمُتَّصِلِينَ فِيهِمْ وَلَا لِّلْغَائِبِينَ

... Not the path of those whom You are angry with, nor those who are astray.
[17]

that there exist ten different opinions concerning who this verse refers to, despite the fact that the Prophet (ﷺ) has clearly explained that it refers to the Jews and Christians.⁶⁰⁰ This period also witnessed the increasement of *longed* narrations in *tafsir* literature, as the *asaad* disappeared from *tafsir* works.

The final period of the history of *tafsir*, which has lasted from the fourth century of the *hijrah* until today, saw the culmination of the science of *tafsir*, and the emergence of various categories of *tafsir*, such as *tafsir* based on narrations, on personal reasoning, topic-wise interpretation, polemical interpretation, and jurisprudential interpretation (these will be discussed in greater detail below.) Other *tafsirs* sought to combine all of these topics into one work, thus giving a broad, all-encompassing approach to interpretation.

IV. The Principles of *Tafseer*

By the 'Principles of *Tafseer*' is meant the proper methodology in interpreting the Qur'aan, which includes the conditions and characteristics of a *mufasss* (one who interprets the Qur'aan), and the bases and characteristics of a proper *tafsir*.

The science of *tafsir* is one which, similar to the other sciences of Islam, is based on well-grounded, systematic principles. These principles are derived from the Qur'aan, the *Sunnah* and the statements of the Companions.

As-Suyooti, in summarising the principles of *tafsir*, said,⁶¹¹

The scholars have said: Whoever wishes to interpret the Qur'aan, he should first turn to the Qur'aan itself. This is because what has been narrated succinctly in one place might be expounded upon in another place, and what is summarized in one place might be explained in another.

If he has done that, then he turns to the *Sunnah*, for it is the explainer of the Qur'aan, and a clarifier to it. Imam as-Shaafi'ee said, All that the Prophet (ﷺ) said is based on his understanding of the Qur'aan. And Allah said,

600 as-Suyooti, *op. cit.*, p. 199.

611 as-Suyooti, *op. cit.*, p. 218.

إِنَّا أَنزَلْنَاهُ بِالْحَقِّ وَنَحْكُمُ بِهِنَ الْآيَاتِ مَا أَرَدْنَا أَنَّا

«Verily, We have revealed to you the Book, in truth, so that you may judge between mankind by that which Allah has shown you» [4:104]

And the Prophet (ﷺ) said, 'Indeed, I have been given the Qur'aan, and something similar to it,⁶¹² meaning the Sunnah.

If he does not find it (the *asfar*) in the Sunnah, he turns to the statements of the Companions, for they are the most knowledgeable of it, since they witnessed the circumstances and situations the Qur'aan was revealed in, and since they were blessed with complete understanding, and true knowledge, and pious actions .

These principles, and others, will now be discussed in greater detail.

1) Tafseer OF THE QUR'AAN BY THE QUR'AAN

The most important source of understanding the Qur'aan is the Qur'aan itself. After all, the Qur'aan is an entire Book that has been revealed by Allah, and therefore in order to understand any one verse, the entire context of this verse must be looked at. The meanings of the Qur'aan can never contradict each other, as Allah says,

أَفَلَا يَتَذَكَّرُونَ الْفُرْقَانَ وَلَوْ كَانَ مِنْ عِنْدِ غَيْرِ اللَّهِ لَوَجَدُوا فِيهِ غِلَظًا مُّضْتَرِّبًا ﴿١٠٢﴾

«Do they not ponder over the Qur'aan? For indeed, had it been from other than Allah, they would surely have found many contradictions in it» [4:82]

In this verse, the command is given to ponder over the whole Qur'aan, verse by verse, for had it been from any other than Allah, its verses would have contradicted one another. Therefore, it is essential to turn to the Qur'aan itself in order to interpret any verse in the Qur'aan.

This principle is demonstrated in many verses in the Qur'aan. Sometimes, a question is asked, and then answered in the next verses. For example,

وَاللَّهُ يَتَذَكَّرُ أُولَئِكَ أَعْيُنَ النَّاسِ لَا تُبْصِرُهَا إِلَّا بِإِذْنِهِ يُعَلِّمُ الْوَسْطَى ﴿١٠٣﴾

«By the Heavens, and the galaxy. And what will make you know what the galaxy is? (It is) the star of piercing brightness» [86:1-3]

In other cases, the reference to another verse is not obvious. For example, the reference to

يَرْجِعُ الَّذِينَ لَعَنَّاهُمْ

«the path of those whom You have favoured» [1:7]

⁶¹² Reported by Abou Dawood, al-Tirmidhi and al-Nasaa'i

is explained in 4:60 as:

وَمَنْ يُطِيعِ اللَّهَ وَالرَّسُولَ فَأُولَٰئِكَ مَعَ الَّذِينَ أَنْعَمَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِمْ
مِنَ الَّذِينَ سَبَّحُوا لِلَّهِ وَالْكَافِرِينَ وَالشَّهَادَةُ وَالصَّالِحِينَ وَحَسُنَ
أُولَٰئِكَ رَفِيقًا

«And whoever obeys Allaah and His Messenger, then will he be in the company of those whom Allaah has shown favour, of the Prophets, and the truthful followers, and the martyrs, and the pious. And how excellent those companions are!»

Therefore, the second verse explains who 'those whom You have favoured' are.

In some places in the Qur'aan, a story is mentioned in brief, and in another place it is elaborated. For example, in the story of the repentance of Aadam, verse 2:37 states,

فَتَلَقَّى آدَمُ مِنْ رَّبِّهِ كَلِمَاتٍ فَتَابَ عَلَيْهِ

«Then Aadam received from his Lord words, and He relented towards him -

In this verse, the 'words' that Aadam received are not mentioned, and it is essential to turn to another verse to know what Aadam said.

قَالَا رَبَّنَا ظَنَّمَاكَ الظَّالِمِينَ لَوْ تَغْفِرَ لَنَا وَتَرْحَمْنَا لَنَكُونَنَّ مِنَ
الْخَاسِرِينَ ﴿٣٨﴾

«They (Aadam and Eve) said, 'Our Lord! We have wronged ourselves. If you do not forget us and have Mercy on us, we will be of the losers.' [2:38]

Other verses direct the reader to another passage in the Qur'aan, or tell the reader that the subject has already been mentioned. For example, Allaah says,

وَعَلَى الَّذِينَ هَادُوا حَرَّمًا مَا فَصَّلَ اللَّهُ لَكُم مِّن قَبْلُ

«And unto the Jews, We forbade them such (foods) that We have already mentioned to you before...» [16:118]

In other words, these prohibitions have already been elaborated upon elsewhere in the Qur'aan (cf. 6:146). In another verse, Allaah states,

أُحِلَّ لَكُمْ بَرِئَةٌ الْأَنْعَامِ إِلَّا مَا يُنْفَخُ عَلَيْكُمْ

«Lawful to you (for food) are all the beasts of cattle, except that which will have been excused to you...» [5:1]

After two verses, the beasts that are forbidden are 'recited':

حَرَّمَ عَلَيْكُمُ الْمَيْتَةَ وَالدَّمَ وَنَجَسَ الْخِنْزِيرِ

«Forbidden to you are all dead animals, and blood, and the flesh of pigs...» [5:3]

The Prophet (ﷺ) also showed the principle of interpreting the Qur'aan by the Qur'aan when he was asked concerning the verse,

الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَلَمْ يَلْبِسُوا إِيمَانَهُمْ بِظُلْمٍ

«Those who believe and do not mix their belief with injustice.» [6: 82]

The Companions asked, 'O Messenger of Allaah! Who amongst us does not do injustice (to his soul)?' The Prophet (ﷺ) replied, "Have you not read the statement of Luqmaan, *يَا بُنَايَ إِنَّكَ أَتَيْتَكَ بِتِلْكَ الْكَلِمَاتِ الْعُظْمَىٰ* 'Verily, *adab* is a great injustice?' [31: 13].⁶⁰¹ In other words, the Prophet (ﷺ) quoted them another verse in the Qur'aan to explain to them what the 'injustice' referred to in the verse actually meant – an example of *tafsir* of the Qur'aan by the Qur'aan.

Included in the interpretation of the Qur'aan with the Qur'aan is the knowledge of *asbab an-nuzool*, the knowledge of *muhkam* and *mutashabih* verses, the *muwajjah* and *munawjjah* verses, the various *qira'at*, and the knowledge of the different categories of verses (the *muhkam* and *mutashabih*, the *'aam* and the *khaas*, the *mutlaq* and the *mutqayyid*, the *mutawassit* and the *mutalabih*, the *hagagah* and the *mujaazah*, and other categories which were not discussed). This is because a general ruling ('*raa*') in one verse might be specified (*hikmah*) in another verse, and so forth. In addition, all the different *qira'at* of a verse must be considered to arrive at a proper understanding of a verse. All the relevant verses must be taken into account to form a complete picture, as all the verses of the Qur'aan complement one another.

To conclude, it is essential that every verse of the Qur'aan be looked at in light of its sister verses; no interpretation of any verse can contradict another verse.

2) TAFSIR BY THE SUNNAH

After the *tafsir* of the Qur'aan by the Qur'aan itself, the second source of *tafsir* is *tafsir* by the *Sunnah*. It must be mentioned that even though the *Sunnah* is taken to be the 'second' source of *tafsir*, it is in fact of equal importance to the Qur'aan. In other words, a person wishing to understand the Qur'aan *must* turn to the *Sunnah* in order to understand it correctly. The Qur'aan and *Sunnah* must be taken together to arrive at a proper understanding of a verse.

In fact, one of the primary roles of the Prophet (ﷺ) was to explain the meanings of the Qur'aan to mankind. Allaah says,

وَأَنزَلْنَا إِلَيْكَ

الذِّكْرَ لِتُبَيِّنَ لِلنَّاسِ مَا نُزِّلَ إِلَيْهِمْ وَلَعَلَّهُمْ يَتَفَكَّرُونَ

«And We have sent down to you (O Muhammad (ﷺ)) the Remembrance, so that you may clearly explain to mankind what has been revealed to them, and so that they may give thought» [16: 44]

Therefore, not only was the job of the Prophet (ﷺ) to convey the literal text of the Qur'aan, he also had to convey its explanation as well.⁶⁴⁴

How Much of the Qur'aan was Explained?

The question arises, then, as to how much of the Qur'aan was actually explained by the Prophet (ﷺ)? In other words, do there exist narrations from the Prophet (ﷺ) concerning the interpretation of every single verse, and if not, then how is the previous quoted verse of the Qur'aan understood?

The scholars of Islam were divided into two opinions with regards to this issue. Sharīkh al-Islām Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.) was of the view that the Prophet (ﷺ) explained all of the Qur'aan, whereas Jalāl ad-Deen as-Suyootī (d. 911 A.H.) claimed that the Prophet (ﷺ) only explained a small portion of it.⁶⁴⁵ In fact, both of these opinions are correct once the intent of both sides is understood. Those who claimed that the Prophet (ﷺ) only explained a small portion of the Qur'aan meant that there do not exist very many verbal narrations from the Prophet (ﷺ) concerning the detailed explanation of every single verse in the Qur'aan. On the contrary, as-Suyootī only managed to find a few hundred narrations from the Prophet (ﷺ) (including weak and fabricated ones) in which he (ﷺ) explicitly interpreted a verse.⁶⁴⁶ On the other hand, what Ibn Taymiyyah meant was that the Prophet (ﷺ) left us all the necessary knowledge needed in order to properly understand the Qur'aan. As 'Aḍḥah reported, the Prophet's (ﷺ) character embodied the Qur'aan.⁶⁴⁷ Therefore, even though there might not exist many explicit statements from the Prophet (ﷺ) concerning *tafsīr*, the Prophet (ﷺ) did leave us with the information and methodology necessary for understanding the Qur'aan. Therefore, it is essential to understand the Qur'aan not only in light of the explicit narrations of the Prophet (ﷺ) on the Qur'aan, but also in light of all of the *ḥadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ), whether they are concerning beliefs or laws, and in light of the actions of the Prophet (ﷺ), since his sayings and actions can be considered to be embodying the laws of the Qur'aan.

This opinion is supported by numerous statements from the Companions. Abū 'Abd ar-Rahmān as-Sulamī (d. 75 A.H.), the famous Successor, narrated, "Those who taught us the Qur'aan, such as 'Uthmān ibn 'Affān, 'Abdullāh ibn Mas'ūd, and others, told us that they would not memorise more than ten verses until they had understood what knowledge it contained, and implemented it. They used to say, 'So we learnt the Qur'aan, (its) knowledge and (its) implementation at the same time.'⁶⁴⁸ It is apparent, then, that the Companions made sure that they understood the meaning of the Qur'aan, and then implemented it. 'Umar narrated, "Amongst the last verses

644 al-Albānī, *Muḥammad Naṣir ad-Deen, Muḥaddith al-Islām fi al-Islām* (Tārīkh al-Hayāt al-Islāmiyyah, Egypt, n.d.), p. 5.

645 *al-Biḥār*, v. 1, p. 50. Actually, as-Suyootī clarifies his point of view later on in his *ḥisn*, which agrees in principle with Ibn Taymiyyah's view of *ḥisn*, v. 2, p. 264.

646 cf. *ḥisn*, v. 2, pp. 244-245.

647 Reported by al-Bukhārī.

648 Ibn Taymiyyah, p. 12.

to be revealed were the verses pertaining to interest, and the Prophet (ﷺ) passed away before explaining them to us.⁶¹⁹ This narration explicitly shows that the Prophet (ﷺ) used to make sure that the Companions understood the Qur'aan, since the only reason that the verses of interest were not explained in great detail was due to the sudden death of the Prophet (ﷺ).

As was mentioned earlier, there are only a small percentage of verses for which explicit narrations exist from the Prophet (ﷺ). The verse concerning the interpretation of 'wrongdoing' (6:82) as *shuk* has already been given above. This example illustrates the necessity of the interpretation of the Prophet (ﷺ), for even the Companions, despite their knowledge of Arabic, could not understand the correct interpretation of this verse until they had asked the Prophet (ﷺ). Another example is the *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ) in which he explained "...those whom You are angry with," and "...those who are astray" (1:7) as the Jews and Christians.⁶²⁰ He also explained the 'middle prayer' (2:238) as the Aqr prayer,⁶²¹ the 'additional (reward)' (10:26) as the seeing of Allaah by the believers in Paradise,⁶²² and that *al-Kawthar* (108-1) was "...a river that my Lord has given me in Paradise."⁶²³

In addition to such explicit examples of *tafsir*, there exist numerous examples from the life and sayings of the Prophet (ﷺ) which explain certain verses of Qur'aan, but are not recorded as explicit statements of *tafsir*. For example, the Prophet (ﷺ) stated, "Hell will be brought forth on that Day (i.e., Day of Judgement). It will have seventy thousand ropes (attached to it), and on each rope, there will be seventy thousand angels dragging it."⁶²⁴ Although this *hadeeth* does not mention any verse in the Qur'aan, it can be used to interpret verse 99:23, "And Hell will be brought that Day." The *hadeeth* describes how it will be brought. In another example, the penalty prescribed for theft is, "As for the thief, male or female, cut off his/her hand" (5:38). The *Sunnah* of the Prophet (ﷺ) explains that the thief's hand is only to be cut off if he steals above a certain monetary value, and that in such a case the right hand is to be cut off from the wrist joint.⁶²⁵ These additional details needed for understanding this verse are not present in the Qur'aan itself. In another verse, the Qur'aan proclaims,

قُلْ لَا أَهْدِي
فِي مَا أُوحِيَ إِلَيَّ شَيْئًا مِّنْ مَّا يَعْزِمُ الْمَلِئِكَةُ الْوَحْشَ إِلَّا مَن يَخْتَرُ
مِنْهُ أَوْ دُمًا مُّسْفُوفًا أَوْ وَلَحْمَ خَنَازِيرٍ

«Say, I do not find (in that which has been revealed to me) anything which is forbidden to eat by anyone who wishes to eat it except a dead animal, or blood poured forth, or the flesh of swine.» [6:145]

619 Reported by Ahmad and Ibn Maajah.

620 Reported by al-Tirmidhee.

621 Reported by al-Tirmidhee, and referred to in al-Bukhaaree and Muslim.

622 Reported by Muslim.

623 Reported by al-Bukhaaree and Muslim.

624 Reported by al-Tirmidhee.

625 cf. al-Albaanee, *Musnad*, p. ii.

However, this verse is not exhaustive, as the *Saasat* adds to this list all animals with fangs or claws, and excludes from the general ruling of dead animals seafood and locusts.⁶²⁶

From these and other examples, it is possible to say that the Prophet (ﷺ) explained the Qur'aan in the following manners:⁶²⁷

- 1) By his implementation of general or vague commands. For example, the Qur'aan orders the believers to pray and perform *Hajj*. The Prophet (ﷺ), by his actions and statements, showed the believers the exact procedure and timings of prayer, and the specific rites of *Hajj*.
- 2) By explaining unclear concepts in verses. For example, the verse commanding the believers to begin their fasts,

مِمَّا بَدَأَ فِيهِمْ الْحَبْلَ الْأَبْيَضَ مِنَ الْحَبْلِ الْأَسْوَدِ

«...when the white thread becomes clear from the black thread» [2:187],

was explained by the Prophet (ﷺ) as being the streaks of light in the sky after dawn.

- 3) By specifying the exact connotation of a word or phrase. The example in which the Prophet (ﷺ) specified that the 'injustice' referred to in 6:82 was *shirk* falls in this category.
- 4) By constraining a general ruling or verse. The example of the specification of 'thief' and 'band' by the Prophet (ﷺ) was given above.
- 5) By generalising a specific ruling or verse. An example of this is when some Companions came to the Prophet (ﷺ) and asked him concerning the verse,

وَلَا تَسْرِعُوا
فِي الْأَرْضِ ظَنًّا عَلَيْكُمْ جُنَاحُ أَنْ تَقْصُرُوا مِنَ الْعُسُوفِ أَنْ جَاءَكُمْ
أَنْ يَنْزِلَ عَلَيْكُمْ الْقُرْآنُ فَتُكْرَهُوا

«And if you travel through the land, there is no sin upon you if you shorten your prayers, if you fear that those who disbelieve may harm you» [4:101]

The Companions could not understand why the Prophet (ﷺ) and the Muslims were still shortening their prayers during travel, despite the fact that there was no longer any fear from enemy attacks. The Prophet (ﷺ) responded, "(The concession to shorten prayers even in a state of security) is a charity which Allah has given you, therefore accept the charity."⁶²⁸

626 *Ibid.*, p. 7

627 Based on *ad-Dhahabī*, pp. 60-62 and others.

628 Reported by Muslim.

- 6) By explaining the intent of a verse. The example in which the Prophet (ﷺ) explained

غَيْرِ الْمَغْضُوبِ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا الضَّالِّينَ

«...those whom You are angry with and those who are astray» [1:7]

as the Jews and Christians falls under this category.

- 7) By adding extra commands or prohibitions to the verse. An example of this is the Prophet's (ﷺ) prohibition of joining a woman with her maternal or paternal aunt in marriage (i.e., as co-wives), whereas the Qur'aan only prohibits combining a woman with her sister (4:23).
- 8) By emphasising the meaning of the verse. In other words, by practising and affirming the laws in the Qur'aan. For example, all *ḥadeeth* stressing good treatment to wives merely affirm the verse,

وَعَاشِرُوهُنَّ بِالْمَعْرُوفِ

«And live with them on good terms (and kindness)» [4:19]

- 9) By showing that the verse was abrogated. This category has already been discussed.⁶²⁹

These few examples should be sufficient to illustrate that the *Sunnah* is of equal importance to the Qur'aan in deriving laws and understanding the Qur'aan. The Qur'aan can never be understood properly without the *Sunnah*. Even the Companions, whose knowledge of the Arabic language was unparalleled, had difficulty understanding many verses until the Prophet (ﷺ) cleared up the exact meaning for them.

These two sources of *tafsir*, *tafsir* of the Qur'aan by the Qur'aan, and *tafsir* of the Qur'aan by the *Sunnah*, are the two ultimate sources for understanding the Qur'aan. Neither is allowed to contradict itself or the other, and both sources must be taken simultaneously in order to arrive at a correct understanding. These two sources are also the final authority on the interpretation of the Qur'aan – no interpretation is allowed to contradict or supersede the interpretation of the Qur'aan by the Qur'aan and the *Sunnah*.

3) TAFSEER BY THE STATEMENT OF THE COMPANIONS

After the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*, the next important source for understanding the Qur'aan is the understanding of the Companions. The statements of the Companions are taken as a fundamental source of *tafsir* for the following reasons:

- 1) The primary reason is that the Companions are a generation that was chosen by Allah to accompany the Prophet (ﷺ), and to pass on the religion and teachings

⁶²⁹ See, 'The Categories of *Naskh*,' in Chapter 13.

of Islaam to later generations. Their character and religious knowledge has been testified by Allaah and the Prophet (ﷺ), for Allaah says in the Qur'aan,

لَقَدْ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنِ الْمُهَاجِرِينَ الَّذِينَ هَاجَرُوا إِلَى اللَّهِ وَرَسُولِهِ فَأَمْضَىٰ اللَّهُ فِي قُلُوبِهِمُ الْيُسْرَىٰ وَأَخْرَجَهُمْ مِنْ أَكْثَرِ الْعِلْجِ ۚ إِنَّ اللَّهَ فَاعِلٌ بِمَا يُشَاءُ

-Muhammad (ﷺ) is the Messenger of Allaah. And those who are with him (i.e., the Companions) are severe against the disbelievers and merciful amongst themselves. You see them bowing and falling down in prostration, seeking the Bounty of Allaah and His Pleasure ... [44: 29]

In more than one verse of the Qur'aan, Allaah mentions the fact that

وَرَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُمْ وَرَضُوا عَنْهُ ۚ أُولَٰئِكَ حِزْبُ اللَّهِ ۚ أُولَٰئِكَ أَصْحَابُ الدِّينِ ۚ سَوَاءٌ مَن جَاءَهُمْ مِنَ اللَّهِ وَأَمَرَ اللَّهُ بِالْأَقْصَىٰ

-He is well pleased with them, and they with Him- [99: 8]

thus clearly showing the superiority of the Companions over other generations. The Prophet (ﷺ) said, "The best of all mankind are my Companions, then those that will follow them, then those that will follow them."⁶⁹

- 2) The Companions actually witnessed the revelation of the Qur'aan. Many of its verses were revealed to cater to problems that had risen amongst them. As such, they were familiar with the *asbab an-nawazil*, with the *maafee* and *maadame* verses, and with the *naasikh* and *mansookh*, and did not need to go searching for this knowledge, as later generations would have to do.
- 3) The Qur'aan was revealed in the Arabic that the Companions spoke. Therefore, many words and phrases that later generations had difficulty understanding were clear to the Companions.
- 4) The Companions were the most knowledgeable of generations with regards to pre-Islamic customs. Therefore, they understood the references in the Qur'aan to such customs.

There is a difference of opinion whether the interpretation of a Companion is of *definitive* authority. In other words, once a Companion has given an interpretation of a verse, must that interpretation be accepted, as is the case with the previous two sources of *tafseer*?

Al-Haakim an-Nasafpooree (d. 404 A.H.), the author of *al-Mustadab*, considered any interpretation by a Companion to be equivalent to a *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ), for he believed that all such interpretations must have originated from the Prophet (ﷺ). However, this opinion is not accepted in its generality, and the majority of scholars, such as an-Nawawee (d. 676 A.H.), as-Suyootee (d. 911 A.H.), and Ibn Taymeeyah (d. 728 A.H.), held the view that the interpretation of a Companion is equivalent to a *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ) only when it concerns matters which are not based on

personal reasoning (*ijtihād*), such as reports concerning *ṣaḥāb an-nawāḥid*, or the knowledge of the unseen. This is because such knowledge could not have originated from the Companions' *ijtihād*, and must have come from the Prophet (ﷺ). A report from a Companion not concerning these topics cannot be taken as equivalent to a *ḥadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ); rather, it is given a status below that of a *ḥadeeth*.⁶³¹ However, this does not diminish the status of the *tafsīr* from the Companions. The Companions were the most knowledgeable of this nation, and as such their personal reasoning (*ijtihād*) occupies a status above that of any later scholar.

Az-Zarkashī summarised this point when he said,

As for the interpretation of the Companions, it is investigated into: if this interpretation was based upon language, then they are the scholars of the language, and there is no doubt that they should be given credence to in this interpretation. If this interpretation relies upon what they saw of *ṣaḥāb an-nawāḥid*, or other circumstances (i.e., of pre-Islamic customs), then again there is no doubt concerning this type of interpretation.⁶³²

After the interpretation of the Qur'ān by itself and by the *ḥadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ), the Companions relied upon four primary sources to interpret the Qur'ān:⁶³³

- 1) Their knowledge of Arabic language, rhetoric, grammar and pre-Islamic poetry.
- 2) Their knowledge of the pre-Islamic customs of the Arabs.
- 3) Their knowledge of the habits of the Jews and Christians at the time of the revelation of the Qur'ān.
- 4) Their personal reasoning and their keen intellect (which, of course, was based upon knowledge)

Another integral aspect of the *tafsīr* of the Companions is the *ḥadeeth qur'ānī* and *ṣawābiḡ qur'ānī* which were discussed earlier. It is necessary to take these *qur'ānī* into account when interpreting a verse. As mentioned earlier, such *qur'ānī* cannot be considered as the Qur'ān, but may be studied as *tafsīr*. One of the interpretations of this type of *qur'ānī* is that they were added, not as Qur'ān, but for the sake of interpretation by the Companions. For example, in the *ḥadeeth qur'ānī* of Ibn Mas'ūd, the verse which told the believers to "fast three days" (5:89) as an expiation of an unfulfilled oath was read by him as: "fast three consecutive days." Due to this *ḥadeeth qur'ānī*, later scholars differed over whether it was necessary to fast three consecutive days, or whether it sufficed to fast any three days if one did not fulfill an oath.

To conclude, if the Companions agreed to an interpretation of a verse, that interpretation must be accepted, since it qualifies as *qur'ānī*. On the other hand, if there exist narrations from one Companion concerning the interpretation of a verse, and there does not exist any narrations to the contrary from other Companions, this inter-

631. cf. al-Sayyidī, *Tafhīm al-Raṣaṣ*, pp. 156-8.

632. az-Zarkashī, v. 2, p. 172.

633. cf. adh-Dhahabī, v. 1, p. 63.

pretation is also accepted, but is not equivalent in strength to the interpretation given by the Prophet (ﷺ). If there exist various narrations from different Companions which are not contradictory in nature, then all such interpretations are accepted. If there exist contrary narrations from different Companions concerning the same verse, in this case the researcher can choose between the different interpretations, depending on which interpretation seems to have the strongest evidence to support it.

Tafsir by the Statement of the Successors

Before moving on to the next section, a brief note concerning the *tafsir* narrations from the Successors would be useful. Some scholars took the *tafsir* of the Successors to be the next source of *tafsir* after the *tafsir* of the Companions. As proof for this stance, they relied on the statements of certain prominent Successors concerning their knowledge of the Qur'aan. Qatadah (d. 119 A.H.) said, "There is not a single verse in the Qur'aan except that I have heard something concerning it." Mujahid (d. 103 A.H.) said, "I recited the Qur'aan to Ibn 'Abbas three times. In each recitation, I stopped at every verse, asking him concerning its interpretation." This is why Sulayman ath-Thawree (d. 161 A.H.) said, "When you hear an interpretation from Mujahid, this should be sufficient for you!"⁶⁴⁴

Other scholars, however, rejected this view. They claimed that an interpretation of a Successor could not have originated from the Prophet (ﷺ), as could the interpretation of a Companion, since they never saw the Prophet (ﷺ). Also, they did not witness the revelation, as did the generation before them, and their trustworthiness is not guaranteed specifically for every one of their generation, unlike the Companions (in other words, the trustworthiness of every single Companion is guaranteed by the Qur'aan, whereas this is not the case for the Successors, for they have been praised as a generation, and not individually).

Therefore, the correct view in this matter, as Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.) said, is that if the Successors give the same interpretation to a verse, then their interpretation must be accepted, but if they differed among themselves, then the opinion of one group will have no authority over the other group, nor over the generations after them. In such cases, one must resort to the Qur'aan, the *Sunnah*, the Companions, and the Arabic language in order to obtain the correct interpretation.⁶⁴⁵

4) *TAFSIR BY ARABIC LANGUAGE AND CLASSICAL POETRY*

This topic is in reality two topics: *tafsir* by the Arabic language, and *tafsir* by classical poetry.

The relationship of the understanding of the Qur'aan to knowledge of the Arabic language is clear; it is impossible to truly understand and interpret the Qur'aan without knowledge of the Arabic language. Since the Qur'aan refers to it having been

⁶⁴⁴ Quotes taken from Ibn Taymiyyah, p. 58.

⁶⁴⁵ cf. Ibn Taymiyyah, p. 59.

revealed in 'a clear Arabic tongue' (16,103), the necessity of knowing this language in order to understand it cannot be overemphasised. In fact, the Qur'an states that one of the reasons that it has been revealed in Arabic is so that it can be pondered over:

﴿إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ قُرْآنًا عَرَبِيًّا لَعَلَّكُمْ تَعْقِلُونَ﴾

'We have sent down to you an Arabic Qur'an so that you may understand
[12.2]

The interpretation of the Qur'an must comply with the rules of the Arabic language, in terms of vocabulary, grammar, rhetoric and principles of discourse.

Imam Maalik (d. 179 A.H.) said, "If any person is brought to me, having interpreted the Qur'an while he is ignorant of the Arabic language, I will make an example of him (by punishing him)."⁶¹⁶ The famous Successor and student of Ibn 'Abbas, Mujahid (d. 103 A.H.), said, "It is impermissible for any person who believes in Allah and the Last Day to speak concerning the Book of Allah if he is not knowledgeable of the dialects of the Arabs."⁶¹⁷ Imam ash-Shafi'ee (d. 790 A.H.) underlined this principle clearly when he said, "Whoever desires to understand the Qur'an, then it will be understood from the speech of the Arabs, and there is no way other than this."⁶¹⁸

Therefore, it is essential to have a thorough understanding of the characteristics of the Arabic language, for it is not possible to understand the Qur'an by only knowing 'dictionary' Arabic. Imam al-Qurtubee (d. 671 A.H.) warns in the introduction to his *qfleeer* against

...rushing to interpret the Qur'an by the apparent Arabic wording, without researching into its strange and obscure words, its interchangeable phrases, and into the (characteristics) of succinct speech, deletion, and ellipsis. Whoever ... rushes to extract meanings based on the apparent Arabic meanings - his errors are frequent, and he enters into the realm of those who interpret the Qur'an (solely) with their intellect.⁶¹⁹

For example, the phrasing of a verse might be general, whereas its context shows that it is specific. In other cases, words or even phrases might appear missing, yet this is a characteristic of eloquent Arabic, since the missing words are understood by context. In some verses, it might appear that the logical sequence of words has been reversed, but such a reversal adds subtle meanings that would otherwise not be present. Such characteristics, and others, are well known to the Arabs, and are an indication of the eloquence of the Qur'an.

The interpretation of the Qur'an based on the Arabic language must not contradict an interpretation based on the Qur'an, *Sunnah*, or statement of the Compan-

616 *as-Zaafarbee*, v 1, p. 103.

617 *as-Zaafarbee*, v 1, p. 103.

618 *Ib.*, p. 137.

619 *al-Qurtubee*, v 1, p. 49. See some examples of such errors under the section, 'A Review of some Translations' in Ch. 15.

ions. This is because Allaah and His Messenger (ﷺ) are more knowledgeable of what they wish to express than later scholars of the language are. Likewise, the knowledge of the Companions is greater than the knowledge of any later linguist or grammarian. Therefore, the status of interpreting the Qur'aan based on the Arabic language comes after these three sources, and cannot supersede them.

To give an example of an interpretation that is based on Arabic yet contradicts something stronger than it, the scholar Abuu 'Ubayd al-Mu'tazil⁶⁴⁰ said concerning the verse,



- and He caused rain to descend on you from the sky, to clean you thereby and to remove from you the whisperings of Shaytaan, and to strengthen your hearts and make your feet firm thereby. [8:11]

"This verse is *isqaat*, and it means that Allaah sent down patience upon the Companions, so that they would be firm against their enemies."⁶⁴¹

This interpretation, although perhaps acceptable from a linguistic point of view, contradicts authentic narrations which show that the verse is to be taken in a *hakeeqe* manner; that it actually rained on the Companions, and that this rain caused the desert sand to become "firm" and thus made it easier for the Companions to walk. Aq-Tabaree (d. 310 AH), commenting on the view of Abuu 'Ubayd, said, "...and this opinion goes against all the scholars of *tafseer*, from the Companions and Successors. And it is sufficient evidence that an opinion is mistaken when it contradicts those whom we have mentioned."⁶⁴²

Linguistic vs. Islamic

When there occurs a word or phrase in the Qur'aan that gives different meanings based on the linguistic connotation of the phrase, and its Islamic meaning (i.e., *hukmee* vs. *shar'ee* meanings), in general the *shar'ee* connotation is given precedence, unless there is evidence to suggest otherwise. This is because the Qur'aan was revealed to explain the *shar'e* of Islam, and not to explain Arabic. To give an example, the Arabic word '*du'aa*' linguistically means a verbal invocation (also known in Arabic as *du'aa*). However, in its *shar'ee* connotation, the word implies a known set of actions and movements performed at specific times of the day or for specific occasions. Therefore, in the verses describing the relationship with hypocrites, when the Prophet (ﷺ) is commanded,

⁶⁴⁰ al-Tayyab, p. 41

⁶⁴¹ al-Tabaree, v. 9, p. 197

وَلَا تَسْأَلْ عَنْ أَمْوَالِهِمْ ثَمَنًا

‘And do not ever perform the *salat* upon them (the hypocrites who died)’
[9:84]

the word ‘*galeet*’ is taken in its *shar‘ee* meaning (i.e., the funeral prayer over a deceased hypocrite is forbidden), since this is the primary and understood meaning of the word. In order to prohibit even verbally asking for their forgiveness, other verses and *hadeeth* must be used. On the other hand, in the verse,

خُذْ مِنْ أَمْوَالِهِمْ صَدَقَةً تُطَهِّرُهُمْ وَتُزَكِّيهِمْ بِهَا وَصَلِّ عَلَيْهِمْ

‘Take from their money alms, so that they may be purified by it, and sanctified with it, and make *galeet* for them’ [9:103]

the word ‘*galeet*’ is understood in its linguistic meaning, i.e., a verbal invocation of blessing and forgiveness, since there exist narrations that the Prophet (ﷺ), when he used to receive such alms, would verbally bless their donors.⁶⁴²

An integral aspect of interpreting the Qur’aan by the Arabic language is interpreting the Qur’aan by poetry. This was a practice that originated during the time of the Companions.

Poetry Prohibited?

Certain verses of the Qur’aan and *hadeeth* seem to prohibit poetry. It is therefore essential to discuss them to understand their proper intent. The Qur’aan says,

وَالشُّعْرَاءُ يَتَّبِعُهُمُ الْغَاوُونَ ﴿٦٤﴾ أَلَمْ تَرَ أَنَّهُمْ فِي كُلِّ وَادٍ يَمِيقُونَ ﴿٦٥﴾ وَاتَّبَعَتْهُمْ ذُرِّيَّتُهُمْ بِمَا كَانُوا يُكَذِّبُونَ ﴿٦٦﴾ إِلَّا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ وَتُزَكَّرُونَ أَلَمْ تَكُنْ مِنْ أَعْيُنِنَا ﴿٦٧﴾

‘As for the poets – (only) the misguided follow them. Do you not see that they speak about every matter in their poetry, and that they say what they do not practice? Except those (poets) who believe, and do righteous deeds, and frequently remember Allah...’ [26:224-7]

Therefore, those poets who verify about matters which are useful, and practice what they preach, and remember Allah constantly, are not amongst those censured by the Qur’aan. The Prophet (ﷺ) also spoke against this type of poetry, for he (ﷺ) said, ‘It is better for a man’s chest to be filled with pus than to be filled with poetry’⁶⁴³. This *hadeeth* has been understood to refer to the poet who becomes excessively involved in his poetry, so much so that it ‘fills his chest’ and turns him away from the remembrance of the Qur’aan.⁶⁴⁴ Therefore, poetry in and of itself is not prohibited in

642 cf. al-Uthaymeen, p. 20

643 Reported by al-Bukhaaree and Muslim

644 cf. al-Albanaee, *Sajdah*, v. 1, p. 160

the Qur'aan or *amnah* – it is only evil and excessive poetry that is censured. In fact, the Prophet (ﷺ) stated, "Indeed, some poetry has great wisdom in it."⁶⁴⁵

It might be asked, "How can we interpret the Qur'aan – the Speech of Allaah – by poetry, which is the speech of men?"⁶⁴⁶

Abu Bakr ibn al-Anbaaree (d. 328 A.H.), in explaining this concept, said,

There are numerous narrations from the Companions and Successors concerning their explaining the obscure and rare words in the Qur'aan with poetry. Yet, despite this, some who have no knowledge have criticized the grammarians, and said, "When you do this, you are make poetry a source (of understanding) rather than the Qur'aan!" And they said, "How can you use poetry to comprehend the Qur'aan, when poetry has been condemned in the Qur'aan and *amnah*?"⁶⁴⁷

The response to this is that the situation is not as they have presumed, we have not made poetry a primary source over the Qur'aan, but rather we wish to clarify the meanings of the obscure and rare words in it. This is because Allaah has said,

﴿وَأَنزَلْنَا الْقُرْآنَ بِالْعَرَبِيَّةِ﴾

"And, We have revealed this as an Arabic Qur'aan" [12:2]

and He says,

﴿وَنَزَّلْنَاهُ مَكْرُومًا مُّبِينًا﴾

"... (the Qur'aan is) in a clear, Arabic tongue" [16:104].⁶⁴⁸

In other words, the purpose of poetry is to explain the Arabic of the Qur'aan, and is not meant to be the basis from which Islamic laws or beliefs are derived.

Ibn 'Abbaas said, "If you ask me concerning the rare words in the language, then seek it in poetry, for poetry is the recordings of the Arabs," and he also said, "Poetry is the recording of the Arabs. Therefore, if a word of the Qur'aan – that was revealed in the language of the Arabs – is obscure to them, they return to their recordings, and take the meanings from it."⁶⁴⁹

Umar was once with the other Companions in a gathering, and he asked them the meaning of the verse,

﴿وَالَّذِينَ هُمْ عَنْ صَلَاتِهِمْ سَاهَوْنَ﴾

"Or He will take them upon *slhawaf*" [16:47]

At this, an old man from the tribe of Hudhayl stood up and said, "This is from our dialect. *Islhawaf* means attrition (suffering loss little by little)." Umar asked him, "Is this something that the Arabs know from their poetry?" He answered, "Yes," and recited to them the line of poetry,

⁶⁴⁵ Reported by al-Bukhaaree

⁶⁴⁶ as Supposed, v. 1, p. 177

⁶⁴⁷ as Zafarshah, v. 2, p. 294.

'Her saddle *naḥḥawf* (abraded) from a long and high hump,
As when a piece of skin used for smoothing arrows has *naḥḥawf*
(abraded) from the back of a tree'

At this, Umar said, "Stick to the recordings, and you will not be misled." When asked, "What are the recordings?" he replied, "The poetry of pre-Islamic times. Therein is the explanation of your Book, and the meaning of your words."⁶⁴⁶

As-Suyooti, in his *al-Itqan*, quotes a lengthy account between one of the leaders of the *Khawarij*, Naafi' ibn Azraq, and Ibn 'Abbaas. Naafi' once passed by Ibn 'Abbaas while he was interpreting the Qur'aan to those around him. Naafi' said to his companion, "Come, let us go to this person who is pretending to interpret the Qur'aan even though he has no knowledge concerning it."⁶⁴⁷ They went to Ibn 'Abbaas in order to try to outwit him, and asked him, "We wish to ask you concerning the Book of Allaah, and we want you to explain it to us and bring us proofs from the Arabic language (for your statements), for verily Allaah has revealed the Qur'aan in a clear Arabic tongue." Ibn 'Abbaas told them, "Ask me whatever you wish!" So they asked him, "Tell us the meaning of the verse,

لَا رَيْبَ فِيهِ

«There is no *rayb* in it» [2:2]»

Ibn 'Abbaas responded, "(This means) there is no doubt in it." They asked, "Do the Arabs know this meaning?" He replied, "Yes. Have you not heard the line by Ibn Zuhair

'O-Umayyah! There is no *rayb* (doubt) concerning the truth,
There is only *rayb* (doubt) concerning what a liar says?"

Naafi' then proceeded to ask Ibn 'Abbaas the interpretation of a further one hundred and eighty nine verses, in each case trying to show that Ibn 'Abbaas was ignorant of the meaning of the verse. However, for every obscure phrase in each verse, Ibn 'Abbaas was able to explain its proper meaning, and quote a line of classical poetry to prove this meaning.⁶⁴⁸ In this incident, not only is the necessity of knowing Arabic poetry to interpret the Qur'aan shown, but also the superiority of the knowledge of the Companions over that of any other generation.

Whose Poetry?

The question arises, however, as to whose poetry may be used to interpret the Arabic of the Qur'aan? The scholars have divided the Arab poets into four categories, as follows:⁶⁴⁹

⁶⁴⁶ *idh* Dhahabee, p. 80, cf. Zarabozo, p. 28

⁶⁴⁷ This is one of the characteristics of the *Khawarij*, that they felt themselves to be more knowledgeable than the Companions of the Prophet (ﷺ), and to get accused most of them of *dabḥ*! It is for this reason and others that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "The *Khawarij* are the dogs of the Hellfire!" (Reported by Ahmad, cf. *Mudḥar* # 594)

⁶⁴⁸ *al-Suyooti*, v. 1, p. 178

⁶⁴⁹ *cf al-Suyooti*, v. 1, pp. 158-175

⁶⁵⁰ *Abd al-Raḥman*, p. 55

- 1) Pre-Islamic poets, meaning those who died before the advent of the Prophet (ﷺ). Examples of this category include Imr' al-Qays, al-'Aysheer and an-Na'ibighah.
- 2) Contemporary poets, meaning those who were alive when the Prophet (ﷺ) announced his prophethood. Examples in this category include Labee'd, and the famous Companion, Hassan ibn Thaalib.
- 3) Early poets, meaning those who appeared after the Prophet (ﷺ) but still relatively early in Islamic history. Examples in this category are Jarir and Farazdaq.
- 4) Later poets, meaning those who came after the last category till the present time.

Concerning the first two categories, there is no difference of opinion that their poetry may be used to interpret the Qur'aan. The third category has been the subject of dispute among the scholars, one of the reasons being the lack of any clear time frame to indicate a cut-off point between this category and the last one. However, the strongest opinion seems to be that the famous poets in this category can be used to interpret the Qur'aan, since at this early stage, the Arabic language was still relatively pure and free from the foreign influences that was indicative of later times. As for the last category, the majority of scholars do not allow for the interpretation of the Qur'aan by their poetry, even though some (such as az-Zamakhsharee), allowed the use of their poetry, as long as the poet was of a trustworthy character, and known for his knowledge of the Arabic language.⁶⁵¹

To conclude, it is essential to have an extensive knowledge of Arabic language and poetry in order to properly understand certain words and phrases in the Qur'aan. Such poetry is only used to obtain a linguistic meaning or interpretation of an obscure word, and is not directly used to form the basis for any Islamic rulings.

5) TAFSEER BY PRE-ISLAMIC ARAB CUSTOMS

Another integral knowledge that is essential in understanding the Qur'aan is the knowledge of the customs and manners of the pre-Islamic Arabs. This is because the Qur'aan was revealed in a certain society and time frame, and it addressed many of the issues related to that society. Therefore, in order to understand such verses, it is essential to know the customs and manners that they are referring to, since the actual verses themselves do not allude to them.

A few examples will help illustrate this point. Allah says in the Qur'aan,

يَسْأَلُكَ
عَنِ الْأَوَّلَةِ قَدْ هِيَ مَرْقِبَةُ الْبَنَاتِ وَالْحَرَجُ وَلَيْسَ الْبِرُّ
بِأَنْ تَأْتُوا الْبُيُوتَ مِنْ ظُهُورِكُمْ وَلَكِنَّ الْبِرَّ مَنْ اتَّقَى
وَأَتَى الْبُيُوتَ مِنْ أَوْبَعِهَا وَأَقَامَ الصَّلَاةَ وَآتَى
الزَّكَاةَ

‘They ask you (O Muhammad) concerning the crescent. Say: “They are signs to indicate fixed periods of time for mankind, and (to indicate) the *Hajj* (pilgrimage).” And it is not righteousness to enter your houses from the back, but true righteousness is (he) who fears Allah. So (therefore) enter houses through their proper doors, and fear Allah that you may be successful.’ [2:189].

A reader of this verse who is unaware of the customs of the pre-Islamic Arabs will bewilderedly ask, “Of what relationship is the sighting of the crescent to entering houses from the front or back, and of both of these acts to the fear of Allah?”

The answer to this question lies in knowing one of the superstitions of the pre-Islamic Arabs. When the moon used to be sighted for *Hajj*, the pagans of old would refrain from entering their houses through their front doors, and instead would jump over their back walls to enter their houses. Thus, Allah revealed in this verse the prohibition of such superstitions, and told them that true righteousness was not found in any superstition, but rather in the fear of Allah.⁶⁸⁶

In another verse, Allah says,

وَلَا تَتَّبِعُوا الْأَقْبُسَ وَلَا يَتَّبِعُوا مَا يَتَّبِعُونَ
مِنْ الْأَنْثَىٰ ذُنُوبُهُمْ عَلَىٰ نَفْسِكُمْ وَلَا يَنْتَظِرُ

‘And if you fear that you shall not be able to deal justly with (female) orphans under your care, then marry women of your choice, two, three, or four.’ [4:3].

‘Urwah ibn Zubair could not understand the relationship of taking care of orphans with marrying other women. He went to his aunt, ‘Aa’ishah, to ask her to clear up this confusion. She replied, “O my nephew! This verse is referring to the orphan girl who is in the care of her guardian, and he is attracted by her beauty and wealth. He wishes to marry her, without paying her the dowry that she deserves, so this verse prohibited them (the guardians) from marrying them (the orphans) if they did not think that they would be able to deal justly with these girls in their dowry, but instead to marry other free women.”⁶⁸⁷ In this incident, ‘Aa’ishah’s knowledge of pre-Islamic customs allowed her to understand the intent of this verse.

⁶⁸⁶ cf. Ibn Kathir, v 1, p. 242.

⁶⁸⁷ Paraphrased from Ibn Kathir, v 1, p. 488.

As a last example, the Qur'aan says,

مَا جَعَلَ اللَّهُ مِنَ الْغُيُورِ وَلَا سَائِبِغًا وَلَا رَسْبًا وَلَا جَانًّا وَلَا كَافًّا
لَهُمْ كُفْرًا يَعْنُونَ عَلَىٰ آثَارِ الْكُفْرِ وَأَكْثَرَهُمْ لَا يَعْقِلُونَ ﴿٥٦﴾

«Allah has not ordained the *ghayoor*, or the *sai'ibagh*, or the *rashagh*, or the *jaan*, but those who disbelieve invent lies against Allah. And most of them have no understanding» [2166]

Once again, it is essential to turn to pre-Islamic Arab customs in order to understand what this verse is referring to. The Arabs of old had certain superstitious religious practices concerning their animals, and in this verse Allah is informing them that these practices have no basis in the religion of Allah, but instead are lies that the pagans had attributed to Him.⁶⁵⁶

Although this source of *tafsir* is not essential in order to understand every single verse in the Qur'aan, it is nonetheless one of the necessary knowledges that a *mufta* must have.

6) TAFSEER BY JUDAEO-CHRISTIAN NARRATIVES

The Judaeo-Christian narratives are known in Arabic as *Isra'eehiyyaat*. These narrations are mostly found in Judaeo-Christian sources, such as the Torah, the Bible and the Talmud, although some were orally passed down. Although most of the *Isra'eehiyyaat* deal with the stories of the previous nations, there are also narrations on aspects of laws, beliefs and the signs of the Day of Judgement.

Hadeeth Related to Isra'eehiyyaat

There are three primary *hadeeth* that deal with the use and value of *Isra'eehiyyaat*, which, at first glance, seem to contradict themselves. However, as usual in cases in which *hadeeth* appear to 'contradict' one another, a closer inspection shows that such is not the case.

The Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Spread knowledge from me, even if it is a sentence (i.e., a verse of the Qur'aan or *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ)), and narrate from the Children of Israel without hesitation, but whoever intentionally forges a lie upon me, then let him prepare his place of residence in Hell."⁶⁵⁷ In this *hadeeth*, it appears that all *Isra'eehiyyaat* narrations can be accepted.

In another *hadeeth*, it is reported that 'Umar once came to the Prophet (ﷺ) with a copy of the Torah. The Prophet (ﷺ) asked him, "What is this, O 'Umar?" He replied, "It is a book that I had copied so that I can add, to my (present) knowledge, more knowledge." At this, the Prophet (ﷺ) became so angry that his cheeks appeared flushed, and he immediately ordered all the Companions to be called to the *masjid*.

⁶⁵⁶ of Ibn Kathir, v. 2, p. 121.

⁶⁵⁷ Reported by al-Bukhaari

He (ﷺ) then stood up and said, "O people! Verily, I have been given the most concise and precise of speech... and I have come to you with (the knowledge) that is pure. Therefore, do not be misled. I swear by Him in whose Hands is my life, were Moosaa alive right now, he would have no option but to follow me."⁶⁵⁸ In this narration, the Prophet (ﷺ) appears to be strongly prohibiting even reading *Insa'eefiyah* narrations.

The third *hadeeth* dealing with the subject mentions that the Jews would read the Torah in Hebrew, and then explain it to the Muslims in Arabic. The Prophet (ﷺ) remarked, "Do not believe the People of the Book, nor disbelieve them, but rather, say, 'We believe in Allaah, and what has been revealed to us, and what has been revealed to you.'" In this narration, the Prophet (ﷺ) told the Muslims that they were not allowed to believe in such narrations, nor could they deny their truthfulness, but could only affirm that Allaah had sent down revelations to both communities.

In combining these three narrations, the following conclusion may be reached: It is permissible to quote *Insa'eefiyah*, as long as these narrations do not contradict any verses of the Qur'aan or *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ). However, such narrations cannot be used as a source of knowledge, as their authenticity is unknown – rather, Muslims cannot outright deny their authenticity, nor can they convincingly affirm them.

The permission to narrate from the *Insa'eefiyah* 'without hesitation' applies to those narrations which do not contradict the Qur'aan or *Sunnah*, but at the same time, the Muslims are warned that such narrations cannot authoritatively be believed in. The Prophet (ﷺ) strongly objected to 'Umar's action of reading the Torah since Umar felt that it would increase his knowledge. The Prophet (ﷺ) explained that all the knowledge that was essential to know was available in the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*.

The Qur'aan also makes an allusion to the *Insa'eefiyah*. In the story of the 'Sleepers of the Cave' (cf. *Surah al-Kahf*, verses 9-26), Allaah mentions the various opinions that were held by the People of the Book concerning their exact number:

سَيَقُولُونَ ثَلَاثَةٌ
وَرَأَيْنَاهُمْ كَذَٰلِكَ وَظَنُّوْاكَ كَذِبًا سَادِسْتُمْ كَذِبًا رَّحِمًا
يَا عَجِبَ وَيَقُولُونَ سَاعِدْتُمْ ثَلَاثَةً حَتَّىٰ جَاءَهُمْ مُّزَيِّنًا عَمَّ
يَعْبُدُونَ فَيَقُولُ هُمْ أَكْثَرُ أَلْفًا قَلِيلًا فَلَا تَحْزَنْهُمْ أَلَمٌ أَكْثَرًا
وَلَا تَسْتَفْهِمُوا بِهِمْ قَوْلَهُمْ أَحَدًا ﴿١٦﴾

"And they say that they were three, the dog being the fourth among them, and (others) say that they were five, the dog being the sixth – widely guessing at the unknown. (Others) say that they were seven, the dog being the eighth. Answer (O Muhammad): 'My Lord knows best their numbers, none knows them but a few.' So do not debate with them except with clear proof. And do not consult any of them (the People of the Book) about the affair (of the People of the Cave)." [18:22]

In these verses, a number of points may be derived. Firstly, the number of people in this group was seven, since Allaah refuted the first two opinions, but silently approved the last one. Secondly, the verse alludes to the fact that knowing such facts is of no great value – rather one should respond that this knowledge is with Allaah. Thirdly, the Jews and Christians debate amongst themselves and with the Muslims on topics concerning which they have no clear knowledge, wildly guessing at the unknown. This shows that much of the *Iswa'eebyaat* is the product of human authorship. Fourthly, due to the last two facts, there is no great benefit to be obtained by debating with the Jews and Christians, except concerning those matters in which there exists certain knowledge. Lastly, there is no reason for the Muslims to question the Jews and Christians concerning such narrations, since they themselves are only guessing, and if this knowledge were of any benefit, it would have been revealed in the Qur'aan or *Sunnah*.⁶⁵⁹

Since the Prophet (ﷺ) allowed the narration of such literature, it is not surprising to find prominent Companions, such as 'Abdullaah ibn 'Amr ibn al-'Aas and Ibn 'Abbaas, quoting many *Iswa'eebyaat* narrations. During the Battle of Yarmuk against the Romans (13 A.H.), 'Abdullaah ibn 'Amr found two loads of books of the Christians and Jews. These books formed the basis of many of his *Iswa'eebyaat* narrations.⁶⁶⁰ However, none of the Companions used these narrations as sources of knowledge. This is because the Qur'aan is explicit that the Jews and Christians tampered with their respective scriptures, and changed the divine revelation. Therefore, it is impossible to ascertain which facts they added and which are still intact.

During the period of the Successors, the *Iswa'eebyaat* literature began playing a more prominent role in *tafsiir*. This was primarily due to a number of famous scholars who were originally Jews and Christians, but had converted to Islam. After their conversion, they used to narrate the *Iswa'eebyaat* that they had learnt in their youth. Famous among them were Ka'ab al-Ahbaar (d. 32 A.H.), Waahb ibn Munabbih (d. 110 A.H.), and 'Abd al-Malik ibn 'Abd al-'Azeez ibn Jurayj (d. 159 A.H.).⁶⁶¹

Unfortunately, later generations became lax concerning the prophetic prohibition in believing in the *Iswa'eebyaat*, and thus many of these narrations entered into *tafsiir* literature and were accepted as fact. Even such prominent scholars such as Imaam Ibn Jarreer at-Tabaree (d. 310 A.H.) and Ibn Katheer (d. 774 A.H.) are well-known for including such material in their *tafsiir* literature, although these two scholars would usually point out the uselessness of such material.

The Categories of Iswa'eebyaat

As alluded to earlier, the *Iswa'eebyaat* can be divided into three categories:⁶⁶²

- 1) Those narrations which are confirmed in the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*. Most of the stories in the Qur'aan concerning the previous nations are also found in the *Be-*

659. cf. Ibn Taymiyyah, p. 57.

660. adh-Dhahabee, v. I, p. 185.

661. *ibid.* v. I, p. 216.

662. adh-Dhahabee, v. I, p. 189.

ble. The general themes of many stories are common to both books, such as the Flood of Noah, and the prophethood of Ibrahim, Moosaa and others. Such narrations in the Bible may be accepted, since the Qur'aan confirms their authenticity.

- 2) Those narrations which contradict the Qur'aan, the *Sunnah*, or Islamic teachings. For example, the Bible ascribes to certain prophets evil deeds, such as the story of Lot's intercourse with his daughter-in-law, and Sulaymaan ordering the death of one of his generals so that he could marry his wife. Such crimes are unacceptable to ascribe to prophets, and as such these narrations must be rejected as false. In other places in the Bible, Allaah is given certain characteristics (such as regret, neediness, and ignorance) that do not befit Him. These types of *Isra'eeleeyaat* cannot be narrated unless one explains their falsehood.
- 3) Those narrations concerning which the Muslims have no knowledge. The majority of *Isra'eeleeyaat* narrations fall under this category. It has been allowed to narrate such stories without actually believing in them. For example, almost all the stories in the Bible are, in general, more detailed than their Qur'aanic counterparts. Names, figures and places which are typically not mentioned in the Qur'aan are mentioned in the Bible and other *Isra'eeleeyaat* material.⁶⁶³ These facts cannot be accepted as truth by Muslims, for it is not known whether they were tampered with or not. Example of such facts are the names of the twelve Children of Jacob, the name of the Angel of Death (known in Muslim literature as *Al-mala'ik*),⁶⁶⁴ the colour of the dog of the Sleepers of the Cave, the part of the cow that Moosaa hit the dead man with, and the names of the birds which Ibrahim resurrected.⁶⁶⁵

Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.), in summarising the potential usefulness of the *Isra'eeleeyaat*, comments, "They may be quoted, as the *hadeeth* (of the Prophet (ﷺ)) permits it, but let us note that most of them have no value whatsoever so far as religious matters are concerned."⁶⁶⁶

7) TAFSEER IS SUBJECTIVE OPINION (RA'Y)

The last source of *tafsir* is *tafsir* by subjective opinion, commonly known in Arabic as *ra'y*. In other words, a scholar uses his personal opinion (*ihtidaad*) to arrive at an interpretation of a verse, and this is called *tafsir* with *ra'y*.

663 This is a further indication of the *ajam* of the Qur'aan, for there is absolutely no *isnād* to be gained by such knowledge, and in fact it were useless to read that which is useful to know.

664 This name does not occur in any verse of the Qur'aan or *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ). Therefore, it is safer not to call the angel of death *Al-mala'ik*, since we do not know for sure the authenticity of this name. For further details, see Ashfaq, Umar Sulaiman, *Adab al-Malahiqat al-Ahwal* (The an-Nabawi Rawat, 1986), p. 18.

665 cf. Ibn Taymiyyah, p. 96.

666 Paraphrased from Ibn Taymiyyah, p. 96.

A number of scholars have claimed that there is a difference of opinion over the legitimacy of this type of *tafseer*. They claimed that certain scholars allowed this type of *tafseer*, whereas others prohibited it. In reality, as many researchers have shown, the difference of opinion is only verbal.⁶⁶⁷ This is because *ra'y* is of two types: *ra'y* that is based upon knowledge and conforms with the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*, and *ra'y* that is based upon desires and disagrees with the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*. Those scholars that are quoted as prohibiting *tafseer* with *ra'y* in reality are prohibiting the second category of *ra'y*, and not *ra'y* in general.

The Two Types of *Ra'y*

The evidence that *ra'y* is of two types is found in the Qur'aan, the *Sunnah* and the statements of the Companions. The first type of *ra'y*, which is based upon knowledge, is not prohibited, whereas the second type of *ra'y*, which is not based upon knowledge, is prohibited.

The proofs that *ra'y* based upon knowledge is not prohibited are many, including:⁶⁶⁸

- 1) The verse,

أَلَمْ يَتَفَكَّرُوا فِي الْقُرْآنِ أَمْ لَهُمْ قُلُوبٌ غَلِيظَةٌ ﴿١٦﴾

«Do they not reflect and ponder over the Qur'aan? Or are there locks on their hearts (that prevent them from understanding)?» [47:24]

This verse asks mankind to ponder and reflect over the Qur'aan, which shows that there are meanings and interpretations that are to be obtained only after contemplation – *tafseer* with *ra'y*.

- 2) The verse,

يَذَكِّرْ لَهُمْ أَنْ يَتَذَكَّرُوا فَيَرْحَمُوا رَبَّهُمْ إِنَّمَا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ الذِّكْرَ الْفَرِيدَ ﴿٢٥﴾

«(This is) a Book that We have sent down to you, full of blessings, so that they may ponder over its verses, and that men of understanding may remember» [38:25]

Once again, the believers are told to ponder over its verses.

- 3) The verse,

وَلَوْ رَدُّوهُ إِلَى الرَّسُولِ وَإِلَى أُولَى الْأَمْرِ مِنْهُمْ لَعَبِهَ الْوَلِيُّ يَنْتَحِيزُ إِلَى هَؤُلَاءِ مِنْهُمْ ﴿٨٣﴾

«If they had only referred it back to the Messenger, or to those in authority amongst them, then those who are qualified to extract interpretations (or rulings) would have known its [4:83]

⁶⁶⁷ cf. adh-Dhakhoor, v 1, p. 367, as-Tayyib, p. 48, Ik, p. 371, as-Raazee, p. 79

⁶⁶⁸ adh-Dhakhoor, v 1, pp. 213-274, as-Raazee, pp. 78-85

This verse shows that there are people (the scholars) who are qualified to extract some knowledge that others might not be able to, once again proving that *tafsir* with *ra'y* is allowed, if based upon knowledge.

- 4) The prayer that the Prophet (ﷺ) made for Ibn 'Abbaas, "O Allah! Grant him interpretation" shows that there are meanings to the Qur'aan that are not obvious to everyone, and that is why the Prophet (ﷺ) prayed that Ibn 'Abbaas be given this knowledge.
- 5) The Companions and those after them all interpreted the Qur'aan with more than just narrations, and this proves that *tafsir* based upon *ra'y* is allowed. For example, when Aboo Bakr was asked concerning the case of *halaalah* mentioned in verse 4:176, he replied, "I say with my *ra'y*, so if it is correct, it is from Allah, and if it is incorrect, it is from myself and Shaytaan."⁶⁶⁹ This shows that Aboo Bakr interpreted the Qur'aan based upon *ra'y*.
- 6) The fact that *ijtihad* is a part of this religion, and with it, any stagnation that might have existed is removed from the religion. *Tafsir* with *ra'y* is one type of *ijtihad*, and thus allowed.

The proofs that *ra'y* based upon desires is prohibited are:

- 1) The verse,

قُلْ مَا نَعْلَمُ رَبِّيَ الْغَوَّاصُّ مَا ظَهَرَ مِنْهَا وَمَا
بَيْنَ الْأَيْمَنِ وَالْأَيْمَنِ يَمُرُّ الْغَيْبُ وَلَا تَقْرَأُوا الْقُرْآنَ مَنَافِرَةً
مِنْهُ وَلَئِنْ تَقُولُوا أَعْلَمُ الْقَوْمِ بِالْأَشْيَاءِ لَكُنْ مِنَ الْمُنْكَرِ ﴿٣٨﴾

«Say: My Lord has only prohibited evil deeds, the apparent and hidden of them,» and that you say concerning Allah that which you do not know» [7:38]

- 2) The verse,

وَلَا تَقْبَلُوا لَهُ مِنَ الْغَيْبِ عِلْمًا

«And do not follow that which you have no knowledge of» [17:36]

These two verses discourage speaking without knowledge, and included in this is *ra'y* that is not based upon knowledge.

- 3) The many narrations that exist from the *salaf* that show their caution in interpreting the Qur'aan without any knowledge. Perhaps the most famous quote is that of Aboo Bakr, who said, "What earth would give me support, and what sky would shelter me, if I said concerning the Book of Allah what I do not know?"⁶⁷⁰

The above evidences prove that *ra'y* is divided into two types: *ra'y* that is praiseworthy, and *ra'y* that is blameworthy. The *ra'y* that is praiseworthy is that which is based upon knowledge, and performed by one who is qualified to do so. Therefore, this type

⁶⁶⁹ al-Jalalain, v. 4, p. 284

⁶⁷⁰ al-Bayhaqi, p. 82

of *ra'y* does not contradict the Qur'aan, the *Sunnah*, the statements of the Companions and the rules of the Arabic language; rather, such a *ra'y* is based on these sources. The *ra'y* that is blameworthy is that which is performed without knowledge, by one who is not qualified to perform it. Such types of *ra'y* typically contradict stronger sources of *tafsir*.

Where is Ra'y Used?

It is obvious that *tafsir* by personal reasoning (*ra'y*) cannot, by its very definition, be explained or confined to a particular methodology. Suffice to say, however, that such interpretations (specifically for those generations after the Companions) are the weakest source of *tafsir*, and as such it is not allowed to contradict any source higher than it. Any time an interpretation based on *ra'y* contradicts any other source of *tafsir*, it must be rejected, since there is no guarantee that it is correct.

Some scholars have classified the areas that *ra'y* might be used as follows:⁶⁷¹

- 1) To uncover meanings in a verse that conform with Arabic, and the Qur'aan.
- 2) To discover certain hidden aspects of the Qur'aan within the realm of human limit. An example of this is when a certain linguist sees why one phrase or word has been used in a certain context over its synonyms.
- 3) To see the goals of certain verses and understand their perspectives. An example of this is when a scholar puts forth a certain relationship between a set of verses.
- 4) To extract and elaborate the morals that are to be gained from Qur'aanic stories.
- 5) To demonstrate the literary *joins* of the Qur'aan.

A Divine Blessing

Perhaps one of the most important factors that is essential in order to arrive at a proper interpretation based upon *ra'y* is a divine blessing from Allaah. This is because *tafsir* based upon *ra'y* requires a keen intellect, and an ability to grasp meanings that are not apparent in a verse. These qualities are from the blessings and mercy of Allaah, and cannot be achieved by book-knowledge alone. It was this type of understanding that the Prophet (ﷺ) prayed for Ibn 'Abbas when he (ﷺ) said, "O Allaah! Bless him with the knowledge of interpretation."⁶⁷²

However, even though this type of knowledge cannot be gained through books, there are certain ways to achieve it. As the scholars of the past said, "Whoever fears Allaah with the knowledge he knows, Allaah will bless him with knowledge of that which he does not know."⁶⁷³ This is also alluded to in the verse:

وَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَيُعَلِّمُكُمُ اللَّهُ

«So fear Allaah, and Allaah will teach you.» [2:282]

671. *id* ib, p. 175.

672. Reported by al-Bukhaaree.

673. Reported by Abou Na'aman.

If a person makes his intentions sincere for the sake of Allaah, and practices the knowledge that he knows, and strives to gain more knowledge, it is very likely that he will be blessed with this type of ability.

v. The Qualifications of a Mufasssir

A person who wishes to interpret the Qur'aan (a *mufasssir*) must fulfill certain conditions and qualities before he is allowed to explain the Qur'aan to people – not everybody can just pick up the Book of Allaah and start interpreting it!

As was quoted earlier from Imām ash-Shaafi'ee (d. 204 A.H.), "It is impermissible for any person to give verdicts concerning the religion of Allaah, unless he is knowledgeable of the Book of Allaah, and its *aswāb* from its *manasib*, and its *mufasss* from its *manushaah*, and its interpretation, and its process of revelation, and its *naḥḥ* from its *waslaawee*, and its *asbaab an-nawool*. On top of this, he must be knowledgeable of the *Sunnah*..."⁶⁷⁴

As-Suyootee, in his *al-fyoon*, lists fifteen characteristics that a person must have before he is qualified to interpret the Qur'aan. However, these are only a summary of the qualities that a *mufasssir* is required to have. Some of these qualities, and others, are listed briefly below. The first four are inherent qualities that are essential in a *mufasssir*, and the others are external and acquired.⁶⁷⁵

- 1) The proper intentions, since the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "All actions are by intentions."⁶⁷⁶ The *mufasssir* must intend to please Allaah by this action of interpreting the Qur'aan, and he must intend to guide people to the Straight Path to the best of his abilities.
- 2) The correct Islamic beliefs ('*aqeedah*). If a person is not a Muslim, or of a heretical or misguided sect, then he cannot be trusted in interpreting the Qur'aan, for his motive will be to defame Islam, or to defend his particular sect or beliefs.
- 3) To be free from practising or believing in innovations, and to respect the Qur'aan. If a person is innovating in the religion of Allaah, then he will have no qualms about innovating in the interpretation of the Book of Allaah. Also, the *mufasssir* must love and respect the Qur'aan, and have the proper beliefs concerning it. Part of this belief is that he must believe that the Qur'aan is the actual *ḥaawm* of Allaah (and not an 'expression' of the *ḥaawm* of Allaah!). Ibn al-Qayyim (d. 758 A.H.) said, "...a *mufasssir* must witness that it (the Qur'aan) is the *ḥaawm* of Allaah, which Allaah actually spoke, and which was revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ) by inspiration. And none can grasp its meanings unless his heart is free of misgivings and doubts with regards to the Qur'aan, and if a person does not really believe that the Qur'aan is from Allaah, then there is a disease in his heart (which prevents him from understanding the Qur'aan)."⁶⁷⁷

674 *an-Nahḥ*, p. 124.

675 *as-Suyootee*, v. 2, pp. 273-37; *ar-Roomi*, pp. 136-42; *Zamzama*, pp. 11-13.

676 Reported by al-Bukhaaree and others.

677 *ar-Roomi*, p. 12.

- 4) Repentance and a pious heart. This condition means that a *muftaaw* must fear Allah to the best of his abilities, and if he falls into a sin, he must immediately repent to Allah for that sin, and not return to it. This is because, as Ibn al-Qayyim said, "No heart can understand the Qur'aan, or grasp its meanings, except if it is pure, and it is impossible for a heart full of evils and innovations to understand the meanings of the Qur'aan properly."⁶⁷⁸
- 5) A thorough and proper understanding of the fundamentals of religion (*al-aqedah*), so that a *muftaaw* can avoid falling into many of the heresies and innovations that misguided sects did with regards to the understanding of the Qur'aan.
- 6) Following the proper methodology of *tafsir*. A basic introduction to this methodology was outlined in the previous section.
- 7) Knowledge of the Arabic language and its vocabulary. Such knowledge must, of course, be on a scholarly level; a person whose primary language is Arabic is not necessarily knowledgeable of Arabic to the level that is required to interpret the Qur'aan.
- 8) Knowledge of Arabic grammar (*nahw*).
- 9) Knowledge of Arabic morphology (*isarf*).
- 10) Knowledge of the basis of Arabic words and word structures (*ishqaag*)
- 11) Knowledge of Arabic rhetoric, eloquence and manners of oratory.⁶⁷⁹
- 12) The knowledge of the *ajzaah, da'irah, shaa'ir* and *baa'ir qur'aani*.
- 13) The knowledge of the principles of *fiqh* (*usool al-fiqh*), so that he can interpret the verses pertaining to laws in a proper manner.
- 14) The knowledge of *fiqh* itself, so that he is aware of the various interpretations of the verses pertaining to laws.
- 15) The knowledge of *adeeb an-nawal*, and related sciences.
- 16) The knowledge of *nawadib* and *manawadib*, and related sciences.
- 17) The knowledge of the *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ), in particular those related to the interpretation of the Qur'aan.
- 18) The knowledge of all the other branches of *'ilmu al-Qur'aan*, including *maafee* and *madanee*, *maafih* and *mutashabih*, and the types of *r'joos* of the Qur'aan.
- 19) A divine endowment that is not possible to obtain by one's self. This is a type of gift from Allah to whomever He chooses. This type of intellect was what the Prophet (ﷺ) prayed for when he prayed for Ibn 'Abbas, "O Allah, grant him an understanding of interpretation."

⁶⁷⁸ Zuhayli, p. 11

⁶⁷⁹ This one point is a summary of three different points in the figure, all of which are types of knowledge related to the Arabic language. These are the knowledges of *ma'aana*, *hadeeth*, and *bayaan*.

From this list, which is far from exhaustive, it can be appreciated that not everyone is qualified to pick up the Qur'ān and start interpreting it, in particular if he is not even familiar with Arabic! Of the fifteen conditions that al-Suyūṭī mentions in his list, seven – almost half – are directly related to the knowledge of the Arabic language. In addition, the knowledge required for every other condition (in terms of books and scholars) is not available in any language other than Arabic! It is not surprising, therefore, to see Shaykh al-Islām Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.) saying that, "...the Arabic language is a part of the religion (of Islam)"⁶⁸⁰

VI. The Types of Tafseer

Ibn 'Abbas said, "Tafseer is divided into four types: a type that the Arabs know by their language, a type which no one can be excused from not knowing, a type which the scholars are aware of, and a type which none can know except for Allah."⁶⁸¹ As for the type which the Arabs are aware of because of their speech, this is due to their knowledge of Arabic vocabulary, grammar and the principles of rhetoric. As for the type which no one can be excused from not knowing, this refers to the basic principles of Islam, such as the Oneness of God (*tawḥīd*), the finality of the prophethood of Muḥammad (ﷺ), and the general laws and commandments in Islam. As for the type which the scholars are aware of, this is because they are knowledgeable of all the branches of *ʿilmu al-Qur'ān*, and are capable of *ijtihād*. They are, therefore, qualified to interpret the verses of the Qur'ān in a manner which others are incapable of. As for the type whose knowledge is known only to Allah, this is the knowledge of the matters of the unseen, such as the time of the Day of Judgement and the actuality of the Attributes of Allah.

However, what is meant in this section by the 'types' of *tafseer* are the various methodologies that the scholars of *tafseer* have used while interpreting the Qur'ān. During the history of Islam, the Qur'ān has been subject to hundreds of *tafsirs*, and it is not feasible to discuss all of them. It is possible, however, to divide the *tafsirs* that have been written into broad categories, into which almost all *tafsirs* can be classified, and discuss the general principles that each category has in common.

The various *tafsirs* can, in general, be classified in one of six main categories, each of which has certain commonalities that will be discussed below. Of course, when a certain *tafseer* is placed in one category, this does not imply that all that is found in that *tafseer* is based upon that one particular methodology, but rather that the general methodology of the book is as shown.

For each category, examples of the most famous *tafsirs* that were written with that methodology will be given, and some will be elaborated upon in the next section.⁶⁸²

⁶⁸⁰ Ibn Taymiyyah, *Ajwāb al-Ma'āl al-Jalīlāt* (Riyadh: Maktabat al-Munawwar, 1411) (in Arabic), vol. 1, p. 407.

⁶⁸¹ al-Zarkashī, vol. 2, p. 161.

⁶⁸² The primary references for the names, classifications, and short critiques of all of these *tafsirs* are: al-Bihār (tentative work), al-Risāla, (pp. 144–152), and al-Nihāya (tentative work), and the references *tafsirs* themselves.

A. TAFSEER BASED ON NARRATIONS

This category is known as *tafseer bi'l-ma'dhoor*, or *tafseer* based on narrations. In other words, the Qur'aan is interpreted based upon other verses of the Qur'aan, *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ), and statements of the Companions and Successors. This type of *tafseer* is, of course, the most authentic and proper method of *tafseer*. Typically, the authors of this type of *tafseer* included *isnaads* of the narrations, or at least referenced the work where the *isnaad* was found.

The most important works based on this type of *tafseer* are:⁶⁸³

- 1) *Jawm' al-Bayaan 'an Ti'weel Aay al-Qur'aan*, by Muḥammad ibn Jarreer as-Ṭabarce (d. 310 A.H.) (This work will be discussed in greater detail in the next section).
- 2) *Tafseer al-Qur'aan al-'Adheem*, by Ibn Abi Ḥazam as-Raazee (d. 327 A.H.). This work is a compilation of narrations from the Prophet (ﷺ) and the *salaf* concerning *tafseer*. The author is a famous scholar of *hadeeth*, and one of the Imams of the science of *jarḥ wa ta'deel* (the science of categorising the people of narrations based upon their acceptance and reliability). In his work of *tafseer*, he kept his own comments to a minimum, and compiled thousands of narrations from the Prophet (ﷺ) and the *salaf*. This *tafseer* was only printed recently, and is one of the classic works in the field of *tafseer bi'l-ma'dhoor*.⁶⁸⁴
- 3) *Baḥr al-Uloom*, by Abū al-Layth as-Samarqandee (d. 375 A.H.). This work was only printed recently, after having existed for centuries only in manuscript form. Although the author quotes from the *salaf*, he does not include the *isnaads* of the narrations, thus making it difficult to benefit fully from it. On occasion, he ascribes views and interpretations to unknown scholars, by stating, "Some of them said...". In addition, after quoting the various opinions concerning a verse, he rarely draws a decisive conclusion between these opinions, thus leaving an average reader confused. Certain *Sufi* tendencies are also to be found in it. However, the work is a useful reference, especially if one wishes to obtain early interpretations of a verse after the time of the *salaf*.
- 4) *Al-Kashf wa al-Bayaan 'an Tafseer al-Qur'aan*, by Abū Ishāq ath-Tha'labee (d. 427 A.H.). Commenting on this *tafseer*, Shaykh al-Islām Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 724 A.H.) said, "...there are a large number of fabricated *hadeeth* which have been reported by ath-Tha'labee... As a man, ath-Tha'labee was righteous and pious, but he cared little about his sources, and copied from the books of *tafseer* all kinds of things without discriminating between the authentic, weak and fabricated..."⁶⁸⁵

⁶⁸³ as-Raazee, p. 79. Also see ath-Thabateer's work, v. 1, pps 214-261.

⁶⁸⁴ There are four primary works in the field of *tafseer bi'l-ma'dhoor*: the *tafseer* of Ibn Jarreer as-Ṭabarce (d. 310 A.H.), the *tafseer* of Ibn Abi Ḥazam (d. 327 A.H.), the *tafseer* of 'Abd al-Raḥmān al-Jumayl (d. 349 A.H.), and the *tafseer* of Ibn al-Mundhir (d. 384 A.H.). It is reported that all narrations of *tafseer bi'l-ma'dhoor* revolve around these four great works. Unfortunately, only the first two are in print; the other two have not, as of yet, been discovered in manuscript form. It is also reported that Imām Aḥmad ibn Ḥambal (d. 241 A.H.) authored a voluminous work of *tafseer*, but this too is missing.

⁶⁸⁵ Ibn Taymiyyah, *Maqalidhul*, p. 40.

This *tafsir* contains a large quantity of *Isra'iliyyat* narrations. Ash-Tha'labee also delves extensively into the grammar of the Qur'aan, and the rulings and opinions concerning the verses related to *fiqh*.

- 5) *Ma'aalim al-Tanzil*, by Abuu Muhammad al-Husayn ibn Ma'ood al-Baghawee (d. 516 A.H.). The author was a very famous scholar of *hadith* (his book of *hadith*, *Sharh al-Sunan*, is his most famous work), *fiqh*, and *tafsir*. Many scholars praised his *tafsir*, and Ibn Taymiyyah said of it, "The *tafsir* of al-Baghawee is a summarised version of as-Tha'labee's *tafsir*, except that he avoided narrating fabricated traditions and the views of the innovators."⁶⁹⁶ The *tafsir* mentions the interpretations of the *salaf* without *usool*.
- 6) *Al-Mubharar al-Wiqeen fee Tafsir al-Kitaab al-Azeez*, by Ibn 'Aqriyyah al-Andalusee (d. 546 A.H.). The author was a very famous scholar of Andalus, and eventually became its Chief Judge (*Qaasid*). Ibn Taymiyyah praised his *tafsir*, but pointed out that it has minor errors in it.⁶⁹⁷
- 7) *Tafsir al-Qur'aan al-Adheem*, by Ibn Kathir ad-Dimashquee (d. 774 A.H.). (This work will be discussed in greater detail in the next section).
- 8) *Al-Jawahir al-Hayaan fee Tafsir al-Qur'aan*, by 'Abd as-Rahmaan ath-Tha'ashbee (d. 876 A.H.). The author summarised this *tafsir* from over a hundred works (some of them not extant anymore), primarily basing it on Ibn 'Atiyyah's work. Most of the quotes from other *tafsirs* are verbatim, and referenced.
- 9) *Ad-Dawar al-Manthoor fee at-Tafsir bi al-Ma'thoor*, by Jalal ad-Deen as-Suyootee (d. 911 A.H.). In this work, as-Suyootee compiled all the narrations he could find from the Prophet (ﷺ) and the *salaf* concerning the interpretation of every verse. The work is voluminous and extremely useful; however, in order to maximise its value, it needs to be critically edited to differentiate the weak narrations from the authentic ones.
- 10) *Fiqh al-Qadees*, by Muhammad ibn 'Alee ash-Shawkaanee (d. 1250 A.H.). The author was a famous scholar of Yemen, and one of the greatest scholars of his time. This *tafsir* is an excellent combination of interpretation based upon narrations, proper *ra'y*, differences in the *qira'at*, and the language and grammar of the Qur'aan. Ash-Shawkaanee managed to eloquently summarise an interpretation of the Qur'aan based on these various methodologies into five volumes.
- 11) *Ajnas' al-Bayaan fee Tadar al-Qur'aan bi al-Qur'aan*, by Muhammad al-Ameen ash-Shanqeetee (d. 1393 A.H.). Ash-Shanqeetee has been called by many the scholar of this century, and this work is just one indication of that. In the work, the author conditioned upon himself to interpret the Qur'aan with the Qur'aan (although he did not interpret every verse). No student of knowledge can afford to be without this work. Unfortunately, he passed away before he could complete

⁶⁹⁶ Ibn Taymiyyah, *Maqaalat*, p. 40.

⁶⁹⁷ *al-Qaasim*, p. 505.

the work, but his main student (Shaykh 'Aqyyah Saadim) took over from where he left, and completed the last two volumes of the *tafseer*.

Of course, this list is not exhaustive, and neither are all the works mentioned correct in all that they say. However, in general, the works listed followed the methodology of *tafseer* with narrations, and gave this methodology precedence over others.

B. TAFSEER BASED ON PERSONAL OPINIONS

Tafseer ar-Ra'y was defined and discussed earlier. These *tafseers* are based primarily on *grihaad* from the *mufasssir*, based on the nuances of the phrasing of a verse, the various linguistic connotations carried by a word, and other factors. Of course, this does not imply that the narrations of the Prophet (ﷺ) and Companions are absolutely ignored in these works, but rather that the primary purpose and source of these *tafseers* was *grihaad*.

Although some of the *tafseers* written with this methodology are useful works, the problem that arose was that the two primary sources of *tafseer* – *tafseer* of the Qur'aan with the Qur'aan and *Sunnah* – were not given great emphasis by most of these scholars, and secondary sources were used to interpret the Qur'aan. Thus, some of these *tafseers* (but not all) became well known for contradicting other verses and *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ), since these were not considered while interpreting a verse. In addition, some of these *tafseers* were written based upon the type of *ra'y* that is blameworthy; in other words, scholars who did not have the proper *'aqeedah* wrote interpretations of the Qur'aan in which they sought to defend and prove their innovations.

One of the best forms of *tafseer* is one in which *tafseer* by narrations is given precedence, while *tafseer* based on *grihaad* (*ra'y*) is only used as long as it does not contradict anything stronger than it. Some of the works mentioned above (for example, the works of Ibn Kathir and ash-Shawkānnee) can be considered as having combined these two types of *tafseer*, with the proper emphasis on each type.

The works that can be classified in this category can be sub-divided into two categories: *tafseer* based upon praiseworthy *ra'y*, and *tafseer* based upon blameworthy *ra'y*.

The works that might be considered as having followed *tafseer* based upon *ra'y* that is praiseworthy are ⁶⁸⁸

- 1) *Mafasssah al-Ghayb*, by Fakhr ad-Deen ar-Raazee (d. 606 A.H.) (This work will be discussed in greater detail in the next section).
- 2) *Awasar al-Tamreeq wa Ahsan al-Ta'weel*, by Nazar ad-Deen al-Baydharwee (d. 691 A.H.) The author based his *tafseer* on some narrations from the *asaf* az-Zamakhsharee's work, and ar-Raazee's work, and also included his own *grihaad*. At times, he is influenced by az-Zamakhsharee's opinions in *'aqeedah*, and ar-Raazee's 'scientific' interpretations of certain verses.

- 3) *Mudarrak al-Tanzil wa Haqaiq al-Tafsir*, by Abul al-Barakat an-Nasafi (d. 701 A.H.). The author was an ardent *Ash'ari* in *'aqedah* and *Manafir* in *fiqh*, and his *tafsir* is a clear indication of this. His *tafsir* is primarily based on al-Baydharwi's and az-Zamakhshari's works, except that he deletes the *Mu'tazili* beliefs found in the latter. The *tafsir* summarises az-Zamakhshari's comments on the literary eloquence of the verses.
- 4) *Lubab al-Tafsir* for *Ma'anir al-Tanzil*, by 'Alau ad-Deen al-Khamani (d. 741 A.H.). The author, as he himself mentions in his introduction, merely summarised some of the *tafsirs* written before his time, basing his summary primarily on al-Baghawi's work.
- 5) *Ghina'ib al-Qur'aan wa Raghadib al-Fiqayah*, by Nidham ad-Deen ibn al-Hajam an-Naysaboori (d. 728 A.H.). The author based his *tafsir* primarily on ar-Razzi's work, and added many benefits from az-Zamakhshari's work. The author was not merely a compiler of quotes, for he frequently gives his own opinions, and critiques the views of ar-Razzi and az-Zamakhshari. However, the *tafsir* contains some philosophical discussions, certain *Sufi* interpretations, and a defence of the views of the *Ash'aris* against the views of the *Mu'tazilis*.
- 6) *Al-Bahr al-Mufari*, by Muhammad ibn Yusuif, otherwise known as Abu Hayyam (d. 745 A.H.). This is a very useful work, since the author concentrated on the grammatical analysis of the Qur'aan, and accentuated its literary *r'ijaz*. At first glance, the work seems to be more of a grammatical discussion than interpretation of the Qur'aan, but this is perhaps the most distinctive feature of the work, as the author mentions the various differences that the scholars of grammar have held concerning the analysis (*'irab*) of certain verses. This work is perhaps the first work so far in order to obtain a linguistic analysis of a verse. Another salient feature of this *tafsir* is that Abu Hayyam refutes many of az-Zamakhshari's heretical ideas from the Arabic language itself (in other words, he shows how az-Zamakhshari is incorrect in deriving certain beliefs based upon Arabic grammar).
- 7) *Tafsir al-Jalanlaya*, by Jalaal ad-Deen al-Mughalla (d. 864 A.H.) and his student, Jalaal ad-Deen as-Suyooti (d. 911 A.H.). This *tafsir* was started by al-Mughalla, but he died before completing it, so his student, as-Suyooti, completed it after his death. This *tafsir* is perhaps the most famous *tafsir* in this category, and very popular amongst the masses, primarily due to its simplicity and modest size.
- 8) *As-Siraj al-Munir* for *al-Fa'wanth alaa Mu'tafath bi' al-Ma'anir Kalaam Rabani al-Halqim al-Khabeer*, by Shams ad-Deen Muhammad ibn Muhammad, otherwise known as al-Khateeb as-Shabeeni (d. 977 A.H.). Despite its lengthy title, the *tafsir*'s primary purpose was to simplify and condense the interpretation of the Qur'aan so that the average Muslim could read it. The author benefits from and quotes many works of the *tafsirs* (in particular, the works of al-Baydharwi, al-Baghawi, ar-Razzi and az-Zamakhshari), and includes his own critical comments as well. In addition, he strives to show the relationship between the arrangement of the verses of the Qur'aan

- 9) *Irshad al-'Aql as-Saleem ilaa Manaa'iq al-Kitaab al-Kareem*, by Abou as-Sa'ood Muhammad ibn Muhammad al-'Imadee (d. 982 A.H.). This *tafseer* is a moderate-sized one, and especially useful for its discussion of the eloquence of the Qur'aan, and certain wisdoms behind its arrangement.
- 10) *Rooq al-Ma'ane' fee Tafseer al-Qur'aan al-'Adheem wa as-Saba' al-Mathane'*, by Shihab ad-Din al-Akoonce (d. 1270 A.H.). A voluminous work; the author quotes and benefits from many *tafseers*, and also gives his opinions. However, on too many occasions, the author gives bizarre *Saafi* interpretations to a verse, and this is why some scholars use this *tafseer* as an example of *tafseer al-uharee* (to be discussed below).
- 11) *Mahajer at-Ta'weel*, by Jamal ad-Din al-Qasamee (d. 1332 A.H.). The author was a famous scholar of Syria, and his work earned him considerable praise by the scholars of his time, such as Muhammad Raheed Rida (d. 1354 A.H.) and others. This *tafseer* is primarily a collection and summary of quotes from other *tafseers*, and the author purposely keeps his comments to a minimum.
- 12) *Tafseer al-Kalaam al-Mana'an*, by 'Abd ar-Rahmaan as-Sa'adee (d. 1376 A.H.). The author was one of the most famous scholars of Arabia, and a defender of the 'aswadh' of the *salaf*. His aim in this *tafseer* was to present the meanings and interpretations of the Qur'aan in simple language, without any detailed discussions or evidences from other sources, hence it is included in this category. It is available in five small volumes. This *tafseer* is perhaps the most useful work of *tafseer* for the layman who does not wish to go into any detail about the various interpretations of the Qur'aan; if a person wishes to understand the Qur'aan in plain and simple language, this is the reference that he should obtain.

It must be mentioned, however, that the fact that these *tafseers* followed *ru'y* based upon knowledge does not imply that all that is contained in them is correct; on the contrary, some of them contain grave errors (such as the works of an-Nasafee and ar-Raazee), while others are relatively error-free (such as as-Sa'adee's work).

The *tafseers* that are written with *ru'y* that is based upon desires, and with the intention of defending innovations, are many; in fact, every *tafseer* written by a scholar of one of the heretical sects can be considered an example of this type of *tafseer*. Perhaps the most famous of these *tafseers* are:

- 1) *Tanzeeh al-Qur'aan 'an al-Majas'is*, by Qadree 'Abd al-Jalbaar al-Hamadance (d. 415 A.H.), one of the leading scholars of the *Mu'tazilah*.
- 2) *Al-Kashaf*, by Mahmood az-Zamakhsaree (d. 538 A.H.), also of the *Mu'tazilah*. (This *tafseer* will be discussed in the next section).
- 3) *Majma' al-Bayaan fee Tafseer al-Qur'aan*, by Abou 'Alee al-Faall ibn Husein at-Taharree (d. 538 A.H.), a *Sa'ee'ite* scholar.

C. TAFSEER OF THE JURISTS

The Qur'aan is, of course, the primary source of *fiqh*, or jurisprudence. Therefore it is no surprise to find that certain scholars have turned to the Qur'aan with this in mind, and written *tafseers* with the primary purpose of extracting laws from the Qur'aan. This type of *tafseer* is known as *tafseer al-fuqahaa*, or *tafseer* of the jurists. In fact, some *tafseers* of this type only deal with those verses that have a direct relationship to *fiqh*, and do not discuss verses primarily related to other matters. However, most of the classics in this field discuss all the verses of the Qur'aan, with particular emphasis on law-related verses.

Some of the famous *tafseers* written with this methodology include:⁶⁸⁹

- 1) *Tafseer Ahkham al-Qur'aan*, by Abuu Bakr ar-Raazee, otherwise known as al-Jassaq (d. 370 A.H.). This *tafseer* is written from a *Hanafee* point of view.
- 2) *Ahkham al-Qur'aan*, by Abuu Bakr al-Bayhaque (d. 458 A.H.). This *tafseer* is a compilation of narrations from Imaam as-Shaafi'ee.
- 3) *Tafseer Ahkham al-Qur'aan*, by Abuu Bakr ibn al-'Arabee (d. 543 A.H.). Primarily written from a *Maash'ee* perspective, and is considered a reference for the *madh-hab*.
- 4) *Al-Jaami' li Ahkham al-Qur'aan*, by Abuu 'Abdullaah al-Qurtubee (d. 671 A.H.). To place this *tafseer* in the category of *tafseer bi al-ma'ashoor* would not be incorrect, for the author follows the proper methodology in the interpretation of the Qur'aan. However, the *tafseer* emphasises the aspects related to the *fiqh* of a verse. Although al-Qurtubee discusses all the opinions concerning the *fiqh* of a verse, the *tafseer* is considered to be from a *Maash'ee* perspective.
- 5) *Zaad al-Musaf'ee 'Ilaa al-Tafseer*, by Ibn al-Jawzee (d. 597 A.H.). Even though this *tafseer* is not primarily meant for *fiqh*, it nonetheless can be considered a *Hamulatee tafseer* in its discussion of verses related to *fiqh*.
- 6) *Najd al-Musaf'ee 'Ilaa al-Tafseer Ayyat al-Ahkham*, by Muhammad Sadeeq Hasan Khan (d. 1307 A.H.). This *tafseer* only discusses those verses that deal with *fiqh*. The author was one of the scholars of Ahl al-Hadeeth in India, and therefore his *tafseer* does not conform to one particular *madh-hab*.
- 7) *Rasa'ir al-Bayaan Tafseer Ayyaat al-Ahkham*, by the modern author Muhammad 'Alee as-Saboonce. He also restricts himself to those verses related to *fiqh*, and does not conform to one particular *madh-hab*.
- 8) *Tafseer Ayyaat al-Ahkham*, by Manaa' al-Qutuban (author of *Mabaahith fee 'Ulum al-Qur'aan*). This one also is restricted to verses related to *fiqh*, and is not confined to one *madh-hab*.

D. SCIENTIFIC *TAFSĪR*

Another category of *tafsīr* is what has been termed 'scientific *tafsīr*', or *tafsīr al-'ilmī*. This type of *tafsīr*, as can be presumed from its title, seeks to interpret the Qur'aan based upon scientific facts. These *tafsīrs* concentrate on those verses in the Qur'aan which discuss nature and aspects related to the physical world, and seek to explain these verses in the light of 'modern' science. Therefore, these *tafsīrs* seek to elaborate upon the scientific *r'isāla* of the Qur'aan.

However, as was pointed out earlier in the section on scientific *r'isāla*, it is absolutely essential that the proper methodology for extracting these scientific facts be followed. Unfortunately, almost none of the *tafsīrs* that are famous for this type of interpretation followed such a methodology; instead, these authors sought to prove that the Qur'aan mentions every type of science and knowledge known to man. Most of these interpretations even went to ludicrous extremes, claiming that the Qur'aan had 'founded' and laid down the sciences and principles of engineering, medicine, astronomy, meteorology, algebra, metallurgy, agriculture, carpentry, sewing, weaving, tanning, baking, precise measuring, and underwater diving⁶⁹⁰. As can be seen, most of these topics are not mentioned as such in the Qur'aan at all; on occasion, some basic aspects of these sciences are mentioned or hinted at, but never is any discipline or principle explained. To presume that these sciences are all based on the Qur'aan requires quite a degree of imagination; it is true that the Qur'aan does not condemn these sciences, and encourages knowledge in general, but to claim that it forms the basis for the principles of these disciplines is absurd.

The two most famous *tafsīrs* in this category are *Mafatih al-Ghayb*, by Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī (d. 606 A.H.) (also mentioned above), and *al-fawā'id fī Tafsīr al-Qur'aan al-Karīm*, by the famous Egyptian scholar, Shaykh Jānaawī Jāsharī (d. 1359 A.H.). There are other *tafsīrs* that have been influenced to various degrees by this type of interpretation, perhaps one of the most extreme being *Tafsīr al-Manāṭiq*, by Ahmad ibn Muṣṭafā al-Manāṭiqī (d. 1952 C.E.). In this work, the author denies or distorts almost all the supernatural miracles of the prophets, and denies the existence of angels and *jinn*, on the presumption that these facts are not explainable by science. He even goes to the extreme of claiming that Adam is not the father of all of creation, since 'modern historical and scientific research does not support this theory'⁶⁹¹!

Dr Muḥammad adh-Dhahabī, one of the foremost scholars of comparative *tafsīr* of this century, complains of the increasing popularity of this type of *tafsīr*, and states,⁶⁹²

This type of *tafsīr* – I mean *tafsīr al-'ilmī*, which tries to prove that the Qur'aan is composed of all types of disciplines, the modern and the un-discussed – has become increasingly widespread in our times, and very

690 For a list of the various verses that have been used to 'prove' these aspects, see adh-Dhahabī, v. 2, pp. 518-522.

691 see-Naples, p. 68.

692 adh-Dhahabī, v. 2, p. 514. This author has not seen a better refutation of the over-zealousness of this brand of *tafsīr* than adh-Dhahabī's discussion of the topic, v. 2, pp. 511-588.

popular for those who are specialised in science and care for the Qur'ān. The effect that this brand of *tafsīr* that has dominated the hearts of these people has had is that we find a plethora of books being released in which these authors try to treat the Qur'ān so that it appears as if all the sciences of the heavens and earth are in it, whether explicitly or implicitly. And this is based upon their presumption, as we mentioned earlier, that these interpretations of the Qur'ān are the most important proof of its authenticity, and its *uṣūl*, and its permanency (that it can be applied in all generations).

In reality, it seems that the authors of these type of *tafsīrs* were so impressed and awed with the West and its sciences, that they felt that the only way of proving Islam was to show that the Qur'ān had preceded the West in the knowledge of all of these sciences. These authors failed to realise, however, that the goal of the Prophet (ﷺ) was not to teach mankind science, but rather to teach them the worship of Allah! It is not of the primary goals of the *Sharḥ*'s to provide and elaborate upon the disciplines of modern science, as Imam ash-Shaṣṣībī (d. 790 A.H.) mentioned over six centuries ago.⁶⁹¹ Ash-Shaṣṣībī further stated that,⁶⁹²

the *salaf* of this ummah, from the Companions and the Successors and those that came after them, were none knowledgeable of the Qur'ān and its sciences and what was hidden in it; yet none of them spoke of these things that are claimed to exist except for what we discussed (i.e., some basic sciences)... and if they had become engrossed in such subjects, and examined (the Qur'ān in such a light), it would have reached us, and at least the basic principle of this issue (i.e., scientific interpretation) would have been proven to us. But we do not find any mention of this, which shows that they did not have this concern with them. And this is clear proof that the Qur'ān was not sent to affirm what these people are presuming (facts in the Qur'ān). Yes, we are not denying that the Qur'ān mentions some science that the Arabs had, and other (sciences) that are well-known, rational that enlightens people of intellect... but to presume that it contains matters that it does not, then no!

In other words, if the *salaf* did not place too much emphasis on this type of *tafsīr*, that shows that it is not worth holding it in such importance. As ash-Shaṣṣībī stated, it is true that the Qur'ān contains scientific facts – facts that a person living in the sixth century CE would not know, but to presume that this is the primary purpose of revelation, or that the Qur'ān as a reference to all the sciences is a gross error.

To conclude, *tafsīr al-ḥimī* must be placed in its proper position; too much emphasis should not be given to this topic, and neither should one exert all his efforts in this field. The Qur'ān was sent as a guidance for mankind so that they could properly worship their Creator, and not to lay down principles of science. In addition, the proper methodology should be followed when this type of interpretation is resorted to. *Tafsīr al-ḥimī* is an important type of *tafsīr*, but only if it is used properly.

⁶⁹¹ adh-Dhahabī, v. 2, p. 323.

⁶⁹² *adul*, v. 2, p. 326. Is it not as if ash-Shaṣṣībī is addressing the modern authors of these types of *tafsīrs*?

E. *TAFSIR* BASED ON INNER MEANINGS

Tafsir al-ibhaaree is a type of *tafsir* in which it is assumed that every verse in the Qur'aan has a certain hidden or inner meaning to it, and this meaning cannot be obtained except by a few chosen people. This type of *tafsir* was prevalent amongst the *Sufis*. Needless to say, such *tafsir* was well-known for its extremely imaginative interpretations, the majority of which had no basis from any verse! It is for this reason that many scholars said, "This type of *tafsir* is not considered *tafsir*"⁶⁹⁵.

However, some scholars allowed this type of *tafsir*, as long as the following conditions were met:⁶⁹⁶

- 1) That no *fiqh* rulings or 'aspeelah' be derived from such *tafsir*.
- 2) That the *ibhaaree* interpretation does not contradict the apparent meaning of the verse.
- 3) That the *ibhaaree* interpretation is not claimed to be the only or primary meaning of the verse, thus negating the apparent meaning.
- 4) That the *ibhaaree* meaning does not contradict other aspects of the *Sharee'ah* or common sense.
- 5) That this interpretation has some basis for it in the *Sharee'ah*.
- 6) That it is not presumed that belief in the *ibhaaree* interpretation is obligatory.

In reality, it would not be incorrect to say that *ibhaaree* interpretations that are acceptable (i.e., that meet the above conditions) are nothing more than interpretations based on correct *ra'y*. Thus, it would probably be safer to refrain from using the term *tafsir al-ibhaaree*, due to the fact that this name has been associated with far-fetched interpretations, particularly of the *Sufis*.

Tafsir al-ibhaaree was not used by all those who interpreted the Qur'aan; on the contrary, the majority of works quoted above did not concern themselves with this type of interpretation. Some works, while concentrating primarily on the apparent meanings of the verse, also commented on *ibhaaree* meanings. Perhaps the most famous *tafsir* of this type is al-Aloa'ee's (d. 1370 A.H.) work (quoted above), since, after quoting various opinions concerning the apparent interpretations of a verse, he usually ends the topic by mentioning such *ibhaaree* interpretations. Other works totally ignored the apparent meanings of the verse, and concentrated only on *ibhaaree* ones. These works were primarily authored by extreme *Sufis*, and are not very popular amongst the masses. An example of such a work is the *tafsir* of Muh'ib ad-Deen ibn 'Arabee (d. 638A.H.), the famous *Sufi* heretic. This *tafsir* contains such blasphemous interpretations that even al-Azhar University (which is well known for its *Sufi* leanings) issued a decree prohibiting the publication and sale of this work!

To give some examples of what *tafsir al-ibhaaree* is like, three *ibhaaree* interpretations are quoted, in order of 'extremity'.

695 al-Zarkashy, v 2, p. 179

696 cf. ib., pp. 208-209; adh-Dhakhree, v 2, p. 408

An example of this type of *tafsir* is concerning the story of Jaakoot when he tested his people. The Qur'aan states,

لَمَّا فَصَلَ طَالُوتُ بِالْجُنُودِ إِذْ سَأَلَهُمْ شَرِبُوا مِن مَّاءٍ فَقَالَ إِلاَّ مَنِ امْتَنَعَ
وَشَرِبَ مِن مَّاءٍ فَأَمَّا الْيَهُودُ فَأَمْسَكُوا فَقَالُوا إِنَّمَا ظَنَنَّا أَنَّكَ
سَأَلُنَا لِنَشْرِبَ فَأَمَّا الْإِسْرَائِيلُ فَأَمْسَكَوا ثُمَّ قَالَ لَمَّا خَلَّوْا
إِنِّي مَنِّي الْكَافِرُ إِلَّا مَن يَتْلُو آيَاتِي فَأَعْتَصِمُ
بِهَا

«Then, when Jaakoot set out with his army, he said, 'Verily, Allah will test you with a river, whoever drinks from it, he will not be with me, except if he takes (a sip) with his hand.' Yet, they all drank of it, except a few of them...» [2:249]

Some 'scholars' said, in the interpretation of this verse, that the river is meant to be a parable of this world; whoever 'drinks' from it excessively will fail, and whoever abandons it totally cannot survive, but the one who takes the bare minimum of what he needs is the one who will be successful. After quoting this interpretation, Imam al-Quraybee (d. 671 A.H.) said, "And how beautiful is this, were it not for the fact that it involves excessive interpretation, and a distortion of the apparent meanings of the verse."⁶⁹⁷

Another example is the *shar'ee* interpretation of the verse,

وَلَوْ أَنَّا كَتَبْنَا عَلَيْهِمْ أَنِ اقْتُلُوا أَنْفُسَكُمْ أَوْ اقْرَأُوا
بِكُرْآنِكُمْ مَا فَعَلُوا إِلَّا قَلِيلٌ مِّنْهُمْ

«And if We had ordered them to kill themselves, or to leave their houses, very few would have done so» [4:66]

One of the famous scholars of the *Sufis* interpreted this verse as, "'To kill yourselves' means to go against all its desires, and 'to leave your houses' means to expel all love of this world from your hearts. Only 'a few would have done it' in quantity, but these (people) are great in quality, and they are the special ones who have reached the true positions,"⁶⁹⁸ meaning that they are the 'friends' (*awliya'*) of Allah, the title of *Sufi* leaders. As is seen from this interpretation, a certain concept or philosophy is 'read in' to the verse, as the verse makes absolutely no mention of going against one's desires and leaving the love of this world.

As a last example, the first letter in the Qur'aan is *baa* (in the *basmalaah* preceding the *Faatihah*) and the last letter is *seen* (in, '*amr al-yumr an-nu an-naa*' in 114.6). From this fact, certain 'scholars' derived the word '*baa*', meaning, 'sufficient' as if the Qur'aan is stating that it is sufficient for all of mankind's needs.⁶⁹⁹ Such far-fetched interpreta-

⁶⁹⁷ al-Quraybee, v. 3, p. 348

⁶⁹⁸ adh-Dhahabee, v. 2, p. 419

⁶⁹⁹ cf. Ik, p. 214

tions have no basis in the proper methodology of *tafsīr*. Likewise, all interpretations based on the number of times a word or letter occurs in the Qur'ān are examples of *tafsīr al-ḥisāb*. Such interpretations are unheard of from the *ashaf*, and if there was any benefit to be gained from this type of *tafsīr*, they would have discussed it and elaborated upon it.

In conclusion, it is necessary to be extremely cautious if one is reading an *ḥisāb* interpretation of the Qur'ān, as such interpretation is usually not in accordance with the proper methodology of *tafsīr*.

F. MODERNISTIC TAFSEERS

What is meant by this category are not those *tafsīrs* written in modern times, but rather a type of *tafsīr* that is different from the categories mentioned above, with its unique styles, themes, and methodologies that are suitable for modern-day readers. In other words, the authors of these *tafsīrs* tried to present the interpretation of the Qur'ān in an unprecedented style – a style that they felt would be more amenable to the generation of present times, that would solve problems that its readers would be facing in their daily lives, that would ignore much of the material found in older *tafsīrs* that modern readers would neither comprehend nor find useful, that would incorporate Western thought and philosophy in its interpretation; basically, a *tafsīr* that was meant for today's generation.

Although such an idea is admirable, and its goals praiseworthy, many of the authors of this type of *tafsīr* did not realise the fact that the proper methodology of *tafsīr* does not change with time. It is, therefore, not possible that a person re-interpret the Qur'ān in a manner or methodology not consistent with the methodology of the *ashaf* in *tafsīr*. In addition, almost all of these authors were influenced strongly by the 'Modernist' school of thought (known as the *Ishāqīyyah* movement), founded by Jamāl al-Dīn al-Afghānī (d. 1897 CE) and his students, Muḥammad 'Abduh (d. 1905 CE) (and by Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khān in the Indian subcontinent). Although this movement has some praiseworthy points (it fights against blind-following, *taqlīd*, it seeks to re-affirm the importance of *qibāḍ* in many ways it avoids the superstitions and *sharīʿ* practices of today's societies), at the same time it represents one of the most powerful forces against the true teachings of Islam. This is because of the fact that its primary goal is to combine Western philosophy with Islamic thought and teachings, an act that the *Muḥaddith* before them tried and failed to do; an act that, in essence, goes against the very purpose of the religion.⁷⁰⁰

The more famous *tafsīrs* of this category are:⁷⁰¹

700 This is not the place to refute the ideas of this movement – which, unfortunately is probably one of the strongest philosophies alive today, especially amongst the Muslims of the West. For a better discussion and critique of this movement, the reader is referred to Muḥammad Ḥusayn Naṣr's *al-Iṣṣāṣ* (Muḥaddith al-Kawthar, Riyadh, 1985) (Unfortunately, no book is yet available in English on the topic. However a good series of audio lectures by Jamāl Zarabozo is available).

701 al-Basīr, p. 105, al-Ḥabab, v. 2 pp. 383-664.

- 1) *Tafseer al-Masaar*, by Muḥammad Rasheed Rada (d. 1354 A.H.; 1935 CE). Although the author was not as extreme in his beliefs as his teacher, Muḥammad 'Abduh, he was still greatly influenced by him. In fact, it is narrated that Rasheed Rada, while writing this *tafsir*, purposely avoided reading any work of *tafsir*, for fear that he might be 'influenced' by it, and thus possibly affect his own interpretation.⁷⁰² In reality, the *tafsir* is not without its benefits, but the influence that Muḥammad 'Abduh had on him is very noticeable throughout the work; the author denies all the miracles of the Prophet (ﷺ) except the Qur'aan, interprets 'muḥ' as being disease-carrying microbes, denies the reality of magic, and other aspects which are not surprising to find in a 'modernistic' work.
- 2) *Tafseer al-Maraaghee*, by Aḥmad Mustafā al-Maraaghee (d. 1370 A.H.; 1952 CE). This *tafsir* was commented upon earlier. An-Najdee summarised this and all similar *tafsirs* when he said, "And al-Maraaghee tried to make this *tafsir* of his a 'modern' *tafsir* of the Qur'aan, one that would be appropriate and suit the present Muslim situation. However, he fell into error because of his following certain views and ideas of the West, and his over-exaltation of the physical sciences."⁷⁰³
- 3) *Tafseer al-Qur'aan al-Kareem*, by Mahmūd Shakhūth (d. 1383 A.H.; 1963 CE).
- 4) *Fee Dhilaaf al-Qur'aan*, by Syed Quṭb (d. 1387 A.H.; 1966 CE). Although Syed Quṭb was much less influenced by the *Ishākiyyah* school than the others that are mentioned, he was greatly influenced by the *Iḥwān al-Muslīmīn* movement of Egypt, and died for its cause. To claim that his *tafsir* is the most popular *tafsir* of modern times would not be an exaggeration. The *tafsir* is very simple to read, and aims to prove the superiority of the law of Islām over all other laws, and the importance of establishing the law of Allāh on earth.⁷⁰⁴ However, perhaps due to the fact that Syed Quṭb was not very knowledgeable of the various sciences of Islām, the *tafsir* has some grave errors in it (on many matters of 'agreed', for he was influenced both by the *Ash'arites* and the 'modernists'; his misconception that the primary purpose of Islām is to fight tyrannical governments and establish the law of Allāh; his concept that all Muslim societies and governments are representative of *Jaahiliyyah*, etc.). In addition, since he was very much influenced by the arts (literature, poetry, etc.), at times his interpretation seems to be discussing some work of Arabic literature rather than the Book of Allāh, and many phrases of his are not befitting when discussing such topics.⁷⁰⁵

702 *ad-Dihlīyah*, v 2, p. 620.

703 *an-Najdee*, p. 69.

704 This principle, although in essence correct, was taken to an extreme by the *Iḥwān al-Muslīmīn* of Egypt, and the *Jaama'at Islāmiyyah* of Pakistan, until it became the primary goal of these movements. For an excellent discussion of this aspect, see Dr. Rabee Ibn Hadeer al-Madkhalee's *The Methodology of the Prophet in Calling to Allāh* (al-Hudaayah Publishing and Distribution, Birmingham, 1997).

705 *al-Roomiyyah*, *Irghaḥat*, v 3, p. 195. For a critique of the views of Syed Quṭb, see the work of Dr. Rabee Ibn Hadeer al-Madkhalee, in particular, *Aḥwāl al-Iḥwāniyyah ala 'Aqaid al-Sayyid Quṭb wa Aḥwāl al-Maktabah al-Gharibah*, Madinah, 1991).

In conclusion, this brand of *tafsīr*, although perhaps the most popular amongst the Muslim masses of today, usually contains ideas and perspectives that are alien to Islaam. Although the majority of the contents of these *tafsīrs* are acceptable, there are serious and not too infrequent deviations from the beliefs of *Ahl al-Sunnah*, both in *ʾaḥādīth* and in methodology.

It is a very noble and necessary goal to present the interpretation of the Qur'aan in a manner which the people of a particular time and place will appreciate. However, this does not mean that the *aqūd al-tafsīr* of such interpretations needs to change as well. It is possible to present the interpretation of the Qur'aan in a language and style that modern readers will benefit from while still following the proper methodology of *tafsīr*, and authors such as as-Sa'adee, al-Qasimree, al-Jazaa'iree and ash-Shamsoojee have shown and proven this in their respective *tafsīrs*.

VII. Some Famous Tafsīrs

The purpose of this section is to briefly mention some of the most important and famous *tafsīrs* in existence, and to mention the general methodology that each *tafsīr* followed.⁷⁰⁶

'Jaami' al-Bayaan' of at-Tabaree

Jaami' al-Bayaan 'an Taweeḥ Ayy al-Qur'aan (The Comprehensive Explanation of the Interpretation of the Verses of the Qur'aan), by Muhammad ibn Ja'eer at-Tabaree (224 - 310 A.H.) is one of the earliest and greatest *tafsīrs* in existence, and is considered the first reference to turn to among all the works of *tafsīr*. This is because at-Tabaree compiled in this *tafsīr* many narrations from the Prophet (ﷺ), the Companions, the Successors and those after them concerning the interpretation of the verses and phrases of the Qur'aan. The author was a scholar in almost all fields of Islamic sciences, for he wrote, in addition to this *tafsīr*, a masterpiece of Islamic history entitled *Taareekh ar-Rusul waḥ Muḥabab*, another now-extant work on the *qur'aan*, and many other works in almost all fields of Islaam. He even founded his own *madh-hab*!

His work of *tafsīr* is one of the classics in the realm of *tafsīr bi al-ru'ā'ihoo* (*tafsīr* by narrations). Typically, at-Tabaree quotes a verse of the Qur'aan, and then states, "The various narrations concerning the interpretation of such-and-such..." and then proceeds to quote up to a dozen narrations from the *asḥāf*. After quoting the various narrations on a verse, he usually gives the opinion that he thinks is the strongest one, with his evidences. At times, he also discusses the various *grā'ihāt* of a verse, quotes lines of classical poetry to substantiate the meaning of an obscure word, delves into a grammatical analysis of a verse, and uses his own reasoning (*yaḥsūd*). One of the unique features of this *tafsīr* is that he quotes all the chains of narration (*usnād*) for

⁷⁰⁶ These sources were taken directly from each *tafsīr*, and from the relevant portions of al-Adh-Dhakhirah's work.

every statement that he brings, and thus the authenticity of any narration may be verified. He also refutes the heretical beliefs of the *Mu'tazilah* and other sects during his time, and interprets the Attributes of Allaah upon the methodology of *Abi as-Sanaab*.

Due to these factors – and more – scholars since his time until today have praised this *tafseer* over others. *As-Suyooti* said, "And his book (meaning *at-Tabaree's tafseer*) is the best and greatest of all *tafsirs*", *an-Nawawee* (d. 676 A.H.) said, "The *amman* has agreed (*ijmaa'*) that nothing has ever rivaled the *tafseer* of *at-Tabaree*"; and *Shaykh al-Islam Ibn Taymiyyah* (d. 724 A.H.) said, "As for the *tafsirs* that are in circulation, the most accurate of them is the *tafseer* of *Ibn Jarir at-Tabaree*, for he mentions the statements of the past generations with *isnad*, and the *tafseer* is free of innovations..."⁷⁰

Some of the criticisms that have been made of this *tafseer* is that *at-Tabaree* did not only collect authentic narrations, and thus it is difficult for a beginning student of knowledge to ascertain which narrations are authentic. In addition, at times *at-Tabaree* quotes *Judeo-Christian narrations (Isra'eeliyyaat)* which are of no value whatsoever. However, these criticisms are trivial when compared to the overall merits of the work. In addition, the *tafseer* has been critically edited by one of the leading scholars of *hadith* of this century, *Shaykh Ahmad Shakir* (d. 1377 A.H.), and is available in 30 volumes with his commentary on the *isnaad* of the narrations of the first few volumes. Unfortunately, *Shakir* passed away before his editing of the *hadith* could be completed.

'*Tafseer al-Qur'aan al-'Adheem*' of Ibn Kathir

Another important *tafseer* is that of 'Imaad ad-Deen Abul Fidaa Ibn Kathir (700 – 774 A.H.), entitled *Tafseer al-Qur'aan al-Adheem*. Ibn Kathir was one of the most famous scholars of his time, having studied under *Shaykh al-Islam Ibn Taymiyyah* (d. 724 A.H.), *al-Hanafidh al-Muzee* (d. 742 A.H.) and other notable scholars. His *tafseer* is considered to be the second reference after that of *at-Tabaree*. An advantage of this *tafseer* is that it is easier to read than *at-Tabaree's*, since Ibn Kathir greatly summarises the different opinions that *at-Tabaree* quoted, usually only giving the strongest opinion. In addition, in many places Ibn Kathir gives his opinion concerning the authenticity of a particular narration. At other times, however, he merely quotes the *isnaad*, and does not comment on the authenticity.

Another advantage of this *tafseer* is that he explains the verses in simple language, so that the reader may understand the intent of the verse. On occasion, he also mentions the various *qira'at* of a verse, but he does not elaborate greatly on the grammar (*iraaab*) of the Qur'aan.

The main criticism that had been made against this *tafseer* is that Ibn Kathir occasionally quotes *Isra'eeliyyaat* which are of absolutely no value. However, his view concerning the usefulness of these narrations is clear, for he writes after quoting one of these stories, "...and it seems that this story is taken from the *Isra'eeliyyaat*, and

therefore it is allowed to quote them, but not to believe in them or reject them. They cannot be relied upon except when they conform with the truth, and Allaah knows best."⁷⁰⁸

In reality, this *tafsīr* is the most useful work for a beginning student of knowledge, since it discusses and interprets the verses in sufficient detail to benefit from, without going into extreme details that might bore the reader. Therefore, in this regard, it would be of more benefit than al-Tabaree's *tafsīr*. Ibn Kathīr successfully summarises the essence of the various interpretations based on *tafsīr* *bi al-ma'ṣūūr*, and occasionally adds other aspects of interpretation related to the verse.

As-Suyūṭee said of it, "There is no book that has been written like it"⁷⁰⁹

The *tafsīr* is available in four average-sized volumes. Work has already been started by Shaykh Aḥmad Isḥāq al-Huwayyee to critically edit the *ḥadīth* in this *tafsīr*, but as of yet only the first volume has been published.

'Mafaatīḥ al-Ghayb' of ar-Raazee

The most famous *tafsīr* based upon intellect (*tafsīr* *ar-ra'y*) is that of Muḥammad ibn 'Umar ar-Raazee, better known as Fakhr ad-Deen ar-Raazee. He was born in 544 A.H., and became well known for his knowledge of Arabic grammar, and philosophy (*ilm al-falsafah*). He died of poisoning in 606 A.H.

His *tafsīr*, *Mafaatīḥ al-Ghayb*, (The Unlocking of the Knowledge of the Unseen), although apparently seems to be complete, was completed after his death. Therefore, there is some difference of opinion as to who completed this work, and where he took over from ar-Raazee's interpretation. Evidence seems to suggest that ar-Raazee was able to complete this work until Saḥab al-Amīyaa, and after his death it was finished by two later scholars.⁷¹⁰ Whatever the case may be, the work is still considered one of the classics in the realm of *tafsīr* based upon *ra'y*.

Ar-Raazee was an ardent *Ash'aree* by faith, and a rigid follower of the *Shāfi'ee maṣābīḥ*. Therefore, he does not hesitate to defend his faith against the *Mu'tazilāt* wherever he feels that a particular verse gives him the opportunity to do so. Whenever a verse of legal implications is come across, he gives the positions of the different scholars, and invariable 'proves' the superiority and correctness of the *Shāfi'ee* point of view in every case.

One of the benefits that may be obtained from this *tafsīr* is that ar-Raazee includes a detailed discussion of the relationship between the various verses and *ḥadīth* in the Qur'aan, and this is a topic that is generally neglected in other *tafsīrs*. However, such relationships are, of course, based upon his personal opinion (*ijtihād*), and therefore cannot be accepted as absolute. Yet another benefit of this *tafsīr* is that he pays special attention to the grammatical analysis and commentary of the Qur'aan.

⁷⁰⁸ Ibn Kathīr, v. 1, p. 117

⁷⁰⁹ adh-Dhahabī, v. 1, p. 257

⁷¹⁰ cf. adh-Dhahabī, v. 1, p. 301

The main criticism with regards to this *tafsir* is the fact that it is full of philosophical discussions and quotes from different philosophers, and in many places the work seems more like philosophical ramblings than Qur'anic commentary. In addition, he does not hesitate to quote the 'current scientific' opinions of his day, specifically whenever he interprets a verse dealing with astronomy and nature. Since the scientific views of the eleventh century are considered outdated to say the least, these discussions often seem rather ludicrous and far-fetched. Due to these discussions, many scholars have strongly criticised this *tafsir*. Abou Hayyan (d. 745 A.H.) said of it, "Imaam az-Razee brought in his *tafsir* many long discussion of topics that have absolutely no value to the science of *tafsir*. This is why some scholars even said of it, 'In this (*tafsir*) you will find everything except *tafsir*'"⁷¹¹

'al-Kashaaf' of az-Zamakhsharee

Among the many *tafsirs* of the *Mu'tazilah*, the most famous one is *al-Kashaaf* 'an *Haqiqat al-Tanzil wa 'Uloom al-Aqsaad* for *Waghaab al-Tanzil* (The Unveiling of the Truths of the Revelation and the Essence of the Opinions Concerning the Perspectives of Interpretation), by Mahmood ibn 'Umar al-Khawarizmee, better known as az-Zamakhsharee (467-538 A.H.). He was one of the leading *Mu'tazil* scholars of his time, and due to his great knowledge and eloquence, was able to spread the doctrines of the *Mu'tazilah* to a great extent. Far from being hesitant in announcing his heretical doctrines, he was aggressively outspoken concerning the *Mu'tazil* faith. It is even said that he started his *tafsir* with the phrase, "All praise is due to Allaah, who created the Qur'an."⁷¹²

Az-Zamakhsharee was extremely proud of his work, and praised it himself on many occasions. In the introduction to the work, he says, after explaining the reasons for writing the work, that he completed it "during the time-period of the caliphate of Abou Bakr (i.e., two years and a few months), even though it should have taken over thirty years."⁷¹³ In a separate poem, he versified,

The *tafsirs* in this world are infinite,
Yet I went by my life that none is like my *Kashaaf*.
If you truly seek guidance, then resolve yourself to read it,
For ignorance is a disease, and the *Kashaaf* is the cure.⁷¹⁴

In reality, it is difficult to deny the *Kashaaf* of its merits, and the praise that az-Zamakhsharee heaped on it. Despite his blatant *Mu'tazil* bias, and his vehement and fiery attacks against the *Ahl al-Sunnah*, az-Zamakhsharee was nonetheless a scholar of the highest calibre in terms of his knowledge of Arabic vocabulary, gram-

⁷¹¹ adh-Dhahabee, v. 1, p. 304

⁷¹² adh-Dhahabee, v. 1, p. 438. As was mentioned in Ch. 2, the *Mu'tazilah* believe that the Qur'an is created, contrary to the belief of the *Ahl al-Sunnah*. For reasons as to why this phrase was eventually changed, see the reference cited.

⁷¹³ *al-Kashaaf*, v. 1, p. 18

⁷¹⁴ adh-Dhahabee, v. 1, p. 442

man, rhetoric and manners of eloquence. In his *tafseer*, he emphasises the grammatical beauty and eloquence of the Qur'aan, and accentuates its literary *ri'aa*. He discusses the wisdom and beauty behind the particular phrasing of verses and passages, and demonstrates time and time again the literary magnificence and splendour of the Qur'aan. Even subtle sentence structures that a less discerning eye would pass over are masterly scrutinised by az-Zamakhsharee to unearth a panorama of meanings and wisdom that demonstrates over and over again the unrivalled literary miracle of the Book of Allaah.

All of these merits, however, must be put in perspective. At times, az-Zamakhsharee seeks to prove Mu'tazilite doctrines by confusing the readers with his knowledge of Arabic. For example, in his *tafseer* of the verse, "Some faces that day will be radiant, looking at their Lord," (75:23) he misinterprets the meaning of the word 'looking' to 'expecting mercy', and even quotes a line of classical poetry to prove this meaning!⁷¹⁵ By doing this, he seeks to prove the belief of the Mu'tazilite, who deny that the Muslims will see Allaah on the Day of Judgement and in the Heavens, contrary to clear verses in the Qur'aan and *hadeeth* of the Prophet (ﷺ) to this effect. However, given that the line of poetry quoted is authentic, az-Zamakhsharee has overlooked the principle that poetry is used to explain obscure words in the Qur'aan, and is not used to re-interpret the obvious. The above verse in the Qur'aan is explicit in its meaning, as is the *hadeeth*, "Verily, you will see your Lord (as easily) as you see this moon (the full moon)."⁷¹⁶ Therefore, no line of poetry can be used to contradict the explicit meanings of the Qur'aan and *Sunnah*.

In other places in this *tafseer*, az-Zamakhsharee defends the doctrine of the eternal damnation of sinners in the Hellfire, the non-existence of magic, the free-will of humans over which Allaah has no control, the doctrine that man is the creator of his actions, and many other Mu'tazilite beliefs.⁷¹⁷

Therefore, this *tafseer* is a dangerous one, since the reader may be convinced by az-Zamakhsharee's knowledge into believing some of these Mu'tazilite doctrines. It is precisely for this reason that most scholars warned against this *tafseer*, such as Shaykh al-Islam Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.), Ibn al-Qayyim (d. 751 A.H.), as-Subklee (d. 756 A.H.) and many others.

We quote Shaykh al-Islam's stance on the this issue in its entirety, for – as typical with his writings – it is full of benefit and wisdom:

What I am saying is that people like the Mu'tazilite tend to form some ideas, and then interpret the Qur'aan to suit their purpose. None of the earlier

⁷¹⁵ *al-Kaashif*, v 2, p. 509.

⁷¹⁶ Reported by al-Bukhaaree, Muslim, Abou Dawood, at-Tirmidhee, an-Nasaa'ee, Ibn Majah and others.

⁷¹⁷ The Ahl al-Sunnah believe that Muslim sinners are not eternally damned to the Hellfire, and all of mankind who testify and believe in *laa ilaaha illa-Allah* will eventually enter Paradise, and that magic is real, and that Allaah has control over man's actions despite the fact that man has free-will, and that Allaah is the creator of man's actions, with the belief that man has free will. For details and proofs of these points, the reader is referred to standard works of theology, such as *Sharh 'Aqaid al-Jahannayyah*, and others.

generations – the Companions or the scholars of this *umamah* – are with them in what they believe or how they interpret the Qur'aan. Their interpretations of the Qur'aan can easily be shown to be wrong in two ways: by demonstrating that their views are erroneous, or by showing that their interpretations of the Qur'aan are unjustified.

Some have a lucid and charming style of writing, and introduce their erroneous beliefs so cleverly that many of their readers fail to see them. The author of the *Kashaf*, for instance, (i.e., *al-Zamakhshari*), has succeeded in making his ideas attractive to a great number of people who would hardly look for erroneous ideas in his commentary. In fact, I know some *rafiee* writers and scholars who approvingly quote in their writings and speeches passages from their (the *Mu'tazilée*) commentaries that contain ideas which follow on from the principles which they (the *rafiee* authors) believe and know to be wrong, but are not aware of them being present in the quote.) Since their language is elegant, their erroneous views have entered (other misguided souls) and become much more destructive.⁷¹⁸

Due to the benefits of this *rafiee*, certain later scholars of the *Ash'arees* tried to clear up the *Mu'tazilée* doctrines of this *rafiee* in critical footnotes. The most well known of these commentaries of the *Kashaf* is *al-Injaaf min al-Kashaf* by Ahmad ibn Muhammad al-Iskandaree (d. 683 A.H.) The most widely available edition of the *Kashaf* has the *Injaaf* as footnotes to the main text.

In conclusion, this *rafiee* should only be read by one who is firmly grounded in the knowledge of the fundamentals of belief (*aqeedah*) of both the *Ahl al-Sunnah* and the *Mu'tazilée* if one reads the *Kashaf* without its critical commentaries (and of the *Ash'arees* if he reads it with one of these commentaries!).

VIII. The Dangers of Improper Tafseer

The Prophet (ﷺ) forbade arguing over the Qur'aan, and stated that such argumentation leads to disbelief. Once, he (ﷺ) passed by a group of people arguing over the Qur'aan. He commanded them, "Verily the nations before you were destroyed by this action of yours; they would try to contradict part of the Book of Allaah with other parts. Indeed, the Book of Allaah came to confirm its verses with each other (and not to contradict them). Therefore do not reject its verses due to other verses. When you know something from it (the Qur'aan), say it, and if you do not know it, then leave it to one who does know."⁷¹⁹ He (ﷺ) also said, "Those before you were destroyed because they argued over their Book."⁷²⁰ In another narration, he (ﷺ) said, "To argue over the Qur'aan is equivalent to disbelief (*kufr*)."⁷²¹ The Prophet (ﷺ) also warned against people who interpret the Qur'aan improperly when he said, "The thing that I fear the most for my *umamah* is the hypocrite with an eloquent tongue who argues

718 Ibn Taymiyyah, pp. 42-8, with slight changes.

719 Reported by Ahmad and an-Nasa'ee, cf. *Mushtaq* # 217.

720 Reported by Muslim.

721 Reported by Ahmad and Abuu Dawood, cf. *Mushtaq* # 236.

with the Qur'aan.⁷²² In other words, the Prophet (ﷺ) is warning against deviants who seek to prove their heresies with verses from the Qur'aan.

There are a number of oft-quoted *hadeeth* on the prohibition of speaking about the Qur'aan without any knowledge. Although the principles and prohibitions outlined in these *hadeeth* are correct, the *hadeeth* themselves are weak. The *hadeeth* in question are as follows: It is reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Whoever speaks concerning the Qur'aan with his personal reasoning, then even if he is correct, he is mistaken,"⁷²³ and in another *hadeeth*, he (ﷺ) is reported to have said, "Whoever speaks concerning the Qur'aan without any knowledge, then let him seek his place in the fire of Hell!"⁷²⁴

The Companions and early generations were very cautious when it came to interpreting the Qur'aan without the proper knowledge. Abou Maalykah said, "Ibn 'Abbas was asked concerning a verse; if some of you were to be asked concerning it, you would have replied, but he refused to say anything." And a person asked the Companion Jundub (bn 'Abdillaah (d. 90 A.H.) concerning a verse in the Qur'aan. He responded, "I must request that, if you are a Muslim, please do not sit with me," meaning that he was not qualified to interpret the verse. And it is narrated that Sa'eed ibn al-Musayyib (d. 90 A.H.) would not speak concerning the Qur'aan except with that which was understood by everyone, without going into any details. And Masrooq (d. 63 A.H.) said, "Beware of *rafieer*, for it is as if you are narrating concerning Allaah!" And Ibrahim an-Nakha'ee (d. 96 A.H.) said, "Our companions would be scared of *rafieer*, and fear it out of respect."⁷²⁵

It is no exaggeration to say that every single deviant sect that has sprung forth in the history of Islaam has misinterpreted verses of the Qur'aan in order to support its particular beliefs. For example, the very first sect to split from the Muslim nation, the Khawarij, believed that 'Alee and Mu'aawiyah, and the people who followed them, had disbelieved, since they had both agreed to allow arbitrators to judge between them. They felt that 'Alee and Mu'aawiyah had, by accepting the judgement of the arbitrators, rejected the verse in the Qur'aan, "Verily, Judgement is only for Allaah!" (12:40). However, the proper interpretation of this verse is that all judgement must be based upon the commands of Allaah (and by extension the commands of the Prophet (ﷺ)), and not that people are prohibited from judging between themselves.

Without relying on the proper methodology of *rafieer*, it is possible to interpret the Qur'aan in any way one desires to. The Qur'aan itself alludes to this when it says,

فَأَمَّا الزُّبُرُ فَكُرِّهُوا رَبِّكَ إِلَىٰ أَنْ يَكْفُرَ مَا تَفَعَّلُوا بِنَفْسِهِمْ أَتَجَاهِلُ أَنَّ الْفِتْنَةَ أَكْبَرُ

~ and as for those in whose hearts is a disease, they follow that which is unclear to them (i.e., the Qur'aan), seeking thereby to cause dispute and turmoil. [3:7]

722 Reported by Ahmad and al-Bazzaz, cf. Ibn 'Abdul-Barr, p. 493.

723 Reported by al-Tirmidhee.

724 Reported by al-Tirmidhee and Abou Dawood.

725 All quotes from al-Bayhaqi, p. 82-83.

In other words, those who desire chaos amongst the Muslims will try to twist Qur'aanic verses that might not be entirely clear to suit whatever concepts and ideas they wish to prove.

It is even possible to misinterpret verses so that it seems that the Qur'aan itself is proving some of the most Islamically heretical ideas possible! An example of this is the interpretation (or rather misinterpretation) of the Qadianis concerning the finality of the prophethood of Muḥammad (ﷺ). The Qur'aan says,

مَا كَانَ مُحَمَّدٌ أَبَا أَحَدٍ مِّنْ رِّبَاكُم وَرَبِّكُمُ رَسُولٌ مِّمَّنْ خَلَقَ الْإِنسَانَ

«Muḥammad is not the father of any of your men, but he is the Messenger of Allaḥ, and the Seal (ḥaṭṭaw) of the prophets» [33:40]

This verse is the most explicit indication of the finality of the prophethood. However, the Qadianis try to prove that, by using the word *ḥaṭṭaw* (translated by them as 'seal'), and not *ḥaṭṭam* ('the last of something'), the Qur'aan is stating that the Prophet (ﷺ) was the best and most perfect of the prophets, but not necessarily the last of them.⁷⁷⁶ This interpretation can only be accepted by one who is ignorant of the Arabic language, and of the principles of *asfah*. This is because, although *ḥaṭṭaw* does signify 'seal,' a look at any of the dozen classical Arabic lexicons will show that it also signifies finality, or the last of something.⁷⁷⁷ The interpretation of the Qadianis has absolutely no basis in the Arabic language. An even more blatant indication of the ludicrousness of this interpretation is the fact that, of the ten *qur'aan*, only 'Aaḡam read the phrase in question as *ḥaṭṭam*; the rest of the nine *qur'aan* read the phrase as *ḥaṭṭaw*.⁷⁷⁸ This is a stark indication of the ignorance of misguided sects with regards to the proper methodology required to interpret the Qur'aan. As was mentioned earlier, it is essential to take all the *qur'aan* of a verse into account when interpreting it, and all the different readings must complement one another. With this in mind, the interpretation of the Qadianis is shown to be baseless, even if their unique interpretation of the Arabic meaning of *ḥaṭṭaw* is considered.⁷⁷⁹

Even more ludicrous are some of the interpretations based on forged narrations and presumed inner meanings (*tafsīr al-sḥaaree*) to a verse. For example, in certain *Sufi* *tafsīrs*, the verse,

وَهُوَ الَّذِي مَدَّ الْأَرْضَ وَجَعَلَ لَهَا رَوَاسٍ

«And it is He who has spread out the earth, and placed thereon firm mountains» [13:3]

776. cf. Muḥammad Ali's ignorance to this verse in his *The Holy Qur'aan*, or any other Qadiani publication on this topic.

777. cf. Zakeer, *Imam Ehsa, Qadḥayyay* (Islam Tarjuman-uz-Sunnah, Lahore, 1989) for a more detailed discussion of this point.

778. This is including the other copies of the Qur'aan that allude to the finality of the prophethood, the numerous authentic *ḥaḍīth* on this subject, the understanding of the Companions, and the consensus of the Muslim *ummah* on this matter. Due to this grossly heretical belief, the Qadianis have been excluded from the field of *ḥalāq* by all of the scholars of the *ḥalāq*.

is interpreted as follows: 'Allaah is the one who has spread out the earth, and placed in it His *asmaa* (one of the highest hierarchical levels in *Saafi* doctrine), and the Chosen Ones among His servants. Therefore, it is essential to turn to them, and to seek help from them, and whoever travels in the earth in order to find them, is unsuccessful and has been saved!'⁷²⁸ The verse is clearly referring to the miraculous nature of the creation of the earth and the mountains, yet, by letting their imaginations free, certain *Saafis* have been able to read into this verse the concept of *asmaa*, and of the necessity of asking them for help and not instead of Allaah! This belief of these *Saafis* is a manifestation of *shirk*, which Allaah has and in the Qur'aan that He would not forgive!

These examples prove the necessity of relying upon the proper methodology of *tafsir*, and of depending upon classical, authentic *tafsirs* to obtain the proper understanding of a particular verse or passage.

⁷²⁸ Quoted from *ad-Dhalaalat*, v. 2, p. 418.

THE TRANSLATION OF THE QUR'AAN



Among the many miracles and blessings of Allaah is the '...differences of your languages and colours. Verily in this are indeed signs for men of sound knowledge' (30:22). Indeed, the differences in human languages is yet another proof of the existence and power of the Creator. It was Allaah Himself who honoured Adam by teaching him '...the names of all things...' (2:31), and honoured Adam's progeny and 'taught him eloquent speech' (55:14).

Therefore, with all of the different languages on the face of the Earth, it becomes necessary to translate important texts and books written in one language into other languages so that a greater segment of mankind may benefit from them.

The Arabic word for translation is '*tarjumaah*'. This word also has the connotation of 'interpretation'; hence Ibn 'Abbaas was called the '*Tarjumaan al-Qur'aan*,' meaning 'The Interpreter of the Qur'aan.' However, it is the first meaning of the word '*tarjumaah*' that we are interested in in this chapter.

1. The Types of Translation

There are two ways of translating a text: a literal, verbatim translation, and a translation by meaning.

1) *Verbatim translation*: What is meant by this is the word-for-word translation of a text, such that each word of the first language is translated into its equivalent in the other language. In such translations, the word order remains almost the same.

2) *Translation by meaning*: In this case, the intent or meaning of a text is translated into a different language.

Those who speak more than one language realise that verbatim translation is not successful in imparting understanding of a text. This is because the grammar and syntax of every language is different, and each has its specific procedure and methodology of speech. In addition, not every word has an equivalent in another language.

II. The Ruling on Translations

The Prophet (ﷺ) was sent for all of mankind, as Allaah says,

قُلْ يٰٓاَيُّهَا النَّاسُ اِنِّي رُسُوْلُ اللّٰهِ اَتِيَكُمْ بِحَيٰٓةٍ

«Say: 'O Mankind! Verily, I am sent to all of you as the Messenger of Allaah...» (7:158).

He (ﷺ) was also given his message in Arabic, the language of his people, conforming with Allaah's practice,

وَمَا اَرْسَلْنَا مِنْ رُّسُوْلٍ اِلَّا بِلِسَانٍ قَوْمِهِ.

«And We have not sent any Messenger except with the language of his people» [14:4].

In fact, the absurdity of the Prophet (ﷺ) giving his message in a language other than Arabic has also been explained:

وَيَوْمَ جَعَلْنَاهُ قُرْءٰنًا فَخْبَرًا لِّمَنْ اَلَا لَوْ اَقْبَلَتْ رَيْثَةُ الْخَمْرِيْنَ وَرَسُوْلٌ

«And if We had sent this as a Qur'aan in a foreign language, they would have said, 'What! (A book) not in Arabic and (the Messenger) an Arab?!» [41:44].

The question then arises: If the Prophet (ﷺ) was sent for all of mankind, and the Qur'aan is in Arabic, is the translation of the Qur'aan allowed so that the Qur'aan may be spread to all of mankind?

As for verbatim translations, this is forbidden with regards to the Qur'aan. This is because there is no benefit to be gained out of it.⁷³⁰ The Qur'aan is in Arabic, and any type of translation will not be regarded as the Qur'aan – the Speech of Allaah and the revelation to the Prophet (ﷺ).⁷³¹

As for translations of the meaning, this is allowed and in fact *fard kifayyah*⁷³² for the *ummah*, as part of its duty to spread the message of Islaam.⁷³³ In fact, there has been no known difference of opinion on this issue.⁷³⁴ How else can it be expected that non-Arabs encounter the message of the Qur'aan? It is true that the Qur'aan is not translatable, for no translation can do justice to its eloquence and beauty, but perhaps, in the translation, a faint glimmer of the shining splendour of the original may be seen, enough, maybe, to spark in a curious reader an interest that will lead him closer to the truth.

730. An exception might be made, however, for a verbatim translation that is meant to help people learn the Arabic of the Qur'aan. An excellent example of this in English is Jamal al-Din Nasir ibn Rabi's *The Qur'an Translation and Study* (Abul Quran Publications). So far, only the first two parts have been completed.

731. See Ch. I for proof that the Qur'aan is only in Arabic and is the Speech of Allaah.

732. A type of obligatory act such that, if part of the *ummah* does it, the rest are not accountable, but if none does it, then all are accountable.

733. *ar-Risala*, v.2, p.133.

734. *Wahid Bibliography*, p. XXIII.

The Conditions of Translation

However, a translation of the Qur'aan is only allowed if the following conditions are observed:⁷⁵⁵

- 1) The translator must be a Muslim with correct Islamic beliefs (*'aqeedah*). This is because a person who does not believe in the Divine Authorship of the Qur'aan will never be able to do justice to its translation. This point was elaborated on in the previous chapter.⁷⁵⁶
- 2) The translator must be proficient in Arabic and the language that he is translating in.
- 3) The translator must be knowledgeable of the grammar and peculiarities of the Arabic language, and specifically the Qur'aan.
- 4) The translator must be familiar with the other Islamic sciences to a degree with which he can translate the Qur'aan with the proper interpretation.
- 5) The translation must conform to the intent of the verse, such that it is a reasonable rendering of the meanings of the original. For this, the authentic, classical interpretations of the Qur'aan must be consulted.
- 6) The translation must be complete, such that the original (i.e., the Qur'aan) is not needed by the person reading the translation, or else the whole purpose of the translation is lost.
- 7) Neither the translator nor his audience may believe that the translation is the Qur'aan. The translator should include appropriate remarks on this issue, preferably in the introduction. He must clarify to his audience that the Qur'aan is only in Arabic, and that the translation is only a rendering of the meaning of the Qur'aan into a different language. He must mention that the translation can never be substituted for the original (the Qur'aan). It is also incorrect to call such translations, 'The Qur'aan,' or even, 'A Translation of the Qur'aan,' for the Qur'aan cannot be translated. Such works must be called, 'A Translation of the Meanings of the Qur'aan,' or similar such wordings, so that it is clearly understood by the audience that the work in their hands is *not* the Qur'aan.⁷⁵⁷ Some scholars have even stipulated that it is mandatory for the Arabic text to be written along with the translation – either side-by-side or above it – so that it is mentally understood that the translation is *not* the actual Qur'aan.⁷⁵⁸

These conditions, especially the first one, make it imperative that the translation be done by a knowledgeable Muslim. A translation done by a person who excels in the knowledge of Arabic and English, but is not a Muslim, must be rejected for this

755 *al-Zarqaani*, #2, pp. 122–124; *Ubaydani*, p. 278.

756 See 'The Qualities of a *Mufasss*', points 2–4.

757 *al-Zarqaani*, #1, p.136.

758 *al-Ubaydani*, p. 33. Here, too, the author asked *Shaykh al-Ubaydani* (on the 11th of Rabi'ul-Thani, 1418 A.H., in the *Majma' al-Jawaab*) whether the writing of the Arabic script with a translation was mandatory or not. He replied that it was not obligatory to do so, but only encouraged.

reason, no matter how eloquent the English. (An example of such a translation is Arthur J. Arberry's *The Koran Interpreted*.)

It is also permissible to interpret and explain the Qur'aan in a different language, as long as the readers can tell the difference between the (interpretation and the translation. For example, in Khan and Hilali's translation of the Qur'aan, verse 2:4 has been translated as, "And those who believe in (the Qur'aan and the Saṣwaṣ) which has been sent down..." The phrase 'the Qur'aan and the Saṣwaṣ' is not in the Arabic, but it is the intent of the verse. By including it in parentheses, the translators have indicated that this is not in the Qur'aan but rather it is an interpretation of the verse. This is allowed, and, according to some, encouraged.

The Translation as the Qur'aan

As was mentioned in the conditions for translation, it is not permissible to believe that the translation is the actual Qur'aan. The fact that a translation of the Qur'aan cannot be considered as a substitute for the actual Qur'aan has been agreed upon by all the major scholars of Islam, and was never seriously a topic of debate amongst the scholars.

However, there have been some modern 'scholars' who have stated that a translation of the Qur'aan may actually be considered as the original! This issue became the topic of serious discussion during the late half of the nineteenth century and reached its height in the early part of the twentieth century, during which time Kamaal Ata Tark (d. 1929 CE) ordered that the Arabic Qur'aan be substituted for a Turkish translation, which would be read during prayer and outside of it! The Egyptian 'intellectual' Farid Wajidi (d. 1954 CE) and the then Grand Shaykh of al-Azhar, Muhammad Mustafa al-Maraghi (d. 1945 CE), were also of the opinion that such a translation could take the place of the Qur'aan.⁷⁷

The simplest refutation of this view is by recalling the definition of the Qur'aan: The Qur'aan is the Arabic Speech (*qalaam*) of Allaah, which He revealed to Muhammad (ﷺ) in wording and meaning, and which has been preserved in the *muṣṣaḥf*, and has reached us by *mutawassut* transmissions, and is a challenge to mankind to produce something similar to it.

Therefore, the fact that the Qur'aan is in Arabic is an integral part of the definition. As was mentioned earlier, there are eleven references in the Qur'aan that it is in the Arabic language, amongst them the verses, "...this (the Qur'aan) is in a clear Arabic tongue" (16:103), and, "Verily, We have revealed this as an Arabic Qur'aan" (12:2), and, "And thus We have inspired you with an Arabic Qur'aan" (42:7).

779 *World Bibliography*, p. XXVI. What is meant by 'take the place of the Qur'aan' is that the translation could be used to derive laws, beliefs and be recited in prayer, and not that the Arabic Qur'aan should be neglected. To see a fuller discussion of their views, and a refutation of it, see al-Rasheed, *Asyudat*, pp. 411-441.

Al-Azhar University, in 1936 CE (1355 A.H.), finally issued a *fatwa* in which it stated that the Qur'aan is only in Arabic, and any translation cannot be considered a substitute for the Qur'aan.⁷⁰⁰ This *fatwa* effectively ended the debate that had been raging on before this time.

Another issue that is related to the above one is the recitation of translations of the Qur'aan during the prayer.

The recitation of the translation of the Qur'aan during prayer is forbidden according to the vast majority of scholars, including the *Shāfi'ites*, *Māliques*, and *Hanbalites*. If a person prays with such a translation, his prayer will not be valid. However, Imaam Abū Haneefah (d. 150 A.H.) allowed the recitation of the Qur'aan in Persian,⁷⁰¹ and based on this, some of the later Hanafites allowed it in Turkish and Urdu. The two students of Abū Haneefah, Imaam Abū Yūsuf (d. 182 A.H.) and Muḥammad ash-Shaybānee (d. 189 A.H.), restricted the generality of their teacher's ruling, and allowed it only when a person did not know Arabic, and was forced by necessity to recite it in a foreign language.⁷⁰² However, all of these opinions go against the majority opinion, and do not have any proof to back them up.

Quṭayb Abū Bakr ibn al-'Arabī (d. 543 A.H.), the famous *Māliqite* commentator on the Qur'aan, said in reference to the following verse:

وَلَوْ كُنَّا فَاهِقًا لَفُوتَ مَا نُوحِيكَ. وَلَوْ كُنَّا غُفَرًا لَوَسَّلْنَا بَيْنَكَ وَمَنْ بَيْنَنَا

«And if We had sent this Qur'aan in a foreign language, other than Arabic, they would have said, 'Why are not its verses explained in detail (in our language)?' What! A (book) not in Arabic and a [Messenger who is] Arab?' » [40:44]

Our scholars (of the *Māliqites*) have said that this verse refutes the view of Abū Haneefah, may Allāh have mercy on him, that the Qur'aan may be (recited) in a translation, such as Persian. This is because the verse negates the attitude of (the Qur'aan) being non-Arabic.

Ibn Hajar al-Asqalānee ash-Shāfi'ee (d. 852 A.H.), the famous commentator of *Sūḥr al-Bayḥānee*, wrote,

If a person is capable of its recitation in Arabic, then he is not allowed to change it (in another language), and his prayer is void (if he does that). This is the case even if he is not capable of this (i.e., even if he cannot recite the Qur'aan in Arabic, he is prohibited from reciting it in a different language).

Ibn Hajar then went on to mention that the Law-giver provides certain formulas⁷⁰³ to recite in the prayer for the one who does not know Arabic, until he memorises the necessary *asānīd*.

700 *Ibid.* p. XXVIII.

701 It should be mentioned that some scholars say that Abū Haneefah never made such a statement, or that he withdrew from this stance later on in his life. Cf. al-Zarqaanī, v2, p. 163.

702 *Quṭayb*, p. 315.

703 Such as *alḥamdu Allāhi*, or *alḥamduḥdīḥ*. See Syed Sabīḥ, *Fiqh al-Sunnah*, v1, p. 122.

Shaykh al-Islam Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.) said, "As for bringing a word (from another language) to explain the meaning (of another word), such as a word of the Qur'aan, then this in essence is not possible. This is why the scholars of the religion held the view that it is impermissible to recite (the Qur'aan) in a language other than Arabic, whether a person is capable of reading Arabic or not, because this (translation) removes the fact that the Qur'aan is a revelation from Allaah." In another place, he said, "As for the Qur'aan, it is not to be recited in other than Arabic, whether a person is capable of doing so or not. This is according to the majority opinion, and it is the correct opinion, without a doubt."⁷⁴⁴

Imam an-Nawawee (d. 676 A.H.) said, "It is not allowed to recite the Qur'aan in any language other than Arabic, regardless of whether a person is capable of speaking Arabic or not, and whether such recitations occur during prayer or not."⁷⁴⁵

Therefore, it is concluded by stating that it is necessary to translate the Qur'aan into different languages, since this is part of the duty of spreading Islaam. Such translations, however, may never be taken as substitutes of the Qur'aan, nor is it allowed to recite translations of the Qur'aan in prayer. Such a prayer, if performed, is not valid and must be repeated.⁷⁴⁶

THE IMPORTANCE OF ARABIC

It is imperative that the Muslims in particular are familiar with the Arabic language to a degree that they can understand the Qur'aan. Arabic is the language of Islaam – it has been and always will be. The Muslims who do not understand Arabic must realise the great loss that they are in by not being able to understand and read the words of their Creator. When they read 'translations' they should recognise that these are the words of a human interpreter, and not the words of the Creator. The beauty, the eloquence, the rhythm, the *siqar* – all is lost in translation. Instead of being able to read the Words that Allaah Himself Spoke and revealed to Muhammad (ﷺ), a person instead must rely on the words and speech of a mortal. Can there be a greater loss than this?

The scholars of this *ummah*, from the Companions to this generation, all realised the importance of the Arabic language. Ubay ibn Ka'ah said, "Teach Arabic (i.e., Arabic grammar) like you teach the memorisation of the Qur'aan!" Abou Bakr said, "That I recite and forget (a portion) is more beloved to me than to make a grammatical mistake!" And 'Umar once passed by a group of archers who missed their targets. He

⁷⁴⁴ All quotes taken from *Qaṣṣat*, p. 319-20.

⁷⁴⁵ *ar-Zarqaani*, v.2, p.160.

⁷⁴⁶ Concerning writing the Qur'aan in Arabic in another script (what is known as 'translation'), this should be avoided as much as possible. In fact, the Committee for Religious Studies at Adhar even issued a verdict (*fatwa*) stating that such translations were forbidden. They wrote, "There is no doubt that the Latin script is devoid of a number of letters present in the Arabic script, and so it can never give (the sound) that the Arabic letters give. If the Qur'aan were written in a Latin script – there would occur errors and mispronunciations in its words, which would eventually lead to changes in its meaning." *ar-Zarqaani*, v.2, p.134.

reprimanded them, and they responded that they were only beginners, but they made a grammatical mistake in phrasing their response. He told them, "Verily, your mistakes in (Arabic) grammar are more difficult for me to bear than your mistakes in archery!"⁷⁴⁷

Ismā'īl ash-Shāfi'ee (d. 204 A.H.) said, "Therefore, it is imperative that every Muslim should strive to learn Arabic as hard as he can, so that he can testify the *shahāda*, and recite the Book of Allaah, and say the invocations that are mandatory upon him, such as the *salātee*, *rukū'ee*, *takbeel*, *takbeel*⁷⁴⁸ and other prayers. And the more he learns the language that Allaah Himself chose to be the language of him who sealed the prophets, (ﷺ), and to be the language of His Final Revelation, the better it is for him!"⁷⁴⁹

And Shaykh al-Islām Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.) even went so far as to say that, "...the Arabic language is a part of the religion, and knowing it is obligatory. This is because the ability to understand the Qur'aan and *Sunnah* is obligatory on every Muslim, and yet they cannot be understood without knowing Arabic, and (the general Islamic principle is that) every act that is an essential prerequisite to perform an obligatory act is also obligatory."⁷⁵⁰

It is for this precise reason that it is seen that those Muslim societies that are ignorant of Arabic are, in general, less Islamically knowledgeable (and hence more susceptible to deviation) than those societies which are firmly grounded in Arabic. It is not surprising, therefore, that one of the goals of the enemies of Islam is the destruction of the Arabic language, for they realise that one of the unifying factors of the Muslims is the language of the Qur'aan.

The orientalist Philip DeTroy wrote, in 1948 CE,

Due to the power of the Qur'aan, the Muslims have become a united nation in their language, religion, laws and politics. For the Qur'aan has combined all the Arabs, and it is inconceivable that, were it not for the Qur'aan, classical Arabic would have spread among them— And were it not for the Qur'aan, numerous peoples would not have taken up this language, and learnt how to read and write it, and studied it and worked with it. And were it not for the Qur'aan, every nation among the nations of Muslims would have had their own language. So the Qur'aan has been the source of preserving communication between the Islamic and Arab nations.⁷⁵¹

Sir Edward Benson wrote, "The basis of Islam is the Arabic language. If it is lost, Islam is lost!"⁷⁵² One of the ministers of England, Sir Gladstone, wrote, "As long as the Muslims have the Qur'aan in their hands, Europe can never prevail over the

747 Quoted taken from *Abos Ushadh*, pps. 15–20.

748 The *salātee* is to say, 'Allaahu Akbar'; the *rukū'ee* to say, 'Subhaan Allaah' and the *takbeel* is the prayer that is said in the last portion of the *salāt*.

749 as-Zarqaanee, *o.c.*, p. 152.

750 Ibn Taymiyyah, *Iqbal*, p. 468.

751 Translated from *Abos Ushadh*, p. 15.

752 *ibid.* p. 39.

East.⁷⁵³ During the French occupation of Algeria, the French government was advised by its consulate in Algeria, "We will never be able to overpower the Algerians as long as they read the Qur'aan and speak Arabic. Therefore, we must remove the Arabic Qur'aan from their midst, and abolish the Arabic language from their tongues."⁷⁵⁴ And this is exactly what Kamaal Ataa Turk, the secular leader of Turkey who abolished the Islamic caliphate in 1921, did. He ordered for the Qur'aan to be recited in Turkish, even during the prayers, and transposed the Arabic alphabet with the European one, such that even today, the Turkish language, which was once written in Arabic, is now written in Latin.

III. The History of Translation

The first translation of any part of the Qur'aan occurred during the lifetime of the Prophet (ﷺ). The Muslims in Abyssinia, under the leadership of Ja'far ibn Abi Talib, recited the first few verses of Suraah Maryam to the Negus, which were translated to him. These verses led the Negus to convert to Islam. This incident occurred before the *Hijrah* and is probably the first recorded instance of any translation of the Qur'aan.⁷⁵⁵

After the *Hijrah*, the Prophet (ﷺ) sent letters to the emperors of Persia, Rome, Egypt, and Bahram, inviting them to Islam. Most of these letters included some verses in the Qur'aan, and these verses would had to have been translated along with the letters. In particular, the Prophet (ﷺ) included verse 3:64:

قُلْ أَتَعْلَمُ الْكِتَابَ
الَّذِي أُنْزِلَ فِيهِ مَوْعِظَاتٌ لِّمَنْ هُوَ
عَلِيمٌ

«Say: O People of the Scriptures! Come to terms common between us and you, that we worship none but Allah...»

These letters were sent out around the sixth year after the *Hijrah*.⁷⁵⁶

Reports are also found that state that the Companion Salmaan al-Farisi was requested by some Persian converts to translate some portions of the Qur'aan, which he then sent them.⁷⁵⁷ Concerning other early translations,⁷⁵⁸

There are Syriac translations made by non-Muslims, in the second part of the first century A.H. in the period of Hajaraj ibn Yasauf (d. 95 A.H.).

There is also a possibility of the existence of a Berber translation written in

⁷⁵³ *al-Bihar*, *Asyab*, p. 416.

⁷⁵⁴ *Abul Ubaidah*, p. 48.

⁷⁵⁵ See *History of Mohammed*, p. 115.

⁷⁵⁶ *Ibid.*, pp. 414-21.

⁷⁵⁷ In *Sarakhsat al-Malah*, v. 1, p. 37. *As-Sarakhsat* quotes this as proof for the fact that it is permissible to recite the Qur'aan in another language, as the report mentions that these new Muslims would recite these translations in their prayer. However, this incident is not found mentioned before this time, in any other book, nor is its usual known. In order to cover any refuge from an incident, it first must be shown to have occurred.

⁷⁵⁸ *World Bibliography*, p. XXVIII.

127 A.H. There was a Persian oral translation made by Moosaa ibn Saqqar al-Jawarri before 225 A.H. and a complete Indian translation before 270 A.H. According to T.W. Arnold, a Chinese translation also possibly existed.

The first written Persian translation was done at the command of the Samanid king, Abuu Saalih Mansoor ibn Nooh (d. 364 A.H.). This translation was accompanied by a translation of Ismaam at-Tabarri's (d. 310 A.H.) *tafsir*, part of which is still available in manuscript form. The first Turkish translation was completed in the 5th century of the *Ahyak*, but only the mention of this translation is left. The earliest Turkish translation that is still extant was completed in 734 A.H.

The earliest Hindi translation is reputed to be the one ordered by the Raja Mahesook, in 270 A.H., who ordered the Muslim ruler of Sand, 'Abdullah ibn 'Umar, to translate the Qur'aan for him.

Urdu translations have all been fairly recent, due to the fact that Urdu is itself a relatively young language. The first complete translation of the Qur'aan into Urdu was done by Mawlana Shah Rafce' ad-Deen (the son of Shah Waliur Allaaah ad-Dehlawer), in 1190 A.H. (1776 CE). It was published in Calcutta. This was followed by a more popular translation by another of Shah Waliur Allaaah's sons, Shah 'Abd al-Qadir. This second translation was completed in 1205 A.H., and published in Delhi. The first Punjabi translation was attempted by Nurmaan Kootee Shah, and published in Lahore in 1885 CE (this translation was not complete, however). The first Gujarati translation was done by 'Abd al-Qadir ibn Luqmaan, and published in Bombay in 1879 CE. Concerning Bengali translations, it is claimed that the first partial translation was done by Ghulam Akbar Ali of Mirzapoor, in 1868 A.H., whereas the first complete translation was done by a Brahman, Ganah Chandra Sen, in 1886 CE. The first translation of the Qur'aan into Malay was done in the middle of the 17th century by 'Abd ar-Ra'ood al-Fansoori, a famous scholar of Singkel. It was published in Cairo in 1923 CE. The first Swahili translation was printed in 1923 CE, in London. It was done by the missionary Godfrey Dale, and printed under the auspices of the "Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge."⁷⁵⁹

Translations into Western Languages

The first translation of the Qur'aan into a Western language was done in 1143 CE by Robertus Retensis, who was helped by Hermannus Dalmata. It was translated into Latin under the command of Peter the Venerable, Abbot of Cluny. The Abbot's motive for such an undertaking was to try to defend Islam, as during this time the Crusades were being fought. This translation was spread in manuscript form, until it was approved by Martin Luther, and printed by Bibliander Press in Basle, Switzerland in 1543. Martin Luther also wrote an introduction to this edition.

⁷⁵⁹ All the material of the last few paragraphs has been summarised from *World Bibliography*, pp. XXVIII-XXXIV.

Alphonse X (1252 – 1284 CE) ordered a certain Abraham of Toledo to translate portions of the Qur'ān, and thus the first Spanish translation of seventy *surahs* was accomplished.

The first partial translation into English appeared in 1515. It was published in England, and shows the early interest that existed in that country concerning Islam. It was only 61 pages in length, and entitled, "*Here begynneth a hyell treatyse of the Turkes law called alcoran. And also it speaketh of Machomet the Nygromancer.*" The translator and other particulars about the translation are unknown.

Perhaps the first 'modern' translation of the Qur'ān was the Italian one by Andrea Arrabene, published in 1547. This translation served as the basis for the first German translation, done by Solomon Schweigger in 1616, and printed in Nuremberg. This German translation formed the basis for the first Dutch translation, printed in Hamburg in 1641.

In 1647, Andre du Ryer, who was the French Consul in Egypt for some years, translated the Qur'ān (from Arabic, for a change!) into French, and it was from this edition that Alexander Ross translated it into English in 1649. Thus, the first complete English translation was actually a translation from the French, and as such was highly inaccurate. This was the standard English translation for around a century. In his introduction, Ross wrote:

...this, his *Alcoran* (*or*) (the Ground-work of the Turkish religion), hath been already translated into Latin, Italian, (and) French, yet never gained any proselyte, where the Sword, its most forcible, and strongest argument, hath not prevailed. These shall find it of so rude, and incongruous a composition, so filled with contradictions, blasphemies, obscene speech, and ridiculous fables. Such as it is, I present it to thee, having taken the pains only to translate it out of French, not doubting, though it hath been a poppy (*or*) that hath infested a very great, but most unsound part of the Universe, it may prove an *Anti-dote*, to confirm in thee the health of Christianity.⁷⁶⁰

Ross' spirit for translating the Qur'ān speaks for itself. In addition, Rev. Zwemer said of him, "He was utterly unacquainted with Arabic, and not a thorough French scholar, therefore his translation is faulty in the extreme."⁷⁶¹ Similar assessments were made by Savary and Sale.⁷⁶²

After Ross, Father Ludovic Maracci, who was a Confessor to Pope Innocent XI, translated the Qur'ān into Latin in 1698. This was published in Padua, and was to form the basis of many other English translations. He dedicated his work to the Holy Roman Emperor Leopold I, and he introduces it by a one volume introduction entitled a "Refutation of the Koran." In his translation, Maracci included "...quotations from various Arabic Commentaries, carefully selected and garbled, so as to give the worst possible impression of Islam to Europe."⁷⁶³

760: Adberry, p. 8.

761: Kida, p. 18.

762: Khalifa, p. 69.

763: Yusuf 'Ali, p. vi.

After him, George Sale, a lawyer who had learnt Arabic from a royal court interpreter by the name of Dadichu, completed his famous translation into English in 1734. Since his Arabic was poor, Sale relied heavily on Maracci's Latin version, in addition to the Arabic text of the Qur'aan printed in Hamburg in 1694 (which itself was not free of errors). This translation, though, was undoubtedly the most famous one for over two centuries. It was translated into Dutch (in 1742), German (in 1764), French (in 1790), Russian (in 1792), Swedish (in 1814) and Bulgarian (in 1902), and the original English alone has seen over a hundred and twenty editions.

Sale was no altruist, and he did not hide his intentions for translating the Qur'aan. He writes in the introduction to his translation:

I imagine it almost needless to either make an apology for publishing the following translation, or to go about to prove it a work of use as well as curiosity. They must have, a mean opinion of the Christian religion, or be ill grounded therein, who can apprehend any danger from so manifest a forgery. I shall not here inquire into the reasons why the law of Muhammad has met with so unexampled a reception in the world (for they are greatly deserved who imagine it to have been propagated by the sword alone). But whoever use an impious version of the Koran (as) may be of an other respect, it is absolutely necessary to undeceive those who, from the ignorant or sinister translations which have appeared, have entertained too favourable an opinion of the original, and also to enable us effectually to expose the imposture.⁷⁶⁴

With such blatant antagonism towards Islam and the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ), it is not surprising that his translation is crude, inaccurate and full of interpolated phrases.

It is on the Sale translation that the famous philosopher Thomas Carlyle based his unfair assessment of the Qur'aan, "It is as tedious reading as I ever undertook, a wearisome, confused jumble, crude, incondite. Nothing but a sense of duty could carry any European through the Qur'aan,"⁷⁶⁵ he wrote. It was also on this translation that Edward Gibbon based his sarcastic remarks on the beauty of the Qur'aan, "...the European infidel...will peruse with impatience the endless incoherent chapsody of fable, and precept, and declamation, which seldom excites a sentiment or an idea, which sometimes crawls in the dust, and is sometimes lost in the clouds."⁷⁶⁶

The next translation that had a major impact in the English language was that of Reverend J. M. Rodwell, in 1861. More sympathetic than his predecessor, he claimed that the Prophet (ﷺ) "...had worked himself up into a belief that he had received a divine call..."⁷⁶⁷ He also gives 'useful advice' to missionaries so that they can carry out their proselytism among Muslims.

In his translation, Rodwell was probably the first to even attempt to imitate the style of the Arabic. Unfortunately, he rearranged the *soukhou* to, what he thought was,

764 *Arberry*, p. 12

765 *Ibid* p. 12

766 *Arberry*, p. 13

a chronological order. For this, he relied primarily on Noeldeke's monumental work, *Geschichte Des Korans* (to be discussed in the next chapter). This means that, if one wanted to look up a particular verse, he would first have to go to the table of contents, and see where Rodwell had placed the translated verse. Rodwell's unfamiliarity with the Arabic language, and his ignorance of Islam in general, is seen throughout his translation.

This translation was followed by the translation of Edward Henry Palmer in 1880, which he did for the Oxford University Press's *Sacred Books of the East* series, edited by Max Mueller. He, at least, did not attempt to rearrange the Qur'aan in any bizarre order. However, in common with all other non-Muslim translations of the Qur'aan, there exist many instances of incorrect translation and rather omissions or additions into the text.

Richard Bell authored another translation in 1937. He went to measures even more extreme than any of his predecessors in 'critically re-arranging the *suraah*', and as such is perhaps the most difficult translation to read. He gives his unique perspective on the actual arrangement of the *suraah*s and verses of the Qur'aan, as he wished to 'illustrate alterations, substitutions and derangements'⁷⁶⁷ of the text of the Qur'aan. Obviously the altered arrangement and *suraah* substitutions are based upon little more than his own deranged imagination.

One of the better, and perhaps more sympathetic, translations is the one by Arthur J. Arberry, who completed his translation in 1935. He writes in his Introduction:

In choosing to call the present work *The Koran Interpreted* I have conceded the relevancy of the orthodox Muslim view, of which Pickthall, for one, was so conscious, that the Koran is untranslatable—the rhetoric and rhythm of the Arabic of the Koran are so characteristic, so powerful, so highly emotive, that any version whatsoever is bound in the nature of things to be but a poor copy of the glittering splendour of the original.⁷⁶⁸

His translation does not contain any explanatory notes or background information on the *suraah*s. As is typical with such translations, though, it is not free from omissions and mistranslations.

N. J. Dawood's translation came out in 1956, in which he also 'critically rearranged' the order of the *suraah*s. He was an Iraqi Jew, and his bias is blatantly shown throughout his translation. For example, he translates the phrase '*Benei Adam*' as 'Children of Allah' (instead of 'Children of Adam').

English Translation by Muslims

Among Muslims, one of the first translations into English was Dr. Muhammad 'Abdul Haqem Khan's, published in Patna (India) in 1905. It has short exegetical footnotes. This was followed by Mirza Hadrat Dehlanvi's translation, *The Koran: Prepared by Various Oriental Learned Scholars*, published in Delhi, in 1912. During the

⁷⁶⁷ Bell, p. 19.

⁷⁶⁸ Arberry, p. 26.

same year, Mirza Asad Faghl's translation, *The Qur'an Translated into English from the Original Arabic*, was released in Allahabad, and dedicated to Sultan Jahan Begum, ruler of Bhopal.

Mohammed 'Ali, the Qadiri,⁷⁷⁰ came out with his translation, *The Holy Qur'an* in 1916. This translation, even though by a Qadiri, was to have a profound impact on many later translations (in particular, Pickthall's, Yusuf Ali's, Sarwar's, Daryabadi's and Shakir's).

Ḥafīdh Ghulam Sarwar came out with his *The Holy Qur'an* in 1929. It was published in the Indian Sub-Continent, Singapore, and England. The translator also included some essays about Islam, and the *ascent* of the Prophet (ﷺ).

After this appeared two translations that both gained considerable favour among Muslims. The first was by Muhammad Marmaduke Pickthall, an Englishman who had lived in the East, and served the Nizam of Hyderabad. His translation, *The Meaning of the Glorious Qur'an*, was released in London, in 1930, and was significant in that it was the first translation by an Muslim Englishman. Pickthall wrote:

The aim of this work is to present to the English readers what the Muslims of the world ever held to be the meaning of the words of the Koran (sic), and the nature of the Book, in not unworthy language and concisely with a view to the requirements of English Muslims. The Koran cannot be translated. This is the belief of the old-fashioned Shaykhs and the view of the present writer – (this) is only an attempt to present the meaning of the Koran – and peradventure something of the charm – in English. It can never take the place of the Koran in Arabic, nor is it meant to do so.⁷⁷¹

The second one appeared in 1938, when 'Abdullāh Yusuf 'Ali came out with his famous translation, *The Holy Qur'an: Translation and Commentary*. This was followed by a host of others, such as Abdul Majeed Daryabadi's *The Holy Qur'an with English Translation and Commentary*, in 1941; 'Ali Ahmad Khan Julunduri's *Translation of the Glorious Holy Qur'an with Commentary*, in 1962; and Hashim Amir Ali's *The Message of the Qur'an Presented in Perspective*, in 1974. In 1977, Muḥammad Taqī al-Dan al-Hilālī and Muḥammad Muḥsin Khan, both of the Islamic University of Madrasah, released a translation of the Qur'an based on classical *tafsīrs*, *Explanatory English Translation of the Meaning of the Holy Qur'an*. Muḥammad Asad, a Jew who converted to Islam, wrote his famous translation, *The Message of the Qur'an*, in 1980. Thomas B. Irving, an American Muslim, wrote his *The Qur'an: The First American Version* in 1985.⁷⁷²

⁷⁷⁰ The Qadirites were declared non-Muslims in a conference of world-wide scholars hosted in Pakistan in the late 20's. The reason that Muhammad 'Ali is mentioned in this group is that he belongs to a pseudo-Islamic sect.

⁷⁷¹ Pickthall, p. v.

⁷⁷² The various translations given in this section are not meant to be exhaustive list of all the translations available. There are too many translations to talk about in a work of this nature. There have been over twenty translations (that this author is aware of) by Muslims into English, and another seven by Qadirites, not to mention the works set by other non-Muslims. For further details, see *The Message*, vol. 17, no. 10, pp. 17–26. The historical material for this section (where not explicitly quoted) was taken from Asberry, pp. 7–25; Khakita, pp. 64–68, and *World Bibliography*.

iv. The Problems with Translations

The greatest problem with a translation of the Qur'aan is, of course, the fact that it transforms the Qur'aan as the *ḥikmah* of Allaah in Arabic, to the speech of a human in another language. In this destructive process, the beauty and miraculous nature of the Qur'aan is almost completely lost, as the very Words of Allaah are replaced by human substitutions. The perfect choice of wordings, the syntax of the verse, the powerful rhythm of the passages, the manners of eloquence displayed by the Arabic – all are destroyed. Even the famous Orientalist, Professor H. R. Gibb, remarked, 'An English translation of the Qur'aan must employ precise and often arbitrary terms for the many-faceted and jewel-like phrases of the Arabic, and the more literal it is, the grayer and more colourless it must be.'⁷² The Arabic language is an extremely rich and powerful language, and it is simply not possible to convey in another language all the meanings that are conveyed in Arabic.

Perhaps the following few examples will help illustrate this point better.

In verse 76.3, Allaah states,

إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ الْفَيْدَ إِنَّا شَاكِرٌ وَإِنَّا كَفُورٌ ﴿٣﴾

«Nearly, We have shown him (i.e., mankind) the way, whether he be grateful or ungrateful (it is up to him)!»

In this verse, Allaah uses two opposite adjectives – grateful (*shakir*) and ungrateful (*kafir*).

Arabic nouns are based upon certain roots and structures (known as *awzaan*). Typically, two opposites would be mentioned with the same root structure, so that an aesthetic parallel is achieved. However, the two structures of the nouns used in this verse are not the same: the first one is based on the root structure 'ḡa'w' whereas the second on 'ḡa'ool'. The point that is trying to be made is that the Qur'aan uses two different root structures for these opposites, whereas it would appear to make more aesthetic sense to use the same root structure (i.e., either pair '*shakir*' with '*kafir*', or '*shakoor*' with '*kafoor*'). The verse in the Qur'aan pairs '*shakir*' with '*kafoor*'.

In actuality, the choice of these two different root structures adds a depth to the meaning that would otherwise not be present in the verse. The root structure 'ḡa'ool' is used to indicate a more forcible and efficacious state than the root 'ḡa'w'. Therefore, by using the adjective '*kafoor*' (which is in the 'ḡa'ool' structure) to describe the ungrateful, and '*shakir*' (which is in the 'ḡa'w' structure) to describe the grateful, the Qur'aan subtly, yet powerfully, conveys the fact that man is easily able to reach a state of extreme ungratefulness, but when he chooses to thank Allaah, he cannot easily reach the equivalent extreme in thanking Him, because the blessings of Allaah are too many and too great to thank. Yet another meaning that is conveyed is that most of mankind will be in the '*kafoor*' state. As Allaah says in another verse,

وَقَلِيلٌ مِّنْ عِبَادِيَ الشَّاكِرُونَ

«And (only) a few of My servants are *shākir* (grateful)» - [34: 13]

Therefore, only a small percentage of mankind can reach the level of *shākir*, whereas there will be many who can reach the level of *shākir*. This is in contrast to ungratefulness, for most of those who are ungrateful will reach the depths of ingratitude – the level of *qāfir*.

By using two different root structures, each of which conveys a slightly different meaning, a whole new meaning is added. This meaning cannot be conveyed into another language by simple translation, and all translators ignored these extra meanings in their translations.

The addition and deletion of certain letters also adds different meanings to a word. In the last verse of *Sūrah al-Baqarah*, the Qur'aan states,

لَا يَكْفُرُ اللَّهُ فَمَا لَآؤُسَمَهَا لَهَا مَا كَسَبَتْ وَعَلَيْهَا مَا اكْتَسَبَتْ

«Allah does not change a soul except (with that which is written) its capacity. It will have (the consequence of) what (good) it has gained, and it will bear (the consequences of) what (evil) it has earned.» [2: 285]

The first verb, which has been used to express the gain that a person earns in good, is *kāna*, whereas the second verb, which has been used to express the earnings of evil, is *iktasaba*. The second verb is from the same root as the first (*kāna*), meaning, 'to earn, or gain', except that an extra letter has been added (the letter *tas*). This letter gives the verb the added connotation of 'effort'. In other words, the second verb signifies that some effort must be employed in order to earn evil. This extra meaning is not present in the first verb.

The resulting change in meaning is that the earning of rewards from Allah is a very simple and easy task, whereas the earning of evil is not so easy, and requires effort from the person. It also shows that the earning of evil goes against the nature of man, since he must exert himself in order to 'gain' the consequences of his evil deeds, whereas no such exertion is required in order to *gain* the rewards for his pious deeds. In addition, the verse also implies that evil *thoughts* which do not lead to any actions will not be punished; only evil *actions* will be punished (since thoughts do not require any effort, in contrast to acts). On the other hand, good intentions will be rewarded, even if not followed up by actions. Thus, if a person *intended* to do evil, but did not do so, he will not be held accountable for such intentions. On the other hand, if a person *intended* to do a good deed, but for some reason did not do so, he will still be rewarded for his intentions. Yet another meaning that is added is that man is the consequence of the evil that he has earned, since he must 'exert' himself in order to obtain it; yet, the rewards of his good deeds do not emanate from him, but from Allah, since he was not responsible in procuring the good. In other words, the evil is his own doing, whereas the good is from the blessings of Allah. As Allah says in another verse,

فَأَمَّا الْيَهُودُ فَحَقَّ عَلَيْهِمُ الضَّلَالَةُ إِنَّهُم اتَّخَذُوا آلَهُمِ الْبَشَرِ حِجَابًا عَن تَعَالَىٰ

An example of where Arabic eloquence (*balaghah*) is lost in translation is verse 19:4. In it, the Prophet Zakariyyah (Zacharias) is praying to Allaah to bless him with a child, and describes his old age:

قَالَ رَبِّ إِنِّي وَهَنَ الْعَظْمُ مِنِّي وَاسْتَعَلَ الرَّأْسُ شَيْبًا

‘He said, ‘O My Lord! Indeed my bones have grown feeble, and grey hair has spread on my head...’

The Arabic of the last portion of the verse is: ‘*alshayb al- ar-ra’s shayba*’. This phrase, despite its conciseness (only three words!), is indicative of the eloquence of the Qur’aan, and az-Zamakhsharee is able to extract no less than five examples of the usage of various types of Arabic eloquence (some of which cannot even be explained in English!).¹⁷⁰ For example, the primary meaning of the verb ‘*alshayb al- ar-ra’s shayba*’ which is used in the verse is to express the sparks that are emitted by a fire. Therefore, Zakariyyah is comparing the whiteness of his hair to the sparks that emit from a fire, an example of one type of metaphor. Also, the verse translates as, ‘...[my] head sparks...’, thus attributing the sparking effect, not to the hair where it occurs, but to the place and origin of that hair (the head), thus accentuating the severity of his old age. This phrase also gives the impression that the sparks are occurring from many places, thus indicating that, not only are his hairs white, but these white streaks are to be found all over his head. In essence, this phrase of only three words conveys the image of Zakariyyah’s old age in such graphic detail that the English equivalent would require a few paragraphs of text! Of course, all such eloquence is completely lost in translation.

In all of the above examples, the only factor that was involved was the actual Arabic of the verse; no knowledge of *asbab an-nuzool*, or the different *qira’aat*, or any external information was needed. A person well-grounded in the Arabic language would have been able to obtain these benefits and interpretations solely from the wording of the verse. However, in the process of translation, all of these examples, and countless more, are lost, as the very Speech of Allaah – the most eloquent of all speech – is re-interpreted and re-phrased by a human, to be transformed into another language!

As these few paragraphs have illustrated, it is not possible for a perfect translation of the Qur’aan to exist. Any translation of the Qur’aan is bound to be imperfect due to the simple fact that it is a human endeavour, and not Divine.

Despite the fact that a perfect translation of the Qur’aan can never exist, it is possible that a relatively reliable and legitimate translation be produced. Although such a translation could not take the place of the original, and would never be absolutely flawless, it would accurately reflect the basic meanings of the Arabic text in a lucid and clear style. This, then, is the goal of a good translation of the Qur’aan.

English has had its fair share of Qur’aan translations, as the previous section illustrated. Yet, despite the ample number of translations, it is still possible to say that almost all of them are not highly accurate. It is sad to note that most English transla-

nons that are in existence today suffer from very serious flaws and shortcomings. This is because most of these translations suffer from one very basic flaw: the translators were not qualified to undertake the monumental task of translating the Qur'ān!

Perhaps the first disqualification is on the basis of *'ajdahū*; many translators were not Muslim, and even of those that were, almost none were actually knowledgeable of the beliefs of the *Ahl al-Sunnah*. (This is the first condition that was mentioned under 'The Conditions for Translation.')

The second disqualification is that most translators were not well grounded in Arabic language and grammar, and thus not qualified to explain or translate the Qur'ān (conditions 2 and 3, above). To further compound this disqualification, most Muslim translators had not seriously studied Islam and the religious sciences to the level necessary for a translator (condition 4 above). On the contrary, many of them had studied in Western universities, and were greatly influenced by Western sciences and philosophies. And even the few that had undergone rigorous religious training had problems with the language of translation, for English was not their mother tongue! One of the prerequisites for a translator is that he must be fluent in both languages: Arabic and the language of translation (condition 2 above). Examples will be given shortly to substantiate these claims. In addition, most translators did not avail themselves to *asahih nufus* of the Qur'ān in order to properly understand the intent of the verses. Had they done so, it would have greatly minimised the errors found in their translations.⁷⁷⁶

Some researchers have classified the reasons that errors have occurred in these translations as follows:⁷⁷⁸

- 1) *Nescience of the Arabic word's exact meaning.* For example, verse 18:26 utilises a certain tense which signifies amazement and wonder. This tense was apparently not understood by Sale, who translated the verse as: "Do thou make Him to see and to hear" thus understanding the tense as implying a question! Rodwell understood this as a command: "Look thou and hearken to him alone!", whereas Palmer apparently missed the whole point, and translated it as a rather dreary, "He can see and hear." A more accurate translation of the verse is Pickthall's, "How clear of sight is He and keen of hearing!"
- 2) *Awareness of only one shade of meaning.* For example, Jeffery translates 17:60 as, "Verily thy Lord is round about the people," and Rodwell has a similar, "Verily thy Lord is round about mankind." The word that they translated as 'round about' in reality means 'encompassed', meaning that Allah has full control over His creatures and none of them can evade His judgement.
- 3) *Confusion between different Arabic words.* For example, Menezes mistakenly translated Abū Bakr (the name of the famous Companion) as, "the father of the virgin!" Apart from the fact that this is a proper name, and is not meant to be translated, the word for virgin is *'būṭy*, not *'būṭy'*!

⁷⁷⁶ The only exception to this (from the works that this author has come across) is Khali and Hala's translation, as shall be discussed soon.

⁷⁷⁸ Khulafa, p. 67. The examples and quotes are also from this source.

- 4) Limited knowledge of Arabic coked out with figments of imagination. For example, Bell understood the 'Qur'aan' to be different from the 'Fuqraan' and the 'Kutab'. As was mentioned earlier, these are merely different names of the Qur'aan.
- 5) Mistaking Arabic for Hebrew or Syriac. Watt concluded that the meaning of 'ragh' in 74:4 was the same as the Syriac 'ragra', which means, 'wrath', whereas the real meaning is 'pollution' (which is used in the verse to signify idola).
- 6) Some confusion with Hebrew traditions. For example, Jeffery confused the Arabic 'al-jannah' in 48:4 with the Hebrew 'al-jannah'.

These six categories are perhaps more applicable to non-Muslim translators. Perhaps the three most common causes for errors by Muslim translators are:

- 1) An incorrect understanding of a word.
- 2) A misunderstanding of the intent of the verse.
- 3) Unfamiliarity with the rules of Arabic grammar.

An example of where a particular word was translated incorrectly is verse 21:87. In it, Allaah mentions the incident of Yoonus, in which he left his people after they had not responded to his call. The verse uses the word 'anqaraa' which has a number of meanings, including: 'to have power over' and 'to hold responsible for'. Most translators, including Yusuf Ali and Pickthall, took the first meaning of the word, thus translating the verse as, "And remember Dhoo an-Nuun (Yoonus), when he departed in anger. He presumed that We had no power over him..." This translation attributes a type of disbelief (*kyfir*) to a prophet, for how can any believer believe that Allaah has no power over him? The correct translation, therefore, is, "...and he presumed that We shall not call him to task...", in other words, he presumed that the act that he had done was not a sinful act and he would not be punished for it, and not that Allaah had no power over him!

Another example is the translation of the word '*durooj*'. In verse 85:1, Allaah swears by the '*dues*, full of *durooj*'. Yusuf Ali translates this as, "By the Sky; (Displaying) the Zodiacal signs." In classical Arabic, however, the word '*durooj*' is used to denote a constellation of stars. Later Arabic, however, gave it the added meaning of 'the Zodiacal signs', and this is the meaning by which later dictionaries define it. The Zodiacal signs are signs from ancient Greek mythology, and play absolutely no role in Islam. Thus, the translation of Yusuf Ali gives a very dangerous and incorrect implication. The proper translation of the verse is, "(I swear) by the heavens which contain constellations."

An example where the translator does not understand the intent of the verse is Muhammad Ali's translation of verse 32:28: "And they say, when will this victory come, if you are truthful? Say: On the day of victory, the faith of those who (now) disbelieve will not profit them..." In the footnote, he explains the day of victory as the conquest of Islam over other religions. What is meant by the verse, however, is the Day of Judgement, or the day of punishment, for that is the day that the faith of a disbeliever will not be accepted. Ibn Kathir (d. 774 A.H.) states,

"Whoever perceives that the intent of this verse is the Conquest of Makkah has strayed far, and fallen into serious error! For, on the day of the Conquest of Makkah, the Prophet (ﷺ) accepted the Islam of the disbelievers, and if the intent of this verse was the Conquest of Makkah, the Prophet (ﷺ) would not have accepted their Islam."⁷⁷⁷

Another mistranslation due to an incorrect understanding of a phrase occurs in verse 37:28. In it, Allaah mentions that the disbelievers will regret the fact that they did not heed the call of the believers in this life.



‘They will say (on the Day of Judgement), ‘It was you (i.e., the believers) who used to come to us ‘*aw al-yaween*’ - [37:28]

Now, the phrase ‘*aw al-yaween*’ literally translates as ‘from the right-hand side’, and this is how a number of translators, such as Ali and Shukri, translated it. However, what is actually intended in the verse, as ash-Shawkānnee (d. 1250 A.H.)⁷⁷⁸ and others point out, is that the believers used to come to the disbelievers with the truth. The ‘right-hand side’ is used to denote the side of truth and justice, and thus the believers used to approach the disbelievers with the truth, but the disbelievers would reject it. Some translators, however, did not understand the meaning of this phrase, and translated it verbatim, without giving any comment or explanation as to its meaning.⁷⁷⁹

An example that demonstrates lack of knowledge of Arabic grammar is the translation of verse 36:82. The verb ‘*raj’aloon*’ that is used in the verse comes from a class of verbs that need two ‘objects’ (*maf’ool*) to them in order to form a complete sentence.⁷⁸⁰ The first ‘object’ that is mentioned, however (*raḥḥim*), does not form a comprehensible sentence with the verb unless one adds a noun to it. This fact would be apparent to any linguist at the first reading of the verse. The noun that is missing can either be deduced from the context, or from authentic narrations from Ibn ‘Abbās (found in at-Ṭabarī, Ibn Kathīr, and others. The noun is ‘*shukr*’). However, due to the fact that most translators were, apparently, not aware of the rules pertaining to this class of verbs, they ignored the fact that the sentence could not be translated verbatim. The verse, therefore, was translated as, ‘And you have made it your means of livelihood that you should declare it false!’ by almost all translators (Yusuf ‘Ali, Muhammad ‘Ali, Pickthall, Shakir, and others). The correct translation of the verse, however, as done by Khan and Hilali, is, ‘And instead (of thanking) Allaah for the provisions He gives you, on the contrary, you deny him (by disbelief)’ (The noun that was added was ‘*thanking*’). The difference in meaning between the two transla-

⁷⁷⁷ Ibn Kathīr v. 3, p. 513.

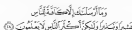
⁷⁷⁸ *Faṣṣ al-Qudus*, v. 4, p. 516. An alternate interpretation is that the ‘right hand side’ isolates power or excellence. See the references for further details.

⁷⁷⁹ As used in this verse. There are certain cases where it would only need one object, but this case does not apply to this verse.

tions is clearly noticeable; in fact, at first glance it seems that the two translations are absolutely unrelated to one another, despite the fact that they are actually the same verse!

Yet another example which demonstrates a lack of knowledge of Arabic grammar is the translation of verses 70:6-7. These verses employ the word, 'ra'aa'. This word has a number of meanings to it, depending on its grammatical actions and context. If it has one 'object' after it, it means: 'to see', whereas if it has two 'objects', its meaning changes to: 'to presume', or 'to firmly believe'. In these verses, the word occurs twice, and each time it has two objects. Most translators (if not all), apparently not aware of these grammatical rules, translated these verses as, "They (the disbelievers) see it (the Day of Judgement) as far away. But we see it as near!" This translation, although not actually incorrect, is at the same time not very accurate. A more accurate translation of the verse would be: "They presume it as far away. But we know for certain that it is near!" In other words, the disbelievers are not sure about the occurrence of the Day of Judgement, and even if it occurs, they think that there is a long time left for it. The believers, on the other hand, know for certain that it will occur, and with this certain knowledge, they know that it is very close by! The difference between the two translations, and the deeper meanings of the second, come only from applying basic Arabic grammar!

As a last, and slightly more complicated, example, let us examine verse 34:28. All translations reviewed – without any exception – translated the verse, with minor differences, as,



«And We have not sent you (O Muḥammad) except as a bearer of glad tidings, and a warner, to all of mankind, but most of mankind know not.»

The phrase, '...to all of mankind...' occurs in the Arabic as '...*ʾilā kullin fī ʾl-bashar*'. According to this translation, the word '*ʾilā*' means 'all of', and is a conditional adjective, known in Arabic as *ḥaṣṣ*, of 'mankind' (or, '*bashar*'). In this verse, it can be seen that the conditional adjective occurs *before* its subject, which is '*bashar*' (mankind).

Now, according to the majority of classical Arabic grammarians (but not all), it is not allowed for a conditional adjective, or *ḥaṣṣ*, to precede its subject in a number of cases, including the case where its subject was connected to the letter *lām* (so be more precise, if the subject were preceded by one of the prepositions known as the *ḥuroof al-ḥaṣṣ*, one of which is the *lām*). In this verse, it can be seen that the subject is indeed connected to the letter *lām* (i.e., the subject, '*bashar*', is preceded by the letter *lām*, which is transliterated above as 'W'). Therefore, according to the majority of Arabic grammarians, it would not be allowed to understand the verse the way that it has been translated above. In fact, both az-Zajjaj (d. 301 A.H.), and az-Zamakhsharee (d. 538 A.H.), two of the most famous scholars of Arabic grammar, called this inter-

pretation of the verse, 'a clear error'⁷⁸⁰ According to these scholars, the word 'ḥaṣfah' must be understood as meaning one of its other derivatives, so that it is not taken to be a conditional adjective (ḥaṣf) of 'mankind'. This alternate meaning is 'a preventor' (from the root ḥaffa, meaning 'to stop'), and the verse would therefore translate as, 'And we have not sent you (O Muḥammad) except as a preventor for mankind (i.e., to prevent them from wrongdoing and *shirk*), a giver of glad tidings, and a warner.' This second translation offers a totally different understanding of the verse.

Although the widespread English translation of the verse cannot be called incorrect (due to the fact that there is a difference of opinion amongst classical Arabic grammarians over this particular grammatical rule, with a minority of them allowing such an interpretation), it must be asked, "How many of the translators who translated this verse were actually even aware of this rule of Arabic grammar, and the difference of opinion over it, and, based on research and analysis, purposely chose one opinion over the other?"

The point that is trying to be made is that it is essential that such detailed rules of Arabic grammar be known and thoroughly understood by anyone who wishes to translate the Qur'aan. Arabic is a highly complex language, and it is not possible that a person with a rudimentary knowledge of Arabic, armed with a few dictionaries and lexicons, can do justice to any translation.

Perhaps the safest and most accurate method to have translated the above verse, as ash-Shawkaanee (d. 1250 A.H.) interprets in his *naṣiḥ*, is to have included both possible translations.⁷⁸¹

A Review of Some Translations

These reviews are not intended to be exhaustive, but rather to give the reader an insight into the translator's beliefs, and some benefits and faults of the translation. The purpose of this section is not to find every single fault that has occurred, but rather to give a general ruling on the translation. The comments that were made in the previous section must be kept in mind, almost all the translations mentioned here are demonstrative of the three categories of errors mentioned above.

Only the more popular Muslim translators have been reviewed, since non-Muslim translations cannot be relied on, no matter how superb the English, and Qadiani translations invariably inject their doctrines into the Qur'aan. (However, an exception was made for Muḥammad Ali's translation, since it had great influence on both Pickthall and Yusuf 'Ali).

Muḥammad Marmaduke Pickthall's *The Meaning of the Glorious Qur'aan* is one of the more popular translations. It was released in 1910, and has seen over 27 editions

⁷⁸⁰ *al-Kashaf*, v. 3, p. 392.

⁷⁸¹ For further details on this particular rule and its application on the verse, see *al-Kashaf* v. 3, p. 382, *Faḥ al-Qadir*, v. 4, p. 432, *Druse as-Saḥih*, v. 2, p. 205.

Pickthall was an Englishman who had, in the words of Arberry, 'achieved a certain repute as a novelist... and was a man of distinct literary gifts'.⁷⁶² He had travelled in the East, and had worked for the Nizam of Hyderabad. For his translation, he relied quite heavily on Muhammad Ali's translation (mentioned below).

The translation is quite literal, and therefore is not smooth reading. Also, his use of Biblical English (*where, now, etc.*) does not suit modern readers. There are very few notes or explanations, which makes it confusing for those who are not familiar with the Qur'aan, but at least helps in minimising Ali's influence on him. Overall, though, the translation is a generally acceptable, albeit literal, rendering of the Arabic.

It would be no exaggeration to say that the most popular translation of the Qur'aan in existence today is 'Abdullaah Yusuf Ali's *The Holy Qur'aan: Translation and Commentary*. It has seen over 35 editions since its release in 1936, not counting the revised ones.

'Ali had studied in England in the late 19th century, and was of a *Sunnat Bahr* family. He had learnt Arabic from his father. Although well-versed in English grammar and literature, he was not familiar with Islamic sciences, and depended mostly on Muhammad Ali's translation for his interpretory comments.

The English of his translation is simpler than Pickthall's – and therefore easier to read – but could be better. There are ample footnotes, and, in general, the translation itself is acceptable.

The problem with this translation, however, is Ali's footnotes. These are indicative of his 'Sufi' leanings, and smack of apologetics and pseudo-rationalism.⁷⁶³ The Muslim World League released a pamphlet detailing the errors in these footnotes, but this pamphlet was not exhaustive. There have been 'revised' editions of Yusuf Ali's translation published, but even these are not free from error.

Some of the problems of this translation is his idea of 'analogy' in the Qur'aan. Due to a misinterpretation of verse 3:7, he believes that many of the statements of the Qur'aan are allegorical. According to his footnotes, Heaven and Hell are states of the mind and do not really exist (notes 44, 50, 168, 452, 499, 579); jinn are not a separate creation of Allaah but rather an innate force in man (note 929), the *doors* of Heaven are only for companionship, and not for pleasure (note 44). In addition, 'Ali has an extremely liberal approach to *fiqh*, for he states that insurance and interest are allowed (notes 241, 324) and polygamy is discouraged in Islam (note 509), to note some examples. Many of these problems have been solved in the 'revised' edition, but some work still needs to be done.⁷⁶⁴ Also, most of these concepts are found in Muhammad Ali's translation, and Yusuf Ali's dependence on it is obvious. In fact, he

⁷⁶² Arberry, p. 20.

⁷⁶³ Kabeer, p. 17.

⁷⁶⁴ For further details, see *Al-Balad*, vol. 3, no. 4 & 5, *Our 'Abdullah Yusuf 'Ali and Muhammad Ali's commentaries*.

⁷⁶⁵ Yusuf 'Ali, p. xvi.

states in his introduction that Muhammad Ali's translation is 'a scholarly work, and equipped with adequate explanatory matter in the notes and the Preface.'¹⁰¹ Yet another aspect of this translation is that Yusuf 'Ali continually intersperses his Sufic thought and philosophy whenever he gets an opportunity to do so.

Also, Yusuf 'Ali was clearly influenced by the 'modernist' school of thought, which sought to explain away everything that they felt 'modern' science could not explain or rationalise. For example, concerning the Prophet's (ﷺ) night journey (*al-layla wa al-Mu'ayy*), he writes, "The majority of Commentators take this Night Journey literally... Even on the supposition of a *miraculous bodily* journey, it is conceded that the body was almost transformed into a *spiritual fixture*."¹⁰² The implied meaning is obvious, and contradicts the belief of *Ahl al-Sunnah* that the Prophet (ﷺ) was transported in body and soul during *al-layla wa al-Mu'ayy*. While mentioning the story of the resurrection of the birds at the call of Ibraahim (2:160), Yusuf 'Ali has difficulty believing that the birds were actually killed by Ibraahim, as is the clear understanding of the verse, and the view of classical commentators.

Apart from these notes, as was mentioned earlier, the translation – in general – is acceptable, and the English readable.

Taqiuddin Hilali's and Muhammad Muhsin Khan's *Interpretation of the Meaning of the Holy Qur'aan* was first released in 1977, and has seen a number of editions since. It was initially a multi-volume work, and has lately been re-released in one summarised volume.

Both of the translators are from the Islamic University of Madinah, and perhaps better qualified than all the previous translators mentioned to undertake such a task. The translation relies on classical Islamic *tafsirs*, such as Ibn Kathir's, al-Qurubee's and al-Tabaree's works. Therefore, this translation is undoubtedly the finest in terms of being free of inaccurate interpretations. It has copious notes, taken mainly from *Saheeh al-Bukhaaree*, and also many interpolated meanings in brackets in the text. It perhaps might have been more prudent to place these phrases as foot-notes, to avoid confusion between the actual text and explanatory notes. It also has very useful appendi.

The English, however, is not as smooth as other translations. The absence of a translator whose mother tongue is English is noticeable in the translation. Also, the translation leaves many phrases in Arabic, and then gives an explanation of the phrase in English. Although this is occasionally useful, at times it makes for tedious reading.

Muhammad Asad's *The Message of the Qur'aan* was first released in 1980. The translator was a very well known figure, and had written two famous works, *The Road to Meccah* (a highly readable autobiography), and *Islam at the Cross-roads*. He had also translated a portion of *Saheeh al-Bukhaaree*, which is a very good translation.

His translation of the Qur'aan, unfortunately, contains many unorthodox ideas. It is an English translation with a *Mu'assisee* perspective. He denies the miracles that the prophets performed (for example, the resurrection of the birds in the story of Ibrahim, 2:260), believes that *jinn* are not separate creatures, and also has a very liberal approach to *fiqh* (for example, the concept of *hijab* varies with time and place, cf. *Soorah Noor*).

Apart from problems of this nature – and they are numerous in number – the English is one of the best that this author has seen; very lucid and readable. However, it is not to be recommended because of its misinterpretations.

Muhammad 'Ali, came out with his *The Holy Qur'aan: English Translation* in 1917, and it has seen ten editions. The author is a Qadiri, and thus this translation is full of heretical ideas. He does not believe in the finality of the Prophet (ﷺ),⁷⁸⁷ and twists the meaning of those verses that state this (cf. his footnote to 22:40). He also believes that Jesus died on the cross, and was not raised up to the Heavens, as the Qur'aan clearly states (cf. 3:55 and 4:157, and Ali's 'interpretation' of them). He too denies the miracles of the prophets, and claims that Heaven and Hell are not real (cf. his introduction, p. xx onwards). In fact, he even goes so far as to say Hell is actually a place for the 'treatment of spiritual diseases,' and its 'punishment not meant for torture but for purification' (p. xi). Due to the fact that this was one of the first translations in English by a 'Muslim,' it had a great influence on future translations, particularly Yusuf Ali's and Muhammad Mahmuduke Pickthall's. In fact, Muhammad 'Ali quotes with pride the famous Christian missionary Rev. Zwemer, who wrote:

A careful comparison of Mr. Pickthall's translation with that of the Ahmadiyya translator, Mirza Muhammad 'Ali, shows conclusively that Mr. Pickthall's work is not very much more than a revision of the Ahmadiyya version (p. vi).

This translation was also heavily used by Sarwar and Shakir.

M. M. Shakir came out with 'his' translation, *The Holy Qur'aan*, in 1982. Actually, it is based almost completely on Muhammad Ali's translation, except for minor changes. A simple comparison between the two translations shows that Shakir merely revised Ali's translation. Kibria calls it, 'an example of blatant plagiarism.'⁷⁸⁸ Also, Shakir is of the *Shari'ite* faith, and the index clearly indicates this, as he lists 'verses' that refer to *Inaamah*, the martyrdom of Husayn, the caliphate of 'Ali, and so on.

⁷⁸⁷ Although it should be pointed out that he is of the 'Lahori Qadiriya,' who verbally believe in the finality of the Prophet (ﷺ), but in reality credit the status of Mirza Ghulam Ahmad to that of a prophet. 'Ali writes in his introduction, p. vi, while discussing his sources: 'And, lastly, the greatest religious leader of the present time, Mirza Ghulam Ahmad of Qadian, has inspired me with all that is best in this work. I have drunk deep at the fountain of knowledge which this great Reformer – *Mujaddid* of the present century and founder of the Ahmadiyyah Movement – has made to flow.'

⁷⁸⁸ Kibria, p. 18.

T. B. Irving's translation, *The Qur'ān: The First American Version*, was released in 1985. It is meant to be in American English. Apart from the Biblical connotations of the title (there cannot be different 'versions' of the Qur'ān), the translation has no explanatory notes, does not contain the Arabic text, and is not free from translation errors.²⁸⁹

²⁸⁹ Perhaps the reader will feel that the above reviews have been a bit harsh. However, it should be kept in mind that this is the Qur'ān – the Book of Allah – that we are dealing with, and thus even 'minor' problems should be considered important, especially when such problems concern interpretive interpretations of the Qur'ān. In reality, despite the more than two-dozen or so translations that exist, there still does not exist one good translation that combines a authentic Qur'ānic interpretation and flawless English. Khan and Hilali's is, as of yet, the best in terms of interpretation, but, at least in this author's opinion, there still exists an urgent need to produce a local, highly readable and authentic rendering of the meanings of the Qur'ān in English, and Allah knows best.

These lines were written based upon the translations that this author had access to at the time of writing. However, slightly before the final editing of this work, Saheeh International released its *The Qur'ān: Arabic Text with Corresponding English Meanings*. Although I have not exhaustively reviewed the work, it is an impressive translation, *far* superior to all others that have been reviewed. The English is surprisingly smooth, and accurately reflects the Arabic meanings. The footnotes are short and to the point, and greatly aid in the understanding of the verse. This translation clearly shines above the rest with its accuracy and simplicity. Perhaps the primary criticism that must be made against it is the fact that the translator(s) remains shrouded in anonymity! The names and credentials of the translators must be known, so that due credit (and criticism) can be given. It has never been the practice of the scholars of Islam to write under pseudonyms and hide behind unknown names! Despite this obvious criticism, however, the work is indeed a commendable effort in the field of English translations, and will probably remain unique in its class for some time to come.

THE QUR'AAN AND ORIENTALISTS



1. The Authorship of the Qur'aan

Orientalists are non-Muslim scholars who have achieved considerable repute as authorities on Islaam. They have dedicated their lives to the study of Islaam. As such, they must be looked at with extreme caution, for when a researcher studies Arabic and learns more about Islaam than the average Muslim, yet still remains a non-Muslim, his intentions must be questioned. Such people have, by their own testimony, lifted from themselves the veil of ignorance, and have seen and appreciated the beauty and authenticity of Islaam. They have removed any possible excuse that might have existed for not accepting Islaam. For reasons that can only be guessed, they heard and recognised the call of the Creator, but refused to answer and submit to Him!

For example, Arthur Jeffery, author of *Materials for the History of the Text of the Qur'aan*, studied in Egypt and Damascus for a number of years. During these years, he went over all the *qur'aan*, including the *shaahid* ones, with the scholars of al-Azhar, and pored over many of the books on the Qur'aan and its sciences – printed copies and manuscripts. The vast majority of Muslims, even those specialised in the *qur'aan*, have not done as much research as Jeffery did. Can it be imagined that he did not see the *Ujaan* of the Qur'aan through its many facets?

Another Orientalist, Arthur Arberry, also studied in Egypt. His Arabic was fluent, and he appreciated the beauty of the Qur'aan, '...the rhetoric and rhythm of the Arabic of the Qur'aan are so characteristic, so powerful, so highly emotive, that any version whatsoever is bound by the nature of things to be but a poor copy of the glittering splendour of the original.'⁷⁹⁰ Elsewhere, he even admitted that the Qur'aan was a solace and comfort for him:⁷⁹¹

During the long months, the dark and light months, of labouring at this interpretation, eclectic where the ancient commentators differ in their understanding of a word or phrase... the radiant beauty of the original is not clouded by such vexing interpolations – all through this welcome task I have been reliving those Ramadan nights of long ago, when I would sit on the veranda of my Geneva house and listen entranced to the old, white-bearded Shaykh who chanted the Koran for the pious delectation of my

⁷⁹⁰ Arberry, p. 24

⁷⁹¹ Arberry, p. 28

neighbour. It was then that I, the infidel, learn to understand and react to the thrilling rhythms of the Koran, only to be apprehended when listened to at such a time and in such a place. In humble thankfulness I dedicate this all too imperfect essay in imitation of those magical Egyptian nights.

Yes, despite all these confessions, Arberry, as did Jeffery, died as a non-Muslim. Why then, when they realised the beauty of the Qur'aan, did they reject its call?

The topic of the authorship of the Qur'aan has puzzled Orientalists for a long time. If the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) was an impostor, then how was one to explain his austere and magnanimous life? And if he were not an impostor, this would imply that 'Eesa and Muhammad (ﷺ) were sent by the same God, and this they were not willing to believe. Therefore, they were in a dilemma, and were forced to concoct some explanation as to who the author of the Qur'aan was, and why the Prophet (ﷺ) had claimed to be a prophet. As Rodwell wrote,²⁹¹

In close connection with the above remarks, stands the question of Mohammed's sincerity and honesty of purpose in coming forward as a messenger of God. For if he was indeed the ultimate person the Muslims represent him to have been, then it will be hard to escape their inference that the Koran is, as they assert it to be, a standing miracle. But if, on the other hand, it was a Book carefully concocted from various sources, and with much extraneous aid, and published as a divine oracle, then it would seem that the author is open to the charge of the grossest imposture, and even of unprovoked blasphemy. The more insight we obtain, from undoubted historical sources, into the actual character of Mohammed, the less reason do we find to justify the strong vituperative language poured out upon his head—

As Rodwell states, if Muhammad (ﷺ) were the author of the Qur'aan, this would then imply that he was an impostor. But the more one studies the biography (*seerah*) of the Prophet (ﷺ), the less one finds reason to presume this. Material gain; the desire for power and glory; the desire to unify the Arabs; the desire for moral reformation, all of these possible 'motives' are immediately eliminated by an unbiased reader of the Prophet's (ﷺ) *seerah*. In fact, the entire *seerah* of the Prophet (ﷺ) is one of the strongest proofs of his sincerity.

An Example of the Prophet's (ﷺ) Sincerity

Perhaps one of the greatest incidents that demonstrates the truthfulness of the Prophet (ﷺ) is the story of the death of the Prophet's (ﷺ) son Ibrahim, the last of the children to be born to the Prophet (ﷺ), died when he was less than two years old. The Prophet (ﷺ) was visibly grieved by this, and tears streamed down his face. Even the Companions were distressed and saddened to see the Prophet's (ﷺ) state. A few hours after Ibrahim's death, a solar eclipse occurred, blocking out the bright light of the sun. Immediately, word spread amongst the Muslims: Even the sun and moon are saddened by the Prophet's (ﷺ) loss!

What greater opportunity than this?⁷⁹³ What more can possibly be asked by an impostor?⁷⁹⁴ A charlatan would have seized this moment – this golden opportunity that would be heard for generations. Even the skies grieve with the Prophet! Muhammad (ﷺ) could have called the people of Madaanah, and told them, 'Yes! Even the heavens are affected by my loss!' In fact, he did not even have to call them; he merely had to remain silent, and let the rumours spread. Already all of Madaanah was marvelling at this clear 'miracle'.

Yet, the true prophet that he was, Muhammad (ﷺ) could not deceive or lie to his people. He issued a general summons to the people of Madaanah, and waited until they all gathered in the mosque. Then, he stood up in front of them, praised Allah and thanked Him, and said that ever-so-powerful statement, 'Verily, the sun and the moon are two of the signs and miracles out of the many miracles of Allah. They do not eclipse because of the death or birth of any human being.'⁷⁹⁵ So simple the phrase, yet so full of meaning; so innocent the sentence, yet so powerful in its implications. Can there be any doubt as to the Prophet's (ﷺ) truthfulness?

AUTHORSHIP THEORIES

In general, there are four primary 'explanations' that Orientalists adopt or have adopted to explain the phenomenon of the Qur'aan. Some amongst them even bypass this question, and state with certainty that the Prophet (ﷺ) was the author of the Qur'aan, without giving any explanation as to how an illiterate person could write such a masterpiece, or even the motives behind such an endeavour. Sale wrote, "That Muhammad was really the author and chief contriver of the Qur'aan is beyond dispute; though it is highly probable that he had no small assistance in his design from others."⁷⁹⁶

What is the most surprising aspect of these 'explanations', however, is how remarkably similar they are to the claims of the disbelievers of old – claims that the Qur'aan itself mentions and rebutes. The unoriginality of these explanations is a stark indication in itself of the authenticity of the Qur'aan.

A Poet?

The first 'explanation' that is given is that the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) was a poet – an extremely eloquent and skilled poet – but a poet nonetheless. This was put forth by Sibart around a century ago, and echoed by Bell and even Rodinson as late as the 1970's. Bell described the Prophet (ﷺ) as a poet, '...but not of the ordinary type'⁷⁹⁷ Sibart claims, after reading a translation of the Qur'aan, that anyone who had some knowledge of Jewish history 'and possessed of some poetic fire and fancy'⁷⁹⁸ could write the Qur'aan.

⁷⁹³ Reported by al-Bukhaari, and others.

⁷⁹⁴ Sale, p. 50.

⁷⁹⁵ Khulafa, p. 11.

⁷⁹⁶ Khulafa, p. 11.

How reminiscent this is from the cry of the pagans of old!

أَمْ يَقُولُونَ شَاعِرٌ

«Or do they say, 'He is a poet!'» [52:30].

بَلَىٰ قَالُوا أَتَعْجَبُ مِنْ هَٰذَا قَوْلِهِ

أَقْرَبُ مِنْ قَوْلِ هَٰؤُلَاءِ شَاعِرٍ قُلْ إِنَّمَا يَأْتِيكُمْ سَكَنٌ مِّمَّا أُرْسِلَ لِلأَوَّلِينَ

«They say, 'These inspirations are only modified dreams; Nay! he has invented it, Nay! he is a poet.' Then let him bring us some riddles like (the riddles) of old (were given)!"» [21:5]

وَقَالُوا إِنَّمَا هِيَ إِهْوَاءُ بَشَرٍ لَّحْمِيٍّ عَلَيْهِمُ الْعُقُوبَةُ ۖ وَكَانَ الرَّسُولُ

«And they said, 'Are we going to abandon our gods for the sake of a mad poet?' Nay! Rather [Muhammad] has come with the Truth, and confirmed the Messengers (before him)» [37:36]

Rather,

وَمَا هُوَ قَوْلُ شَاعِرٍ قَلِيلًا مِّمَّا يَتْلُونَ

«And it is not the words of a poet! Little (are) you aware!» [69:41]

وَمَا عَلَّمْنَاهُ الشِّعْرَ وَمَا يَنْبَغِي لَهُ ۚ إِنْ هُوَ إِلَّا ذِكْرٌ وَقُرْآنٌ مُبِينٌ

«And We have not taught (him) poetry, nor is it befitting for him. Rather, this is only a Reminder, and a clear Qur'an» [36:69]

A Madman?

Yet another 'explanation' is that he (ﷺ) was an epileptic who was possessed by devils, and thus was able to produce such eloquent speech. This was a common theme of the Orientalists of the Middle Ages, such as San Pedro. Philip K. Himm wrote, "The Prophet experienced ecstatic seizures as he received the revelations, giving rise to the charge that he was epileptic."⁷⁹⁷

However, even Orientalists themselves have had to reject these claims as false. Daniel commented, "...epilepsy as applied to the Prophet was the explanation of those who sought to amuse rather than to instruct."⁷⁹⁸

If one looks at the *sunnah* of the Prophet (ﷺ), one cannot find any grounds for these claims. Epilepsy is not found mentioned at all in any of the classical works of *sunnah*. In addition, the Prophet (ﷺ) lived a normal, sane life throughout his sixty-three years. There are no incidents in the Prophet's (ﷺ) life that can be given as examples of insanity; on the contrary, his whole *sunnah* is a refutation of it!

⁷⁹⁷ Njoo, p. 18.

⁷⁹⁸ Khakis, p. 13.

Once again, modern authors merely took these same ideas from the disbelievers of old:

أَلَمْ يَتَفَكَّرُوا مَا يَصَاحِبُهُمْ رَبُّهُمْ أَمْ لَهُمْ آلٌ أَلا تَتَذَكَّرُونَ ﴿٦٤﴾

«Do they not reflect and ponder? There is no malice in their companions (Muhammad). He is but a plain warner» [7: 64]

وَيَقُولُونَ إِنَّمَا آتَانَا إِلَهُنَّ الْبَشِيرُ يُخْزِيهِمْ ﴿٦٥﴾ عَلَيْهِمْ السَّعِيرُ ﴿٦٦﴾

«And they said: 'Ah, we going to abandon our gods for the sake of a crazy poet' Nay! Rather (Muhammad) has come with the Truth, and confirmed the Messengers (before him)» [17: 66-67]

أَمْ يَقُولُونَ بَشَرٌ مِثْلُكُمْ أَمْ يُنْفَخُ عَلَيْهِمُ السَّعِيرُ ﴿٦٧﴾

«Or do they say: 'There is a madness in him?' Nay! He has brought them the Truth, but most of them are hostile to the truth» [17: 70]

Allaah responds in these accusations, in defence of the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ),

مَا كُنْتُمْ بِأَعْيُنِنَا قَبْلَ هَٰذَا وَمَا كُنْتُمْ بِبَالِغِي أَمْرٍ شَدِيدٍ ﴿٦٨﴾

«You are not, by the Grace of your Lord, a madman» [68: 2]

Taught by Others?

The third 'explanation' given by Orientalists is that the Qur'aan was composed by or with the help of Jews and Christians at the time of the Prophet (ﷺ). They differ, though, as to who these sinister figures were. Some claim that it was Bahgeerah, the monk that the Prophet (ﷺ) allegedly met in Syria when he was a teenager.⁷⁹ This was the claim of Sir William Muir, Margoliush and others.⁸⁰ Even granting that this incident is true, would a meeting of less than a few hours – while the Prophet (ﷺ) was a teenager – give him the capability to compose the Qur'aan?

Others, such as Menzies and Girdner, allege that the Prophet (ﷺ) was taught the Qur'aan by Salmaan al-Farisi. Since Salmaan was a Zoroastrian-turned-Christian before he embraced Islam, it would make sense, they claim, that he fired the Prophet's (ﷺ) imagination with stories of the Judaeo-Christian prophets.⁸¹ In response to this, from where then did the Prophet (ﷺ) get all of this information before Salmaan came onto the scene? Salmaan, as is well known, came to the Prophet (ﷺ) years after the *hijrah*, whereas most of the Qur'aan was revealed before the *hijrah*. In fact, almost

⁷⁹ Actually, this incident might not be entirely true, as Ibnabi' calls it *hishab* (pointed out). But its claim is 'Abd al-Rahmaan ibn al-Qurayn, who is *ma'mur* (appointed). Also, it has other problems, cf. 'Umar, p. 188. In any case, such tales, however, some scholars of *fiqh* (e.g. Ibnabi' and Ibn Qudamah), such as al-Muhammadi, *Fiqh al-Jurrah*, p. 460.

⁸⁰ Khakha, p. 14.

⁸¹ Khakha, p. 15.

all the stories of the prophets of old were revealed at Makkah, even before Salmaan embraced Islam or met the Prophet (ﷺ)?

Other claims are even more preposterous. Both Bosly and Gibb claimed that the Prophet (ﷺ) was taught Christianity by Qays ibn Sa'adah, an Arab bishop who used to preach Christianity at the annual Ukadh fair. Unfortunately, both of them conveniently forget to mention that this individual died over a century before the Prophet's (ﷺ) birth!⁸⁰²

Lastly, since the Orientalists could not find any figure in the life of the Prophet (ﷺ) who could have influenced him to such a great extent, they claim an 'unnamed source' who helped Muhammad (ﷺ) concoct the Qur'aan. Robinson wrote, "The long rambling accounts of Jewish patriarchs and prophets correspond in so much detail with the Talmud that of their essentially Jewish origin there can be doubt."⁸⁰³

What is so surprising concerning these claims is that they are mostly based upon the stories found in the Qur'aan that are also found in the Bible. This fact, according to these Orientalists, proves that the Qur'aan is based upon biblical sources, either oral or written. This can be refuted in a number of ways. Firstly, the stories appearing in the Qur'aan are always slightly different than their Biblical versions, as any reader of the two books knows. This shows that the Prophet (ﷺ) did not blindly imitate Judeo-Christian sources. Secondly, there are numerous stories mentioned in the Qur'aan that are not found in the Bible, such as the dialogue between Ibrahim and his father, and Ibrahim and the tyrannical king. Likewise, certain prophets are mentioned in the Qur'aan but not in the Bible, such as Hood and Saalih. Thirdly, the general similarities between certain stories in the Qur'aan and Bible can also be explained by saying that they both originated from the same source, namely, divine inspiration. Fourthly, and this perhaps is the strongest refutation, these stories were unknown to the people of the Prophet's (ﷺ) time. The Qur'aan states, concerning these stories,

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا إِنَّا جَاءَكُم بِالْخَبَرِ الْمُبِينِ ﴿١﴾ مَا كُنْتُمْ لَهَا شَاوِينَ وَلَا قَوْمِينَ قَبْلَ هَذَا

«This is the news of the unseen which We reveal unto you. Neither you nor your people knew them before this.» [11:48]

This verse claims that the people of the Prophet's (ﷺ) time did not know these stories, which implies that the Prophet (ﷺ) must have received them from inspiration. If any of the claims of the Orientalists were true, and these stories were known to some of the Arabs, then surely some pagan would have stood up and said, "Nay, Muhammad! I knew these stories before you. Your claim is not true!" But throughout the Prophet's (ﷺ) twenty-three years of prophethood, no one claimed this, despite the fact that the disbelievers tried everything to disparage the Prophet (ﷺ). This is a clear sign that the people of Arabia had had no exposure to these stories, and were ignorant of them, until the Prophet (ﷺ) received his revelation.

⁸⁰² *Ibid.* There are very weak reports, however, which state that the Prophet (ﷺ) saw Qays in a young boy, but did not recall anything of what he said. See Ibn Kathir, vol. 2, p. 270.

⁸⁰³ *Ibid.*

Once again, the disbelievers during the Prophet's (ﷺ) time mimicked that same call that is heard today by these Orientalists.

وَلَقَدْ عَلِمَ اللَّهُ يَقُولُ أَفْلَحَ الْيَهُودُ بَشَرًا مِثْلُكُمْ
أَلَيْسَ بِذُنُوبِكُمْ إِنَّا فَتَنَّاكُمُ فِي الدِّينِ وَإِنَّا لَكُم بِعَصَا
مُوسَى ۖ ﴿١٦﴾

«And indeed We know that they (the pagans) say, 'It is only a human who teaches him.' The tongue of the man they refer to is foreign, while this is in a clear Arabic tongue» [16-103]

ثُمَّ تَوَلَّوْا عَنِّي مُتَوَلِّينَ ﴿١٧﴾

«Then they turned away from him, and said, 'A (person) is right (by someone else), a madman!'-» [17-14]

وَقَالُوا لَنُفْنِنَنَّ الْيَهُودَ وَالْأَنْصَارَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ
الَّذِينَ دُونَهُ عَلَيْهِ قَوْلُهُمْ بَشَرٌ مِثْلُكُمْ فَقَدْ كَانُوا طَائِفًا مِّنْهُ
﴿١٨﴾ وَقَالُوا الْمَسِيحُ ابْنُ الْمَرْيَمَ أَكُنَّا نَعْصِيهِ فَمَضَىٰ بِهِنَّ
عَلَيْهِمْ كُفْرُهُمْ وَأُوحِيَ ۖ ﴿١٩﴾ قُلْ لِّمَنَ الْغُيُوبُ يَعْلَمُ الْغَيْبُ
فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ ۖ

«Those who disbelieve say, 'This (Qur'aan) is nothing but a lie that he has invented, and others have helped him with it.' So they (the disbelievers) came forth with an unjust evil, and a wicked lie! And they say, 'Scenes of the ancient, he has written it, and they are dictated to him (by others) morning and evening.' Respond (to them) 'This has been revealed by He who knows the secrets of the Heaven and Earth.'» [25:4-6]

If that is the case, then let them answer the challenge:

أَمْ يَقُولُونَ افْعَلْ فَمَن يَسْتَوْزِرُ
يَسْتَوْزِرُونَ أَفَنَدْعُوا مِن دُونِ اللَّهِ لَنُفْنِنَنَّكَ كَذِبًا ۖ ﴿٢٠﴾

«Or do they say, 'He has forged it?' Say: 'Then bring a sorcery similar to it, and call whoever you wish, besides Allah, if you are truthful!'-» [10:28]

In addition, the first verse alludes to a very important fact: all of these 'figures' are non-Arabs, yet the Qur'aan is put forth as a literary miracle in Arabic. How could the Prophet (ﷺ) learn this from a non-Arab?

Imagination?

The last 'explanation' given is that the Prophet Muḥammad (ﷺ) imagined that he was the prophet of Allāh, and in this imagination, he was able to compose the Qur'ān. In other words, as Rev Rodwell put it, he '...had worked himself up into a belief that he had received a divine call...' ⁸⁰⁴

In the 1960's, Anderson and Watt repeated these claims. Anderson claimed the Qur'ān was the 'result of wishful thinking', and Watt concluded, "What seems to a man to come from outside himself may actually come from his unconscious" ⁸⁰⁵ Another modern Orientalist, Kenneth Cragg, wrote, "Such was the ground and meaning of Muḥammad's call, in a brooding wilderness experience, where facts of conscious observation in the contemporary scene became articulate in a personal calling to utterance and warning in the city" ⁸⁰⁶ R. A. Nicholson also propounded the religious illusion theory, for he stated, "Whether we regard it as 'a pathological case' or a grand example of mystical ecstasy, at the outset of his mission a dominating motive can be discerned in his conviction that the Last Judgement was near and that he must at all costs warn his countrymen of the doom impending. To say that... the Qur'ān is, on the whole, uninspired, does not mean that its author was conscious of fraud when he gave out all sorts of regulations and instructions in the Qur'ān's name." ⁸⁰⁷ Robinson, recasting these ideas in modern vernacular, boasted that the Qur'ān was an example of 'auditory visual hallucination'. ⁸⁰⁸

In reality, this claim can be considered another example of the claim that the Prophet (ﷺ) was a madman. To claim that the Prophet (ﷺ) believed he was a prophet while he was not is to claim that he was insane. Yet, since these Orientalists knew that the Prophet's (ﷺ) *ṣawab* clearly disproved any claims of insanity, they brought forth another theme: that the Prophet (ﷺ) was sane in all his affairs, except the fact that he was a prophet! Can it be imagined that one who 'works himself up' into the belief that he is a prophet remains sane in all his affairs; as a father and husband; as a political leader and ruler of state; as a military commander; in fact, in all walks of life?

In addition, the presumption by these Orientalists that the Qur'ān was the product of the Prophet's (ﷺ) subconscious mind is, in reality, an indication of their ignorance of the Qur'ān. Can it be believed that the Qur'ān, with all its laws, commands and prohibitions, beliefs, stories and morals, is the result of a person's subconscious? Can it be believed that, for twenty-three years, a person 'imagined' such a miraculous book and brought it forth from his fantasy?

Again, the disbelievers of old issued the same explanation as their modern counterparts:

⁸⁰⁴ Arbore, p. 15

⁸⁰⁵ Quotes from Khalifa, p. 12

⁸⁰⁶ Nisari, p. 5

⁸⁰⁷ Nisari, p. 26

⁸⁰⁸ Khalifa, p. 12

II. Some Books by Orientalists

The topic of the Qur'ān amongst the Orientalists has not attracted as much interest as the topics of *hadith* and *fiqh*. This is because it is relatively easier for them to cast doubts on the authenticity of *hadith* and the flaws of *fiqh*. For example, Joseph Schacht, one of the most famous Orientalists of this century, claimed that all *hadith* are forgeries of later generations, attributed to the Prophet (ﷺ) by them for personal motives. He even claimed that the more reliable the *isnad*, the more later this forgery occurred⁸⁰⁹.

With regards to the Qur'ān, it is much more difficult for them to try to find 'facts' that support their claims, and interpret them to suit their needs, as they have done with other topics. Recently, however, Orientalists have turned their attention to attacking the Qur'ān, and have started trying to cast doubts about its authenticity.

Although much has been written in the field, there are three works that stand out above the rest, and have gained considerable repute as authorities in the field. Each of these works will be discussed below.

'Geschichte des Qurans' of Noeldeke

The first work is by Theodor Noldeke, a very famous German Orientalist. He entitled it '*Geschichte des Qurans*', or '*History of the Qur'ān*'. The work was written with the help of three other German Orientalists: Prezel, Schwally and Bergsträsser. It was published over a period of three decades, in three volumes. The first volume was published in 1909, and the last in 1938. It won national awards from the Paris Academy of Inscriptions, and drew great acclaim from Orientalists all over the world.

Von Denffer has a brief, yet superb, review of the work, which is quoted in its entirety:⁸¹¹

The '*History of the Qur'ān*' produced by four German orientalists, deals in three parts with 'The Origin of the Qur'ān', 'The Collection of the Qur'ān', and 'The History of the Qur'ānic Text'. The complete book naturally reflects the different approaches and types of scholarship of the various authors. Noldeke's bias against Islam can still be clearly discerned, although he later renounced some of his views regarding the history of the Qur'ān.⁸¹²

The main substance of the first volume is its second part 'On the Origins of the Various Parts of the Qur'ān'. Here, on the basis of Noldeke's earlier works, the *asasah* have been arranged in four periods, three Meccan and one Medinan, depending heavily on Muslim sources, especially on Suyuti's *Isagoge* and *Tibyan*. Due to this, the material presented is, apart from the usual biased comments, a good cross-section of classical Muslim

809. For a superb refutation of the Orientalist views on *hadith*, see M. M. Azami, *On Schacht's Origin of Muhammadan Jurisprudence*, John Wiley & Sons, 1985.

811. Since the work is in German, this author was unable to review the work personally. The author is grateful to The Islamic Foundation for permission to quote this section. Von Denffer, pp. 158-60.

812. He believed, for example, that the *asasah* are a pre-Islamic legend for the verses of the Qur'ān. He later changed his mind on this point.

writings on the subject, incidentally, Pickthall (the well-known Qur'an translator), relied heavily on this for his remarks on chronology in his translation.

There is a final discussion on 'Revelation not included in the Qur'ān' discussed on the basis of the various *ajwāb* and other sources.

The second volume, dealing with the collection, is almost completely based on Muslim sources (again *ajwāb* dominates) and presents a calm discussion of the 'ruling tradition' and other reports about the collection of the Qur'ān. Schwally, after presenting the material and his collection on it, comes to conclusions very close to classical Muslim views, namely that 'the shape of the Qur'ān, as we have it now, was completed two to three years after the death of Muḥammad, since the 'Uthmānic edition is only a copy of Hishā's piece, the editorial work of which had been completed under Abū Bakr, or at the latest under 'Umar. This editorial work however probably only concerned the compositions of the *suḥa* and their arrangement. As far as the various pieces of revelation are concerned, we may be confident that their text has been generally transmitted exactly as it was found in the Prophet's legacy'.

Volume three is mostly concerned with the written text of the Qur'ān and the various readings. It is once more a sober presentation of information derived basically from Muslim sources. Bergsträsser has dealt mainly with the written form of the 'Uthmānic Qur'ān, the variant readings, as contained in the *ṣaḥiḥ* of Ibn Ma'īn and Ubay. He then introduces the historical development of the *qur'ān*.

Petzel presents the various readings, emphasising the famous 'seven readings', describes the Muslim literature on the *qur'ān* and finally deals very briefly with the palaeography and decorative designs of old Qur'anic manuscripts. As in volume two, the main sources are classical Muslim authors, especially al-Suyūṭī, al-Mubarriz, al-Jazirī and various writers on *qur'ān* used today. Noeldke/Schwally is the most comprehensive – if not the sole – serious attempt by Orientalists to deal with the Qur'ān – at least in a descriptive manner. For this is what the later authors – not to mention Noeldke – had in view: to collect the available material on the subject and to present it. While some of the authors' comments and conclusions would not be welcomed by Muslims, the most area that has been covered and the presentation based on the classical Muslim literature on the topic are of a merit that has to be acknowledged. Especially in the latter two volumes, there is surprisingly little that Muslims might find derogatory in style, and indeed the basic presentation is not unlike classical Muslim literature on the subject."

'Materials for the History of the Text of the Qur'ān' by Arthur Jeffery

The next book that is of great importance is that of Arthur Jeffery, entitled *Materials for the History of the Text of the Qur'ān: The Old Codices*. This book also includes in its entirety the Arabic original of *Kitāb al-Maṣṣaḥif* by Ibn Abī Dāwūd (id. 316

A.H.). It was first published in 1937, in Leiden, and reprinted a number of times since. Jeffery bases his edition of *Kitāb al-Maṣāḥif* on the only available manuscript copy in the famous Zahiriyah Library of Damascus, which he came across by chance.

Therefore the work is actually two books; the first is Jeffery's *Material for the History of the Text of the Qur'an*, and the second is Ibn Abi Dawūd's book, edited by Jeffery.

Jeffery's own work is an almost four-hundred page long compilation of the different recitations of certain Companions and Successors who were known to have written *muṣ-ḥaf*. He compiled information regarding fifteen codexes from the Companions, and thirteen from the Successors. By a 'codex' he meant a *muṣ-ḥaf*. He lists all the readings in these *muṣ-ḥaf* that do not conform to the present day *muṣ-ḥaf* (although in reality many of them do conform with the *muṣ-ḥaf* of 'Uthmān; they are merely different from the *muṣ-ḥaf* written in the *qur'ān* of Hafs).

Jeffery divides the work based on each codex, and under each codex, he lists, in order, all the verses where a different recitation occurs. The most important and longest of them are the codexes of Ibn Ma'ūd and Ubay ibn Ka'ab.

Jeffery compiled this information from over thirty classical Islamic texts, some authentic and some not. The sources range from classical lexicons, to the famous works of *tafsīr*, to the works on the *qur'ān*. Unfortunately, for each variant recitation, he did not list the exact reference work that it was obtained from.

To give an example of what Jeffery compiled, we will quote from Ibn Ma'ūd's *Sawab Faṣṭah*. He read, according to Jeffery, with the following differences:

- 1) 'maḥḥ' as 'maḥḥ'
- 2) 'ḥabḥa al-ḥaḥ al-maḥḥaḥ' as 'ḥabḥa al-ḥaḥ al-maḥḥaḥ'
- 3) 'ḥaḥ ḥabḥa al-maḥḥ' as 'ḥaḥ ḥabḥa al-maḥḥ'
- 4) 'ḥaḥ ḥabḥa al-maḥḥ' as 'ḥaḥ ḥabḥa al-maḥḥ'...

Jeffery continues in a similar fashion for the rest of the Qur'ān.

Obviously, what Jeffery is trying to prove is that there are variant readings to the Qur'ān which were not preserved. He writes, '...it is quite clear that the text which 'Uthmān canonised was only one out of many rival texts...'; therefore the purpose of Jeffery's book is to, '...investigate what went before the canonical texts.'⁶³ His supposition is that the 'original' text was tampered with by the Companions, and only one chosen.

There are three points to be made concerning this.

1) On the supposition that Jeffery's theory is absolutely correct – that the text of the Qur'ān as 'Uthmān preserved it was chosen by him from amongst many variant texts – what are the implications of this from Jeffery's work? Even if we allow for all these readings that Jeffery compiled to be authentic, and representing legitimate vari-

ants from the text of 'Uthmaan, not a single reading actually contradicts another one in meaning. No verse is added, no ruling contradicted, no law repealed. There are literally thousands of differences mentioned in this book, each one of which merely rephrases a certain verse of the Qur'aan.⁸¹⁴ Therefore, the question must be asked, what is gained by substantiating these 'variant' texts?⁸¹⁵ Agreed, if what Jeffery claims is true, this would imply that the actual text of the Qur'aan that is present is only one of a number of authentic texts, but what presumption or theory can be advanced based on this claim?⁸¹⁶ Of course, this is supposing that Jeffery's basic premise is true, and to this we do not agree.

2) More importantly – and this is the greatest flaw of the book – the authenticity of these recitations has to be established. In other words, how can the reader be assured that these recitations were actually recited?⁸¹⁷ Jeffery himself admits, "The question arises, of course, as to the authenticity of the readings ascribed to these Old Codices. In some cases it must be confessed there is a suspicion of readings later invented by the grammarians and theologians being fathered on these early authorities in order to gain prestige of their name. The suspicion is perhaps strongest in the case of distinctly *Shi'ite* readings."⁸¹⁸

From a Muslim standpoint, we have recourse to the *musnad*. Jeffery, however, believes the *musnad*s to hold very little, if any, value. Due to this opinion, he does not quote *musnad*s for each variant reading. Therefore, in order to find the authenticity of a certain reading, it is necessary to go back to the thirty works from which Jeffery compiled his work, verify which one of them mentions this reading, and then check its *isnad* for authenticity. (This is supposing that the original work even mentions an *isnad*, for some of these recitations are merely referenced in later works without any *isnad*.)

However, from Jeffery's own position on the concept and reliability of *isnad*, he contradicts himself. If he does not believe in the authenticity of the *isnad* system, then from where are all of these readings obtained?⁸¹⁹ After all, it is through *isnad*s that all of the readings of the Companions and Successors has been handed down to us. If Jeffery were to apply his standards and implement his belief of the *isnad* system, all of these readings should be doubted, just like their *hadith* counterparts.⁸²⁰ But, not surprisingly, Jeffery concludes, "On the whole, however, one may feel confident that the majority of readings quoted from any reader really go back to early authority."⁸²¹ This clear double standard on Jeffery's part is not surprising, whenever an Orientalist finds some information that he feels can be used to discredit Islam and cast doubts on it, then he will use it, no matter what the context, authenticity or actual implications of the text may be. As Jeffery so clearly and unabashedly states, "Much of the

814. Actually, this author looked over most of the entries in the book, and could only find one instance where the variant 'reading' clearly goes against the beliefs of Muslims. This 'verse' in question occurs in an addition to 26:215, and mentions that the true believers are only from the family of the Prophet (ﷺ). This is clearly a *Shi'ite* forgery, as Jeffery himself claims, cf. p. 188 of the book.

815. Jeffery, p. 15.

816. Both questions are from Jeffery, p. 15.

material given by Ibn Abi Dawūd regarding the history of the text of the Qur'ān, though extremely unorthodox, yet agrees so closely with conclusions one had reached from quite other directions that one feels confident in making use of it, however weak orthodoxy may consider its *wisdom* to be.¹⁰¹ Therefore the reason that these narrations are authentic, according to Jeffery, is because they agree with preconceived conclusions that were arrived at from 'quite other directions', unnamed and unknown directions, it should be pointed out!

3) The question obviously arises as to the valid interpretation of these variant readings. After all, Jeffery compiled these readings from various books of *ajraf* and *qir'āt*. How, then, are they to be explained?

The explanation of these variant readings is very simple, and relies upon the understanding of the *ajraf* and *qir'āt* of the Qur'ān, as was explained previously. It is noticed that many of these variant readings are found in the *qir'āt* of today – the *ajraf*, *qir'āt* and *shawāh* ones. If anything, this actually further strengthens the belief of the Muslims regarding the *qir'āt*, since these differences have come down to this generation from the Companions, who all learnt from the Prophet (ﷺ). The existence of the *ajraf* *qir'āt* at the time of the Companions is something that does not need to be proven, but as doing so, Jeffery has 'confirmed' that the ten *qir'āt* originated from the Companions (and hence the Prophet (ﷺ)) and not from later authorities. An example of this is Ibn Ma'ūd's recitation of '*malik*' as '*malikī*'. As was quoted earlier, this difference is still existent in the authentic *qir'āt*, thus merely proving their origin. As for those variants which are considered *qir'āt*, they cannot be accepted as the Qur'ān, and as such there is no use in quoting such material as 'variant' to the text of the Qur'ān, since the authenticity of these *qir'āt* is not established. As for the *shawāh* *qir'āt*, they used to be recited by the Companions before their recitation had been abrogated. These cannot be considered as part of the Qur'ān anymore, as was mentioned earlier, and thus to quote them as having been left out of the Qur'ān is true, but they were left out at the command of the Prophet (ﷺ). Likewise, those recitations that are shown to be authentic but are not a part of the *qir'āt*, such as Ibn Ma'ūd's reading of '*al-hudā*' as '*ar-rudā*', are only examples of the *ajraf* of the Qur'ān that were not preserved by the command of the Prophet (ﷺ).

In conclusion, from a Muslim's perspective, Jeffery's collection is only useful insofar as it lists many of the variant readings – the authentic and inauthentic ones. A critical analysis of the authenticity of each and every variant reading must be established before the book can be of any great value. Also, the variant readings quoted in Jeffery's book (at least the authentic ones) are all part of the *ajraf* of the Qur'ān, some of which still exist in the *qir'āt*, and some of which have been abrogated by the Prophet (ﷺ). Obviously, Jeffery absolutely ignores the concept of the *ajraf* and *qir'āt*, for if he were to take this into account, then these readings would be explained without recourse to his theory that the Qur'ān is incomplete. In other words, Jeffery's

work is an example of an Orientalist taking a concept (the concept of the *ahraf* and *qur'at*), distorting it, and then presenting it in a sinister light in order to cast doubts upon Islam. Had he only understood the correct interpretation of this concept – an interpretation that is claimed by him to be ‘largely fictitious’⁸¹⁸ without any explanation why – it would have saved him the trouble of compiling his work.

The second book in Jeffery’s collection is his editing of ‘Abdullah Ibn Abi Dawood’s (d. 316 A.H.) *Kitāb al-Maṣāḥif*. The author is none other than the son of the famous collector of the Sunan, Abū Dawūd as-Sijistānī (d. 275 A.H.). However, he did not enjoy the same prestige as his father, and he has mixed reviews from the scholars of *ḥadeeth*. Nonetheless, the book is an excellent reference, and it contains the necessary *unwaḍ* for each narration, so the authenticity of each narration may be ascertained. It deals, as its title indicates, with the *maṣ-ḥaf*; it discusses the writing of the *ash-ḥ*, the various *maṣ-ḥaf* of the Companions and their differences, the compilations of Abū Bakr and ‘Uthmān, the division of the Qur’aan, the writing of the *maṣ-ḥaf*, and certain aspects of *ṣūḥ* related to the *maṣ-ḥaf*.

‘The Collection of the Qur’aan’ by John Burton

The last work that shall be discussed is a relatively recent one: *The Collection of the Qur’aan* by John Burton. It was first published in 1977 by Cambridge University Press.

What Burton did was to take the theories of Schacht concerning the validity of *ḥadeeth* and apply them to the history of the compilation of the Qur’aan. As was mentioned earlier, Schacht (and before him Goldziher) claimed and popularised the theory that all *ḥadeeth* literature are forgeries of the scholars of the second and third century of the *ahyāh*. Burton writes in his introduction that his work, ‘...seeks to re-open the question of the collection of the Qur’aan as seen by Muslims. Their accounts will be re-examined in the light of studies by Goldziher and Schacht...’⁸¹⁹

For Burton’s honesty, at least, he must be given greater credit than Jeffery. He states, ‘...one must either accept all *ḥadeeth* impartially with uncritical trust, or one must regard each and every *ḥadeeth* as at least potentially guilty of a greater or lesser degree of inherent bias’⁸²⁰. ‘We cannot in our arrogance continue to presume that, guided by mere literary intuition, we can safely pick our way, selecting or rejecting *ḥadeeth*...’⁸²¹

Actually, Burton has some very interesting and unique theories. He dismisses all the narrations concerning the collection of the Qur’aan, since all these stories, according to Schacht’s principles, must be inventions by later generations. Therefore, since he has rejected all these narrations, he is forced to bring forth a totally unique and bizarre history of the compilation of the Qur’aan.

⁸¹⁸ Jeffery, p. 5.

⁸¹⁹ Burton, p. 5.

⁸²⁰ It is amusing how Burton gives an *either-or* argument here concerning *ḥadeeth*, either naively accept everything or critically accept everything. He does not even bother to mention the fact that there are strict rules of the *maṣāḥif* that enable a scholar to detect what is authentic from what is weak.

⁸²¹ Burton, p. 254.

According to Burton, it was Muhammad (ﷺ) himself who compiled the Qur'aan. However, "Amid his manifold state responsibilities Muhammad could not always himself remember the precise wording in which he had given out certain revelations. This is how different Companions received their slightly differing versions, although all were received direct from the Prophet himself. Certain verses Muhammad forgot outright, others he summarily altered. With his own hand he had cancelled yet other verses."⁸²² This is Burton's understanding of the concept of the *ahraf*.⁸²³

In trying to explain why later Muslim authorities claimed that the Companions were the ones who compiled the Qur'aan (since, according to him, these authorities forged the narrations pertaining to the collection of the Qur'aan), Burton comes out with another bizarre theory. After the Prophet's (ﷺ) death, argues Burton, later Muslim jurists forged the concept of *naṣḥ*, so that they could justify certain *fiqh* positions that they held (such as the stoning of the adulterer). These jurists wished to somehow support these positions of *fiqh*, so they decided, according to Burton, to forge certain 'verses' that used to be a part of the Qur'aan. As it was well known what the Qur'aan was, these verses could not be added into the present *muḥṣaf*, so, somehow, a means of proving that these verses had once formed a part of the *muḥṣaf* but now no longer did had to be theorised. This was the concept of *naṣḥ*.

In order to justify this theory, Burton continues, these jurists claimed that the Prophet (ﷺ) could not have compiled the Qur'aan in his lifetime, since *naṣḥ* could occur at any time during his life. Thus, according to Burton, led these jurists to develop the concept of *naṣḥ*, and invent 'verses' that had been left out of the present *muḥṣaf* that dealt with the *fiqh* positions that they wished to prove. Since the Prophet (ﷺ) could not have compiled the Qur'aan, it must have been the Companions who had done so, and this explains the 'forged' narrations concerning the history of the compilation of the Qur'aan.

Burton states, "This motive (i.e., that of proving the validity of *naṣḥ*) induced the Muslims to exclude their Prophet from the history of the collection of their Qur'aan text. It was a compelling motive. It was their only motive."⁸²⁴

Initially, according to Burton, the role of compiling the Qur'aan was given to 'Uthmaan. However, when the popularity of 'Uthmaan declined amongst the masses, the people had to transfer the honour of the initial compilation to Abū Bakr and 'Umar, and to give 'Uthmaan a lesser role. With all of these jumbled reports appearing on the scene,

This led to the attempts to harmonise these conflicting traditions: Abū Bakr had initiated the sacred undertaking, 'Umar acquiring the merit of having completed it, 'Umar is credited with assisting the undertaking, 'Uthmaan is grudgingly allowed the lesser merit of completing the work of his pious and energetic predecessor.⁸²⁵

⁸²² Burton, p. 234

⁸²³ Burton, p. 232

⁸²⁴ Burton, p. 230

This, then, is the summary of Burton's version of the compilation of the Qur'aan. It is an amazing story if nothing else. The scholars of Islaam were in a dilemma to explain their stance on certain *fiqh* issues. Therefore, they had to invent the concept of *nash* in the Qur'aan, and back it up by forging 'verses' that were supposed to have been *mannash*.

If these scholars had so little sincerity that they had no qualms forging verses from the Qur'aan, then why not just forge *hadeeth* to support their points? In other words, why go through the nuisance of inventing the concept of *nash* and then trying to prove it by backing it up with false narrations, when they could have just as easily concocted a *hadeeth* to prove their positions? After all, this is the whole theory of Schacht and modern Orientalists – that later jurists concocted *hadeeth* as they desired!

In reality, Burton does not substantiate his claims with any strong proof. For example, he only brings two verses to prove his thesis that later scholars invented the concept of *nash*: the 'verse of stoning' and the 'verse of suckling'.⁸²³ Throughout the whole work, the primary example that is reiterated is the 'verse of stoning'. If what Burton states is true, then there should exist a large quantity of verses which *give fiqh* rulings but were left out of the *muq-ḥḥ*. In other words, if the whole concept of *nash* was propagated with the sole purpose of supporting certain *fiqh* positions that a jurist might hold, then certainly these jurists would have used this concept regularly, and attributed many of their views to 'verses' that had been abrogated. However, as is well known, there exist very few verses of this nature, and Burton can only quote two examples throughout his work. In addition, he gives a very weak interpretation of the Qur'aanic verses that explicitly mention the concept of *nash*, and of the occurrences of *nash* during the Prophet's (ﷺ) lifetime.

Another point that Burton absolutely ignores is that the Prophet (ﷺ) was illiterate. The indisputability of this fact is well-known, and beyond the need for any *ḥujūd*. Even the Qur'aan refers to the Prophet's (ﷺ) illiteracy a number of times. How, is it possible, then, that the Prophet (ﷺ) secretly authored the Qur'aan, edited it, and distributed it amongst the people?

Throughout the work, Burton constantly re-emphasises one theme: that all the narrations concerning the compilation of the Qur'aan are forgeries of later generations. With this presumption in mind, Burton goes to excessive (and in fact ludicrous) extremes in trying to determine the *maṭar* for these forgeries. It never occurs to Burton that the early scholars of Islaam (the *salaf*) were not so depraved or unscrupulous that they would forge narrations and attribute them to the Prophet (ﷺ) at whim. If Burton's theory (based on Schacht and Goldziner) are true, this implies that the *salaf* were busy propagating lies and forgeries throughout their lives; all the time well aware that these narrations were all forgeries (since they themselves were doing the forging!), but naively studying them; travelling great distances to obtain them; honouring those that had memorised them; and codifying them with great care! The

⁸²³ Both of these verses were discussed in Ch. 13 'Abrogation in the Qur'aan'.

theory that all these narrations are forgeries that occurred on such mass-scales, and the silent approval of all the scholars of that time concerning them, seems so naive and absurd that only one who is blinded in his animosity of Islam can believe it.

Actually, Burton's whole theory rests, as was stated earlier, on Schacht's conception of *hadith* literature. This view has been aptly refuted by M. M. Asami in his superb work '*On Schacht's Origins of Muhammadan Jurisprudence*'.⁵² In this work, Asami demonstrates the inconsistencies in Schacht's theories and source material; his unwarranted assumptions and unscientific research methods; his ignorance of the political situation of the time; and his misunderstandings and distortions of the quotations of early scholars.⁵³ Therefore, with the refutation of Schacht, Burton's theories are automatically disproved.

Burton's conclusion, though, is unusual, coming from an Orientalist. He claims that the '*muq-baf*' that we have in our hands today is the *muq-baf* of Muhammad, meaning that Muhammad (ﷺ) had written the whole Qur'an in one book before his death.

In conclusion, Burton's work represents a very bizarre and highly contradictory account of the collection of the Qur'an. Burton seems to take a few examples and draw extraordinary conclusions and sweeping generalities with them, absolutely ignoring all other narrations and factors related to the topic. In this author's opinion, in order to come forth with something totally unique, Burton outdid himself!

⁵² Published by John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1985.

⁵³ Cf. pp. 115-154. No student of knowledge can be without this work, especially if he wishes to respond to the claims of Orientalists.

EPILOGUE



I. The 'Return' of the Qur'aan

The statement of 'Amr ibn Dinar (d. 126 A.H.) was quoted earlier in which he said, "I have met the Companions of the Prophet (ﷺ), and those that came after them for seventy years, all of them said, 'Allaah is the Creator, and everything besides Him is created, and the Qur'aan is the *kalimah* of Allaah, from Him it came, and to Him it will return.'"⁸²⁸

This statement, which was used in the section concerning the *kalimah* of Allaah, mentions the fact that the Qur'aan will 'return' to Allaah. What is the meaning of this phrase which was said by so many Companions and Successors?

Among the signs of the Day of Judgement is the increase of ignorance, and the disappearance of knowledge. The Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Before the Day of Judgement, there will be a time (or 'days') in which Ignorance will be sent down, and Knowledge will be raised up."⁸²⁹ The 'raising up of Knowledge' has been interpreted by the Prophet (ﷺ) himself to mean the death of scholars. The Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Allaah does not snatch away knowledge from the chests of His servants, but He takes away knowledge by the death of scholars, until, when there are no more scholars remaining, the people take ignorant leaders (i.e., as scholars). And these leaders will be asked (by the people), and they will respond without any knowledge, and they will be misguided, and misguide others."⁸³⁰

And as the Day of Judgement comes closer, more and more ignorance will appear, and knowledge will lessen, until, in the very last of time, the Qur'aan itself will be taken away, and raised up from amongst mankind. This will occur after the time of 'Eesaa, when the only people remaining will be the worst of all of mankind, the generation upon whom the Trumpet of the Day of Judgement will be blown while they are still alive.

The Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Islaam will disappear just like the colours of a dress fade away, until people will not even know what fasting, prayer, the rites (of *Hajj*) and charity are. And the Book of Allaah will be lifted up one night, so that not even one verse will remain. And a group of old people will remain, who will say, 'We found our

828 Reported by al-Bayhaqi in his *Sunan*.

829 Reported by al-Bukhaari.

830 Reported by al-Bukhaari.

forefathers on this *ḥalimah*: *La aḥabba ala Allāh*, so we too say it.”⁸³¹ Ibn Mas‘ūd said, “Indeed, the Qur’aan will be taken away from your midst; one night it will be raised up, and it will leave from the chests of men, and nothing will remain of it on the earth.”⁸³² ‘Abdullaah ibn ‘Amr stated, “The Day of Judgement will not come until the Qur’aan returns from where it was revealed. It will have a sound like the buzzing of bees and it will say, ‘O my Lord! From you I came and to you I am returning. I am recited, but not acted upon, I am recited, but not acted upon.’”⁸³³

Shaykh al-Islaam Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H.) stated, in explanation of these narrations, “It will be raised up one night, towards the very end of time, from the *ṣuḥuḥ* and the chests of men, so not a single word will remain in the hearts, nor will a single letter remain in the *ṣuḥuḥ*.”⁸³⁴ It appears, therefore, that although knowledge in general will not be taken away from the chests of men, the Qur’aan, towards the end of time, will, and Allāh knows best.

In any case, the *ḥadeeth* are explicit that the Qur’aan will be raised up from the earth, and this is the meaning of the phrase of the *ṣaḥāb*: ‘...and to Him it will return’. The time when this ‘raising up’ occurs will be the end of time, the time in which the Qur’aan has been abandoned by the people, when they leave the Qur’aan, it is only befitting that the Qur’aan is taken away from them.

ii. An Appeal

The present work has been an attempt to present to the reader a glimpse of the power and beauty of the Qur’aan. There can be no doubt that the Qur’aan is the greatest miracle of the Prophet (ﷺ) – a miracle that can be appreciated by all of mankind. Yet, despite the power and status of the Qur’aan, many Muslims are heedless of it.

It is distressing to see that the Muslims of today have turned away from this great treasure that has been revealed to them – the very Speech of Allāh. They have made the Qur’aan a sacred family heirloom; to be treasured in exotic and expensive covers, yet to be uninhabited by the best of all covers – their hearts, to be recited and listened to in the best and most melodious of voices, yet to ignore its meanings; to be placed high above all other objects in any room, yet to occupy the lowest station in their daily lives; to be read when a death has occurred, yet to be ignored by the living, to be written in the finest of scripts and on the most expensive of papers, yet to be heedless of its commandments and prohibitions.

مَا لَكُمْ مَعِ الْقُرْآنِ مُرْسِيًّا

‘What is the matter with them, that they have turned away from the Remembrance?’ [74:49]

⁸³¹ Reported by Ibn Mas‘ūd, authenticated in *Jalal al-Jawāz*.

⁸³² Reported by al-Jahizianec.

⁸³³ al-Darimī, *ar-Riḥl*, p. 189.

⁸³⁴ *Majma‘ al-Fatawa*, v. 3, p. 798. Also see *Riḥāl*, p. 175.

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا مَا غَرَبَ عَلَيْكُمُ الْقُرْآنُ ۚ

«O Mankind! What has made you careless concerning your Lord, the Most Generous?» [82:6]

O Muslims! O Believers of the Qur'aan! Beware that you do not fall into those whom the Prophet (ﷺ) will complain about to his Lord on the Day of Judgement:

وَقَالَ الرَّسُولُ يُرَبِّ يَنْفَرِي أَخَذُوا هَذَا الْقُرْآنَ مَهْجُورًا ۚ

«And the Messenger (will) say, "O My Lord, indeed my people took this Qur'aan as something worthy of being abandoned!"» [25:30]

The scholar Ibn al-Qayyim al-Jawziyyah (d. 799 A.H.) said,

There are various types of 'abandonment' of the Qur'aan:

- 1) To abandon learning it and believing in it
- 2) To abandon acting upon it, and ignoring its lawful and prohibited ordinances (*halal* and *harams*), even if one believes in it and recites it.
- 3) To abandon judging by it, and resorting to it as a judge when there are differences in the custom of the religion or other matters
- 4) To abandon pondering over it, and understanding it, and seeking the explanation of it.
- 5) To abandon using it as a cure in all types of diseases of the heart, and instead to seek to cure these diseases by other means.

And all of these categories are included in the statement of Allah,

وَقَالَ الرَّسُولُ يُرَبِّ يَنْفَرِي أَخَذُوا هَذَا الْقُرْآنَ مَهْجُورًا ۚ

«And the Messenger (will) say, "O My Lord, indeed my people took this Qur'aan as something worthy of being abandoned!"» [25:30],

even though some of these types of abandonment are worse than others.⁸³⁵

How many of these types of abandonments are we guilty of?

O Muslims! Have you not read the outcome of the one who turns away from the Qur'aan?

وَمَنْ أَعْرَضَ عَنْ
وَعَفَى عَنْكَ مَا كُنْتَ تَعْبُدُ
أَنْفَى ۚ قَالَ رَبِّي عَذَابِي أَشَدَّ مِنْكَ وَكَفَى ۚ
قَالَ كَذَلِكَ أَنْتَ لَدَىٰ عَذَابِي وَأَكْفَى ۚ

835: Ibn al-Qayyim, p. 113. The five categories have been translated in meaning, not verbatim.

«And whoever turns away from My Remembrance (the Qur'aan), for him is a life of hardship, and We shall raise him up, on the Day of Judgement, blind. He will say, 'O My Lord! Why have you resurrected me blind, when I used to see (in this world)?' (Allaah) will respond, 'Likewise (in this manner), Our verses came to you, but you ignored them. And, likewise, today you shall be ignored'» [26: 121-126]

The one who was blessed with sight, but turned away from the light and guidance of the Qur'aan, deserves that his sight to be snatched away from him, for of what use was it? If his sight was blind to the light of the Qur'aan, then, on the Day of Judgement, it shall be blind to all else.

وَمَن كَانَ يَتْلِى قُرْآنًا أَفْضَلَ مِمَّا يَنْتَهِىٰ عَنْهُ الْقُرْآنَ فَأَنَّىٰ يَسْمُعَ أَصْفًا ﴿٢٢﴾

«And whoever is blind in this world (to the Qur'aan), then he will be blind on the Day of Judgement, and even more away!» [17: 22]

The Prophet (ﷺ) said, "Indeed, Allaah will honour people (i.e., in this world and the Hereafter) by this Book, and He will debase others by it."⁸¹⁶ There are only two categories of people when it comes to the Qur'aan; those that will be honoured because of it, and those that will be humiliated because of it. The Prophet (ﷺ) also said, "Whoever puts (the Qur'aan) ahead of him, it will lead him to Paradise, and whoever throws it behind him, it will drag him into Hell."⁸¹⁷

Which of these two categories do you wish to be in?

816 Reported by Muslim

817 Reported by al-Tabarani

APPENDIX



PICTURE PLATES

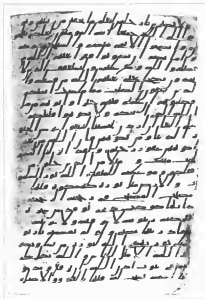


PLATE ONE

Second Naze, last portion of verse 31 to end of verse 36. This is one of the oldest extant manuscripts of the Qur'ān, written in the 2nd century of the Hijrah (around 150 A.H.), probably in Makkah or Mada'inah. It is written on vellum, in an old and rare script known as *muṣṣaf*. It is devoid of diacritical marks (*nuṣṣaṭ*) and dots (*nuṣṣaṭ*). There are circular marks to indicate the endings of the verses. A characteristic that is typical of extremely early manuscripts such as this one is the fact that, at the end of a line, the writer might break a single word into two parts, with a portion of it on the first line, and the rest on the second. (For example, see the end of the first line and the beginning of the second. The word 'naḍḍa' is split up, with the first part 'naḍ' written on the first line, and the rest of it, 'ḍa', on the second line.) Later, as the art of writing evolved, each word was written together, and not split up at the end of a line.

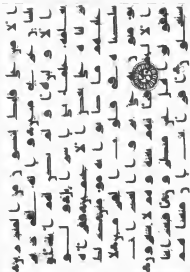


PLATE TWO

Suraḥ al-Mā'idah, last word of verse 193 to middle of verse 205. This manuscript dates back to the 3rd century of the *hijrah*, and is a classic example of early Kufic script. Small dots are present to distinguish between similar letters. The *taḥḥiḥ* system is that of Abū al-Aṣraf's. Not all letters have a diacritical mark on them (unlike later *maqḥḥ*). Instead, only those letters which would typically be problematic to a new reader are marked with *taḥḥiḥ*. This phenomenon is characteristic of the *maqḥḥ* of the first few centuries of the *hijrah*. In this plate, the *taḥḥiḥ* markings are in red, and the *maqḥḥ* written with a finer pen in black, so that the actual text of the Qur'ān can easily be distinguished from the other additions. Each verse ending is marked by three dots in a triangle, and the large circular design that can be seen on this plate is used to indicate the passage of ten verses. There are no *harḥ*, *shakl*, *shams*, or signs indicating stopping places (*maqḥḥ*). All words are written together, and not split between lines. The *maqḥḥ* is written on willow, or Iraq.

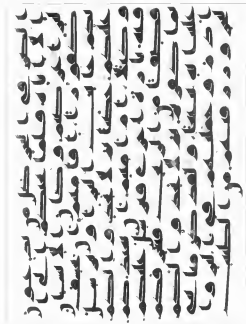


PLATE THREE

*Surah al-A'raf, verse 67 to verse 70. Another example of Early Kufic, from the 4th century. Notice that most letters have the *tasbeel* on them (compared with plate two). However, the letters are not dotted (*maqat*). This disparity between manuscripts is common, for each writer would take into account the purpose (and sometimes even person) for which the Qur'ān was written, and cater to the specific situation. More 'advanced' sections of the Qur'ān would not need as much *tasbeel* and *maqat* as others might. This manuscript is written on vellum, probably in North Africa.*



PLATE FOUR

Sura al-A'raf, verse 41. This manuscript is written by Uthman ibn Hisham al-Warrasiq (d. 466 A.H.), in Iraq. It is written in Eastern Kufic script, on paper (all later plates are also on paper). It is noticed that all the letters have the appropriate *tasbeel* on them, all letters are domed, and *ghayats*, *shadats* and *nahyos* can be seen. In addition, the *tasbeel* system of *Abon al-Azwar* has been replaced with the 'modern' version. However, all these signs, along with the dots, are written with gold-coloured ink, and the *tasbeel* in red, so that the Qur'anic script is clearly differentiable from other additions. The top of the page has written on it 'The Torah *for* ', since at this verse the Torah *was* slain.

(Mushaf al-Azhar Library, Iraq)



Plate Five

The first three verses of *Sura al-Ta'abuk*. Another example of Eastern Kufic, written in Penza, in the 6th century. Once again, all letters have appropriate *nagat* and *tasbeel* marks, and *hamz*, *adjaaz*, and *shakla* can be seen. However, only the *tasbeel* (in Abou al-Aswad's system) is in a different colour than the rest; the rest of the *nagat* and additions are in black, as in the text. The top line, which is in golden ink, states, 'Sura al-Ta'abuk, One hundred and thirty apads', and the word 'Mudawwaj' is seen in the right column, before the beginning of the *sura*, signifying that this *sura* is a *mudawwaj* *sura*. Earlier manuscripts did not mention these details.

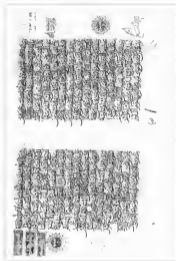


PLATE SEVEN

Sura al-Naṣr, verse 43 to 66. A classic example of the *Nashid* script. This is probably the only extant manuscript written by the famous 'Alī ibn Ḥafṣ, otherwise known as Ibn al-Baṣwāb (d. 413 A.H.). This manuscript was written in 591 A.H., in Baghdad. Although it was Ibn Muqlah (d. 327 A.H.) who introduced the *Nashid* script with which this Qur'an is written, it was Ibn al-Baṣwāb who aided in popularising it. Unfortunately, none of Ibn Muqlah's writings have been preserved, and this plate is one of the earliest examples of *Nashid*. Ibn al-Baṣwāb also helped popularise the 'modern' version of *Nashid*, dropping the older system of *Al-Naṣr*. *Al-Nashid*, *Naṣr* and other pronunciation signs are written in the same colour as the text. The bottom of the left column indicates the start of the *naṣr*. The two lines of text in the upper portion of the right column is the ending of verse 43, the beginning portion of which is in the *naṣr*. It seems as if the writer accidentally forgot to complete the verse and moved on to the next one; by the time he realised his error, it was too late to do anything about it except write the remaining portion in the column (types were not that easily rid of as they are today!). Even the greatest of calligraphers are only human!



PLATE EIGHT

The last verse of *Sūrah al-Ḥajj* and the first line of *Sūrah Baqarah*. This is one of the works of 'Isaqlat al-Munir' (d. ~ 700 A.H.), one of the most famous calligraphers of Islamic history. He was nicknamed 'The Sultan of the Calligraphers'; this plate shows us why. This script, known as *Rika'at*, is an offshoot of *Nasikh*. The *sūrah* heading is written in Eastern Kufic.



PLATE NINE

Sura al-Nahl, the last portion of verse 8 to the middle of verse 21. Another example of *Naṣḥ*, by Yaqut al-Mustaʿsimi, written in 693 A.H. in *ḥaṣṣ*. The signs for stopping (*waqf*) are more numerous and detailed than in earlier manuscripts. The large circle in the upper left column indicates the completion of ten verses; after every five verses appears the symbol in the middle of the column. After yet another five, the same circular symbol appears, but written inside is the verse number, 'Twenty', which is the number of verses since the beginning of the *sura*. A common feature of many *ḥaṣṣ* *ḥaṣṣ* of this era is the fact that alternate *qiraʾat* of the verse would be written in the margin. Typically, the Qurʾān would be written in the common *qiraʾa* of the locality, while other *qiraʾat*, less commonly recited than the primary one, would be written in the margin. In this example, the Qurʾān is written in *ḥaṣṣ*, and the alternate readings (three examples of which can be seen in the margin) are for the *qiraʾa* of *Shāʾib*.

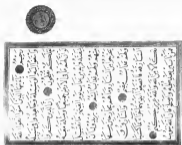


PLATE TEN

Sūrah al-Ma'idah, folios 34 to 41. This Nashīd example is written by Hamed Allah Ibn ash Shaykh, one of the teachers of the Ottoman Sultan Bayazid II, in 897 A.H., in Turkey. The markings indicating five and ten verses are present in the margin, as well as an indication for half of the *hizb*.



PLATE EIGHT

Sasanak Saqfiyat, verses 8 to 50. This example of the *Moshaggaq* script was written by 'Umar ibn 'Ali al-Muhammadi in 600 A.H., in Iraq. Of particular interest is the fact that the margins contain the variant readings of all ten *qasas*.

(Turkic and Islamic Museum, Istanbul)

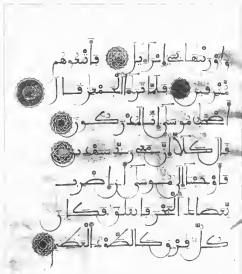


PLATE TWENTY

Soorah ash-Shu'araa, verses 59 to 63. This is a classic example of the Maghribi script. Written in the 6th century in Spain, it is in the group's of *Birkat*. Note the slightly different system of naqat, in the second verse, the first letter is a *fai* (written with one dot below the letter), and the second word in the same verse has a *qaf* in it, represented by one dot above the circle. The system of *tashkeel* is also slightly different.



PLATE THIRTEEN

The last ten verses of *Sasān al-Rahmān*, along with the first ten of *Sasān al-Bīnā'ah*. Another example of Maghrebi script. This particular manuscript was written for the Sharḥ of Sulṭān Moḥyī Zaydān, in 1008 A.H. However, it was captured along with the rest of his library by looting Spanish gallees in 1611 C.E. (1020 A.H.)

(San Lorenzo & El Escorial Libraries, Spain)



PLATE FOURTEEN

An example of an *iqra'*, or *istad*, which is awarded to a student of the *qira'at* by a *Shaykh*. The *iqra'* signifies the fact that the *Shaykh* is satisfied with the student's recitation of the *Qur'aan*, and that the student has perfected the recitation of the *qira'at* that the *iqra'* was awarded to. (*Iqra'* are awarded to all ten *qira'at* through all of their *isnad*). This one was awarded in 1419 A.H., in the Prophet's (ﷺ) Masjid al-Madrasah. It is for the *qira'at* of 'Aqara, through his two students *Shu'bah* and *Haaf*. This simple list of names represents one of the most powerful proofs of the complete preservation of the *Qur'aan*. It is a continuous, direct and unbroken chain of narrators, from the present day to the Prophet (ﷺ), to *Ibraahim*, to *Allaah*, all Praise and Glory be to Him. This in essence implies the fact that the correct transmission of the *Qur'aan* is *guaranteed* and *documented*; every single person whose name is present in an *iqra'* was awarded the *iqra'* by his *Shaykh* (the name before him), all the way back to the age of the famous *Quraan*, who studied under the *asah'ah*, who studied under the *Companions*, who learnt the *Qur'aan* directly from the Prophet (ﷺ). This particular *iqra'* contains 34 people between the recipient and the Prophet (ﷺ); higher *iqra'* are available, though, and in all ten *qira'at*. Can any other religious book claim such a rigorous proof of preservation?



BIBLIOGRAPHY

Qur'aans

Al-Qur'aan al-Kareem:

- Hafiz:** 1) Calligraphy by 'Uthmaan Taha. Printed by Dar al-Fajr 'Uthmaniyyah, Beirut 1984.
2) Calligrapher not mentioned. Printed by Taj Company, Karachi. 1982.
- Marok:** 1) Calligraphy by Ahmad ibn Hamri. Official *maq-haf* of Morocco.
2) Calligraphy by 'Uthmaan Taha. Printed by 'The King Fahd Complex for the Printing of the Holy Qur'aan', Madsinah. 1991.
- Qaloon:** Calligraphy by Abou Bakr Samsi al-Maghribi. Official *maq-haf* of the Republic of Libya, 1989.

Al-Qur'aan al-Asharah al-Muttafa'atrah min Jarqay al-Shahbiyyah wa al-Durrah, written besides the text of the Qur'aan. Compiled by Kharsof, Muhammad Fahd and Rajih, Muhammad Karim. Dar al-Muhapt, Madsinah. 1994.

Books and Dissertations

Aajurree, Abou Bakr Muhammad *ar-Sharee'ah*, ed. by Walced ibn Muhammad. Mu'asasah Qur'ubah, Cairo. 1996.

Abou Shahbah, Muhammad *Al-Madhyal fi Dirasat al-Qur'aan al-Kareem*. Dar al-Lawa, Riyadh. 3rd ed., 1987.

Abou Ubaidah, Ibrahim ibn Muhammad *Lughat al-Qur'aan*. Daar al-Watan, Riyadh. 1993.

'Abd ar-Rahem, Muhammad *Tafseer ar-Sahabiah Mumayyanaah. Khaga'igah Masnadiah*. Maktabah at-Turaath al-Islamee, Cairo. 1991.

Ahmad, Abdullah *ar-Sunnah*. Ramaadec li an-Nashr, Riyadh. 1995.

al-Awaji, Muhammad *Fawa'id al-Qur'aan 'ind Shaykh al-Islam ibn Taymiyyah*. Masters Diss., Islamic Univ. of Madsinah, 1984.

al-Alhamee, Muhammad Naajir al-Decn.

Aghaam al-Jana'iz. Maktab al-Islami, Beirut. 1986.

Da'eef al-Jami' at-Sagheer wa Zayadah. Maktab al-Islami, Beirut. 1991.

Da'eef Sunan at-Tirmidhee. Maktab al-Islami, Beirut. 1991.

Footnotes to Muhammad Ghazali's *Fiqh ar-Sunnah*. Dar al-Qalam, Damascus. 1989.

Manzilus ar-Sunnah fi al-Islam. Dar al-Hayah al-Islamiyyah, Egypt, n.d.

Sahheeh al-Jami' at-Sagheer wa Zayadah. Maktab al-Islami, Beirut. 1988.

Silsilah al-Ahadeeth ad-Da'eefah. Maktabah al-Ma'arif, Riyadh. 1995.

Silsilah al-Ahadeeth at-Sagheefah. Maktabah al-Ma'arif, Riyadh. 1995.

'Ali, Maulana Muhammad. *The Holy Qur'aan*. Speciality Promotions Co., Chicago, 1985.

'Alee, 'Uthmaan Mu'a'lim Mahmood. *al-Ajast al-Muda'ir Nashidha bi Aayat as-Sayf*. Masters Diss., IUM, 1992.

Alceway, Alceway Khaleefah. *Jam' as-Naqool fi Asbaab an-Nuzool*, Mataba al-Ahsaa', Riyadh. 1984.

Arberry, Arthur J. *The Koran Interpreted*. The MacMillan Company, New York, 1955.

Azami, M. M. *Studies in Early Hadith Literature*. American Trust Publication, Indianapolis, Indiana, 1992.

Banna, Ahmad ibn Muhammad. *Itshaaf al-Fadhala al-Bashar fi al-Qira'at al-Arba'at* Ashr. Alim al-Kutub, Beirut. 1987.

al-Barbahaaree, al-Hasan. *Sbarh as-Sunnah*. Maktabah as-Sunnah, Cairo. 1996.

Bazmoon, Muhammad ibn 'Umar ibn Saalim. *al-Qira'at wa Asharahaa fee as-Tajweed*, Daar al-Hijrah, Riyadh. 1996.

Bucaille, Maurice. *The Bible, the Qur'aan, and Science*. American Trust Publications, Indianapolis. 1978.

Bulayhee, Saalih ibn Ibraheem. *Al-Firda wa al-Rayaru fi Aqmas al-Qur'aan*. [?], 1977.

Burton, John. *The Collection of the Qur'an*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1977.

Curtis, Roy Young Muhammad Mukhtar. *Authentic Interpretation of Classical Islamic Texts: An Analysis of the Introduction of Ibn Kathir's 'Tafseer al-Qur'aan al-Azim'*. Ph.D. dissertation, University of Michigan. 1989.

Damishqee, Jashir Jazariy. *Tibyan li ba'ad al-Mabashirah al-Muta'aliq lil Qur'aan wa jame' al-Iqan*. Edited by Abou Ghazza 'Abd al-Fatah. Maktabah al-Mathrusa'at al-Ilaamee, Beirut. 4th ed., 1992.

ad-Daani, Abou 'Amr Muhammad ibn Sa'eed.

al-Bayan fi 'ad aay al-Qur'aan. ed. Dr. Ghanem al-Hamd. Markaz al-Makthoothat, Kuwait. 1994.

Kutab al-Tajweed fi al-Qira'at as-Saba'. Dar Kutub al-Arabiyya, Beirut. 1984.

al-Muqni' fi rarru Maqaahif al-Amsaar. Maktabah al-Kuliyat al-Azhar, Egypt. 1978.

ad-Daarimee, 'Uthmaan ibn Sa'eed. *as-Radd ala al-Jahmiyyah*. ed. Badr al-Badr. Daar ibn al-Atheer, Kuwait. 1985.

Daraz, Muhammad 'Abdullaah. *as-Naba al-'Adheem, Nadawat Jadeedah fi al-Qur'aan*. Dar al-Ilm, Kuwait. 1970.

Darwish, 'Abd al-Mun'im Faraj. *Lala wa al-Majma' fi Timbeeh ala i'jaaz al-Qur'aan*. Markaz al-Darwish wa al-Ibraah. Dabaa. n.d.

adhi-Dhahabee, al-Imam Shams ad-Deen Muhammad ibn Ahmad.

Ma'arifat al-Qur'ān al-Kibār 'alaa ath-Thabaqat wa'l Asbāb. ed. Shu'ayb al-Arna'oot, et. al. Muassasah ar-Risalah, Beirut. 1988.

Siyar A'laam an-Nubalaa. ed. Shu'ayb al-Arna'oot, et. al. Muassasah ar-Risalah, Beirut. 1996.

al-Uloom. ed. by Muhammad Naagar ad-Deen al-Albani. al-Maktab al-Islami, Beirut. 1991.

adhi-Dhahabee, Dr. Muhammad Husayn. *et-Tafseer wa al-Mafasooron*. Maktabah Wahbah, Cairo. 1995.

al-Faraysaan, Sa'ood 'Abdullah. *Hikmaaf al-Mufassoon*. Maktabah Daar ar-Rush, Riyadh. 1997.

Faqihee, Muhammad Hameef. *Nadheriyya 'sjaan al-Qur'aan 'ind 'Abd al-Qaader al-Jazairi*. Masters Diss., Cairo Univ., 1968.

al-Ghazakee, Abso Hameed. *Hiyas 'Uloom al-Deen*, Ashraf Publishers, Lahore, n.d.

al-Haqq, Dawam Allah Imdad. *Imaam 'Alee al-Madonee wa Manbayahu fi Naqd ar-Ryaal*. Masters diss., Umm al-Qura Univ, Makkah. Published by Dar Bushaa, Beirut, 1984.

al-Hamad, Ghanim Qadoori. *Raam al-Maqaalaf, diraaat lughawiya wa tarbiyya*. Masters diss., Cairo University, 1976.

al-Hameed, Muhammad ibn Hamad. *al-Manbay al-Amar fee Sharh Amma A'laash al-Hyama*. Maktabat al-Imam adhi-Dhahabee, Kuwait, 1993.

al-Habee, Ahmad ibn Awad. *al-Matsooredhiyya: Diraaat wa Taqweem*. Daar al-'Aasimah, Riyadh. 1413 A.H.

al-Haashimee, 'Abdul Mun'im. *Qur'ān al-Qur'aan*. Daar Ibn Kathiree, Damascus. 1993.

Ibn 'Abd al-Baar, Yagouf. *Jazm' Bayaan al-Yim wa Faqihce*. ed. by Abso al-Ishmaal az-Zuhayree. Maktabah Ibn Taymyah, Cairo. 1996.

Ibn Aber Jalib, Abso Muhammad Makke. *Kitaab al-Ibaarah 'an Ma'awee al-Qur'aan*. ed. Dr. Muhyee Ramadana. Dar al-Mamoon h Thaurah, Beirut, 1979.

Ibn 'Abd al-Taa al-Hanafee, Muhammad. *Sharh Asraad al-Jahaanviyyah*. al-Maktab al-Islamee, Beirut. 1988.

Ibn al-'Aabee, al-Qaader Abso Bakr. *aw-Nazdh wa al-Mamoodh fi al-Qur'aan al-Karim*. See under al-Madgharee.

Ibn al-Atheer, Mubarak ibn Muhammad al-Jazaree. *al-Nahayyah fi Ghareeb al-Hadeeth*. Maktabah al-Islamiyya, Cairo. 1965.

Ibn Hajr, al-Hafsih Ahmad ibn 'Alee.

al-Istisbāḥ fi Tamayyuz as-Sahābah. Dar al-Kutub al-Ilmiyyah, Beirut. 1995.

Taqreeb as-Tahdheeb, ed. Abou al-Ishaaq al-Pakistani. Daar al-Aasimah, Riyadh. 1996.

Ibn Hazm al-Andalusi, Abou 'Abdillāh Muhammad al-Nawadh wa al-Mawadh fi al-Qur'aan al-Karīm. Dar al-Kutub al-Ilmiyyah, Beirut. 1986.

Ibn al-Jawzee, Abou al-Faraj Abd ar-Rahmaan.

al-Hath alaa Hifdh al-Ilm wa Dhikr Kabaar al-Huffadh. Dar al-Kutub al-Ilmiyyah, Beirut, Lebanon 1986.

Nawadh al-Qur'aan. See under al-Malibari.

Ibn al-Jawzee, Muhammad ibn Muhammad, an-Nashr fi al-Qur'aan al-'Ade. Dar Kutub al-Ilmiyyah, Beirut. n.d.

Ibn Kathir, 'Imad ad-Deen Isma'el. *Tafseer al-Qur'aan al-'Adheem*. Daar al-Khayr, Beirut. 1991.

Ibn al-Qayyim, Shams ad-Deen.

Fawa'id al-Fawa'id, ed. by 'Alee al-Halabee. Daar ibn al-Jawzee, Damascus. 1996.

as-Sawa'iq al-Murashah. Daar al-Aasimah, Riyadh. 1988.

Ibn Qudama, 'Abdillāh ibn Ahmad.

al-Burhan fi Bayan al-Qur'aan. Matabah al-Huda, Ft. Saud. 1989.

Raḍat as-Nashir. Maktabah Daar al-Bayr, Makkah. 1994.

Ibn Taymiyyah, Ahmad ibn 'Abd al-Haleem

Iqtidaṣ Siraat al-Mustaqeem, ed. Dr. Naeir al-'Aql, Maktabah ar-Rushd, Riyadh. 1994.

Majma' al-Fatawa. Compiled by 'Abd ar-Rahmaan ibn Muhammad n.p. 1997.

An Introduction to the Principles of Tafseer. al-Hadiyyah Publishing and Distribution, Birmingham. 1993.

al-Tadmudariyyah. Al-Maktab al-Islami, Beirut. 1988.

Ik, Khalid 'Abd ar-Rahmaan. *Uṣool at-Tafseer wa Qawa'idah*. Dar an-Nafes, Beirut. 1986.

Izz, Hasan Diyaa ad-Din.

al-Ahraf as-Saba' wa mawḍi' al-Qur'aan minha. Dar al-Bashair al-Islamiyyah, Beirut. 1988.

al-Ma'jma al-Khamsah. Dar al-Bashair al-Islamiyyah, Beirut. 1994.

al-Isfahani, ar-Raghib. *Mafraḍat al-Qur'aan*. Daar al-Qalam, Damascus. 1997.

James, David. *Qur'aan of the Morality*. Alexandria Press, London. 1988.

Jeffery, Arthur. *Materials for the History of the Text of the Qur'an*, along with *Kitaab al-Masahif* of Ibn Abi Dawood. Leiden, 1937.

Juday', 'Abdullah Yousuf. *Al-Aqeedah as-Salafiyyah fee Kalaam Rab al-Bariyyah*. Daar al-Imaam Maahik, Riyadh. 1995.

Kamali, Mohammad Hashim. *Principles of Islamic Jurisprudence*. Islamic Texts Society, Cambridge. 1991.

al-Khalaf, Aboo Bakr Ahmad ibn Muhammad. *Al-Sunnah*. Edited by Dr. Anyya Zahraane. Dar ar-Rayah, Riyadh. 1994.

Khalifa, Mohammad. *The Sublime Qur'an and Orientalism*. Longman, London. 1983.

Khaatib, Muhammad Ahmad. *Qura'aat 'Abdallah ibn Ma'ood: mahsanatuhu, mandaribuhu, ibaratu*. Dar al-Imam, Cairo. 1990.

al-Khamees, Dr. Muhammad ibn 'Abd ar-Rahmaan. *'Inqad al-A'marah al-Arba'ah*.

Khayyat, Khaleefah. *Tarajekh*, ed. by Dr. Akram Uman. Daar Tayibah, Madinah. 1985.

al-Laalikaa'ee, Abul Qasim Hilal Allah. *Sharh upon 'Inqad Abl as-Sunnah wal Jama'ah*. Ed. by Dr. Ahmad Sa'ad al-Ghaamdee. Dar at-Tayibah, Riyadh. 1995.

Ma'abed, Muhammad Ahmad. *Nafahat min 'uloom al-Qur'aan*. Maktabah at-Tayibah, Madinah. 1987.

al-Madgharee, Dr. Abdul-Kabeer al-Alawee. *as-Naazh wa al-Mawsoof fi al-Qur'aan al-Karim li al-Qadee Aboo Bakr ibn al-'Aabee*. Ministry of Religious Affairs, Morocco. n.d.

al-Malharee, Muhammad Ashraf 'Alee. *Naawekh al-Qur'aan li al-Alaamah Ibn al-Jawzee*. Masters Diss., IUM. 1984.

al-Misree, Jamaal al-Deen Yousuf. *Tabeerh al-Kamaal fi Asmaa ar-Ryaal*, ed. by Dr. Bashaar Asrward. Muassasat ar-Risalah, Beirut. 1980.

Mosaa, 'Abd ar-Razaq. *Maw'id al-Khalaan ilaa Ma'rifat 'ad Aay al-Qur'aan*, IUM Press, Madinah, 1990.

al-Mubarakaforee, Safee ar-Rahmaan. *ar-Rahreeq al-Makhtoom*. Maktabah as-Sahaabah, Jeddah. 1990.

Muslim, Musafa. *Musahab al-Mufassimeen*. Daar al-Muslim, Riyadh. 1995.

an-Najdee, Muhammad. *al-Qawl al-Makhtaar al-Mubeen fee Manaaib al-Mufassimeen*. Maktabah adh-Dhahabee, Cairo. 1992.

an-Naaz'ee, Ahmed ibn Shu'ayb. *Fuqail al-Qur'aan*. Dar Ihya al-'uloom, Beirut. 1992.

an-Nahhas, Aboo Ja'afar Ahmad ibn Muhammad. *as-Naazh wa al-Mawsoof fi Kitaab Allaahu 'Azza wa Jal*, ed. by al-Latham, Sulayman 'Abdullah. Muassasah ar-Risalah, Beirut. 1991.

Njosi, Hamza Mustafa. *The Sources of the Qur'aan: A Critical Review of the Authorship Theories*. WAMY, Saudi Arabia, n.d.

Noor, Khaalid. *Mashay' Ahl al-Sunnah wa Manbay al-Ashd'nah fee Taahjeed Allaah Ta'ala*. Ph.D., IUM, al-Ghuraba Publications, Madeenah, 1995.

Numani, Allama Shibli. *Sirat-un-Nabi* (Engl.). Kazi Publications, Lahore, 1981.

Paton, Walter M. *Ahmed ibn Hanbal and the Mihna*. Librairie et Imprimerie, Leiden, 1997.

al-Qasbi, Abdul Fattah. *al-Bihar ul-Jaamiyyah wa yateehi, al-Qur'aan ar-Shadeh*. Dar Kutub al-Ilmiyyah, Beirut, 1981.

Qasbi, Manna' *Mabaghith fi 'uloom al-Qur'aan*. Mu'assas al-Risalah, Beirut, 1983.

Qurubee, Muhammad ibn Ahmad. *Al-faaru' li ahkame al-Qur'aan*, ed. by Dr. Muhammad Ibrahim al-Hafiswee, Dar al-Hadeeth, Cairo, 1994.

ar-Razee, Muhammad ibn 'Umar Fakhr ad-Din. *Ahkame al-Baynaat*, ed. Mayde Ibrahim, Maktabah al-Qur'aan, Cairo, n.d.

Radwell, J. M. *The Koran*. Everyman Publications, London, 1994.

ar-Roomee, Fahd ibn 'Abd al-Rahmaan ibn Sulayman

Diraasat fi 'uloom al-Qur'aan. Maktabah at-Tawbah, Riyadh, 1994.

Tafseelat ar-Tafseer fee al-Qur'an ar-Rabi' Ashe. Mu'assas ar-Risalah, Beirut, 1997.

Usool ar-Tafseer wa Muwashshah. Maktabah at-Tawbah, Riyadh, 1993.

Sabbagh, Muhammad ibn Latifi. *Lam'atun fi 'uloom al-Qur'aan*. Maktab al-Islamee, Beirut, 3rd ed., 1990.

as-Sabi, Khaalid. *Kutub al-Manasib al-hisn du'wat wa taqweem*. Daar Ibn 'Alfaan, al-Khobar, 1997.

as-Sakhswee, 'Ism ad-Din

Jamaal al-Qur'an wa Kamaal al-Aqraa. Maitha' al-Madaniye, Madeenah, 1987.

al-Maqaad al-Hisaniyyah fee Bayaan Kuthur min al-Ahadeeth al-Mutabihah ala al-Ahadeeth. Daar al-Kutub al-Arabi, Beirut, 1996.

Sale, George. *The Koran*. Frederick Warne and Co., London, 1867.

Salih, Subhee. *Mabaghith fi 'uloom al-Qur'aan*. Dar al-Ilm li Malayeen, Beirut, 1979.

Shakir, M. H. *The Qur'aan Translated*. Tahrike Taseel Qur'an, New York, 1997.

ash-Shaaitibe, Qasim ibn Feerah. *Hera al-Amam wa Wajh al-Taher fi al-Qur'aan al-Sabi'*. Dar al-Mahbuth, Jeddah, 1990.

as-Suyootee, Juhul al-Din 'Abd al-Rahmaan

al-Iqnaa fee 'uloom al-Qur'aan. Dar al-Manifah, Beirut, n.d.

Labaab al-Naqd fi Ashaab an-nawad. Dar Ihya al-'uloom, Beirut, 1983.

Sharḥ al-Mufaṣṣir wa Aḥādith. Taken from *al-Itqān*. See under az-Zamralee.

Tanṣiq ad-Dhar fi Tanṣib as-Samar. Alim al-Kutub, Beirut, 1987.

Tibḥ al-Rawḥ fee Sharḥ Taḥrīb an-Nawāḥee. Dar al-Kutub al-ʿArabī, Beirut, 1993.

al-Ṭibaree, Muḥammad ibn Jareer. *Jarar' al-Bayān 'an Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*. Edited by Muḥammed Shakir. Dar al-Ma'arif, Cairo, n.d.

al-Ṭaḥawee, Abū Ja'far Aḥmad. *Sharḥ Muḥṣil al-Aḥwāl*. ed. by Shu'ayb al-Arna'oot. Muṣṣaḥ al-Risālah, Beirut, 1994.

Ṭarḥoonee, Muḥammad ibn Riq. *Mawṣū'ah Fagḥ'il Samār wa Aḥwāl al-Qurānīyah*. Maktabah al-Ilm, Jeddah, 1994.

al-Tayyar, Mun'īd. *Faṣṣal fee ḥwāl al-Tafsīr*. Daar an-Nashr ad-Duwaalee, Riyadh 1993.

Ubaydaat, Mahmūd Saalim. *Diraasat fi 'uloom al-Qur'ān*. Dar Amman, Jordan, 1990.

Umayrah, 'Abd al-Rahman. *al-Riyāl Annāl Allāhū fihim Qur'aanan*. Dar Jeel, Beirut, 1990.

Uwais, Aḥmad Ṭahir. *Kutub al-Mutawwīn fi al-Qur'aan al-'Ash*. Doctoral Diss., Madcenah Uus. 1993.

al-Uthaymeen, Muḥammad ibn Saalih. *Uṣṣal fi al-Tafsīr*. Dar Ibn al-Qayyim, Dammam 1989.

Von Denffer, Aḥmad. *'Uloom al-Qur'aan, An Introduction to the Sciences of the Qur'an*. The Islamic Foundation, Leicester, 1983.

al-Wadī'ee, Muḥbil ibn Haader. *Sabḥ al-Muḥad min Aḥwāl an-nawṣal*. Maṭab' al-Hadaf, no city, n.d.

al-Waḥidee, Abū al-Ḥasan 'Alee ibn Aḥmad. *Aḥwāl an-nawṣal*. Ed. by Asma' al-Ḥumaydan. Dar as-Salah, Dammam, 1992.

Wazih, Yūsuf. *Aḥwāl an-Sa'at*. Daar ibn al-Jawzee, Dammam, 1993.

Wehr, Hans; Cowan, J.M. *Arabic-English Dictionary*.

World Bibliography of Translations of the Meanings of the Holy Qur'an. Research Centre for Islamic History, Art and Culture (under the OIC). Istanbul, 1986.

al-Wuhābī, Saleh Sulaiman. *Qur'aanic Versions (Haw al-Qur'aan)*. An Historical-Phonological Study. Ph.D. dissertation, Indiana University, 1982.

Zaid, Muṣṭafa. *an-Nashr fi al-Qur'aan*. Dar al-Fikr, Beirut, 1971.

Zamralee, Firwaz Aḥmad. *Sharḥ al-Mufaṣṣir wa Aḥādith li as-Sayyidee*. Dar Ibn Ḥazm, Beirut, 1994.

az-Zarkashlee, Badr al-Din Muḥammad ibn 'Abdullāh.

al-Burḥān fi 'uloom al-Qur'aan. Maktabah al-Arṣīyah, Beirut, 1972.

al-Baḥr al-Muḥīṭ, ed. Muḥammad Sulayman al-Ashqar, no city, n.d.

az-Zarqaanee, Muḥammad 'Abd al-Adhḥem. *Mawāḥib al-Iḥṣān fi 'uloom al-Qur'ān*. Dar al-Fikr, Cairo, n.d.

Zarzoze, Adnan Muḥammad. *'Ulloom al-Qur'aan; Madhḥab ila Taḥṣee al-Qur'aan wa Bayaan 'Ijaazih*. Maktab al-Islama, Beirut, 1981.

Magazines and Periodicals

Majalah Kulliyah al-Qur'an al-Karim . Vol. 1, No. 1

al-Badawee, Muḥammad Sibawayh. *al-Mawāḥib al-Uthmaniyyah, al-Muḥaf al-Kaaf*.

al-Qasbi, 'Abd al-'Azeez 'Abd al-Fattah. *Ḥadith al-ahraf as-Sab'ah*.

The Message Vol. 15, No. 10

Kazi, Yasir. *The Documentation of the Qur'an*.

Kadwa, A.R. *English Translation of the Holy Qur'an: An Annotated Bibliography*.

Al-Basheer

Vol. 3, No. 5 & 6: Zarabozo, Jumal al-Din, *On Yusuf Ali's and Muḥammad Asad's Commentaries*

Vol. 5, No. 6: Kazi, Yasir, *The History of the Qur'an and Related Matters*

Unpublished Works

Ṣideeq, Basheer Ahmad.

Ḍuray al-Ma'ālīn min Qur'aan saydah al-Iḥṣān Aḥqar min riwayat Shu'bah.

al-Uṣool fi qur'aat Waṣṣ.

(Both photocopies of original, in handwriting of author).